Complete Work now Ready. Post 8vo. cloth, price 10s. 6d. each.

THE SHÁHNÁMA OF FIRDAUSÍ.

Done into English by

ARTHUR GEORGE WARNER, M.A.

AND

EDMOND WARNER, B.A.

The year A.D. 1010 saw the completion of the Sháhnáma, the great Persian epic. Its author, the poet Firdausí, spent over thirty laborious years in its composition, only to experience, when the task had been achieved, a heart-breaking disappointment well worthy of inclusion in any record of the calamities of authors. His work has survived the test of time, and by general consent is accounted to be one of the few great epics of the world. Geographically, and in some other respects, it may be said to stand half-way between the epics of Europe and those of India. In its own land it has no peer, while in construction and subject-matter it is unique. Other epics centre round some heroic character or incident to which all else is subservient. In the Sháhnáma there is no lack either of heroes or of incidents, but its real hero is the ancient Persian people, and its theme their whole surviving legendary history from the days of the First Man to the death of the last Sassanian Sháh in the middle of the seventh century of our era. It is the glory of the Persian race that they alone among all nations possess such a record, based as it is on their own traditions and set forth in the words of their greatest poet. In another sense, too, the Sháhnáma is unique. The authors of the other great epics tell us little or nothing of their own personalities or of their sources of information. Their works are fairy palaces suspended in mid air; we see the result, but know not how it was achieved. The author of the Sháhnáma takes us into his confidence from the first, so that in reading it we are let into the secret of epic-making, and can apply the knowledge thus gained to solve the problem of the construction of its great congeners. To the student of comparative mythology and folk-lore, to the lover of historic romance or romantic history, and to all that are fond of tales of high achievements and the gests of heroes, the Sháhnáma is a storehouse of rich and abundant material. To set forth a complete presentation of it with the needful notes and elucidations is the object of the present translation, made from two of the best printed texts of the original—that of Vulvers and Landauer, and that of Turner Macan.
THE
SHÁHNÁMA OF FIRDÁUSÍ

DONE INTO ENGLISH BY

ARTHUR GEORGE WARNER, M.A.

AND

EDMOND WARNER, B.A.

35453

"The homes that are the dwellings of to-day
Will sink 'neath shower and sunshine to decay,
But storm and rain shall never mar what I
Have built—the palace of my poetry."

FIRDÁUSÍ.

LONDON:
KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD
BROADWAY HOUSE: CARTER LANE, E.C.
1925
PREFATORY NOTE

The General Index at the end of this volume should be consulted in preference to the Indexes to the separate volumes of this work.—E.W.
# CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prefatory Note</th>
<th>v</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviations</td>
<td>xi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note on Pronunciation</td>
<td>xii</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## THE SÁSÁNIAN DYNASTY (concluded)

### KURÁD (COMMONLY CALLED SHÍRWÍ)

1. How Shírwí ascended the Throne, announced his Will, and sent Chiefs to his Father with Counsel and Excuses  
   2. How Khusrau Parwíz answered Shírwí  
   3. How Shírwí grieved for Khusrau Parwíz and how the Chiefs were displeased thereat  
   4. How Bárbad lamented Khusrau Parwíz, cut off his own Fingers, and burned his Instruments of Music  
   5. How the Chiefs demanded from Shírwí the Death of Khusrau Parwíz and how he was slain by Mihr Hurmu zd  
   6. How Shírwí asked Shírín in Marriage, how Shírín killed herself, and how Shírwí was slain  

### ARDSÍR, SON OF SHÍRWÍ

1. How Ardsír, Son of Shírwí, ascended the Throne and harangued the Chiefs  
   2. How Guráź was displeased at Ardsír being Sháh and how he caused Ardsír to be slain by Pírúz Son of Khusrau  

### GURÁź (ALSO CALLED FARÁYÍN)

1. How Guráź (also called Faráyín) received News of the Slaying of Ardsír, hastened to Írán, took Possession of the Throne, and was killed by Shahránguráź  

### PÚRÁNĐUKHT

1. How Púrándukht ascended the Throne and slew Pírúz, Son of Khusrau, and how her own Life ended  

ix
CONTENTS

ÁZARMDUKHT—

1. How Ázarmdukht ascended the Throne and how she died .......................... 59

FARRUKHZÁD—

1. How Farrukhzád ascended the Throne and how he was slain by a Slave .......... 61

YAZDAGIRD—

1. How Yazdagird ascended the Throne and addressed the Chiefs .................. 70
2. How Sa’ad, Son of Wakkás, invaded Írán, how Yazdagird sent Rustam to oppose him, and how Rustam wrote a Letter to his Brother 72
3. How Rustam wrote to Sa’ad, Son of Wakkás, and how he replied ..................... 78
4. How Rustam fought with Sa’ad, Son of Wakkás, and was slain ..................... 83
5. How Yazdagird consulted with the Íránians and went to Khurásán .................. 85
6. How Yazdagird wrote to Máhwí of Súr ............................................. 89
7. How Yazdagird wrote to the Marchlords of Tús ...................................... 90
8. How Yazdagird went to Tús and how Máhwí of Súr met him ........................ 95
9. How Máhwí of Súr incited Bızhan to war with Yazdagird and how Yazdagird fled and hid himself in a Mill ................................. 96
10. How Máhwí of Súr sent the Miller to kill Yazdagird, and how the Archmages counselled Máhwí to forbear .............................................. 101
11. How Yazdagird was slain by Khusrau, the Miller .................................... 107
12. How Máhwí of Súr was informed of the Obsequies of Yazdagird and ascended the Throne ......................................................... 112
13. How Bizont, hearing of the Slaying of Yazdagird, and of Máhwí of Súr’s Accession to the Throne, led forth the Host to fight with him ......................... 115
14. How Máhwí of Súr was taken and slain by Order of Bizont ....................... 118
15. Account of the Completion of the Sháhnáma ........................................... 121

INDEX ........................................................................................................... 123

GENERAL LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS ....................................................... 135

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS ............................................................... 139

CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS ............................................................... 177

GENERAL INDEX ....................................................................................... 191
ABBREVIATIONS

C.—Macan’s edition of the Sháhnáma
L.—Lumsden’s do.
P.—Mohl’s do.
T.—Tihrán do.
V.—Vullers’ do.

BCM. The Chahár Maqála (“Four Discourses”) of Nidhámi-i-
 Arúdi-i-Samarqandí. Translated into English by
Edward G. Browne, M.A., M.B.

CTC. Theophanis Chronographia. Ex Recensione Ioanni
Classeni.

LEC. The Lands of the Eastern Califate. By G. Le Strange.

NIN. Das Iranische Nationalepos von Theodor Nöldeke.

NT. Geschichte der Perser und Araber sur Zeit der Sasaniden
... von. Th. Nöldeke.

RM. The Rauzat-us-safa; or, Garden of Purity.... By
Mirkhond. ... Translated ... by E. Rehatsék.

RSM. The Seventh Great Oriental Monarchy. By George
Rawlinson, M.A.

ZT. Chronique de Abou-Djafar-Mo’hammed-Ben-Djarir-Ben-
Yezid-Tabari, traduite ... Par M. Hermann Zoten-
burg.
NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION

d as in "water."
i as in "pique."
ụ as in "rude."
a as in "servant."
i as in "sin."
u as in "foot."
ai as in "time."
au as in ou in "cloud."
g is always hard as in "give."
kh as ch in the German "buch."
zh as z in "azure."
IV

THE SÁSANIAN DYNASTY

(Concluded)
XLIV

KUBÁD (COMMONLY CALLED SHÍRWÍ)

HE REIGNED SEVEN MONTHS

ARGUMENT

Kubád on his accession sends two chiefs to accuse of misgovernment the fallen and imprisoned Sháh, Khusrau Parwíz, who justifies himself at great length. His fall is made the subject of a lament by Bárbad, the minstrel, who afterwards mutilates himself. The chiefs, noticing symptoms of remorse in Kubád, insist upon the death of Khusrau Parwíz who is killed with all his other sons. Kubád falls in love with, and wishes to marry, Shírín, who poisons herself rather than consent, and Kubád himself is poisoned soon afterwards.

NOTE

The days of the reign of Kubád (Kobad II., Feb.-Sept., A.D. 628) were few and evil. Tradition already had prepared the ground for this in the unfavourable account given of his early years. The murder of his father was followed by that of all his brothers, and by the tragic death of Shírín, while in addition to all these horrors a frightful pestilence broke out in his reign and the great mortality that ensued still further weakened the resources of an already almost exhausted country and helped to pave the way for the successful Arab invasion of a few years later on. Kubád is represented in the poem as a loutish, uneducated youth, but even if his abilities had been great it is difficult to see how he could have extricated himself from the coil in which

1 See Vol. viii., p. 390  
2 Id.
he found himself involved without mishap to himself or others. He owed his release from prison and perhaps his life to the very conspirators that subsequently demanded of him for their own security the death of his father. To have refused would have been fatal to himself, while in all probability his father and his brothers, with the exception of one who would have been made Sháh, would have perished all the same. It is inconceivable that the conspirators would have run the risk to themselves of restoring Khusrau Parwíz, with his black record of ingratitude as instanced by his treatment of Bandví and Gustáham,\(^1\) to his former position as ruler. With the exception of his infatuation for Shirín, which hardly can be regarded as historical, Kubád throughout his short reign was the victim of circumstances.

§§ 1 and 2. Khárrád, son of Barzin, was one of the most trusted ministers of Khusrau Parwíz and planned the assassination of Bahram Chúbína.\(^2\) According to Tabarí he fell at the battle of Dhú Kár.\(^3\)

As the epoch of the Sássánian Dynasty draws to an end through scenes of deepening tragedy the legitimist leanings of the tradition seem to become more and more pronounced and we have an instance here. It is hardly to be supposed, historically speaking, that formal charges of misgovernment were drawn up against, and as formally answered by, Khusrau Parwíz, but rather that someone, desirous of vindicating that Sháh’s memory and conversant with the circumstances of the time, soon after his death drew up the charges and the replies thereto. Versions of them are given in both the Arabic and Persian Tabarí and elsewhere. Four of the charges are found in both the Tabarís as well as in the Sháhnámá.\(^4\) They are:

1. The murder by Khusrau Parwíz of his father Húrmuzd.
2. The illegitimate accumulation of treasure as a result of the financial oppression of the people.
3. The harsh treatment of the royal princes.
4. The refusal to restore the True Cross.

To these the Arabic Tabarí adds:

1. The general ill-treatment of all prisoners.
2. Enforced recruiting for the royal Haram even of women already married.

---

\(^1\) See Vol. viii., p. 354 seq.  
\(^2\) Id. p. 331 seq.  
\(^3\) Id. p. 190.  
\(^4\) NT, 363 seq.  
\(^5\) ZT, ii., 334 seq.
3. The keeping of the troops for a long period absent from home.

The Persian Tabari adds:—
1. The imprisonment of the troops defeated by the Arabs at Dhú Kár and by Heraclius.
2. The exactions of arrears of tribute for the previous twenty or thirty years.
3. The attempt to slay the youthful Yazdagird (afterwards the last Sasanian Shah).
4. The deposition of Nu'mán, prince of Híra.¹
5. The mutilation and subsequent execution of Mardánsháh.²

In the Arabic Tabari eight charges are made against Khusrav Parwíz two of which—those relating to the royal Haram and the refusal to restore the “True Cross”—are left unanswered.

In the Persian Tabari eleven charges are formulated to each of which in the same order an answer is made. Some of the charges, however, must be regarded as later additions while that relating to Nu'mán is not likely to have suggested itself to a Persian and must come from an Arab source. In the Shahnáma there are eight charges, all of which are more or less answered, but not in the same order as they are preferred, but in the following:—1, 6, 7, 8, 2, 5, 3, 4. Thus Khusrav Parwíz replies to the most serious accusations—those of offences against persons—first. The Shahnáma agrees most closely with the Arabic Tabari, supplies the missing answer with regard to the “True Cross,” but does not deal with the gravamen of the royal Haram question, as that particular charge is not one of those mentioned in the poem.

Galínúsh subsequently served in the war against the Arabs, fought at the Battle of the Bridge, and was perhaps slain at Kádisiya.³

§ 5. Indignant legitimate tradition is naturally very wroth with Mihr Hurmuzd, the murderer of Khusrav Parwíz, whom it describes as the lowest of the low and vilest of the vile. According to Tabari, however, Mihr Hurmuzd was the son of Mardánsháh, the governor of Nimrúz and one of the most obedient and faithful of Khusrav Parwíz’ officials. In the Persian Tabari’s version of the Romance of Bahrám

¹ See Vol. viii., p. 190.
² See p. 6.
Chúbína that hero's brother, Yalán-sína in the Sháhnáma, is called Mardánsháh. Yalán-sína is always represented as being one of Bahram Chúbína's most loyal adherents just as the other brother, Gurwí, was a firm supporter of Khusrau Parwíz, while their sister Gurdya held an intermediate position, faithful to Bahram Chúbína, but opposing his kingly ambition in every way in her power. Later on when married to Gustaham, the maternal uncle of Khusrau Parwíz, she agreed, on condition that she should become the Sháh's wife and that a full amnesty should be given to all her adherents, to murder her husband and did so. There would be nothing strange therefore in Mardánsháh, if identical with Yalán-sína, becoming reconciled to, and receiving high office from, Khusrau Parwíz. He would serve one master as faithfully as he served the other. In the circumstances the strange thing would have been for the treacherous Sháh not to have taken the first convenient occasion against him. According to the story the Sháh, two years before his deposition, consulted the astrologers who informed him that his death would come from Nimrúz. He therefore began to suspect and summoned Mardánsháh, but finding no pretext for putting him to death, as he was perfectly loyal and withal an aged man, determined merely to cut off his right hand and make him a large present of money as compensation. The sentence was carried out. Mardánsháh regarded such a mutilation as worse than death and, when shortly afterwards the Sháh was good enough to send and express his regret for what had occurred, asked the Sháh to grant him a boon. The Sháh swore to do so, on which Mardánsháh requested that his head should be struck off in order to wipe out the disgrace put upon him. The Sháh, bound by his oath, felt himself obliged to consent and the execution took place accordingly. The Shah wished to make Mardánsháh's son governor of Nimrúz, but he refused and withdrew from the army.¹ He joined the conspiracy against Khusrau Parwíz² and by avenging his father on the Sháh justified the prediction of the astrologers.

The account given by Theophanes of the last days of the Sháh is different. As a general rule it is not prudent to put faith in stories of what occurred in Oriental palaces or prisons, but owing to the special circumstances of the case his information may be good in this instance, as it appears to be

based on letters written by Heraclius. After the capture of Khusrau Parwiz by the conspirators, he was bound and confined in the "House of Darkness," which he had himself built as a stronghold for his treasures. Here he was sparingly fed on bread and water for, said Shīrwī: "Let him eat the gold that he has vainly amassed, and for whose sake he has starved many, and made the world itself a desert." Shīrwī also sent satraps to revile and spit upon him, had his son Mardāsas, whom he had wished to crown, slain before his eyes, and all his other sons as well, sent his enemies to beat and spit upon him, and, after five days of such treatment, had him put to death with arrows. Shīrwī then wrote to Heraclius to announce the death of the detested Khusrau Parwiz, arranged terms of peace, released all the captives, and restored the "True Cross." With regard to these latter statements of Theophanes it should be observed that peace was not concluded, and the "True Cross" restored, till after the death of Shīrwī.2

According to Tabarī Kubād had Mihr Hurmuzd put to death.3

§ 6. The association of Khusrau Parwiz and Shīrīn began, it would seem,4 before his accession to the throne, and he reigned for thirty-eight years. If Shīrwī really wished to marry Shīrīn it must have been for political motives and because she had been so much in his father's confidence and might furnish useful information. For a son to marry his father's wives was, according to Persian ideas, quite the correct procedure in the circumstances.

Kubād is said to have been bitterly reproached by his two sisters, Pūrāndukht and Āzarmdukht, for his share in the deaths of his father and brothers, and to have suffered much from sickness and remorse. He died at Dastagird, but from what cause is uncertain.5 The plague was very virulent at the time. Poison was often made to account for what was really due to disease.

---

1 CTC, i., 502.  NT, p. 392 and note.  Id. p. 382.  See vol. viii., p. 383.  NT, p. 384 and notes.
§ 1

How Shírwí ascended the Throne, announced his Will, and sent Chiefs to his Father with Counsel and Excuses

Now when Shírwí sat on the goodly throne, And donned the royal crown so much desired, The leaders of the Íránians each drew near To proffer him the homage due to kings, Exclaiming: "Worshipful and honoured Sháh! Know, God gave thee the crown, and now thou sittest Securely on the throne of ivory, And may thy sons and scions have the world."

Kubád replied: "Be ever conquering And happy. Never will we practise ill. How good is justice with benevolence! The world will we keep peaceful and cut off The works of Áhriman by every right, Ancestral precedent that greateneth The Glory of our Faith. I will dispatch A message to my sire and tell him all. He is in evil odour in the world Through his ill deeds: let him excuse his faults To God and turn to custom and the way. If he shall heed me he will not resent My conduct. Then will I devote myself To state-affairs and strive to compass justice Both publicly and privily, do good Where good is due, and break no poor man's heart. I need two honest men of goodly speech, Whose memories are charged with ancient lore."
He asked the assembly: "Whom shall I employ? Who is most shrewd and honest in Írán?"

The warriors all suggested by their looks
Two men of lore if they should give consent.
Kubád perceived whom the Íránians
Agreed to choose: one of them was Ashtád,
The other was Kharrád, son of Barzín,
The old—two sages eloquent and heedful.
Kubád addressed them thus: "O ye wise men,
Ye chiefs experienced and veteran!
Deem not the conduct of the world too toilsome,
Because the Great by travail compass treasure.
It is for you now to approach the Sháh;
Perchance through you he may conform himself.
Appeal to him by instance new or old
As there is need."

With tears unwillingly
Those sages made them ready. When Kharrád,
Son of Barzín, and when Ashtád, who had
Gashasp for sire, had mounted on their steeds,
As bidden, Kubád said: "Now with right good will
'Tis yours to take the road to Taisafún,¹
To carry to my glorious sire a message,
And bear it all in mind from first to last.
Say: 'Twas no fault of ours nor did the Íránians
Cause this, but having left the way of Faith
Thou hast thyself incurred God's chastisement,
For, first, no son legitimate will shed
His sire's blood though impure or give assent
Thereto and fill the hearts of upright folk
With pain. Again, thy treasures fill the world,
And thine exactions reach all provinces,
While, thirdly, many horsemen brave and famed
Within Írán who gladdened there have left
Son, country, and their own pure kith and kin,

¹Couplet omitted.
Have parted, this to Chín and that to Rúm,
And now are scattered o'er each march and land.
Again, when Cæsar, who had done and borne
So much for thee, had given thee a host
And daughter too with treasure and much else,
Desired of thee the Cross of Christ for Rúm,
So that his land might be revived thereby,
How did the Cross of Jesus profit so
Thy treasures when complaisance on thy part
Would have made Cæsar glad? But thou didst not
Restore it, hadst not wit enough for that,
Or one to guide thee to humanity.
Again, thy greed was such that wisdom's eye
Was all obscured in thee, and thou didst seize
The chattels of the poor whose curses brought
Ill on thy head. Thou slewest thy mother's brothers,¹
Two loyal men who gave thy throne a lustre.
Moreover thou hadst sixteen sons whose days
And nights were passed in prison while no chief
Could sleep secure from thee but hid in fear.²
Know, that which hath befall'n thee is from God;
Reflect on thy foul deeds. As for myself,
I am but as the instrument in all
This wrong, am but the heading of the tale.
By God, 'twas not my fault, no aim of mine
To wreck the Sháh's throne! Now for all seek grace,
And say so to these chieftains of Írán;
Turn from ill deeds to God—the Guide to good—
Who may abate the woes that thou hast brought
Upon thyself.' "

On hearing this the twain
Departed with their hearts all seared and sore
Till, sorrowful and weeping, they arrived
At Taisafún and in that city sought

¹ Bandwi and Gustaham.
² This sentence comes at the end of the speech in the text.
The palace of Márúsipand for there
The exalted king resided. Galínúsh
Sat at the palace-gate: thou wouldst have said:—
"Earth is convulsed before him!" He was armed
In helm and breastplate, all the Arab steeds
Wore bards, and all his soldiers were drawn up,
Equipped, and sword in hand. He grasped a mace
Of steel, his heart all fire and storm. Now when
Kharrád, son of Barzín, and when Ashtád,
Son of Gashasp, those sages twain, dismounted,
He rose forthwith, rejoiced to look on them,
And gave them place befitting, hailing them
As famous chiefs. The eloquent Kharrád
First laved his tongue in valour and then said
To Galínúsh: "Kubád the glorious
Hath donned in peace the Kaian crown. Irán,
Turán and Rúm have tidings that Shirwí¹
Is seated on the throne of king of kings.
Why this cuirass and helm and massive mace?
Who is thine enemy?"

Said Galínúsh:—
"O veteran! may all thy doings prosper.
Thou art concerned about my tender frame
Because I am in iron garniture.
I bless thee for thy kindness; thou deservest
That I shall sprinkle jewels over thee.
Thy words are naught but good, and may the sun
Be thine associate in the world. Declare
Why thou hast come, then look for my reply."

He thus gave answer: "Glorious Kubád
Commissioned me to bear Khusrau Parwíz
A message and if now thou wilt ask audience²
I will deliver what the world-lord said—

¹ That being the name by which he had been generally known,
his real name (Kubád) having been kept secret. See Vol. viii.,
pp. 371, 416.
² Reading with P.
That monarch of the flock."

Said Galínúsh:

"Who can remember words so well as thou,
O worshipful? Yet nathless Sháh Kubád
Gave me full many a counsel touching this,
And charged me, saying: 'Let none have by day
Or night an audience of Khusrau Parwíz
Unless thou hearest what the messenger
Hath got to say in Persian new or old.'"

Ashtád said: "I hold not my message secret,
O fortunate! It is: 'The sword is fruiting,
And nuzzling princes' heads.' In this regard
Now ask for audience of Khusrau Parwíz
That we may tell the message of the Sháh."

This hearing Galínúsh arose, made fast
His mail, went to the Sháh with folded arms,
As servants should, and said thus: "Live for ever,
O Sháh! May evil never vex thy heart.
There cometh by Ashtád and by Kharrád,
Son of Barzín, a message from the Sháh
From court."

Khusrau Parwíz laughed out and said:—
"Speak wiser words for if he be the king
Then what am I, and why am I within
This narrow prison, and why need'st thou ask
That I shall grant an audience unto any,
Be their words false or true?"

So Galínúsh

Returned to those two warriors, reported
The answer of the paladin, and said:—
"Now go with folded arms, declare your message,
And hearken his reply."

Those sages twain

Of honest speech inswathed their visages
In sashes brought from Chín and, when they saw
The Sháh, did reverence and waited long
What while he sat upon a lofty throne
Adorned with effigies of sheep and wolves,
Impaleched with gold and gems, with under him
A couch of yellow broidery. He leaned
On cushions hued like lapis-lazuli,
Held a fine quince and drowsed there all amort.
When he beheld those chiefs supreme in wisdom
He roused himself and secretly invoked
God's help. He laid that fine quince on the cushions
That he might welcome those two wayfarers.\(^1\)
The quince slipped from the cushions, rolled unbruised
Upon the couch and thence from throne to floor.
Ashtád ran, took it up, wiped off the dust,
And laid the quince upon his head. The world-lord
Turned from Ashtád that he might neither see
Nor scent the quince. They set it on the throne,
And stood themselves. The matter of the quince\(^2\)
Perturbed Khusrau Parwíz who boded ill,
Looked up to heaven, and said: "O truthful Judge!
Who can establish one whom Thou o'erthrowest,
Who join what Thou hast broken? When bright
fortune
Departeth from a race it bringeth sorrow
Because the day of joy is passed away."
Then to Ashtád: "Now for thine ambassage
From mine unnatural child of ill repute,
And from that handful of conspirators,
My hateful and black-hearted enemies.
Malignant fools are they and in their folly
Most wretched. Fortune will desert our race;
None will rejoice again; the crown and throne
Will pass to those unfit; this royal Tree
Will be destroyed; the Base will be exalted;
The spirits of the Great grow sorrowful.

\(^1\) 'ces deux esclaves.' Mohl.
\(^2\) Reading with P.
The majesty will bide not with our sons,
Or with our kindred or posterity;
Their friends all be their chiefest enemies,
Revilers and destroyers of the race.
This quince hath made the secret evident;
The throne of king of kings will bear no fruit.
Now tell to me the words that thou hast heard:
I count his less than water in the stream."

Then those two men released their tongues to speak,
And told all that Kubád, his son, had said,
Not keeping e’en a whisper back from him.
The king of kings, when he had heard the message,
Writhed with distress and heaved a deep, cold sigh.
Then said he to those chiefs: "Hear my response,
And bear it to the young prince, every word.
Say: ‘Quit thine own misdeeds ere blaming others’.
What thou hast uttered are they words of thine?
A murrain on the prompter!" Speak not so
As to rejoice thy foe with thy fool’s talk,
And let him learn that thou hast not the wisdom
To furnish speech with knowledge from thy brains.
If thy trust is in words that profit not
Thou mak’st default in soul and wisdom too.
He that shall call thee wicked, then acknowledge
Thee to be world-lord, should not sit before thee,
And order matters whether great or small.
Think not in future of such messages
Or thou wilt cause thy foemen to rejoice.
My state hath been appointed me by God;
My hopes are set upon the other world,
And thou by these thy charges which are lies
Wilt gain no glory in the nobles’ eyes."

1 Reading with P. and T,
§ 2

How Khusrau Parwiz answered Shirwi

"Now will I make full answer that thou mayst
Repeat my words in public. They will serve
As my memorial when I am gone—
A truthful statement of my case—and thou
Wilt know, when I reveal my grief and travail,
That all my treasures were derived from toil.
Thou speakest in the first place of Hurmuzd,
His anger with me, and those bygone days:
My father's wrath against us was aroused
By slanderer's words and thus confusion came.
When I had learned what occupied his thoughts
I left Írán by night, avoiding roads.
He sought my death by poison; I perceived
No antidote but flight and so I fled,
And was not taken in the net of bale.
I heard that ill had come upon the Sháh,
And quitted Barda' when the news arrived.
That knave Bahram Chúbína with his troops
Opposed us on the battlefield. I fled
From him too on the day of fight that I
Might fall not in his clutches. Afterwards
I came a second time and bravely fought,
My troublous fortune passed away and all
The realm that I had lost returned to me.
My contest with him was no brief affair;
The whole world were spectators of the strife.
By the command of God who multiplieth
His benefits on us, and is the Guide
In good and ill, Írán and Turkistán

¹ Túrán in the text.
Submitted and Bahram Chúbína’s plans
Were foiled. Released from war with him I hasted,
First, to take vengeance for my father’s death.
Bandví and Gustaham, my mother’s brothers,
Men that had not a peer in any land,
Had risked their lives for me and were all mine
In love as well as kinship, but there were
My father’s death and mine own grief thereat;
I was not sluggish to avenge his blood.
I lopped Bandví both hand and foot for he
Had made the Sháh’s place dark, while Gustaham,
Who disappeared and sought some distant nook,
Was slain all unawares by my command:
Those murderers’ lives and aims all came to naught.
Next, as to what thou said’st of thine own case,
Of thine own strait confinement and affairs;
It was to keep my sons from evil deeds
That would recoil upon themselves. Ye were
Not straitly bound in prison, not misprized,
And had no harm to fear. I did not then
Treat you with scorn but held my treasury
At your disposal, acting as the Sháhs
Had done before, not idly or without
A precedent. Chase, minstrelsy, and polo—
All that befitteth chiefs—were yours at will,
With hawks and cheetahs, jewels and dínárs.
Your so called prison was a palace where
Ye lived in joy. I dreaded thee moreover
Through what the readers of the stars had said.
That was the cause of thine imprisonment
That thou mightst do us naught of injury—
The very injury that thou art doing.
I never parted with thy horoscope
Till I had sealed and given it to Shírín.
When I had reigned for six and thirty years,
And thou past doubt amidst such pleasant days
Gav'st all the matter to the wind, although
Much time had passed o'er us, there came to thee
A letter out of Hindústán but not
Without my cognizance. The chief of Rájas
Sent us a letter, jewels, divers stuffs,
An Indian scimitar, white elephant,
And all that I could hope for in the world,
And with the scimitar was gold brocade
With all varieties of gems uncut.
To thee the letter was on painted silk;
So when I saw the Indian script I called
An Indian scribe, a fluent, heedful speaker,
Who when he read the Indian Rája's words
Wept for the letter ran: 'Live joyfully
For thou art worthy both of joy and realm,
And on the day of Dai in month Ázar
Thou wilt be king and ruler of the world.
Thy sire will reign for eight and thirty years,
For so the stars ordain. Good times will shine
Upon thee; thou wilt don the crown of greatness.'
These words have been fulfilled to me to-day,
But we should wash not from our hearts affection.
I was aware that fortune had decreed
That when thy throne had gained its brilliancy
Mine only portion would be toil and pain,
And that my bright day would be turned to gloom;
But as I gave, had Faith, made friends, and loved
I did not lour by reason of that letter.
I gave it, having read it, to Shirín,
And pondered much upon it. In her keeping
Are both the letter and the horoscope,
And no one great or small is ware thereof.
If thou wouldst see it make request of her;
Thou haply mayst regard it more or less.
I wot that seeing it thou wilt repent,
And seek to heal the past. For what thou said'st
Of bonds and of imprisonments, and how
We have done others hurt, 'tis this world's way,
And that of former chiefs and kings of kings,
And if thou know'st it not speak with an archmage;
He will enlighten thee thereon and tell thee:—
'Tis ill to keep God's enemy alive.'
Those that were in our prison were mere divs
Complained of by the righteous. Neither bloodshed
Nor utter harshness ever was our trade.
I shut up criminals and did not hold
Of small account wrongs done by them to others;
But now I hear that thou hast freed these men—
Men worse than dragons—and for this thou art
A sinner guilty both in word and deed
In God's sight. Now that thou art lord be prudent,
And if thou know'st not how consult the wise.
Forgive not those that vex thee though thou hopest
For wealth through them, and what can better bonds
For one in whom thou seest naught but harm?
In talking of my wealth thou hast not shown
Good sense and wisdom. We have never asked
For more than toll and tax. When these were paid
If any were still rich, though men might say
That they were foes and miscreants of the seed
Of Ahriman, we thought of God and passed
Such matters lightly by. From Him I had
The crown and throne, and they have cost me dear.
The Maker of the world, the righteous Judge,
Hath willed this change of fortune. In the world
His will is paramount, so when He would
Our minishment we seek not for addition.
We sought to please our Judge, but by our toils
Have not evaded His apportionment,
And when He asketh me I will tell all.
That Questioner is wiser than thou art,
And one more potent in all good and ill.
KUBÂD (COMMONLY CALLED SHÎRWÎ) 19

The miscreants that stand before thee now
Are not thy friends or kin, and what they say
Of me that also will they say of thee
Before thy foes. They are but slaves of gold
And silver: thou wilt find in them no helper.
They have possessed thy heart and there instilled
Each fault of mine. Such words as these are not
In thy philosophy and will not profit
Those miscreants' minds, but I have uttered them
For my foes' sake that they who read this letter,
Writ in the ancient tongue, may know that lies
Lack lustre even from the mouths of Sháhs.
'Twill be too a memorial in the world,
A' consolation to the man of wisdom,
And after our decease who' er shall read
These words of ours will learn our policy.
I gathered armies from Bartás and Chín,
And everywhere appointed generals,
Then made attacks upon mine enemies
Till none dared raise his head. When they were scattered
Our treasuries were all filled. The whole land toiled
For us, and from the sea so many gems
Were brought us that the shipmen grew aweary.
Plain, sea, and mountain, all were mine. Now when
The treasury of drachms had been expended
The coffers were refilled with new dínárs,
With precious stones and royal jewelry,
As well as clothes and implements of war,
And when our crown was twenty-six years old
Our treasuries were rich with many gems.
I struck a new die for my drachms and turned
To joy and merriment. That year when I
Had ta'en account I found the total sum
Ten million of dínárs. Paidáwasis,¹

¹ See Vol. vii., p. 95 note.
In Persian reckoning, I spent and squandered.
Each purse contained twelve thousand in dínárs,
And those thus spent were royal, while besides
The tribute and dínárs from Hindústán,
The realm of Rúm and land of sorcerers;
Besides from every province gifts and tribute
From all the sovereigns and potentates;
Besides New Year and Autumn offerings,
The gifts of horses and of fair-faced slaves;
Besides cuirasses, helmets, axes, swords,
Which every one sent to us liberally;
Besides musk, camphor, sables, beaver-skins,
Red weasels' and white wolves', our subjects all
Set suchlike loads upon their beasts and sought
Our court in haste; none was recalcitrant.
Abundant toil of all sorts have we spent
To amass a treasure—one additional
To those known as Khúzrá and as 'Arús,¹
Reserved by me against an evil day.
We long discussed what name the hoard should have,
And in the end we called it Bád Áwar.²
Thus in my six and twentieth year of reign
Heaven till the eight and thirtieth favoured me;
My chieftains were all safe, my foes all quaked,
And now I hear that thou art sovereign—
An evil juncture this for all the world,
Which reft of pleasure must perforce be mute.
Thou wilt make earth calamitous, fulfilled
With suffering and profitless. Moreover,
Those same injurious persons that surround thee,
And are the Light³ of thy dark nights, will give
Thy throne up to the wind that thou mayst not
Enjoy the world. Were there with thee a sage,
So that thy darkened mind might be illumed,
Thou wouldst not do amiss in giving gifts

² Id.
³ Urmuzd in text.
KUBÁD (COMMONLY CALLED SHĪRWĪ)  21

So that thy wealth might reach the poor. My son,
Whose days are few, whose wisdom is but scant
Solicitude will rob thy soul of joy.
This know, that these our treasures are thy stay;
The opportunity is in thy grasp.
They are the appanage of royalty;
A world that is all moneyless is lost.
A pauper Sháh will be unjust, and he
Whose hand is empty hath no strength or worth.
Without the means of largess he by all
Will be declared a fraud and not a Sháh.
Moreover, if thy riches reach thy foes,
And all the idols come to Brahmans’ hands,
The worshippers will turn from God, thy name
And fame be spurned. If thou art treasureless
Thou wilt not have an army, and thy subjects
Will hail thee not as Sháh. The dog is good
At begging bread, but if thou fillest him
He threateneth thy life. Again, thou said’st
About my strategy that I have stationed
The troops along the roads, and blamest me
Through ignorance, not knowing gain from loss:
The answer is that by my toil I gathered
My splendid treasures, captured foreign cities,
And shattered all my foes that we might sit
Without vexation, toil, or injury
In peace upon the pleasant throne. I scattered
My horse about the frontier, and (to show
The difference ’twixt the worthless and the worthy)
When thou recall’st the troops from every side
The foe will see the road clear, for Írán
Is like a garden in the jocund Spring,
Whose happy blossoms never fail to flower,
A garden of pomegranate and narcissus,
Of apples and of quince; but when the orchard
Becometh void of men the enemy
Will root up all the marjoram and snap
All branches of pomegranate and of quince.
Írán's walls are its troops and gear of war,
Its thorns all arrows on its battlement,
And if in wantonness thou flingest down
The garden-wall the garden is as waste,
As sea or upland. Cast not down its wall
Or thou wilt break the Íránians' hearts and backs,
For then will raid and ravage, horsemen's shouts,
And all the incidents of war ensue.
Expose not thou our children, wives, and land
To trouble: let but one such year elapse,
And sages will describe thee as a fool.
Now I have heard that thou dost give high place
To men unworthy. Know that Núshírwán,
Son of Kubád, recorded in his Letter
Of Counsel that whoe'er doth give his arms
To foes doth give himself to slaughtering,
Since, when he asketh back those arms for use,
The enemy will fight. As for the message
Of Cæsar, which hath made thee call me heartless,
And self-willed, thou recallest not the facts;
Thy words were prompted by some counsellor.
As for my tyranny and his good faith,
Canst thou discern good faith from tyranny?
Receive mine answer, thou of little wit!
But let me say withal, as is but right,
Thou art the plaintiff and the witness too—
A thing no man of wisdom would allow.
When Cæsar washed off from his face the dust
Of bale he chose me as his son-in-law
For valour's sake. Whoever walketh not
The earth for ill, and hath some share of wisdom
Within him, knoweth that Bahrám Chúbíná
Began the feud and that the Íránians

1 Reading with P. and T.    2 See Vol. viii., p. 27.
Took sides with him. The Rúmans did not triumph
O'er him; the drifting sand can not bind fast
The mountain! But in that fight God vouchsafed
To aid me, and the armies of the world
Were naught to me. The Irániáns have heard
Of those events, and thou shouldst hear from them.
As for myself, I did whate'er I could,
Upon the day of fight, for Niyátús
With kindness and with magnanimity,
But have not reckoned that day's recompense,
And Farrukhzád will tell thee just the same:
Look not upon the world with boyish eyes.
Gashasp, who was our treasurer, can tell,
And that good archimage, our minister,
That I bestowed upon the Rúman troops
A hundred thousand purses from our treasures.
I gave to Niyátús a thousand nuggets,
With earrings and red gold. Each nugget's weight
Was as a thousand treasury-miskáls
I reckoned. I bestowed on him withal
Fine watered pearls that experts had found flawless,
And every one worth thirty thousand drachms
To jewellers, and five score noble steeds,
Selected from my stables—fifty saddled,
The others very choice, housed in brocade,
Mates for the wind upon the waste. I sent
All these to Cæsar with my thanks withal.
For what thou said'st about the Cross of Christ,
That bit of old wood flung among my treasures—
A matter of no loss or gain to me—
Thou hast been listening to some Christian's talk.
I mused that one like Cæsar, great and mighty,
Surrounded as he is by learnéd men—
Philosophers and potentates and priests—
Should call one that was executed God!
While as for this dry, rotten wood, if this
Mere useless Cross were God 'twould be Urmuzd, 
Whose name we give to every month's first day, 
And would have vanished from our treasury 
As Christ himself departed from the world.
Again for what thou said'st: 'Make thine excuse, 
Amend thy conduct and ensue God's path,' 
I answer: 'May the two hands of Kubád, 
His feet and lips and tongue rot! It was God 
Who placed the crown upon my head: I took, 
And revelled in the gift. I have returned it 
Since He demanded it. What next I wonder? 
To Him will I confess, not to a boy 
Scarce able to distinguish good and ill.'
All that God doth is welcome unto me 
Though I have seen much woe and bitterness. 
For eight and thirty years have I been Sháh, 
And none among the kings hath been my peer. 
He that bestowed this world on me may give 
Another but will have no thanks of mine!
I will pronounce a blessing on the realm:—
'May earth be ever teeming with the wise.'
So long as God shall help and succour us 
None will dare curse.'

Then said he to Kharrád:—
"O Memory of the great ones of the world!
Say to that foolish and impetuous boy:—
'The lustre of our countenance is dimmed:
Farewell to thee for ever. As for me, 
May all our converse be henceforth with sages.'
As for yourselves, illustrious messengers, 
Ye Persians eloquent and eminent!
To both of you I also bid farewell.
Say nothing but the words that ye have heard. 
I give my blessing to the world at large, 
Which we have looked on as a passing thing.
All mother-born must die—whome'er thou hast
In mind—Khusrau Parwiz back to Kubad. 
So too Hushang, Jamshid, and Tahmuras—
To all the world the founts of fear and hope—
Whom div and beast acknowledged, passed and died
When their day ended. Faridun, the blest,
Who banned ill, close or open, from the world,
And stayed Zahhak the Arab’s hand from evil,
Scaped not by bravery the clutch of fate.
So was it with Arish whose arrow’s flight
Was one farsang;¹ victorious Karan,
The capturer of cities; Kai Kubad,
Who having come from Mount Alburz became
Through manhood world-lord over all the folk,
And built himself a world-famed house of crystal,²
Adorned with lustrous pearls and gates of gems.³
So was it with Kaus, that man of might,
Who took the world by skill and policy,
He that ventured toward the sky above,
Unwitting of the processes of time;
So too with Siyawush, that lion famed,
Who slew two tigers in his youthful days,⁴
And built Gang-dizh⁵ with toil but gat therefrom
No treasure. Where are now Afrasiyab,
The Turkman king, whose semblance e’en in dream
None seeth; where Rustam, Zal, Asfandiyar,
Whose fame is their memorial with us;
Gudarz and his choice sons, three score and ten,
Those cavaliers upon the riding-ground,
And lions of the fray; where Kai Khusrau,
The noble lion-man who in the fight
Made lions prisoners; and Shah Gushtasp,
The convert to ‘The Good Faith,’ he by whom

¹ Much further according to the legend. See Vol. v., p. 12.
² This is attributed to Kai Kaus elsewhere. See Vol. ii., pp. 81, 101.
³ This line occurs three couplets too low in C.
⁴ This is not mentioned elsewhere in the poem.
⁵ See Vol. ii., pp. 189, 279.
Grace was renewed; where went renowned Sikandar,  
Who overturned the world, and where Jámissp,  
Who shone in astrologiæ lore more brightly  
Than Sol or Venus? Where is that famed Sháh,  
Bahrám Gúr, matchless in his strength and courage?  
No Sháh was like him in munificence;  
The turning heaven dared not to touch his head.  
Where is that Sháh, my grand sire, bright of soul  
Who ruled the world as Kísrá Núshírwán?  
Where are the seven and forty world-lords?  
Gone  
Is all their work, gone are the Great and Wise,  
The warrior-horsemen and the men of lore,  
These passing those in prowess and those these  
In years? They all have left this spacious world,  
Left palace, hall, and riding-ground. Midst Sháhs,  
Though some were older far, I had no peer.  
I walked the world for good and ill, and held  
The evil day aloof. 'Twas mine to traverse  
Full many a ruggéd path and sweep away  
Full many a foe. My treasures fill all lands;  
Where earth and water are my toil is seen.  
When with me too the world shall cease, and all  
The nobles' hopes grow dim, with my son also  
The throne will not abide, for he will quit it,  
And all his fortune end. What time the angel  
That taketh souls approacheth I shall say:—  
'Take my soul gently.' I will clear my heart  
By penitence, and freedom from offence  
Shall be my breastplate. Well have men of wisdom,  
Good, veteran, learned, declared: 'If wakeful fortune  
Decline one must expect fears manifold,  
And he whose day of greatness hath gone by  

¹Khusrau Parviz was only the forty-third Sháh. Perhaps some, who never became Sháhs, such as Siyáwush and Asfandiýár, are included, or it may be that the author of this defence (see p. 4) wrote from his own point of view, not that of the supposed speaker.
KUBĀD (COMMONLY CALLED SHĪRWĪ) 27

Is foolish if he asketh its return.'
This is my message to the world, to mean
And mighty too: ere long the Shāh and all
His famous troops will fall to slaughtering
Each other and fling fire on field and fell;
Then sires will fall by sons and sons by sires;
Our enemies, the people that discoursed
Of evil deeds and chilling words, will pay
The smart when we are gone and not for long
Enjoy the world. Since rule and greatness end
With me what reck if Lion or another
Shall have the sway?"

Ashtád and brave Kharrád,
Son of Barzín, those sages, when they heard
The message of that leader, were heart-pierced,
And smote their heads. Both sorrowed for their words;
They buffeted their faces, rent their robes
In grief, and scattered dust upon their heads.
Those ancients fared forth from his presence, weeping,
In anguish, with their hearts all arrow-points.
With furrowed faces and in sore distress
They went before Shīrwī and every whit
To that man brainless and incompetent
Detailed the message that the Shāh had sent.

§ 3

How Shīrwī grieved for Khusrau Parwiz and how the Chiefs were displeased thereat

Shīrwī wept bitterly on hearing this;
His heart quaked for the crown and throne, and when
The company dispersed that had dismayed him
With foul words clamouring for his father's blood,  
And burning the youth's heart, he left the throne  
Of kingship, clasped with honoured hands his head,  
And wept blood on his breast. News of that weeping  
And of the lamentation of the king,  
Came to the host and all were in dismay.  
They met, discussed Khusrau Parwiz, and cried:—  
"If he shall sit upon the throne again  
He will disgrace the captains of the host."

Whenas the sun rose o'er the darksome hills  
The malecontents awoke and went to court.  
The Sháh, on hearing of it, took his seat  
Upon the throne, and those of high degree,  
Akin or alien, approached the presence.  
They took their seats with scowls but no one spoke.  
The king said: "Gibbeting is the desert  
Of him that mourneth not my father's woes.  
I call such misbegotten and a knave.  
Let none depend on such because that man  
Is rottener than a rotten willow-tree."

He gat this answer from the men in fault:—  
"Call whosoever saith: 'I serve two Sháhs'  
A fool at heart and vile whate'er his rank.'"

Shírwí rejoined: "For Sháhs no wealth no troops!  
For one month we will utter pleasant words,  
And give no hint of duress to my sire;  
He may make statements that will gladden us  
Because his treasures are in every coast."

On hearing this they rose to seek their homes.  
Then Sháh Shírwí gave orders to the cooks:—  
"Let nothing be denied Khusrau Parwíz:  
Serve up his food upon a golden service,  
And let the food itself be rich and grateful."

The servers brought it but he would not eat  
The viands that were proffered, hot or cold.  
Shírin's hand brought to him all that he ate
Because she sorrowed with him in his grief.
She was his sole good friend and soothed his woes
Both day and night, shared all his hopes and fears,
And quaked for him like willow in the wind.
A month passed and meanwhile Khusrau Parwız
Was full of pain and anguish night and day,
His faults and crimes recalled to memory,
And little relish of that life had he.

§ 4

_How Bárbad lamented Khusrau Parwız, cut off his own
Fingers, and burned his Instruments of Music_

Now list the lamentation of Bárbad,¹
And grow forgetful of the world at large.
On hearing that the Sháh, not by advice
And 'gainst his will, no longer filled the throne,
That "men are seeking how to murder him;
The soldiers are renouncing fealty;"
Bárbad came from Chahram to Taisafún
With tearful eyes and heart o’ercharged; he came
To that abode and saw the Sháh whereat
His tulip-cheeks became like fenugreek.
He bode awhile in presence of the Sháh,
Then went with wailing to the audience-hall.
His love flamed in his heart, his heart and soul
Burned in his anguish for Khusrau Parwız;
His eyes rained like a cloud in Spring and made
His bosom as the margent of the sea.
He fashioned him a dirge upon the harp,
And to that dirge he sang a mournful plaint.

¹ For the story of Bárbad see Vol. viii., p. 396 seq.
With visage wan and heart fulfilled with grief
He thus lamented in the olden tongue:

"O Sháh! O noble chieftain! O Khusrau!
O great! O strong! O hero ne'er cast down!
Where are thy mastery and greatness now,
Where all thy Grace, thy fortune, and thy crown?

"Where that imperial circlet, towering height?
Where are thine armlets and thine ivory throne?
Where all thy manliness, thy Grace, and might,
Who 'neath thy wings hadst this world for thine own?

"Oh! whither are thy dames and minstrels gone,
Gate, audience-hall, and leaders of thy day,
The diadem and Káwa's gonfalon,
And all the blue-steel falchions, where are they?

"Where are the head, the crown that loved it well—
Mate of the earrings and the throne of gold?
Where are Shábdíz, his stirrups and his sell—
The steed that 'neath thee ever caracol'd?

"Where are thy helmet, head, and habergeon
All golden and compacted gem to gem,
Thy cavaliers in gold caparison,
Whose swords made enemies the sheaths for them?

"Where all the camels for thy progresses,
The golden litters and attendance rife,
Led steeds, white elephants, and dromedaries?
Have one and all grown hopeless of thy life?
“Where are thy fluent tongue and courteous,
Thy heart, thy purpose, and thine ardent soul?
Why reft of all art thou abandoned thus?
Hast read of such a day in any roll?

“Oh! trust not to this world whose remedy
Is weaker than its bane. ’Twas thy desire
To have a son to aid and succour thee:
Now through the son the gyves are on the sire!

“It is by sons that kings obtain their might,
And are unblemished by time’s travailings;
Yet ever as his sons increased in height
Both Grace and vigour failed the king of kings.

“None that shall lend an ear while men recall
The story of Khusrau Parwiz must dare
To trust the world. Account as ruined all
Irán and as the pards’ and lions’ lair.

“Of the Sásánian race the Sháh was head—
One peerless in the sight of crown and state:
The foeman’s wishes are accomplished,
And, like Irán, the race is desolate.

“No man possessed a larger host than he,
Yet who had cause for justice to beseech?
The great protector brought the misery,
And now the wolves are making for the breach!

“’O Sháh devoid of shame!’ thus tell Shírwí,
‘Such conduct is not worthy of this court.
Count not upon thy troops’ fidelity
When war is rife on all sides.’ God support
"Thy soul, my master! and it is my prayer
That He thy foemen's heads may headlong fling.
By God and by thy life, my king! I swear
By New Year's Day, by sun, and jocund Spring,

"If e'er this hand of mine again shall turn
To harping may no blessing light on me;
Mine instruments of music will I burn
That I may ne'er behold thine enemy."

He cut four fingers off and grasped the stumps
Within his other palm. Returning home
He kindled fire and burned his instruments,
While those about Kubád both day and night
At all that might befall them quaked with fright.

§ 5

How the Chiefs demanded from Shírwí the Death of
Khusrau Parwíz and how he was slain by Mihr Hurmuze

Shírwí, a timid, inexperienced youth,
Found that the throne beneath him was a snare,
While readers of mankind saw that 'twas time
For men of might. Those that had done the ill,
And had produced that coil, went from the hall
Of audience to the presence of Kubád
To mind him of their infamous designs:
"We said before and now we say again
Thy thoughts are not on government alone.
There are two Sháhs now seated in one room,
One on the throne and one on its degree,
And when relations grow 'twixt sire and son
They will behead the servants one and all.
It may not be, so speak of it no more."

Shirwî was frightened and he played poltroon
Because in their hands he was as a slave.
He answered: "None will bring him to the toils
Except a man whose name is infamous.
Ye must go homeward and advise thereon.
Inquire: 'What man is there that will abate
Our troubles secretly?'"

The Sháh's ill-wishers
Sought for a murderer to murder him
By stealth, but none possessed the pluck or courage
To shed the blood of such a king and hang
A mountain round his own neck. Everywhere
The Sháh's foes sought until they met with one
Blue-eyed, pale-cheeked, his body parched and hairy,
With lips of lapis-lazuli, with feet
All dust, and belly ravenous; the head
Of that ill-doer was bare. None knew his name
Midst high and low. This villain (may he never
See jocund Paradise!) sought Farrukhzád,
And undertook the deed. "This strife is mine,"
He said. "If ye will make it worth my while
This is my quarry."

"Go and do it then
"If thou art able," Farrukhzád replied.
"Moreover open not thy lips herein.
I have a purse full of dinárs for thee,
And I will look upon thee as my son."

He gave the man a dagger keen and bright,
And then the murderer set forth in haste.
The miscreant, when he approached the Sháh,
Saw him upon the throne, a slave attending.
Khusrau Parwíz quaked when he saw that man,
And shed tears from his eyelids on his cheeks
Because his heart bare witness that the day
Of heaviness was near. He cried: "O wretch!
What is thy name? Thy mother needs must wail thee."

The man replied: "They call me Mihr Hurmuzd,
A stranger here with neither friend nor mate."
Thus said Khusrau Parwiz: "My time hath come,
And by the hand of an unworthy foe,
Whose face is not a man's, whose love none seeketh."
He bade a boy attending him: "Go fetch,
My little guide! an ewer, water, musk,
And ambergris, with cleaner, fairer robes."
The boy-slave heard, unwitting what was meant,
And so the little servant went away,
And brought a golden ewer to the Sháh
As well as garments and a bowl of water,
Whereon Khusrau Parwiz made haste to go,
Gazed on the sacred twigs and muttered prayers:
It was no time for words or private talk.
The Sháh put on the garments brought, he made
Beneath his breath confession of his faults,
And wrapped a new simarre about his head
In order not to see his murderer's face.
Then Mihr Hurmuzd, the dagger in his hand,
Made fast the door and coming quickly raised
The great king's robe and pierced his liverstead.

Such is the process of this whirling world,
From thee its secret keeping closely furled!
The blameless speaker and the boastful see
That all its doings are but vanity,
For be thou wealthy or in evil case
This Wayside Inn is no abiding-place;
Yet be offenceless and ensue right ways
If thou desirest to receive just praise.

When tidings reached the highways and bazárs;—
“Khusrau Parwîz was slaughtered thus,” his foes
Went to the palace-prison of the sad,
Where fifteen of his noble sons were bound,
And slew them there, though innocent, what time
The fortune of the Shâh was overthrown.
Shîrwî, the world-lord, dared say naught and hid
His grief though he wept sorely at the news,
And afterwards sent twenty of his guards
To keep his brothers’ wives and children safe
Now that the Shah had been thus done to death.
So passed that reign and mighty host away,
Its majesty, its manhood, and its sway
Such as no kings of kings possessed before,
Or heard of from the men renowned of yore.
It booteth nothing what the wise man saith
When once his head is in the dragon’s breath.
Call this world “crocodile” for it doth gnaw
The prey that it hath taken with its claw.
The work of Shâh Khusrau Parwîz is done;
His famous hoards and throne and host are gone.
To put one’s trust in this world is to be
In quest of dates upon a willow-tree.
Why err in such a fashion from the way
Alike by darksome night and shining day?
Whate’er thy gains let them suffice thee still
As thou art fain to save thy soul from ill,
And in thy day of strength hold thyself weak;
For kindly impulses and justice seek,
And be intent on good. For what is thine
To give or spend do as thou dost incline;
All else is pain and toil. How goodlier
Than we are friends whose faithfulness is clear!
Such faithfulness of friends is greatly dear.
§ 6

How Shirwî asked Shirîn in Marriage, how Shirîn killed herself, and how Shirwî was slain

Since I have ended with Khusrau Parwîz
I speak next of Shirwî and of Shirîn.

As soon as three and fifty days had passed
Since that whereon that glorious Shâh was slain
Shîrîn dispatched Shirîn a messenger
To say: "Thou wicked, potent sorceress,
Learned but in necromancy and black arts!
In all Írán thou art the guiltiest.
By necromancy didst thou gain the Shâh,
And by thy craft thou bringest down the moon.
Quake, guilty one! and come to me. Abide not
Thus in thy palace, joyful and secure."

Shîrîn raged at his message and abuse
So foul and senseless. Thus she said: "God grant
That parricides possess not Grace or presence.
I will not see the wretch e'en from afar
At funeral or feast."

That mournful dame

Sent for a scribe and had a document
Drawn in the olden tongue, instructing him
Regarding her last wishes and estate.
She kept a little poison in a pyx;
She could not well procure it in the city.
She kept it on her, sewed a winding-sheet
To wrap her form—that cypress of the garden—
And then returned this answer to Shirwî:—
"Exalted Shâh, the wearer of the crown!
Now perish all thy words and perish too
The villain's heart and spirit that hath heard
Of witchcraft save by name and joyed therein.
Had Sháh Khusrau Parwíz been one to cheer
His soul with sorcery there would have been
A sorceress within his bower, and she
Had seen his face.¹ He kept me for his pleasure,
And when the dawn was peeping he was wont
To call me from the golden bower and joy
At sight of me. Shame on thee for such words!
Such knavish talk becometh not a king.
Remember God, the Giver of all good,
And utter not such words in others’ hearing.”

They brought the answer to the Sháh. Shírwí
Raged ’gainst the guiltless dame² and said: “Thou needs
Must come. None is blood-thirstier than thou.
Come and behold my crown’s top. If it be
Magnificical then do it reverence.”

Shírwí, on hearing this, was full of pain;
She writhed; her cheeks grew wan. She thus replied: —

“I will not come to thee save in the presence
Of those wise men that are about thy court,
Men of experience and clerkly skill.”

Shírwí dispatched and summoned fifty men
Both wise and old, then sent one to Shírin,
To say: “Arise and come. Enough of talk.”

Thereat she robed herself in blue and black,
And drew anear the Sháh, approached apace
The Rosary of Revellers³—the spot
Wherein those fluent Persians were—and sat
Behind the great king’s curtain as became

¹ Reading with P.
² So far as the charge of witchcraft was concerned. Shírin (Vol. viii., p. 389) had murdered Maryam, Kubád’s mother.
³ “elle alla droit à la salle de fête de Schadegán.” Mohl or, more strictly, Barbier de Meynard, who completed the translation from §4 to the end of the poem.
The virtuous. He sent to her to say:—
"Two months of mourning for Khusrau Parwíz
Are o'er. Now be my wife that thou mayst take
Thy pleasure and avoid a mean estate.
I will maintain thee as my father did,
And e'en with more respect and tenderness."

Shírín replied: "Let me be righted first,
And then my life shall be at thy dispose.
I will not hesitate in answering
The hest and purpose of thy glorious heart."

Shírwí agreed to that fair dame's request,
Whereat the noble lady raised her voice
Behind the royal curtains, saying: "O Sháh!
Be happy and victorious. Thou said'st
That I was a bad woman and a witch,
Remote from purity and rectitude."

Shírwí replied: "'Twas so, but generous folk
Do not take dudgeon at mere hastiness."

Shírín addressed the other Persians present
Within the Rosary of Revellers,
And asked: "What have ye seen in me of ill,
Guile, folly, and dark ways? For many a year
I was the mistress of Irán and helped
The Brave in everything. I ne'er ensued
Aught but the right; fraud and deceit I banned.
Through my word many were made governors,
And took their portions of the world full oft.
Who hath beheld my shadow in Irán
Away from home? If any one hath marked
My shadow, crown, and state let such declare
What he hath seen or heard and by his answer
Reveal the truth."

The magnates in attendance
All spake her fair. "In all the world," they said,
"She hath no peer in public and in private."

1 Reading with P.
Shirín proceeded thus: “Ye lords and chiefs
Both veteran and redoubted! three things make
The worth of women that bedeck the throne
Of greatness: one is modesty and wealth
Wherewith her husband may adorn his house;
The next is bearing blessed sons, that she
May e’en exceed her spouse in happiness;
The third is having beauty and fine form,
Joined with the love of a sequestered life.
When I was mated to Khusrau Parwiz,
And entered on seclusion, he had come
Weak and dispirited from Rúm to live
Within our land, but after reached such power
As none had heard of or had looked upon.
Moreover I have had four sons by him
To his great joy—Nastúr, Shahryár, Farúd,
And Mardánsháh, blue heaven’s coronal.
Jamshíd and Farídún had not such sons;
May my tongue perish if I lie herein!
Their bodies all are now beneath the dust,
Their spirits roaming in pure Paradise.”

Unveiling then her lovely countenance,
And musky hair, “There is my face,” she added,
“Such as it is. If there be falsehood show it.
My hair was all my hidden excellence,
For none on earth e’er used to look thereon.
What I display is all my sorcery,
Not necromancy, fraud, and evil bent.”

None had beheld her hair before, no chief
Had heard thereof. The elders were astound,
And their mouths watered. When Shírwí beheld
The visage of Shirín his spirit flew
Unmarked away from him. Her face so dazed him
That love of her filled all his heart. He cried:—
“I want none but thyself. If I have thee
For wife Írán can give me nothing more.”
I will not go from thy commands, but limn
My loyalty to thee upon mine eyes.”

The lady of the lovely face replied:—
“ I still need somewhat of the Íránian king.
I have two wants if thou wilt bid me speak,
And may thy king of kingship last for ever.”

Shírwí replied: “ My soul is thine, thy wish,
Whate’er it be, is granted.”

Said Shírín:—
“All treasures laid up by me in this land
Thou shalt assign me as mine own before
This noble company and write thyself
Upon this roll that thou renouncest all,
Both small and great.”

Shírwí made haste to do
Her bidding. Having gained her wish she quitted
The Rosary of Revellers, the chiefs
And noble Persians, went home, freed her slaves,
And made them happy with that wealth of hers
Whereof she gave a part to mendicants,
And to her family a larger share.
She gave too somewhat to the Fanes of Fire,
The feasts of New Year’s Day and Mihr and Sada,
To ruined homes and caravansarais
Then turned to lions’ lairs. All this she gave
As offerings from Khusrau Parwíz, the world-lord,
And joyed his soul thereby. She sought the garden
And taking off her veil sat unadorned
Upon the ground and summoning her folk
Assigned with courtesy a place to each,
Then cried thus loudly: “Hear, ye unagrieved!
For none will ever see my face again.
Fear ye the Judge of those that seek for justice,
The Lighter of the sun and moon and stars,
And speak but truth; deceit is not for sages.
Since first I came before Khusrau Parwíz,
First made mine entry to his golden bower,
And was chief wife and Glory of the Sháh,
Hath any fault at all appeared in me?
There is no need to speak to save my face:
What booteth that to woman in her need?"

All rose to make reply: "Famed dame of dames,
So eloquent and wise and bright of soul!
By God! none ever saw thee, ever heard
Thy voice behind the curtains. Verily
Thy like hath sat not on the goodly throne
Since Sháh Húshang."

Then all the servitors,
Slaves emulous and vigilant of heart,
Exclaimed: "Exalted lady praised in Chín,
In Rúm and in Taráz! who would presume
To speak aught ill of thee? Could evil-doing
Befit that face of thine?"

Thus said Shírín:—
"This reprobate, whom heaven above will curse,
Slew his own sire to compass crown and throne,
And may he never more see fortune’s face!
Hath he himself shut death out by a wall
Who lightly recked thus of a father’s blood?
He sent a message to me that bedimmed
Mine own shrewd soul. I answered: ‘While I live
My heart shall serve my Maker.’ I declared
My purpose fully, fearful of my foe:
He may defame me publicly when dead.
Ye are free agents and my slaves no longer."

They wept much at her words and furthermore
Consumed with anguish for Khusrau Parwíz.
Informants went before the Sháh and told
What they had heard about that guiltless dame.
He asked: "Hath that good lady further wishes?"

She sent to say: "I have one wish, no more:
I fain would ope the late Sháh’s charnel-house;
I have a great desire to look on him."
Shírwí replied: "So do, 'tis natural."
The keeper oped the door. That pious lady
Began her wailing, went and laid her face
Upon the visage of Khusrau Parwíz,
Spake of the past and took the mortal bane:¹
She sent the dust up from her own sweet life.
She sat beside the Sháh with visage veiled,
Clad in a single camphor-scented robe;
She set her back against the wall and died;
She died and won the plaudits of the world.
Shírwí fell sick when he had heard the news,
For such a spectacle affrighted him.
He bade construct another sepulchre,
And make her diadem of musk and camphor.
He shut the old Sháh's charnel. Soon they gave
Shírwí the bane; the world had had its fill
Of Sháhs! Thus luckless both in birth and death
He left the throne of kingship to his son.
One reigneth seven months and in the eighth
Doth don the camphor crown! Of earth's good things
To have possession of the throne is best,
Of evils life cut short is evilest.

¹ Cf. p. 36.
XLV

ARDSHİR, SON OF SHİRWĪ

HE REIGNED SIX MONTHS

ARGUMENT

Ardshir's accession is well received by the people. He makes Pîrûz, son of Khusrau, the captain of the host. Guráz, on the pretext of avenging Khusrau Parwîz, but really with the intention of seizing the kingship for himself, schemes to bring about the death of the Šáh who is murdered at a banquet by Pîrûz.

NOTE

Ardshîr (Artaxerxes III., September, A.D. 628—April, A.D. 630) was, according to Tabarî, only seven years old at his accession. By some accounts he was only one year old at the time. He was of course a mere puppet in the hands of the nobles. The "True Cross," if the date of its elevation at Jerusalem—Sept. 14th, A.D. 629—be correct, must have been restored during his reign.

§ 1. The Arabic Tabarî says that the realm was administered by Mih-Ázar-Gushnasp (Mihr 'Hasis in the Persian version), the High Steward, who had charge of the Šáh's person. This may account for his being made out to be a regicide in the Sháhnáma. He really seems to have been a well-intentioned man who did his best in very difficult circumstances. At all events, according to the Persian Tabarî, Shahrbaráz, after taking possession of Ctesiphon, slew him and other nobles on the pretext of avenging the death of Khusrau Parwîz.

¹ NT, p. 386. ZT, ii., 347. ² NT, p. 392 note.
§ 2. It appears that Shahrbaráz (Guráz) was not consulted when Ardshír was raised to the throne, and he made this an excuse for taking violent measures. The occasion was a favourable one for an ambitious general in command of an army. Moreover, he had an understanding, confirmed by matrimonial alliances, with Heraclius, who no doubt promised to recognise him if he became Sháh. He accordingly marched upon Ctesiphon with 6,000 or, according to another account, 60,000 troops. The High Steward made an attempt at resistance, but Shahrbaráz with the connivance of the captain of the guard and other chiefs was successful and the usual scenes of outrage and massacre ensued.¹

§ 1

How Ardshír, Son of Shírú, ascended the Throne and harangued the Chiefs

Now as the next confronting me I voice
The reign of Sháh Ardshír, I have no choice.
When Sháh Ardshír sat on the throne both young
And old flocked to him from Irán, for many
Were chiefs grown old, to hear what he would say.²
The young Ardshír then loosed his tongue and thus
He spake: "Ye well-tried warriors! may one,
Whoe'er he be, that sitteth on the seat
Of sovereignty possess an open mind,
And worship God. We will ensue the course
Of former Sháhs, ensue too Grace and Faith.
May we remember God who giveth good,
May all our acts be just! I will advance
The pious and make tyrants bleed. I trust
The army to Pírúz, son of Khusrau,
Who loveth equity and loyal lieges.

¹ For the above see Id., p. 386 and notes. ZT, ii., 347. RSM, p. 541
² Couplet omitted.
They for their part with such a paladin
Still will be happy and serene of soul."
    Full many were contented with his speech;
A peaceful ruler was the wish of each.

§ 2

How Guráz was displeased at Ardshir being Sháh and
how he caused Ardshir to be slain by Pirúz, Son of
Khusrau

Then tidings reached Guráz, who had involved
Khusrau Parwíz in sorrow and distress,
And he dispatched from Rúm a man to say:—
"The crown of vile Shírwi is in the dust.
Hell take his soul and be his charnel-house
O'erturned! Who ever knew a lofty cypress
Wrecked in the garden by the grass, and one
Like to Khusrau Parwíz, whose peer as king
Time's eye and heart perceive not, who bestowed
My greatness on me, and I have not turned
From his behest? Now fate dethroneth him,
And fortune's face is utterly averse;
The circling heaven is his foe and maketh
His portion to be hidden in the earth;
The sun and moon amerce him of his sway,
And take the crown and throne from such a king,
Bestow the sovereignty upon Shirwi,
And give up all Irán to wretchedness!
When he passed and Ardshir assumed the crown
Both young and old rejoiced in him, but I,
If I have any portion in Irán,
Will suffer not our country's air to breathe
Upon him. Have I not received the news
Of Sháh Khusrau Parwíz wrecked by the words
Of one of evil märk? I will not have
A king like this one though the age be Sháhless,
For there is much contention in his head,
And he adviseth with another host.
Now will I come in force with chosen chiefs
Of Rúm and of Írán, and we shall see
What sort of Head that is to whom such schemes
Appeal. I will uproot him so that never
Shall he name kingship more."

He sent a runner
To seek the ancients of the Íránian host,
And strove in other fashion to advance
His ill designs by writing to Pírúz,
Son of Khusrau, thus: "The Sásánians' fortune
Is louring and we need a world-aspirant
To gird himself for action. Haply thou
Art ware of what to do and how to take
The needful steps, wilt seek for many helpers,
Both young and old, wilt clear away Ardshír,
And afterwards attain thy whole desire,
Be safe and well contented; but if thou
Reveal this plot, and feed the sword of war
With blood, I will lead forth such hosts from Rúm
That I shall make the world dark in thine eyes.
Heed well my words, and mayst thou think no scorn
Of mine intent; thou must not fall through folly.
Oh! pass not from the throne of majesty
To underneath the dust. Repentance then
Will not avail thee when in wreak my sword
Is reaping heads."

Pírúz, son of Khusrau,
When he had read that letter and perceived
The whole intendment of that self-willed man,
Much pondered on the matter and consulted
The ancient magnates, saying: "This affair
Hath come upon me unawares and like
A revelation!"

This was their reply:
"Famed and redoubted chieftain! if our Sháh
Shall perish we shall rightly perish too
For such a crime. Let not Guráz' words move thee
To perpetrate such ill, but take occasion
For doing good. Write him a fitting answer,
And wake him from his dream. Say: 'Thwart not
thou
God's purposes; give not the Dív a way
To thine own heart. Reflect upon the case
Of Sháh Khusrau Parvíz and all the wrong
That led to his undoing, for what time
Thou didst depose him the Sásánian fortune
Went at one blow, and when Shírwí ascended
The royal throne and girt his kingly loins
Folk hoped such days as when Khusrau Parvíz
Was Sháh whose wits were keen in all regards,
And if the world became what it became,
And gat no profit from the state of things,
It was because the world dealt foolishly,
And by one stroke lost its advantages.
Now that Ardshír, succeeding to Kubád,
Is seated as the Sháh upon the throne,
The world rejoicing in his majesty,
And earth and time exulting in his Grace,
Why should the world, now tranquil, he convulsed
By pain and war? Knock not at evils' door;
Those that slay blameless kings will prosper not.
In this strife circling heaven must not raise
Irán in dust. I fear that God will end
The Iránians' term for ills more heinous still.'"
Be ever chief! —a profitable letter,
And thou hadst said that one had got his heart
Between the shears when he had read those words.
In fierce wrath with Pírúz, son of Khusrau,
He gathered all his baggage and commanded
The host to march forth plainwards. At the news
Pírúz dispatched a cameleer to go
In all haste to Tukhár to summon him,
Informing him at large of the affair,
Of what Guráz was doing and the strife
About the imperial throne. Then from Tukhár
This answer reached Pírúz, son of Khusrau:—
“Risk not the blood of the Íránian chiefs,
O noble man! but hear what saith Guráz.
Since thou hast written on such wise perchance
He may not come to fight with thee.”

Now when
Pírúz, son of Khusrau, had seen that letter
His heart had no repose from evil thoughts,
But gloomed with thinking how to harm the Sháh,
Whose wont it was to summon him, for he
Was an observant man and eloquent,
And served as minister and treasurer.
He came one dark night for an audience,
And found the wine bright and the welcome warm.
Ardshír was seated in his palace-hall
In company with many young and old,
And when Pírúz, son of Khusrau, came raised,
Thou wouldst have said, his head to heaven, called
For harp, and all the hall was filled with music.
Pírúz, son of Khusrau, when midnight came,
Had drunk one man\(^1\) of wine while the companions
Of Sháh Ardshír were all bemused; no minstrel
Was left that kept his wits. The miscreant
Dismissed the company: he and the Sháh

\(^1\) See Vol. i., p. 290 note.
ALONE remained. That man of outrage rose, 
Laid hand upon the Sháh’s lips unawares, 
And held it there until Ardshír was dead. 
The palace filled with scimitars and arrows. 
All there—ambitious youths and warriors— 
Were fautors of Pírúz, son of Khusrau. 
Upon this manner ceased Ardshír to be 
When he had had six months of sovereignty.
XLVI
GURÁZ (ALSO CALLED FARÁYÍN)
HE REIGNED FIFTY DAYS

ARGUMENT

Guráz, hearing of Ardshír's death, marches on Taisafún and urged on by his younger, though dissuaded by his elder son, usurps the throne. His rule described. A plot is formed against him and he is slain while returning from the chase. The throne remains vacant for a while.

NOTE

Cf. note to previous reign. Guráz (Shahr-Barz, April 27th—June 9th, A.D. 630) reigned for forty days.¹ He was one of the three chief generals employed by Khusrau Parwíz in his long war against the Eastern Roman Empire. His real name, according to Tabarí, was Farruhán. This in Pahlaví would be Farrukhán, which by a misreading has become Faráyín in the Sháhnáma. Shahrbaráz (Shahrguráz, or Shahrwaráz) is, says Tabarí, a title. Firdausí uses the shortened form Guráz, which means "boar," because it is more convenient metrically. The title may have been appropriate enough. In the Sháhnáma the general is split up into two personalities—Guráz or Faráyín, the usurper, and Shahránguráz, the avenger of the breach made by the upstart in the sacred line of Sásánian succession.² In Tabarí the leader of the revolt is a native of Istakhr named Pusfarrukh.³ Shahránguráz in the Sháhnáma is also of the same city.

¹ NT, p. 390 and note. ² Id. pp. 292 and note. 388 and note. ³ Id.
§ 1

How Guráz (also called Farâyín) received News of the Slaying of Ardshir, hastened to Írán, took Possession of the Throne, and was killed by Shahrán-guráz

Pírúz, son of Khusrau, dispatched a post,
And letter too, in secret to Guráz,
Whose sombre soul, what time the messenger
Arrived, grew like the sun, and from those parts
He led forth such an army that the way
Was barred to fly and emmet. Like the wind
He sped to Taisafún, his soldiers’ hands
All had been bathed in blood. When he arrived
The chiefs went out to welcome him, but none
Among the troops dared breathe for they were few. C. 2054
Guráz, on entering the city, stayed not
For minister and counsellor but chose
A void place, and the magnates privily
Conferred with him. Pírúz, son of Khusrau,
Set loose his tongue and said: “Famed paladin!
Whom hast thou chosen to be king of kings,
And illustrate the crown of majesty?”

The warrior Guráz made answer thus:—
“I have not any secrets from Írán.
To-morrow look ye out for some new Sháh
To sit like some new moon upon the throne.”

Since knowledge is the glory of a man
Walk not, if thou canst help it, foolishly.
He that hath wisdom speaketh goodly words,
And as it groweth he deserteth ill.

35453
It is the best of man’s accomplishments,  
The world’s endeavour and the way of God.  
Of things that grace one not there is no need  
To speak at large for he will foolishly  
Disgrace himself howe’er he may exalt  
The case in point. When wisdom hath deserted  
The head, and shame the eye, fame and disgrace,  
And cold and hot, are one—no terror this  
To any coward whether quick or dead.  
Make, if thou canst, all good thy business  
Because the world abideth not with any.  
Let all thy usance be humanity,  
Munificence and uprightness thy Faith.  

When Faráyín assumed the royal crown  
He uttered what was in his mind and said:—  
“Let me assume the kingship for a while,  
And sit upon the throne of gold in joy.  
Far better scatter wealth and be exalted  
Than purchase sixty years of servitude.  
Thus will I sit a while in sovereignty,  
Arrayed in satin\(^1\) and in painted silk,  
And after me my son shall take my throne,  
Assume this royal crown, be king as was  
His sire, and be exalted and renowned.  
Whoe’er shall minister to our delight  
Shall be a happy man among mankind.  
In feast-time we will drink with joyful hearts,  
In war-time we will hunt our enemies.”  

His elder son said privily to him:—  
“Who of us, father! ever wore the crown?  
Feel not secure, take means to compass wealth;  
Thou wast the world’s protector; keep to that.  
If any member of the royal race  
Shalt come thou wilt not long be here; thy heart  
Will keep of kingship only grief and pain;  

\(^{1}\) Or “beaver-skins.”
Thou wilt be wretched, destitute, and wan."
Then said the younger son: "Thou hast become Crowned in the world and hast both troops and
Befitting royalty, but treasureless
treasures
Wilt have to labour still. What ancestor
Of Faridún, who had Abtin to sire,
E'er wore the crown? Hold fast the world by courage
And treasure. Nobody is born a king." ¹

The younger's words pleased Farayín the best,
Who bade his elder son: "Be not so raw."

He laid out in the royal offices
The muster-roll and called all troops to court.
He gave drachms night and day and many robes
Of honour ill-deserved. Within two weeks
Of all the treasury of Shah Ardshír
Remained not what would buy an arrow's plume!
Whene'er Guráz would go forth to the pleasance
The lights were torches made of ambergris,
Four score before and four score after him:
Behind them came his friends and partisans.
Of gold and silver were the goblets all,
The golden gem-encrusted.² 'Twas his use
To feast all night. The nobles' hearts were full
Of vengeance on him. 'Twas his wont to roam
A-nights the gardens and the riding-ground.
Save but to sleep and wake, to eat and plunder,
That slight, weak-witted one knew naught. He went
Drunk ever to repose and with a sash
From Chin about his head. The troops were all
Vexed to the heart at him while all the province
Was full of turmoil and distress. He lost
All trace of generosity and grew
Unjust, unfortunate, and good for naught.
The world was wrecked by his iniquity,

¹ But cf. Vol. vi., p. 320. ² The above couplets transposed.
And at his handling people smote their heads.
He shed the blood of innocents until
The troops grew wroth with him. He used to shut
His eyes for gold and would have sold the world
To win dínárs. Folk cursed him. All desired
His death and meeting privily discussed
His deeds. Hurmuzd Shahránguráz, a horseman
Redoubted of the city of Istakhr—
The glory of the chieftains—thus addressed
One night the Íránians secretly: "Ye chiefs!
The time of Faráyín is proving grievous;
He holdeth all the chiefs in light esteem.
Why have your brains and hearts become thus straitened?
Through him all eyes are tearful, livers charged
With blood. Is no physician to be found?
He is not royal or Sásánian;
Why gird the loins before him? Of a truth
Your hearts have flown out of your breasts or else
Your pluck hath disappeared!"

The folk replied:—
"Since there was no one left fit for the throne
None is inspired by jealousy to take
This base-born’s heart away; but we adopt
Thy counsel. Tell us from thy stores of lore
How to release Írán from this insane
And hot-brained Sháh ill both in word and deed.
May he be never blessed!"

Shahránguráz
Replied: "The Íránians have suffered long.
If ye will harm me not but play the Persian
E’en now by holy God’s aid will I bring him
Down from his throne to dust."

He gat this answer:—
"May no harm come to thee! All we the host
To-day are thy supporters and thy stronghold
If ill herefrom befall thee." Hearing this
That royal warrior sought how to set
Hands on the worthless Sháh. Now he one day
Took order and departed from the city
To hunt, and of the Íránians a troop
Of lords and lieges fared, escorting him.
He urged his courser on and rode about
As 'twere Ázargashasp, the cavaliers
Encircling him and beating up the game.
Now at what time they turned back city-wards
Shahránguráz looked at the hapless Sháh
With boldness, chose an arrow from his quiver,
One that was straight and had a point of steel,
And urged his black steed while the host looked on.
He stretched the bow and drew it out at times
To chest or head, then notched, as if in sport,
An arrow on the string and drew the bow
Till it concealed the point, and loosed his thumb.
Forthwith the shaft struck on the monarch’s back,
Who dropped his whip. The arrow was all blood
Up to the feathers and the iron head
Protruded from his navel. All the troops
Unsheathed and all that night while dust-clouds rose
They plied their swords and knew not whom they fought,
But took and gave back blows and cursed or blessed
That deed. Now when the yellow Veil appeared,
So that the world seemed like a leopard's back,
There was a multitude of slain and maimed,
And cavaliers and leaders were astound.
That great host was dispersed like timid sheep
When they perceive a wolf. Long they remained
Without a king: none cared to claim the crown.
For long they sought and sought in vain to trace
Some royal scion of the noble race.
PÚRÁNDUKHT
SHE REIGNED SIX MONTHS

NOTE

Púrándukht (Puranducht, summer A.D. 630—autumn A.D. 631), reigned, according to Tabari, for one year and four months. Her name, it appears, should be spelt with a B, not with a P. She is said to have restored the "True Cross," but it seems more probable that this was done in the reign of Ardshir. She made the leader of the successful conspiracy against Shahrbaráz her prime minister. She was the first historical female Sháh and it was in allusion to her reign and that of her sister Ázarmdukht that the distich is quoted in Mír Khánd:

"No dignity remains in a household
In which the hens are crowing like cocks."²

§ 1

How Púrándukht ascended the Throne and slew Pírúz,
Son of Khusrau, and how her own Life ended

'Tis but crude policy when women rule,
But yet there was a lady—Púrándukht—
Surviving of the lineage of Sásán,

¹ For the above see NT, p. 390 seq. and notes, ZT, ii., 349.
And well read in the royal volume: her
They seated on the throne of sovereignty,
The Great strewed jewels over her, and then
She spake upon this wise: “I will not have
The people scattered,¹ and I will enrich
The poor with treasure that they may not bide
In their distress. God grant that in the world
There may be none aggrieved because his pain
Is my calamity. I will expel
Foes from the realm and walk in royal ways.”

She made search for Pírúz, son of Khusrau,
Who was delated by an alien,
Whereat she chose some warriors from the host
Who brought Pírúz before her. She exclaimed:—
“Foul-purposed miscreant!² thou shalt receive,
As infamous, the guerdon for thy deeds.”

She bade bring from the stalls a colt unbroken,
And bound, firm as a rock, Pírúz thereto
Without a saddle and with yoke on neck.
The vengeful lady had that untamed steed
Brought to the riding-ground and thither sent,
With lassos coiled up in their saddle-strings,
A band of warriors to urge the colt
To utmost speed, to strive from time to time
To throw Pírúz and ever roll itself
Upon the ground. That colt won much applause
Until with skin in shreds and dripping blood
Pírúz gave up the ghost right wretchedly.
Why having done wrong seekest thou for justice?
Nay, ill for ill; that is the course of right.

Púrándukht ruled the world with gentleness;
No wind from heaven blew upon the dust,
But when six months had passed beneath her sway
The circle of her life bent suddenly;
For one week she was ailing, then expired,

¹ Through misgovernment.  ² One couplet omitted
And took away with her a fair renown.
   Such is the process of the turning sky,
So potent while so impotent are we!
   If thine be opulence or poverty,
If life affordeth gain or loss to thee,
   If thou shalt win what thou desirest so,
Or disappointed be in wretchedness,
   And whether thou be one of wealth or woe,
Both woe and wealth will pass away no less.
Reign as a Sháh a thousand years, five score,
For sixty years or thirty, ten or four,
It cometh to one thing, when all is done,
If thou hadst many years or barely one.
Oh! may thine actions thine own comrades be,
For they in every place will succour thee.
Let go thy clutch upon this Wayside Inn
Because a goodlier place is thine to win.
If thine endeavour be to learning given
Thou wilt by knowledge roam revolving heaven.
XLVIII

ÁZARMDUKHT

SHE REIGNED FOUR MONTHS

NOTE

Before Ázarmdukht (Azermidocht, end of A.D. 631—beginning of A.D. 632) came to the throne there seems to have been a short interval during which a distant scion of the royal House, who took the name of Pírúz, ruled for less than a month. The chief noble of the time, who was governor of Khurásán, wished to make Ázarmdukht his wife on which she had him privately executed. This noble’s son was the Rustam that fought and fell at Kádisíya some years later. On hearing of his father’s fate Rustam, who was in temporary authority in Khurásán, marched with a great army against Ázarmdukht, overthrew her and put her to death after she had reigned six months. Her name probably means “modest girl.”¹

§ 1

How Ázarmdukht ascended the Throne and how she died

There was another dame hight Ázarmdukht, Who had fruition of the crown of greatness. She came, sat down upon the royal throne, And made herself the mistress of the world. Her first words were: “O sages, veterans, And masters of affairs! be just in all,

¹ For the above see NT, p. 393 and notes, ZT, ii, 350 seq.

59
And follow precedent, for ye hereafter
Must make the bricks your pillow. I will foster
The loyal liege, assist him with dinárs,
And if he erreth be longsuffering;
But him that is disloyal and deserteth
The way of wisdom and of precedent
Will I suspend in shame upon the gibbet,
Be he an Arab, Rúman cavalier,
Or Persian thane."

She filled the throne four months,
But with the fifth disaster came thereto,
For she too died, the throne had not a Sháh,
But was the plaything of the ill-disposed.
With the revolving sky 'tis everything
To be all vengeful with its fosterling.
XLIX

FARRUKHZÁD

HE REIGNED ONE MONTH

NOTE

Between, and even earlier than, the death of Ázarmdukh and the accession of Yazdagird III., the order of the dynastic succession becomes very confused. The names of the Sháhs vary in the different lists. The reason is that it was a period of great internal unrest and various aspirants to the throne held contemporaneously some short-lived authority in different provinces of the empire. One of these princes, Farrukhzád (Farrukhzád-Khusrau) has received the honour of being included in the list of the Sháhs as recorded in the Sháhnáma. Two accounts of the length of his reign are given in Tabari. According to one, it lasted for six months, according to the other, for a year. Both agree that he did not die a natural death, and one of them states that his death was instigated by the adherents of Yazdagird.¹

§ 1

How Farrukhzád ascended the Throne and how he was slain by a Slave

Then from Jahram they summoned Farrukhzád,
And seated him upon the throne of kingship.
There with a pious soul he praised the Maker,

¹NT, p. 397 and note. Cf. RSM, p. 544.
And said: "Son of the kings of kings am I, 
And would have naught but quiet in the world. 
The mischief-maker shall not be exalted 
While I am Sháh, but him that from his heart 
Ensueoth right, and is not mischievous, 
Will I hold dear as my pure soul, and seek not 
To harm the harmless. Him that beareth toil 
On our behalf we will reward with treasure. 
We will hold dear all friends and raise the fame 
Of chieftains everywhere, but all my subjects, 
Both friends and enemies, are safe with me."

The troops all blessed him: "Ne'er may earth and time
Lack thee." Yet when his throne was one month old 
The head of all his fortune came to dust. 
He had a slave, a cypress-tree in stature, 
Fair, lusty, and well-liking. That knave's name 
Was Siyah Chashm.¹ May heaven ne'er bring his like!
The Sháh too had a handmaid whom he loved. 
She chanced on Siyah Chashm all unawares 
One day, who sent to say: "If thou wilt meet me 
At such a place thou shalt have endless gifts, 
And I will deck thy crown with jewelry."

The handmaid heard, made no reply, but went 
And told the thing to Farrukhzád who raged, 
And could not eat or sleep in his concern. 
He put the feet of Siyah Chashm in fetters, 
And cast him into prison. When the knave 
Had been confined awhile the Sháh released him, 
For many pled for him. The slave returned 
To serve the Sháh and cut his lifetime short, 
For just as such a bad malignant slave 
Would do he sought revenge upon the Sháh, 
And seizing on a time when Farrukhzád

¹ Black-eyed.
Reposed himself put poison in the wine.
The Sháh drank, lived one week, and all that heard
About his fate lamented him. The kingship
Was in extremities and foes appeared
On every side. The throne of king of kings,
Through these ill doings of the Iránians,
Was overturned.

Of such a fashion are
Time's revolutions! Let it be thy care
To gather for thyself therefrom thy share.
Eat what thou hast and trust the morrow not,
For it may hold for thee a different lot:
To give to others it may take from thee.
Thou callest this a world and verily
It doth whirl! So enjoy thine own, let go
The surplusage that thou hast toiled for so
To other folk but never to thy foe,
Else whensoe'er thy day is overpast
Thy hoards will be as is the desert-blast,
Thy treasures all become thine enemy's;
So give away to set thy mind at ease.
L

YAZDAGIRD

HE REIGNED TWENTY YEARS

ARGUMENT

Yazdagird becomes Sháh. The country is invaded by the Arabs. He sends Rustam, the captain of the host, to oppose them. Rustam takes a despondent view of the situation, and after some attempt at negotiations is defeated by the Arabs at Kádisíya and slain. The war continues, and Yazdagird withdraws to Khurásán to get help from Máhwí of Súr, the governor. Máhwí plots with Bízhan, a Turkish prince, against Yazdagird, who is betrayed in battle and takes refuge in a mill, where he is slain by the miller at the bidding of Máhwí. Máhwí assumes the crown, makes war on Bízhan, is taken prisoner, and put to death. The poem ends with a brief passage, in which Firdausí gives some account of the completion of his undertaking, of help afforded him and of discouragements undergone, and concludes with a well founded assurance of his own future fame.

NOTE

Yazdagird (Isdegerd III., A.D. 632-652 or 653) has given his name to a chronological era which still obtains among the Parsís. It dates from June 16th, A.D. 632. He was the son of Sháhryár, son of Khusrau Parwíz, and was an infant at the time when that Sháh and his sons were put to death after the accession of Shírwí (Kubád;1) On that occasion he was taken for safety to Istakhr. Tabarí says that he was

1 See p. 34, 35.
murdered at the age of twenty-eight after a reign of twenty years. He was therefore only eight years old when a party among the nobles set him up as a puppet king at Istahkhār (Persepolis), the old seat of empire, Ctesiphon at that time being in the hands of a rival claimant of the throne. In the contention that followed Yazdagird was successful, and in the course of A.D. 633 he became recognised as sole Shāh, the administration remaining in the hands of the chiefs.\(^1\) He had succeeded to a heritage of woe. His empire was ill-prepared for the troubles that were in store for it. Exhausted by long wars, torn by domestic dissensions, and lately devastated by plague, it had to confront a new and vigorous organization inspired by religious enthusiasm and impelled thereby to extend its borders on every side. Had Yazdagird been a born leader of men and come to the throne in the prime of life, he might for the time at least have been successful, but in the circumstances, and taking into consideration what we can gather as to his own character, we can now see how hopeless from the outset his prospects were. Students of Persian, however, have probably reason to feel grateful to his reign, for even though we put aside as unsatisfactory what tradition tells us on the subject, a reasonable presumption remains that with the return of settled government to a distracted country there was a revival of interest in the story of the Irānian race and its heroes, and that compilations were then made from which we still though indirectly benefit.\(^2\)

\(\text{§§ 2-11.}\) The following is intended to supplement Firdausi's inadequate account of the Arab conquest of the Sāsānian empire. He appears to assign it to the last years of Yazdagird's then nominal sovereignty. From time immemorial the Irānians and Semites had been at enmity.\(^3\) In Irānian legend this feeling had found expression in the story of the wicked Shāh Zahhāk, who, though originally an Aryan myth,\(^4\) came to be regarded in succeeding ages as an earthly king with his seat at Babylon. When, later still, the Irānians again felt the weight of Semitic oppression, he was turned into an Arab.\(^5\) Although during Sāsānian times the semi-independent kingdom of Hira served to some extent as a buffer-state between the Persian empire and the wilder Arab

---

\(^1\) NT, p. 397 seq. and notes.  
\(^2\) Cf. Vol. i., p. 67.  
\(^3\) Id. p. 7.  
\(^4\) Id. pp. 54. 135. 141.  
\(^5\) Id. p. 10.
tribes there was always the liability of raids and the danger was much increased when Khusrau Parwiz was so unwise as to put an end to the long-standing dynasty of the princes of Hira and appointed a governor of his own in their stead.\footnote{Vol. viii., p. 190.} In his reign too had occurred the disastrous battle of Dhú Kár, in which the smallness of the forces engaged were out of all proportion to the importance of the result. The Arabs celebrated their victory with songs of triumph.\footnote{NT, p. 342.} With that inspiring memory and revelation of Persian weakness, with the prospect of rich spoil to be won, and a nation of infidels to be converted, it is not surprising that hostilities should break out between the young and vigorous and the old and enfeebled empire. Muhammad himself, tradition tells us, addressed a threatening letter to Khusrau Parwiz, who tore it up, and the Prophet, on hearing of this, said: “He has rent his own realm.”\footnote{ZT, ii., 325.} Muhammad died in June, A.D. 632—the month of the child Yazdagird’s accession. Abú Bakr, the first Khalifa, being apprised by an Arab chieftain, who had embraced Islam, of the state of the Persian empire, sent his great general, Khálid, to begin hostilities. Khálid was very successful in numerous engagements, and temporarily the whole tract bordering the western bank of the Euphrates from the Roman frontier almost to the Persian Gulf came into the hands of the Arabs. Khálid made Hira his headquarters, and was preparing to attack Ctesiphon and invade Írán when he was recalled by Abú Bakr to take command of the forces destined for the Syrian campaign. “This is 'Umar’s doing,” said Khálid. “He does not want to see me conquer 'Irák.”\footnote{Id. iii., 348.} The departure of Khálid was the Persians’ opportunity. Encouraged by Rustam, who under Yazdagird had become commander-in-chief, the inhabitants of the conquered region rose against the Arabs but unsuccessfully. At this juncture Abú Bakr died and was succeeded by 'Umar, who began his reign by giving Abú 'Ubaida the chief command in Syria in the place of Khálid. Then, it is said, he appealed publicly to the Faithful to volunteer for the invasion of Persia and for two days in vain, the supersession of Khálid having caused great indignation. It may, however, have been thought that the acquisition of so much fertile territory and the consequent proximity to the Persian
capital, were a sufficient achievement for the time being. Nevertheless, on the third day, when 'Umar made his appeal, Abú 'Ubaida (not Khálid’s successor) offered himself and Sa’ad, son of Wakkás, followed suit. A thousand others imitated their example. 'Umar gave Abú 'Ubaida the chief command as he had been the first to volunteer. The Persians in the meantime had withdrawn to Ctesiphon, whence Rustam dispatched a force, which had with it the flag of Káwa,\(^1\) to watch the enemy. Abú 'Ubaida, who was very inferior in numbers, threw a bridge across the Euphrates, attacked the Persians, was defeated and slain. This battle is known as "The Battle of the Bridge," and took place in November, A.D. 634. An attack, however, by the Persians on Híra failed, and the Arabs raided the Persian settlement of Baghdád (not of course the well-known city of that name\(^2\)) where twice a year a fair was held. 'Umar appointed Sa’ad, son of Wakkás, to succeed Abú 'Ubaida, and both sides made efforts to reinforce their respective armies. The Persian adherents west of the Euphrates again rose. Rustam crossed the river with a great host, and advanced to Kádisíya where the Arabs had concentrated. The battle that ensued is said to have lasted four days with varying fortune till a dust-storm turned the scale in favour of the Arabs. The slaughter was very great and so was the spoil. 'Umar forbade the Arabs to make any further advance for the present, but as the situation of their camp proved to be very unhealthy he directed Sa’ad to choose a more suitable site, whereupon Sa’ad founded Kúfa. Thenceforth the whole of the region west of the Euphrates was lost to the Persians. To secure the lower course of the Euphrates and Tigris 'Umar also founded Basra, west of the Shatt-al-Arab. The battle of Kádisíya seems to have been fought A.D. 636-7, but the chronology of the period is somewhat uncertain. Then came a considerable pause in the Arab advance. The Arabs seem to have spent the interval well in securing what they had gained while the Persians on the other hand appear to have been paralysed by their misfortunes. At all events, when the invasion was resumed and Sa’ad, crossing the Euphrates, marched on Ctesiphon, no resistance was offered and Yazdagird, who had lingered there too late to secure the removal of most of his treasures, fled with his court to Hulwán.\(^3\) His example of flight seems

---

\(^1\) Vol. i., p. 154 seq. \(^2\) See Vol. vii., p. 2. \(^3\) See Vol. vii., p. 187.
to have been followed by a majority of the inhabitants. The Arabs came in for an immense booty according to Oriental accounts. If, however, we take into consideration the domestic troubles of the years preceding Yazdagird’s accession, and what must have been the financial needs of the short-lived Sháhs of that period, we are justified in suspecting that the amount of precious metals and of the more portable forms of wealth generally was not so great as has been affirmed. Sa’ad, when he had established himself in the Persian capital, asked permission of ’Umar to pursue Yazdagird who had gathered a considerable army under the command of a Mihrán at Jalúlán in the neighbourhood of Hulwán. ’Umar refused to allow Sa’ad to go in person and instructed him to send instead Háshim who was either his brother or his nephew. Háshim was much inferior in point of numbers, and it was six months before he brought the Persians to a decisive engagement. He then won a complete victory, and followed up his success at Jalúlán by the capture of Hulwán. Yazdagird fled to Rai and ’Umar, content for the moment with what had been achieved, forbade any further advance. The next stage of the Arab conquest was made outside the sphere of Sa’ad’s authority, who sent, however, by ’Umar’s command troops to assist. In the north Mesopotamia, and in the south Khúzistán, were invaded and annexed. A raid was made also across the Persian Gulf from Bahrain into Párs, but without lasting results, as the Arab forces got into difficulties and had to be rescued by an expedition sent for the purpose from Basra. About A.D. 640 in consequence, it is said, of complaints made by the people of Kúfa, ’Umar recalled Sa’ad and Yazdagird seized the opportunity to make a supreme effort to recover his lost possessions. A large army, summoned from the yet unconquered provinces of the empire, was concentrated at Nahávand, some fifty miles south of Hamadán, and placed under a Persian general named Pirúzán. On this ’Umar ordered Nu’mán, who was in command in Khúzistán, to gather all available forces from the regions already annexed and march against the enemy. Nu’mán, who was greatly inferior in point of numbers, found the Persians strongly encamped at Nahávand and tried in vain to bring on a general engagement. In the end he managed to effect his purpose by means of a stratagem. He broke up

1 See id. p. 185.
his camp and made a hasty retreat. Pirúzán went in pursuit, on which Nu'mán turned upon him and won what the Arabs call "The Victory of Victories" (A.D. 641-2). Pirúzán was taken prisoner and slain, and Nu'mán himself fell in the fight. This was the last effort of the Persians at a national resistance. Henceforth their opposition was merely provincial or local, and wholly ineffective. One after another the remaining provinces of the Sásánian empire were overrun by the Arabs and permanently annexed, while Yazdagird, who had fled from Rai after the disaster of Nahávand, remained a fugitive till his death some ten years later.

§ 2. In Tabarí Rustam's father is called Farrukh-Hurmuzd, the governor of Khurásán, who was slain, it is said, by Æzarm-dukht and avenged by his son.1 Khurásán probably formed part of the satrapy of Nimrúz, one of the four into which Núshírnán divided his empire.2 Tradition makes the governors of that satrapy, and their sons play a very important part during the last few years of the Sásánian dynasty.3 The position of commander-in-chief held by Rustam at the battle of Kádisíya, probably indicates that he had been instrumental in bringing about the elevation of Yazdagird to the throne.4 Rustam's brother was named Farrukhzád.

§ 3. Mughíra, son of Shu'ba, was one of the companions of Muhammad, and played a prominent role in the affairs of the time. He went on a similar embassy to the Persians before the battle of Nahávand.5 He was governor for a time at Basra,6 Mecca,7 and Kúfa, where he died in A.D. 670.8

§ 4. Sa'ad took no personal part in the battle of Kádisíya. He was suffering from sores at the time and had to content himself with merely directing operations.9 Consequently he did not slay Rustam in single combat as Firdausí states. When the dust-storm came on the fourth day of the battle, Rustam was seated under an awning erected on the bank of the canal of Kádisíya and surrounded by the camels that carried his treasure. The awning was blown into the water. and Rustam took shelter among them. In the confusion caused by the storm, the Arabs broke the Persian centre. One of them, named Hilál, striking in the darkness at random among the camels, happened to hit the one under which

---

1 p. 59.  
3 pp. 5, 6, 59, 87, 95 seq.  
4 NT, p. 397 note. NIN, p. 13.  
5 ZT, iii., 474.  
6 Id. iv., 2.  
7 Id. 16.  
8 Id. iii., 398.
Rustam was seated, and cut the cord that secured its load of treasure which fell on Rustam’s head. Though injured, he made an attempt to swim across the canal, but was caught by Hilál and slain.¹

§§ 9-11. There is a general agreement in Persian tradition that Yazdigird did not die a natural death. The scene of it is mostly laid at Marv, and the most popular version associates it with a mill. Firdausi’s story evidently has been worked up as the appeals addressed to Máhwí show. The villain’s guilt too is more emphasized, and he is made more directly responsible for the tragedy. Elsewhere the miller murders the Sháh for mere greed. Marv appears to be a likely place for Yazdagird to have chosen to reside in, as he could easily escape thence across the Oxus in case of need. In some accounts he does cross and negotiates to little purpose with the Turks, but is brought back across the river for the final scene. What the truth of the matter was seems to be quite uncertain.

§ 14. According to the account in the Persian Tabarí, Máhwí, after the death of Yazdagird, remained at Marv till he was compelled to leave owing to the approach of the Arabs, when he fled across the Oxus and took refuge with the Turks.² Their Khán is the Bízhan of the Sháhnáma.

§ 1

How Yazdagird ascended the Throne and addressed the Chiefs

When Farrukhzád departed Yazdagird
Became the Sháh upon the day of Ard
In month Sábandármand. What said the man
Brave, eloquent but weary of life’s span?
"Would that my mother had not brought me forth,
High heaven not turned o’er me!
The days of greatness and the days of want

¹ Id. 396. ² ZT, iii., 505.
For all soon cease to be.
Time, as thou lookest, passeth; none can take
Arms to contend with it,
So furnish forth the board and drain the cup,
And sad talk intermit.
What though thou ride high heaven yet bricks will prove
Thy pillow at the last;
If thou be king what of the end? First throne,
But what when life hath past?
Let not thy heart be troubled, trust not much
High heaven as thy support;
It acteth as it willeth; elephant
And lion are its sport.
’Twill outlast thee, its tale is long; be not
With pride of life o’erflown;
Thou canst not better Faridún or be
Parwíz¹ with crown and throne.²
From those exalt seven planets do thou well
Consider what to Yazdagird befell.”
When he sat happy on the throne of kingship,
And placed upon his head the crown of might,
He said: “By process of the turning sky
I am the true-born son of Núshírwán.
Mine is the sway from sire to sire and mine
Are Virgo, Sol, and Pisces. I will seek
For greatness, wisdom, hardihood, contention,
And manliness, for life and fortune stay
With none, nor treasure, kingship, crown, and throne.
Fame will abide for aye but not desire;
Put off desire then and exalt thy fame.
It is by fame that man shall live for ever
While his dead body lieth in the dust.
How good are Faith and justice in a Sháh!
The times are full of blessings on his fame.

¹ Khusrau Parwíz. ² Couplet omitted.
I purpose while I live to pluck up ill,  
Both root and branch."  
The chiefs applauded him,  
And hailed him as the monarch of the earth,  
And thus it was, till sixteen years had sped,  
That sun and moon revolved above his head.

§ 2

How Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, invaded Irán, how Yazdagird sent Rustam to oppose him, and how Rustam wrote a Letter to his Brother

It was so that 'Umar, the famous Arab,  
Commander of the Faithful, he whose sword  
Turned day to night, the man approved by God,  
Who hath no equal, sent the chosen Sa'ad,  
Son of Wakkás, with troops against the Sháh.  
When Arab fortune worsted Persian,  
And the Sásáníans' fortune had grown dark,  
The world had had full measure of its Sháhs;  
Gold was not seen, the mite was manifest,  
Good turned to evil, evil turned to good,  
The path lay Hellward, not to Paradise,  
The wheel of circling heaven was changed and cut  
All kindness for the Persians clean away.  
The slave must do the almighty Maker's will,  
And bear what He inflictest. Save with Him  
There is no life or joy.  

When Yazdagird  
Learned what had chanced he gathered troops on all sides,  
And bade Hurmuzd's son lead them forth. His name

1 He assumed this title.
Was Rustam. He was wary, wise, a warrior
And potentate, a reader of the stars,
Exceeding shrewd and all attest to hear
The archimages' words. He marched away
With all the noble, those that were alert
And brave, and after thirty months they sought
To fight at Kádisíya. Being learned
In heaven's lore as an astrologer,
And one both just and good, he said: "No time
Is this to fight, the river of the Sháhs
Will flow not in this bed," and so he took
His astrolabe, observed the stars and smote
His head because it was a day of bale,
Then wrote in grief and told his brother all,
First offering praise to God who had ordained
His good and evil fortune, and proceeded:—
"Well may the revolutions of the sky
Fill the observer with disquietude!
I am the guiltiest person of the time,
And therefore have been caught by Áhriman,
Because the kingship passeth from this House;
No season this of conquest and the Grace!
From the fourth heaven Sol is looking down
To hasten to the fight of mighty men.
Both Mars and Venus bode mishap to us,
And none can 'scape high heaven. Mercury
And Saturn are opposed, the former too
Hath entered Gemini. Such is the case,
A great event is toward, and my heart
Is weary of its life. I can discern
All that will be but fain would hold my peace.
When I aigned this secret of the sky—
That it assigneth us but grievous travail—
I wept right sorely for the Fránians,
And burned for the Sásánians. Woe is me
For head and crown, for state and throne, and woe
For majesty, for fortune, and for Grace
Because hereafter will defeat betide them
From the Arabians, the stars not turn
Save to our hurt, and for four hundred years
None of our royal race will rule the world!
An envoy from our foemen came to me,
And divers parleyings followed. 'We,' they said,
'Will give up to the Sháh the tract between
The river-bank and Kádisiya; ye
Shall grant us access to some trading centre
That we may sell and buy; we will not ask
For more hereafter; we will pay large dues,
And will not seek the chieftains' diadems,
But will obey withal the king of kings,
And render hostages at his demand.'
Such is the talk. No action hath ensued,
But still the stars are adverse. Long will be
The strife. Fierce Lions will be slain by hundreds.
The chieftains that are with me in the war—
Galbwí of Tabaristán and Armaní,
Who do the deeds of Áhriman in fight,
Mahwí, he of Súrán, and other chiefs,
Who wield the heavy mace and battle-ax—
Heed not our foes proposals but observe:—
'Who are these haughty folk and what do they
Both in Írán and in Mázandarán?
For road and territory, weal and woe,
We must employ the mace and scimitar;
We will exert ourselves, quit us like men,
And make the world both dark and strait to them.'
None of them knoweth circling heaven's design,
And how its aspect hath been changed to us.
On reading this take measures with the chiefs,
Make preparations and lead forth the host,
Collect the treasures, handmaids, and state-robcs,
Then hasten Ázar Ábádagán—
The dwelling of the Mighty and the Free.
Whatever herds of horses thou mayst have
Send to the treasurer of Ázargashasp.
If soldiers seek thee from Zábulistán,
Or from Írán, imploring thy protection,
Receive and treat with kindness their excuses
In view of what the turning sky is doing—
The cause of joy and terror to us all,
At whiles exalting and at whiles abasing.
Let mother know my words for of a truth
She will not look upon my face again.
Greet her from us and counsel her at large
Not to be troubled here below. If any
Shall bring bad news of me be not too downcast,
For know that in this Wayside Hostelry
He that amasseth treasure by his toil
Will find his toil more than such worldly treasure,
And that another will enjoy the fruit.
What need was there for so much toil and greed?
Desire is lessened not by having more.
At all times worship God and purge thy heart
Of all affection for this Wayside Inn
Because our fortune is in straits, the king
Will see me not again. Do thou and all
Our House, both old and young, unceasingly
Praise God and pray the Maker, for with this
My host I am in stress, in travail, grief,
And bitter fortune, and shall not escape
At last. May this sweet country of Írán
Be in prosperity! Whenas the world
Is straitened to the king hold treasure, life,
And person of small worth, for of that race
So famed and honoured there is no one left
Save that exalted one. Watch over him
By day and night till I have fought the Arabs.
Be not remiss in toil for he is now
All that we have to look to in this world,
And the Sásánians' memorial,
For no one will behold that House again.
Woe for the head and crown, for seal and right
Since royal throne will go adown the blast!
Fare well, be not concerned, and ever be
Before the world-lord, and if ill betide him
First give thine own head to the scimitar
Ungrudgingly. When pulpit fronteth throne,
And when Abú Bakr and 'Umar shall be
As household words, our long toils will be lost,
And long will be the fall before the rise.
Thou wilt not see throne, diadem, or state:
The stars award the Arabs everything.¹
There will not be throne, crown, or golden boot,
Or gem, or coronet or flaunting flag.
One man will toil, another will enjoy;
None will give heed to justice or to bounty.²
Then warriors will be men that fight afoot
While horsemen will be mocked and flouted at;
The warlike husbandman will be despised,
High birth and majesty will bear no fruit;
Then men will rob each other, none will know
A blessing from a curse, and secret dealing
Prevail o'er open, while the hearts of men
Will turn to flint, sire will be foe to son,
And son will scheme 'gainst sire; a worthless slave
Will be the king, high birth and majesty
Will count for nothing; no one will be loyal.
There will be tyranny of soul and tongue.
A mongrel race—Íránian, Turkman, Arab—
Will come to be and talk in gibberish.³
They will collect all treasures 'neath their skirts,
Toil and resign the product to their foes.

¹ Two couplets omitted. ² Three couplets omitted. ³ See Vol. i., p. 34.
Grief, travail, bitterness will thus prevail
As joy did in Bahrám Gúr's days; feasts, song,
Race and renown will cease; men will set traps,
Will seek their profit in another's loss,
And make their pretext Faith; no difference
Will be 'twixt Spring and Winter; there will be
No wine at feasts; they will not recognise
Degree and place but live on barley-bread,
And dress in wool. When much time hath passed
thus
None will regard the noble Persian stock.
They will be shedding blood for lucre's sake,
An evil age will be inaugurate.
My heart is full, my face is wan, my mouth
Is parched, my lips are filled with sighs to think
That after I—the paladin—have gone
Sásánian fortune shall become thus dark;
So faithless hath revolving heaven grown,
Ta'en umbrage, and withdrawn from us its love!
If with my lance I strike a brazen mountain
I pierce it, being brazen-bodied too,
But now my shafts with steel-transfixing heads
Are impotent with men that wear no mail!
My sword, which felled the necks of elephants
And lions at a blow, can not cut through
An Arab skin! My knowledge bringeth loss
On loss upon me. Would that I possessed not
This wisdom since it causeth me to know
Of this ill day! The chiefs that are with me
From Kádisiya are both hardy men
And hostile to the Arabs. They expect
That this brake will be filled, that earth will run
Like the Jihún, with our foes' blood. None knoweth
The secret of the skies and that this strife

¹ Muhammadan years being lunar the months are associated with no particular season.
Can not be quickly ended; but when fortune
Departeth from a race what profit cometh
Of travail and of fight? Be prosperous,
My brother! May the Sháh’s heart joy in thee
Because this Kádisiya is my charnel,
My breastplate is my shroud, my helmet blood:
Such is the secret of the lofty sky.
Bind not thine own heart to my griefs but keep
Thine eyes upon the Sháh, and sacrifice
Thyself for him in fight, because the day
Of Áhriman is coming on apace
When circling heaven will show us enmity.”

When he had sealed the letter he said thus:—
“My blessing be upon the messenger
That shall convey this letter to my brother,
And tell him not what I have said, but other!”

§ 3

How Rustam wrote to Sa’ad, Son of Wakkás, and how
he replied

C. 2066 He sent a messenger in swiftness like
The flash and thunder-clap to Sa’ad. They wrote,
In apprehension yet not in despair,
A letter on white silk and thus endorsed:—
“This from the paladin of paladins—
The warlike Rustam, son of Hurmuzdsháh1—
To Sa’ad, son of Wakkás, the prudent, wise,
And circumspect, who hath come forth to fight,”

It thus began: “We still must fear the World-lord,
The Holy, who sustaineth turning heaven,

1 Cf. Mardánsháh as a proper name and p. 59.
Whose rule is justice and beneficence.
May blessings from Him rest upon the king,
The lustre of the signet, crown, and throne,
The lord of sword, of diadem and lasso,
Whose Grace restraineth Áhriman in bonds.
A hateful matter hath occurred to us
In these uncalled for labours and this strife.
Reply to me and say who is your king,
Who thou art, what thy rule and custom are,
And whose assistance is it that ye seek
With unmailed soldiery and unmailed chief?
Fed up with bread thou art still ravenous;
Thou hast no elephants, no throne, no baggage.
Enough for thee to live within Írán,
For crown and signet are another man's,
Who hath Grace, elephants, and crown and throne—
A famous Sháh of lengthy lineage.
No throned king hath such stature or the moon
In heaven such aspect. When enthroned he sitteth
With smiles that make his silvern teeth appear;
His gifts would purchase Arabs in the gross,
And not impoverish his treasury.
His dogs, his hawks, and cheetahs are twelve thousand,
And they are decked with golden bells and varvels.
The whole waste of the wielders of the spear
Could find not in a year from end to end
Enough to feed his cheetahs and his hounds
When he is hunting on the plain. The Arabs,
From drinking camels' milk and eating lizards,
Have reached a pitch whereat the Persian throne
Is coveted! Shame, shame on circling heaven!
Ye have no veneration in your eyes,
Or, in your wisdom, love or reverence.
With such a visage and such tastes and ways
Is thy heart set upon the crown and throne?
If thou art seeking power within thy means,
And art not merely speaking words in jest,  
Dispatch to us some man of goodly speech,  
Send some brave veteran and man of lore,  
That he may tell me thine intent and who  
Doth lead thee to attempt the royal throne.  
Then will I send a horseman to the Sháh  
To ask of him whatever thou wilt ask,  
But seek not with so great a king to fight,  
For shame at last will come upon thy face.  
His grandsire was the world-lord Núshírwán,  
Whose justice made the aged young again.  
His fathers have been Sháhs, and he is king;  
The age remembereth none like to him.  
Fill not the world with curses on thyself,  
Misprize not thine own precedents.  
Regard this letter of advice and bar not thou  
Thine eyes and ears to wisdom."  
When the letter was sealed he gave it to high-born Pírúz,  
Son of Shápúr.  
To Sa’ad, son of Wakkás,  
This paladin and magnates from Írán,  
Of ardent soul, went whelmed in iron, silver,  
And gold, with golden shields and golden girdles.  
On hearing, Sa’ad, that noble man, set forth,  
Swift as the flying dust, to meet Pírúz  
With troops, forthwith dismounted and inquired  
About the army and its paladin,  
About the Sháh, his minister and host,  
The watchful leader and his provinces.  
He spread his cloak beneath Pírúz and said:—  
"We hold the sword and spear to be our mates:  
Brave warriors make no mention of brocade,  
Of gold and silver or of food and slumber.  
Ye have no part in manhood but are like  
To women with your colours, scents, and forms.  
Your prowess is in donning broidery,  
Adorning roofs and decorating doors."
Pírúz then gave the letter and told Sa'ad
The words of Rustam. Sa'ad heard, read, and wondered.
He wrote an answer back in Arabic,
Announcing good and ill. He wrote there first
The name of God and of His messenger,
Muhammad, who directeth to the truth.
He spake of Jins and men, of what the Prophet,
The Háshimite,¹ had said, the Unity
Of God, of the Kurán, of promise, warning,
Of menace and of novel usages,
Of liquid pitch, of fire, and icy cold,
Of Paradise, its streams of milk and wine,
Of camphor and of musk, of bubbling springs,
Of wine and honey and the trees of heaven.²
Then: “If the Sháh accepteth the true Faith
He will obtain both worlds with joy and kingship,
And have withal the earrings and the crown,
Perpetual beauty and prosperity.
His intercessor there will be Muhammad,
His form like pure rose-water. In as much
As Paradise will be thy recompense
We must not plant thorns in the garth of bale.
The personality of Yazdagird,
This spacious world, such gardens, riding-grounds,
And halls and palaces with all the thrones
And crowns, the festivals and revelries,
Are less worth than one hair of an Hourí.
In this our Wayside Hostelry thine eyes
Are dazed by crown and treasure, and thou trustest
Too much in ivory throne, in wealth, and signet,
In fortune and in crown. Why be concerned
About a world when one draught of cold water
Out-prizeth it? Whoever cometh forth

¹ Háshim was the great-grandfather of Muhammad.
² This is taken from the Kurán. Cf. Vol. i., p. 99.
To fight with me will see a narrow grave,
And Hell, naught else; but Paradise is his
If he believeth. Mark how he should fare.
He still will choose the one and shun the other
As every wise man knoweth."

Then he set
The Arab seal thereon and praised Muhammad.
The messenger of Sa’ad, son of Wakkás,
Went with all speed to Rustam. Now what time
Shu’ba Mughíra went forth from the chiefs
To journey to the paladin, a noble,
One of the Iránians, came in from the way
Before the captain of the host, and said:—
"A messenger hath come—a weak, old man—
Without a horse or weapons and ill-clad,
With thin sword slung about his neck and shirt
All plainly tatteréd."

Rustam thus apprised
Prepared a tent-enclosure of brocade.
They laid a carpet of gold thread of Chín;
The soldiery turned out like ants and locusts.
They set a golden ante-throne whereon
The captain of the host assumed his seat
With eight score warriors attending him—
Horsemen and lions on the day of battle—
With crowns, with violet robes, and golden boots,
With torques and earrings, while the tent-enclosure
Was royally adorned. Shu’ba Mughíra,
On coming to the tent-enclosure, walked not
Upon the cloth but humbly on the ground,
And used his scimitar as walking-stick.
He sat upon the dust without a look
At any—captain of the host or chief.
Then Rustam said to him: "May thy soul joy,
And by its knowledge make thy body strong."

Shu’ba Mughíra said: "If thou, good sir!
Acceptest the true Faith, peace unto thee."

Now Rustam, hearing this, was vexed and frowned. He took and gave the letter to a reader. That learned man told him what was writ, and Rustam Made answer: "Tell him: 'Thou art neither king Nor an aspirant to the diadem, But thou hast seen my fortune in eclipse,¹ And so thy heart ambitioneth my throne. The case is one of moment to the wise, But thou hast not considered it. If Sa'ad Had the Sásánian throne I well might share His feasts and fights, but since the faithless stars Bode ill, what shall I say? This is the day Of bale. If for my guide I take Muhammad, And this new Faith for old, all will go wrong Beneath this crook-backed sky, and all go hard With us.' But as for thee, depart in peace; The day of battle is no time for words. Tell Sa'ad: 'To die with honour is a thing Far better for me than crude parleying.'"

§ 4

*How Rustam fought with Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, and was slain*

Shu’ba Mughíra went his way, and Rustam Bade to array the host and sound the trumpet. From all sides troops assembled, clouds of dust Arose, and din that deafed the sharpest ears. "The steely lance-heads mid the murky reek Are," thou hadst said, "stars mid night's azure gloom,"

¹ Reading with P.
While spears ne'er ceased to smite on glittering helms.
The strife endured three days, till water failed
The Íránians, and their warriors' hands and steeds
Became unfit for combat. Rustam's lips
Grew as the dust with drought, his tongue was split,
And men and horses battened on moist clay,
So grievous was the stress!

Shouts rose like thunder
From Rustam and from Sa'ad as they advanced,
Each from his post. Each left his army's centre,
And drew off from the field. Departing thus
They came beneath a steep-up eminence,
And there those chieftains twain assailed each other
Revengefully upon that scene of strife
Till Rustam, roaring like a thunder-clap,
Smote with his sword Sa'ad's charger on the head,
Smote the swift charger which came headlong down,
And brave Sa'ad was unhorsed. Then Rustam reared
Aloft a trenchant blade to show to him
The Day of Doom, and was in mind to strike
His head off, but by reason of the dust
Raised by the troops they could not see each other.
Then Rustam lighted from his steed and saddle
Of leopard-skin and fastened to his belt
His charger's reins but, while dust blinded him,
Sa'ad hurried up and smote him with the sword
Upon his helm whence blood ran down his face,
And while his eyes were blinded by the gore
The aspiring Arab gained the upper hand,
Again smote Rustam on the head and neck,
And flung his warrior-body on the dust.
None in the two hosts were aware thereof,
Or whither those two paladins had gone,
But searched until they found the scene of strife.
The Íránians, when they spied their paladin
Slashed by the scimitar from head to foot,
Fled. Many a chieftain perished in the press,
And many failed for thirst upon the saddle.
The world had had full measure of the Sháhs.
The host fared to the monarch of Írán,
And hastened on the way both day and night.
When Rustam had been slain in fight, and when
The chiefs’ heads were all turned, the Muslim host
Sped like a savage lion in pursuit.¹
At that time Yazdagird was at Baghdád;
To him the troops came flocking and announced
That Rustam was no more, and that the sea
Was dry with grief, that many men had fallen,
And that the rest had fled the battlefield.
The hosts, both Persian and Arabian,
Reached Karkh, and Farrukhzád, son of Hurmuzd,
Wroth and with tearful eyes came from the Arwand,
Arrived at Karkh, fell on the enemy,
And not an Arab warrior survived.
The Persians marched out from Baghdád intent
To meet the foe, and bloody was the event.

§ 5

How Yazdagird consulted with the Íránians and went
to Khurásán

When Farrukhzád had gone back to the Sháh,
All over dust and in his fighting-gear,
He lighted from his charger, did obeisance,

¹ The French version of the rest of this section is as follows:—
"Yezdegird était à Bagdad lorsque ses troupes affluèrent autour
de lui. Farrukhzad, fils d’Hurmuzd, furieux et répandant des
larmes, traversa le Tigre, entra dans Kerkh et livra un assaut
terrible qui ne lassa vivant aucun des guerriers armés de lances.
Les troupes sortirent aussitôt de Bagdad et allèrent chercher le
combat dans la plaine; mais lorsque la poussière de la lutte se fut
dissipée, les Iraniens étaient en fuite."
Blood in his eyes and anguish in his heart,
And said to Yazdagird: "Why weep so much?
Is it to wash the throne of kings with tears?
Thou only of the royal race art left
To wear the crown and sit upon the throne.
One, with a hundred thousand enemies,
How canst thou battle when exposed to all?
Betake thee to the forest of Nárwan;
The folk will gather to thee there and thence,
Like valiant Farídún, do thou renew
The fight like fire."

The king of kings gave ear.
New thoughts occurred. Upon the morrow's morn
He sat upon his throne, assumed the crown,
Held an assembly with his men of lore,
The magnates and shrewd-hearted archimages,
And said: "What seemeth good to you herein?
What precedents recall ye from the past?
Saith Farrukhzád to me: 'Depart and take
Thy followers to the forest of Nárwan:
The people of Ámul, are servitors,
The people of Sári all slaves, to thee,
And, when thy troops are many, come again
With puissance to battle with the Brave.'
Do ye approve?"

They all of them exclaimed:—
"That is the course."

The king of kings rejoined:—
"It is not well. I purpose otherwise.
Shall I desert the chieftains of Írán,
And this great host, our country, throne, and crown
To save myself? That were not majesty,
Or manliness or policy. To fight
The foe is better for me than disgrace.
The leopard spake a saw in this regard:—
'Whene'er the time of stress shall come on thee
Turn not in folly from thine enemy.
For just as subjects should obey their king
In good and ill so he must not desert them
In their distress and go off to his treasures."

The great men blessed him, saying: "Crown
and signet
Exist for ends like these. Think what thy will
And wishes are, and what assurances
Thou wouldst of us."

The Sháh thus answered them:—
"Anxiety is ruin to the heart.
Our best course is to go to Khurásán
Where we shall feel secure from strife with foes,
For there we are possessed of many troops,
And valiant paladins. The Turkish chiefs
And Khán of Chín will come and do us homage
While I will make the union stronger still
By marriage with the daughter of Faghfúr.
A great host will arrive to succour us,
The magnates of Túrán and mighty men.
There is the warden of the marches too,
Máhwí, with horsemen, elephants, and wealth
Of all kinds. He is our chief governor,
The highest of the guardians of our coasts.
I raised him when he was a vagabond,
A minstrel and a braggart, giving him,
Though worthless, name and worth, men, government,
Lands, elephants. Base though he be and vile
Still his advancement hath been at my court.
Now I have heard an archmage quote this saw:—
'Of one whom thou hast wrongly harmed beware:
Of one made rich by thee thy hopes are fair.'
I never injured him in aught, and he
Will 'venge me on my foe.'"

But Fárruhkhzád
Smote his two hands together and exclaimed:—
"O Sháh who fearest God! put little trust
In those of evil bent. In this regard
There is a modern saw which runneth thus:—
'Howe'er on birth thou practise witchery,
And strivest such an one from rust to free,
Since the All-giver framed him thus to be
To loose God's bonds thou wilt not find a key.'"

"O mighty, raging Lion!" said the Sháh,
"To make this trial will work me no hurt."

He stayed that night and, when the morning broke,
Those noble men set forth and left Baghídaád
For Khurásán, and took their travail lightly.
The chieftains of Irán all sorrowful
Accompanied their Sháh, that noble man,
And called down blessings on him, saying: "May
time,
And earth, ne'er lack thee."

From the host rose wails
For grief and at the going of the king,
And all the Iránian thanes—the warriors' stay—
Drew near to him with outcries and in tears,
And said to him: "O Sháh! we are thy slaves
With souls and bodies filled with love for thee.
We all will go with thee to learn how fortune
Will sport with our king's life, for if we lose
Our Sháh how can our hearts find joy in home,
And country? We will quit our settlements,
Our children, and our wealth to share thy toils.
We care not for our lives without thy throne:
May fortune ne'er abandon thee."

With eyes
All tears the king of kings said to those nobles:—
"Be ever more intent in praising God.
It may be I shall look on you again,
And that our sorrows and distress will cease.

1 Three couplets omitted.
Ye all are my true helpers and the heirlooms
Left by my sires. I would not have you harmed:
Share not mine ills then. We will mark the intent
Of circling heaven, its progress, and to whom
It showeth love. Resign yourself thereto:
None can evade its secret purposes."
Then said he to the merchantmen of Chín:
"Make no long tarrying here, else will the Arabs
Convert your quest of gain to loss."
They parted
With pain and trouble, sorrow, care, and wailing.
So Farrukhzád, son of Hurmuzd, led forth
The troops and called the veterans of Irán,
And then the Sháh set out with wail and woe.
The leader led the van. Stage after stage
He marched to Rai and tarried there for wine,
And minstrelsy, thence went he to Gurgán,
Like wind, and stayed one se'nnight sad or glad.
Departing thence toward Bust he set his face
With wrinkled cheeks and body in ill case.

§ 6

How Yazdagird wrote to Máchwí of Súr

The world-lord, resolute to go to Marv,
Wrote to Máchwí of Súr, the governor,
In rage and pain, in tears and hope deferred,
And calling an experienced scribe poured forth
His heart, and it was full. He first praised God,
The all-wise Lord, the Fosterer, the Master
Of circling Mars and Sol, of elephant
And ant, at will-creating out of naught,
And needing no instructor, then proceeded:
"What hath befallen us! And gone are all
This kingship's hue and perfume. Rustam's death
Upon the battlefield and by the hand
Of one whose name is Sa'ad, son of Wakkás,
A landless, low-born, witless, aimless man,
Hath straitened all the world to us through sorrow.
Now that Sa'ad's army is at Taisafún,
With woods and foot-hills fronting them, array
Thy host to fight with his and summon all
Thy troops to that same end.¹ Lo! I will follow
Behind my letter swiftly as the wind,
And give thee what I purpose in my mind."²

§ 7

How Yazdagird wrote to the Marchlords of Tús

He wrote moreover to the folk of Tús,
With full heart and with face like sandarac,
First offering his praises to the Judge
"From whom are fortune, strength, and excellence,
Grace, triumph, throne, and diadem of kingship.
From foot of ant to soaring eagle's plume,
From elephant on land to crocodile
In water, all are faithful, do His will,
And draw no breath unless by His command.
This from the world's Sháh, mighty Yazdagird,
Son³ of a famous king and valorous,
Victorious leader of the Iránian host,
Who guardeth his domain, desireth more,
And cometh of a great, God-fearing race
That thank their stars that they possess the crown,

¹ Three couplets omitted.  ᵃ Two couplets omitted.
³ Reading with P.
Have peopled earth and made crown, throne, and signet
Resplendent, to his marchlords with their thrones
And treasures, Grace, high-bearing, crowns and host
At Shamírán, Rúína,¹ and Mount Ráda,
Kalát and elsewhere. May the Fosterer
Watch over us and keep you from the scath
Of evil hap. In sooth the chiefs have heard,
For it hath been an ensign in the world,
That in regard to warfare, valour, birth,
Our hearts are full of kindness, love, and justice.
High birth especially constraineth us—
The Sháhs—to let our toils exceed our treasures
On your behalf. What time Bahrám Chúbína,
That malcontent, grew noted and rejected
Our rule and diadem ye all abandoned
Your marches, spacious cities, pleasures,
Your parks and palaces, and in that case,
In terror of disaster, made your homes
On dale and lofty height. If God almighty
Shall grant me strength and fortune favour us
I will repay your good deeds lavishly,
And pray to Him who watcheth o'er the world.
In sooth ye must have heard of what the stars
Have brought upon our head by these vile Snakes
With looks like Áhriman, who lack all knowledge,
Shame, fame, and treasure, fortune and descent,
And fain would let the world go to the winds.
It is the compass of the lofty sky
That tribulation shall befall this realm
By these vile miscreants, these Raven-heads,²
Devoid of sense and knowledge, fame and shame.
These greedy men, who covet diadems,

¹"Rouíndiz." Mohl.
²The Persians translated "'Aráb" by "Zágh" (raven) and applied the expression to those hated enemies.
Have fixed their eyes upon this royal state,
And Núshírwán once dreamed that this our throne
Would lose its brilliant lustre. He beheld
A hundred thousand Arabs—raging camels
With bits\(^1\) snapped—seeking how to cross the Arwand,
And bring destruction on our fields and falls,
Saw that both Fire and Fane of Fire would perish,
The light of New Year end and Sada feast,
That in Írán and Babylon dark smoke
Would rise from tilth and crop to Saturn’s sphere,
While on the world-king’s hall the battlements
Would tumble to the ground.\(^2\) The dream is now
Fulfilled and heaven’s favour fain to quit us.
Those that we value most will be misprized,
The base will be set up on high by fortune,
Ill scattered through the world, mishap apert
And good concealed. In all the provinces
Some tyrant, some obscene calamity,
And signs of dark night’s coming will appear,
Our glorious fortune be cut off from us.
Now as our counsellors and paladins—
Men of pure rede—advise we purpose going
To Khurásán and to its warlike marchlords.
Because now of the governor of Tús
Have I led here the elephants and drums,
And we shall see how fortune will make bonds
Of our frail knots. I am girt up for battle
That I may meet the Arabs face to face,
While Farrukhzád—my very veins and skin,
And my firm friend—is now at Altúniya,
Intent on fight, and host confronteth host,
While Kashmigán, that warrior’s son, hath reached
Our court and spoken well and loyally.

\(^1\) Properly the piece of wood passed through a perforation made in the nostrils of a camel to guide it by.

\(^2\) See Vol. viii., p. 66.
I heard what he could tell about these marches,
Their heights and depths, their caves, retreats, the hold
Upon Mount Gumbadán and Jarmana,
The fort of Lázhawardí for our stores,
Spots such as Ál, Makhzúm, and waste of Gil:
He kindly opened all his heart to me.
My host for battle is too numerous
To tarry long within these narrow holds.
We have held council; all the paladins
Attended; we debated and resolved
To take with us crown, throne, and seal and signet,
All garments of Kashmír and Rúm and Chin,
Such goods as we can gather from Kibchák
And from Kírwán, all that we have in hand
Of clothes and carpets, articles of gold,
With gems uncut and all that most we prize,
And provand and equipment for the future.
Of oxen forty thousand will drag loads
Of unthreshed corn and after these will come
Twelve thousand asses drawing loads of dates
For us. A trusty archimage will bring
Pistachios, millet, and pomegranate-juice.
Attending on the outcome they will send
Thereafter many asses’ loads of salt,
And add a thousand camels’ loads of millet,
Fat from the tails of sheep and butter-skins.
A thousand Bactrian camels will bring dates,
Another thousand sugar, as their loads.
Twelve thousand also will bring drums of honey.
All these will come at one time to the holds.
Besides all these my servants will bring in
Some forty thousand salted careases,
And of black naphtha in the next two months
Three hundred camel-loads. An archimage
With escort will arrive from Shamírán,
And from Mount Ráda while, in sight of all
The elders and the wise, the mountain-chiefs,
Sent by the marchlords, will convey whate'er
Is needed to the gates and give the list
To our own treasurer, and if the Great
Among the folk will but restrain themselves
They will in sooth receive no injury
Among the valleys and the lofty hills
From Arab or from Turkman. Help from you
In these our strenuous times will aid us much.
Our minister, that wise and holy man,
Will now give orders to our treasurer
To send five robes of Persian make to all
That toil for us and, when those toils are over,
A splendid turban of gold broidery.
In these our present troubles each shall have
Two score drachms from our treasures, afterwards,
For service rendered, for each drachm three-score,
Each worth more than ten dángs, and he will read
This legend: 'In the name of holy God,
The Object of our reverence, hopes, and fears,'
Upon one side. The other side will bear
Our face and crown, the legend: 'Through our love
The earth becometh fruitful.' These have been
Prepared for New Year's Day, the nobles' eyes
Fulfilled with wealth. God's blessing on the man
Whose faults are few and who forgetteth not
Our diadem.'

The Sháh when he had sealed
The letter sent it to the army-chiefs.
With this king's missive in his hand there came
A horseman of high fortune and high aim.

1 Reading with P.
2 The dánɡ properly was a quarter of a drachm.
§ 8

How Yazdagird went to Tūs and how Māhwī of Sūr met him

Thence they conveyed the drums and came to Tūs
From Nishápūr. Māhwī of Sūr had news:—
"The Shāh is on the road to Dahistán,"
And went to meet him with a mighty power,
All spearmen and in coats of mail, and when
The Glory of the royal state appeared,
The flag of majesty and such a host,
Alighted from his steed forthwith and paid
His duty to the king of kings, walked softly
Upon the burning dust and from his eyes
Shed tears of reverence. He kissed the ground,
Prolonging his obeisance. All his troops
Acclaimed the Shāh and touched earth with their heads,
While Farrukhzhád enranked his powers when he
Beheld the visage of Māhwī of Sūr
By whom his heart was joyed and whom he counselled
At large: "This Shāh of royal race do I
Commit to thee to serve him, suffering not
The blast to blow on him, and none save thee
To earn his thanks. I must depart to Rai,
Uncertain whether I shall see again
The royal crown for 'gainst these Arab spearmen
Full many such as I have died in battle.
There was not one within the world like Rustam,
The horseman, never hath the ear of sage
Heard tell of such, yet by a Raven-head."

1 See p. 91. note.
Was he cut off, so adverse was our day!
God grant to him a place among the Just,
And give the swarthy Ravens to our spears!
Máhwí replied: "O paladin! the Sháh
Is eye and soul to me. I undertake
In thy place to defend thy king, thy Heaven."

So Farrukhzád, son of Hurmuzd, departed
To Rai as bidden by the Sháh. The sky
Revolved awhile with matters in this stay,
And all love passed from that malignant's brain,
And none dared go to battle with the Arabs
Because the azure sky was helping them;
The visage of the monarch of Írán
Grew wrinkled; the foe's deeds made strait his heart.
Máhwí saw that the Sháh was at a stay,
And driven on by fortune helplessly,
Ambitioned speedily the throne and changed
In policy, in manners, and dispose,
Then for a season he began to affect
Ill health and barely showed the Sháh respect.

§ 9

How Máhwí of Súr incited Bízhan to war with Yazdagird and how Yazdagird fled and hid himself in a Mill

There was a paladin, a Turk by race,
A man of influence and named Bízhan;
He dwelt within the coasts of Samarkand
Where he had many kin. Ill-starred Mahwí,
Becoming self-assertive, wrote to him:—
"Thou prosperous scion of the paladins!
A strife hath risen that will bring thee profit:
The Sháh is of all places here at Marv
And with no troops! His head and crown and state,
Wealth, throne, and host, are thine if thou wilt come.
Recall the vengeance owing to thy sires,
And give this unjust race its just reward."

Bízhan, considering the letter, saw
That insolent Máhwí would win the world,
Then spake thus to his minister: "Thou chief
Of upright men! what sayest thou to this?
If I lead forth a host to aid Máhwí
'Twill be my ruin here."¹

The minister
Replied: "O lion-hearted warrior!
'Twere shame to help Máhwí and then withdraw.
Command Barsám to set forth with a host
To aid upon this scene of strife. The sage
Will term thee daft to go and fight in person
At the insistence of this man of Súr."

Bízhan replied: "'Tis well, I will not go
Myself."

He therefore bade Barsám to lead
Ten thousand valiant cavaliers and swordsmen
To Marv with all the implements of war
If haply he might take the Sháh. That host
Went like a flying pheasant from Bukhárá
To Marv within one week. One night at cock-crow
The sound of tymbals went up from the plain.
How could the king of kings suspect Mahwí
Of Súr to be his enemy? Shouts rose.
A cavalier reached Yazdagird at dawn
To say: "Máhwí saith thus: 'A host of Turks
Hath come. What is the bidding of the Sháh?
The Khán and the Faghsúr of Chín command:
Earth is not able to support their host!' "

¹ Two couplets omitted.
The Sháh wroth donned his mail. The armies ranged.¹
He formed his troops to right and left, and all
Advanced to battle. Spear in hand he held
The centre, and the whole world was bedimmed
With flying dust. He saw how lustily
The Turks engaged, unsheathed his sword, and came,
As 'twere an elephant before his troops.
Earth Nile-wise flowed. Like thundering cloud he
charged,
But not a warrior supported him;
All turned their backs upon that man of name,
And left him mid the horsemen of the foe.
The world’s king, when Máhwí withdrew, perceived
The practice hid till then—the intent and plan
To capture him—yet played the man in fight,
Displaying valour, strength, and warriorship,
Slew many at the centre, but at length
Fled in despair, with falchion of Kábul
In hand, pursued by many Turks. He sped
Like lightning mid night’s gloom and spied a mill
On the canal of Zark². Alighting there
The world’s king lay in hiding from his foes
Within the mill. The horsemen searched for him;
All Zark was hue and cry. The Sháh abandoned
His gold-trapped steed, his mace, and scimitar
With golden sheath. The Turks with loud shouts
sought him,
Excited by that steed and equipage.
The Sháh within the mill-house lurked in hay.
With this false Hostel thus it ever is:
The ascent is lofty and profound the abyss.
With Yazdagird, while fortune slumbered not,
A throne enskied³ by heaven was his lot,
And now it was a mill! Excess of sweet

¹ Couplet omitted. ² See LEC, p. 400. ³ Reading with T.
YAZDAGIRD

Bred bane for him and, if thou art discreet,
Affect not this world for its end is ill.
While a tame serpent to the touch it still
At whiles will bite, and hot that bite will be.
Why then affect this cozening hostelry
While like a drum the signal to be gone
Thou hearest, bidding: "Bind the baggage on,
And for sole throne the grave's floor look upon?"

With mouth untasting and with tearful eyes
The Sháh abode until the sun arose,
And then the miller oped the mill-house door.
He bore a truss of grass upon his back.
A low-born-man was he, by name Khusrau,
Poor, foolish, unrespected, purposeless.
He lived upon the profits of his mill,
Which gave him full employment. He beheld
A warrior, like a lofty cypress, sitting
In dolour on the ground with kingly crown
Upon his head and with brocade of Rúm
Bright on his breast; his eyes a stag's, his chest
And neck a lion's; of beholding him
The eye ne'er tired. He was unique in form;
Wore golden boots; his sleeves were fringed with
pearls
And gold. Khusrau looked, stood astound, and
called
On God, then said: "O man of sunlike mien!
Say in what sort thou camest to this mill?
Why didst thou take it for thy resting-place
Full as it is of wheat and dust and hay?
Who art thou with such form, such Grace and looks?
Sure, heaven never saw the like of thee!"

The Sháh replied: "I am Íránian-born,
In flight before the army of Túrán."
The miller said, abashed: "I have no comrade
Save penury, but still, if barley-bread,
With some poor cresses from the river-bank,  
Will serve thee I will bring them; naught have I  
Besides: a man so straitened well may wail.”

Through stress of fight the Shâh had rested not,  
Or eaten, for three days and so replied:—  
“Bring what thou hast, that and the sacred twigs  
Will serve my turn.”

The poor and lowly miller
Brought him the cresses and the barley-bread,  
Made haste to fetch the sacred twigs and, reaching  
The toll-house1 on the way, crossed to the chief  
Of Zark to make request for them. Mâhwî  
Had sent men on all sides to find the Shâh,  
And so the chieftain asked the miller: “Friend!  
For whom need’st thou the sacred twigs?”

Khusrau
Replied: “There is a warrior at the mill,  
And seated on the hay, a cypress slim  
In height, a sun in looks, a man of Grace,  
With eyebrows arched and melancholy eyes:  
His mouth is full of sighs, his soul is sad.  
I set stale fare before him—barley-bread,  
Such as I eat myself—but he is fain  
To take the sacred twigs while muttering grace.2  
Thou well mayst muse at him.”

The chief rejoined:—  
“Go and inform Mâhwî of Sûr hereof,  
For that foul miscreant must not reveal  
His proper bent when he shall hear of this.”3

Forthwith he charged a trusty man to take

---

1 The toll-house was at the ford or ferry. The same word might also mean a place of worship and accordingly Mohl or rather his successor (see p. 17 note) translates:—’ Il se rendit au lieu où était l’oratoire et fit prévenir aussitôt le chef de Zark qu’on lui demandait le Barsom’.


3 I.e. if subsequently he should learn that we knew and did not tell him.
The miller to Máhwí who asked of him,  
Then anxious for himself; “For whom didst thou  
Require the sacred twigs? Tell me the truth.”  

The miller all a-tremble made reply:—  
“I had been out to fetch a load and flung  
The mill-door open roughly, when know this:  
The sun was in mine eyes, but his are like  
Those of a startled fawn; his locks are dark  
As the third watch of night; his breath suggesteth  
Musk, and his face embellishteth his crown.  
One that hath never seen the Grace of God  
Should take the mill-house key. His diadem  
Is full of uncut jewels, and his breast  
Bright with brocade of Rúm. The mill hath grown  
As 'twere a sun through him, and yet his food  
Is barley-bread, his seat upon the hay!  
'Spring,' thou wouldst say, 'in Paradise is he:  
No thane e'er set so tall a cypress-tree.'”

§ 10

How Máhwí of Súr sent the Miller to kill Yazdagird, and  
how the Archimages counselled Máhwí to forbear  

Now when Máhwí had taken thought he knew:—  
"'Tis none but Yazdagird!" and bade the miller:—  
"Haste and cut off his head forthwith or I  
Will cut thine own off presently and leave  
None of thy stock alive."

The chiefs, the nobles,  
And mighty men heard this and all the assembly  
Were filled with wrath at him; their tongues were charged
With words, their eyes with tears, An archimage, By name Rádwí, whose mind wore wisdom's bridle, Said to Máhwí: "O thou malignant one! Why hath the Div confused thine eyes? This know: The royal and prophetic offices Are two gems set within one finger-ring. To break one is to trample life and wisdom Beneath thy feet. Reflect upon thy words, And then forbear. Be not the Maker's foe. First will disaster come on thee herefrom, Then thou wilt leave a seed-plot for thy child, With fruit of colocynth and leafage blood. Ere long thou wilt behold thy head abased; Thy villainy will be exposed; thy sons Will reap what thou hast sown. This deed of thine Will wreck the Faith of God, and crown and throne Will curse thee."

Then a devotee devout, Who never put his hand forth to injustice, By name Hurmuzd, son of Kharrád, a man Who rested in the Faith, said to Máhwí:— "O thou oppressor! quit not thus the way Of holy God. I see thy heart and sense Bedimmed. We see thy breast a tomb. Though strong Thou hast no brain; thy mind is weak; thou seest The smoke and not the fire. I see that thou Wouldst have the malediction of the world, And, when thou quit'st it, travail, smart, and anguish. Now will thy lifetime prove a wretched one, And fire thy dwelling-place when thou departest."

He sat. Shahrán rose and addressed Máhwí:— "Why this audacity? Thou hast opposed The king of kings and cottoned with the Khán And the Faghfúr. Full many of this race Have proved of no account yet men ne'er hasted
To slay them. Shed not, as thou art a slave,
The blood of Sháhs because thou wilt be cursed
Till Doomsday."

This he said, and sat down weeping
In anguish with heart full and eyes all gall.
Then Mihr-i-Núsh stood forth in deep distress,
With lamentation, and addressed Máhwí:—
"O evil man of evil race, who art
Not well advised or just! a crocodile
Respecteth royal blood, a leopard finding
A slain king doth not rend him. O thou worse
In love and instinct than the beasts of prey!
Thou covetest the Sháh’s crown! When Jamshíd
Was slaughtered by Zahhák did that affect
Heaven’s will? Nay, when Zahhák had won the earth
Abtin appeared, the glorious Farídún
Was born, the fashion of the world was changed,
And thou hast heard what tyrannous Zahhák
Brought on himself as sequel of his crimes,
For though he lived above a thousand years
Still in the end the avenger came to him.
Then, secondly, when Túr, the exalted one,
Afflicted by his longing for Írán,
Slew in his folly virtuous Íraj,
On whom the very dust looked pityingly,
Dispatched him¹ to the hero Farídún,
And gave the world to sorrow, Minúchihr,
One of the race, appeared and undid all
Those bonds. When, thirdly, princely Siyáwush
Went forth to war, albeit reluctantly,
Afrásiyáb, inspired by Garsíwaz,
Washed shame and honour from his mind and wits,
And slew the youthful and right royal prince,
So that the world became his enemy.
Sprung from that prince the world-lord Kai Khusrau

¹ His head, according to the story. See Vol. i., p. 202.
Came and filled all the world with hubbub, clave
Asunder with his scimitar his grandsire, 1
And frayed all those that else had sought revenge.
The fourth count is the feud against Arjásp,
The slayer of Luhrásp. Asfandiyár
Went forth to fight with him and took swift wreak.
Fifth, is the vengeance ta’en for Sháh Hurmuзд.
Khusrau Parwíz, whenas he felt confirmed
In heart and power, dealt in the way we know
Both with Bandví and Gustaham. The sky,
Which then revolved, revolveth still. 2 Forgetting
What they had done for him, when his sire’s blood
And love and family appealed to him,
He in his day of strength abated theirs. 3
One may not scorn the occasion of revenge,
For such a time will quickly come to thee,
And thou wilt suffer for thine evil thoughts,
Thy son will reap what thou hast sown, and fate
Will not rest long from vengeance; so refrain
From all this treasure-hoard, this heritage
Of crown and precious things. Thou art revolting
Because the Dív enjoineth, and abjuring
The way of God. The Dív, as thou wilt learn,
Is tempting thee with things not for thine honour.
Burn not thy soul and body in Hell-fire;
Dim not this world-illumin crown but gather
Thy scattered troops; recant what thou hast said;
Go ask the Sháh to pardon thee and when
Thou seest him renew thy fealty.
From there prepare to battle with the foe;
Be instant both in counsel and excuse,
For not to hearken to the words of sages
Will mark thee out as evil in both worlds.
Men bring to naught things done a day too late.

1 Afrásiyáb, whose daughter Farangí married Siyáwush.
2 I.e. history repeats itself.
Wilt thou treat Yazdagird, the king of kings, 
Worse than malignant Turks, for in the fray 
He is a lion, on the throne a Sháh 
As bright as sun and moon, a memory 
Of the Sásánians? None is girdle-girt 
Like him. From sire to sire his ancestors 
Were mighty men and compassers of wisdom 
From Núshírwán, the Sháh, back to Ardshír, 
While, seventh backward from Ardshír, Sásán, 
The world-lord, had the crown,¹ for God entrusted 
To him the Kaián crown, and all the kings 
Were of that glorious race. Now many a man 
Hath been thy better, but they ne'er conceived 
Designs like these. As for Bahrám Chúbína, 
Three hundred thousand skilful cavaliers 
On barded steeds fled at one shaft of his,² 
And left the field of fight to him; but when 
His heart grew weary of the race of Sháhs 
The head of his resplendent fortune fell. 
So Faráyín, who sought the throne of kings 
Unworthily and bathed his hands in blood, 
Was in like manner miserably slain: 
This age endureth not such mockeries. 
Fear Him, the Lord, the Maker of the world, 
For He created throne and crown and signet. 
Defame not thine own person wantonly 
Because ere long such things will rise against thee. 
Know that whoever speaketh not the truth 
To thee is thy soul's foe. Now thou art sick 
While I am as the leech, a leech that waileth,

¹ De jure not de facto. The first Sásán, here referred to, was the son of Dárá and after his father's overthrow by Síkandar took refuge in obscurity. Several generations later a descendant of his of the same name became the father of Ardshír Pápakán—the founder of the Sásánian Dynasty. The Sásánians, naturally sought to connect themselves with the old line of the Persian monarchy, with the Achaemenids in history and with the Kaiánians in legend. Cf. Vol. vi., p. 199.

² See Vol. viii., p. 126.
And sheddeth drops of blood. Thou art thyself
Less than the slave of slaves. Be not ambitious
In thy heart's thoughts. Leave strife to holy God,
And seek in honour's way the throne of greatness.”

The shepherd-born had set his heart upon
The throne: the archimages' rede was hard.
So hath it ever been; 'tis no new thing:
The flouts of fortune are past reckoning,
Exalting to the sky above this one,
And making that vile, wretched, and undone,
Not leagued with that, on war with this not bent,
But void of wit, shame, Faith, and precedent.

The archimages all, till the world gloomed and moon
Succeeded sun, warned that vindictive man,
Who was not one hair better for their talk,
And said when night came: "Ye must leave me now
O sages! I will ponder this to-night,
And take all kinds of wisdom to my breast.
We will call twenty wise men from the host
That we may need not to deplore this ill.”

The prudent archimages went their ways,
The men of war arrived. Máhwí held session
With his confederates and said: "What think ye
Herein? If Yazdagird remain alive
Troops will collect to him from every side;
My secret purposes have been exposed,
And all, both great and small, have heard thereof!
My life will end through his hostility,
And neither folk nor field and fell be left.”

A wise man said: "Thou shouldst not have acted
At first so. If the monarch of Írán
Be ill-disposed toward thee then past doubt
Ill will befall thee from him, yet 'tis ill
To shed his blood for then God will avenge him.
To left and right are cares and pains of all kinds:

1. I.e. Máhwí. Cf. p. 87.  2 Reading with P.
Consider how thou need'st must act herein."

Máhwí's son said to him: "Well counselled sire! Since thou hast made the Sháh thine enemy Be rid of him; troops from Máchin and Chín Will come to him and earth grow strait for us. Hold this no trifle. Since thou hast prevailed Tempt not the maws of lions. Thou and all Thy host will be uprooted from the world If standard-wise the Sháh's skirt be unfurl'd."

§ 11

How Yazdagird was slain by Khusrau, the Miller

Thereat the shameless, infamous Máhwí Turned fiercely to the miller, saying: "Up! Take cavaliers and shed my foeman's blood."

The miller, hearing, knew not what to do, But when at night the moon assumed her throne Departed mill-ward to the Sháh and when He left the court-gate of Máhwí his eyes Were charged with tear-drops and his heart was full. Forthwith Máhwí dispatched some cavaliers To follow swift as smoke, instructing them:— "See that ye sully not the crown and earrings, The signet and the royal robes with blood, And strip the Sháh when lifeless."

With his eyes All tearful and cheeks yellow as the sun The miller went, exclaiming: "Judge almighty, Who art above the processes of time! Wring presently his heart and soul for this Abhorred behest!"

With heart all shame and qualm,
With wetted cheeks and tongue all charged with dust,
He reached the Sháh and drawing nigh with caution,
As one would speak a secret in the ear,
Stabbed with a dirk his middle. At the blow
The Sháh cried: "Ah!" Then tumbled head and crown,
And barley-bread before him, to the dust!
He that abideth when he might depart
From this world hath no wisdom in his heart,
And wisdom is not in the turning sky,
Whose love is as its stress and enmity.
'Tis well to look not on the world and so
From these its doings love and wrath not know.
The planets weary of their fosterlings,
    And guiltless folk like Yazdagird are slain;
None else hath perished thus of all the kings,
    Nor of his host a plier of the rein.
The horsemen of accursed Máhwí, on seeing
That royal Tree thus laid to rest afar
From palace and his scenes of ease, drew near,
Gazed, one and all, upon his face, removed
His cineture, violet robe, and coronet,
His torque and golden boots, and left him there
In miserable case upon the ground—
The monarch of Irán flung on the dust,
Blood-boltered, with gashed side!¹ Those emissaries,
When they arose, all framed their tongues to curse:—
"Oh! may Máhwí himself fare, prostrate thus,
All gory on earth's face."

They told Máhwí:—
"The exalted Sháh hath passed away from throne,
From battle and delights," and he commanded
To take, when it was night, the monarch's corpse,
And fling it in the stream. The miller took
The body of the Sháh forth from the mill,

¹ Reading the couplet that follows here two couplets lower.
And flung it (mark the horror!) in the water,¹
And there it floated with a bobbing head!²

When it was day and people went abroad
Two men of worship visited the spot.
One of these men austere and sober reached
The river-bank and, when he saw the corpse
All naked in the water, hurried back
In consternation to the monastery,
And told the other monks what he had seen:—
“The Sháh, the master of the world, is drowned,
And naked in the water-way of Zark!”

Then many of those holy men—the chief
And others of all ranks—set forth. A cry
Of anguish rose from them: “O noble man,
And royal crown-possessor! none e’er saw
The wearer of it in such plight as this,
Or ever heard before the time of Christ
A case like this king’s through his wicked slave,
This misbegotten dog, this reprobate,
Who fawned upon his master till ill came;
Máhwí’s just portion is to be accursed.
Woe for the head and crown, the height and mien!
Woe for the breast and arms, the hands and mace!
Woe for the last descendant of Ardshír!
Woe for that cavalier so young and goodly!
Strong wast thou; thou hadst wisdom in thy soul,
And thou hast gone to bear the news hereof
To Núshírwán that, though thy face was moonlike,
And though thou wast a king and soughtest crowns,
Yet in the mill they pierced thy liverstead,
And flung thy naked body in the stream!”³

Four of the monks went stripped into the water,
Seized the bare body of the youthful king,

¹ Thus, if we interpret the passage by strict Zoroastrian principles, polluting one of the elements and adding sacrilege to regicide, but cf. Vol. iv., p. 129.
² Couplet omitted.
³ Three couplets omitted.
That grandson of the world-lord Núshírwán,
And drew it to the bank while young and old
Lamented greatly. They prepared for him
Within the garth a charnel-house and raised
Its summit to the clouds. They sealed his wound
With gum, with pitch, with camphor, and with musk,
And then arrayed him in brocade of gold,
With fine Egyptian linen underneath,
And dark-blue Russian cloth o'er all. They decked
His place of rest with wine and gum and camphor,
With musk and with rose-water.

When the form
Was hidden of that noble Cypress-tree
What said that honoured thane of Marv? "In secret
A guerdon waiteth him that after travail
Departeth with good conscience from the world."

Another said: "Though man may laugh, yet know
That he is of the sufferers, for he
Will find the falseness of the turning sky,
Which will reveal to him both rise and fall."

Another said: "Call not him one of wit
That serveth his own form with princes' blood,
And seeketh wealth, despite of infamy,
With soul unfearful of an evil end."

Another said: "Since the Sháh's lips are closed
I see not crown or royal seat or signet,
Or courtiers or a realm or diadem,
Or throne or helmet, and if these possess
No moment in themselves why this expense
Of toil and time?"

"Thy good report, I see,"
Another said, "will win thee worthy praise.
Thou in the garth of Paradise didst set
A cypress: now thy soul beholdeth it."

Another said: "God took thy soul and gave
Thy body to the care of the devout."
Hereby thy soul is profited, hereby
Will harm betide the foe. The Sháh hath now
His work in Paradise; his foeman's soul
Is on the road to Hell."

Another said:—
"Wise, knowledge-loving Sháh sprung from Ardshír!
Thou reapest now the crop that thou didst sow:
The lamp of sovereignty is still alight."

Another said:—"Though thou'rt asleep, young king!
Thy spirit is awake. Thy lips are mute,
And with full many a groan thy spirit passed
And left thy body free. Thy work is done:
Thy soul is busy now. Thy foeman's head
Is on the stake. Although thy tongue is tied
Thy spirit speaketh, and thy soul is purged
Although thy form is pierced, while if thy hand
Have dropped the reins thy spirit still will wield
The spear in battle."

Said another one:—
"O famous warrior! thou hast departed
With thine own works as guide. Thy royal seat
Is now in Paradise; this earth of bale
Is now another's share."

"The man that slew
One such as thee," another said, "will look
Upon harsh days anon."

The prelate said:—
"Thy slaves are we and laud thy holy soul.
Be this, thy charnel, as a garth all tulips,
This bier thine upland and thy plain of joy."

They spake, took up the bier and carried it
From waste to mausoleum. Thither came
The hapless Sháh, crown, throne, and casque at end.
O man of many years, whose words still run!

Turn from the path of greed, break off thy strain.
What shall we say hereof? Was justice done,
Or vengeance by the seven planets ta'en,
On Yazdagird? The sage, if unresolved
Upon the point, could make me no reply,
Or if he spake 'twould be in words involved
That keep the answer still a mystery.
If thou hast means, good man! indulge thy heart;
Trust not to what the morrow promiseth,
Because the world and thou perforce must part,
And time accounteth for thine every breath;
Thou shouldest sow not any save good seed
In what remaineth of thy mortal strife;
Control the door of appetite and greed;
He that provided will provide through life,
And life itself will but produce for thee
Fair fame and happiness, good friend! Then still
With all thy might eschew iniquity,
For from a wise man should proceed no ill.
Bring wine; our day is nearly o'er and hence
We must away, for what hath been will be.
Had I incomings balancing expense
Then time would be a brother unto me.
The hail this year like death on me hath come,
Though death itself were better than the hail,
And heaven's lofty, far-extending dome
Hath caused my fuel, wheat, and sheep to fail.

§ 12

How Máhwi of Súr was informed of the Obsequies\(^1\) of
Yazdagird and ascended the Throne

One came and told Máhwi of Súr: "The world-lord
Is hidden in the dust. The prelates, priests,

\(^1\) "Slaying" in the text.
And monks of Rúm—all those of life austere,
Both young and old, throughout that march and land—
Went wailing, took his body from the stream,
And made for him within the garth a charnel—
A great one, higher than the mountain-slopes.”

Máhwí, that luckless wretch, exclaimed: “Írán
Had ne’er before affinity with Rúm.”
He sent and slew the builders of that charnel,
With those that mourned, and gave that march to spoil,
Such was his will and worth! Thereafter he
Made search throughout the world and found not one
Of that great stock. He had a crown and signet,
The Sháh’s erwhile, and to that shepherd-born
The throne appealed. He called his intimates,
Announced the purpose that he had at heart,
And told his minister: “Experienced man!
The day of strife and battle is upon us.
I have no treasure, fame or lineage,
And may but give my head up to the winds.
The name that is upon my signet-ring
Is Yazdagird: my scimitar hath failed
To make men yield to me. Throughout Írán
Men are his slaves although his kin is scattered.
The sages do not hail me as the Sháh,
The soldiers do not recognise my seal.
My machinations tended otherwise.
Oh! wherefore did I shed the world-king’s blood?
All night am I sore-troubled in my thoughts:
The World-lord knoweth how it is with me.”

The counsellor replied: “The thing is done,
And common talk. Act for thine own behoof,
For thou hast burst thy belt. The Sháh is dust
Within the charnel; dust hath healed his soul.”

\[1\] Reading with P.
Call round thee all the world-experienced men,
And set thy tongue to words of pleasantness.
Say thus: 'The Sháh gave me the crown and signet
As emblems of authority, perceiving
The coming of an army from the Turks,
Called me at dead of night, and said: "When bruit
Of war ariseth who can say which side
The dust will be, so take this crown and ring,
For they may help thee on the day of battle.
I have one daughter only left to me:
In truth she is in hiding from the Arabs.
Hereafter yield not to the foe my throne,
And by these tokens walk thou in my steps."
I have then from the Sháh as legacy
This crown and in accord to his behest
Am sitting on the throne.' By this device
Give thou thine acts a gloss for who will know
The truth from falsehood?"

"Good!" exclaimed Máhwí,
"Thou art a minister—a peerless one!"
He summoned all the captains of the host,
And spake at large to them to that effect.
They knew: "It is not true, and well it were
To cut his head off for his shamelessness."
A paladin observed: "'Tis thy concern
If what thou sayest be the truth or not."
He heard and sat him down upon the throne,
By his deceit gat hold of Khurásán,
Distributed the earth among his chiefs,
And said: "I am the world's king with the signet."
He called his kin and said the same at large;
He took the whole earth as it were a gift;
The stars were in amaze at him. He chose
The vicious as accorded to his nature,
Debased the sages and made everywhere
Chiefs of the bad. The head of right was humbled,
And knavery on all sides manifest.
He gave his elder son Balkh and Harát,
And sent troops to each quarter. As his host
And treasures grew the heart of that ingrate
Was gratified. He gave his troops rewards
And put them in good case; he filled the heads
Of his own kith and kin with vapourings.
Then with his troops and valiant warriors,
Preceded by the scouts and Garsiyún—
A veteran chief—they marched upon Bukhárá,
Intent on war, for "Chách and Samarkand
Are ours," Máhwí said, "and they must be made
The captives of this crown and seal, for so
Did Yazdagird, king of the world, command—
Chief of the planets seven. With the sword
Will I take vengeance on Bízhan by whom
The fortune of earth's king was turned to gloom."

§ 13

How Bízhan, hearing of the Slaying of Yazdagird and
of Máhwí of Súr's Accession to the Throne, led
forth the Host to fight with him

In time news reached Bízhan: "Máhwí hath seized
The throne of might and everywhere imposeth
His seal and signet; earth accepteth him,
And now with warlike troops his face is turned
Toward the Jihún for battle."

"Who bestowed
The signet on him?" asked Bízhan, and one
Acquainted him with all: "When thou didst reach
The desert of Farab, and fortune's lips
Were closed to good and ill, there parted hence
To him a force of haughty cavaliers
In quest of fame, for he had said: "If thou
Wilt send me troops I will dispatch to thee
By privy pact the crown of king of kings
With golden throne and signet. In the world
The sovereignty is fitly thine." Thy troops
Went hence in haste and found the Sháh at Marv.
They compassed him about. The Iránians fled.
When that wise king was left alone he feared
That ill might come upon him from the host.
There was a certain mill upon the ford,
And thither went the Sháh, a sun in Grace.
Máhwí of Súr heard of him, sent and slew him,
And through the royal signet gained the world
When he had slain his master. Now the more part
Of praise and blame in this affair is thine,
Thine were the valiant horsemen and the strife."
Barsám said thus: "O king! what time I took
A mounted force from Chách Máhwí had said
To thee: "The golden throne of Yazdagird,
His armlets set with gems, his crown withal
And treasure, will I send to Balkh. The throne
And crown within the world must needs be thine."
I fought three days at Marv. When on the fourth
The world’s light shone I battled furiously,
For I was pressed. Tyrannical Máhwí
Displayed his back. The Iránian king of kings,
Abandoned, like a furious lion charged
My troops and slaughtered many of my chiefs,
But, when he had no comrades left, he too
Displayed his back; but how that master-slayer,
That faithless slave, put him to death I know not.
Thus with no toil Máhwí obtained and used
His master’s treasures. Then the miscreant,
Becoming dazed by so much wealth, appeared,
Thou mightest say, as if he ne'er had seen me!
Although my troops remained two months at Marv
He gave us no kind look but put to death,
And privily, his lord, so great a king,
The lustre of the world, a cavalier
That 'raiseth o'er the orbit of the moon
His head amidst the host' thou wouldst have said.
No Turk encountered and escaped his mace:
He broke our nobles' hearts. I have not seen
Such breastplate, hand, and mace. Máhwí thus furnished
Seized on the realm in this unholy wise.
Now that the foe in arms invadeth thee
Thou and thine army must be up and doing.
Let not weeds blossom in the royal garden
Or it will be forgotten.''

Hearing this,
Bízhan raged much at having helped to dim
The fortune of the Sháh, then bade assemble
His host of Turks, his horsemen of the day
Of battle, sped forth from Káchár Báshí,
And lost no time upon the road. Whenas
He drew anear Bukhárá all the waste
Was covered with his troops to whom he said:
"Haste not and let Máhwí be first to lead
His host across the water\(^1\) to contend
With me. Perchance on him I may avenge
The Sháh."

He asked thereafter: "Did the king
Leave no availful child? Had he no brother?
In the default of sons had he no daughter,
Whom we might carry with us and assist,
And take full satisfaction of Máhwí?"

Barsám replied: "My lord! this race's day
Is passed; the Arabs hold those provinces;

\(^1\) The Oxus.
No Sháh is left or worshipper of Fire.”

Bízhan, on hearing this, resumed his march,
Astound at this world’s doings. Scouts announced:—
“A host hath come and campeth at Baigand.
They crossed in boats, their dust obscured the sun.”

Bízhan, the chief, led on his troops to war,
And when Máhwí of Súr beheld them thou
Hadst said: “His soul took flight.” He was in
dudgeon
At all those breastplates, helmets, shields of Chín,
At all those maces, spears, and battle-axes
Of Chách. The air grew dark and earth was lost
To sight therein as he arrayed his host.

§ 14

How Máhwí of Súr was taken and slain by Order of
Bízhan

Bízhan, when he had drawn up his array,
Prepared an ambush for the Írániáns;
Máhwí knew of it and with loud exclaims
Departed from among his troops. Bízhan
Looked forth, beheld the flag, and knew: “Máhwí
Is minded to take flight,” and bade Barsám:—
“Lead from the central host what troops thou hast,
And draw toward one side; we must not let
Máhwí decline the battle and haste thus
Jíhún-wards. Speed and keep him well in sight,
For we must deal with him in other wise.”

Barsám of Chín observed the flag and drew
His troops apart until with frowning face,
And malisons upon his lips, he reached
The desert of Farab, there found Máhwí,
And, with his weight upon the stirrups, charged; 
Then, closing face to face, he plied his sword, 
Displaying valour, seized his foeman’s belt, 
Unseated him and dashed him to the ground, 
Alighted, bound his hands, and then remounting 
Drove him along in front. With that came up 
Barsám’s own comrades, and the bruit of him 
Filled all the plain. They said: “O chief! Máhwí 
Should be beheaded on the way.”

He answered:—

“Not so; Bízhan as yet is not informed 
About the capture.”

Presently Bízhan

Gat news: “That ill-conditioned slave is taken,”
Heard and grew glad of heart. He hugged himself, 
And thus released from care roared lion-like. 
Then many valiant Turks came and discussed 
The fashion of the slaying of Máhwí. 
All that they recognised as of his court 
They put to death—a countless multitude. 
They looted all the baggage and dragged off 
Máhwí stripped bare of all. The guilty wretch 
Lost all his wits when he beheld Bízhan, 
Was as a soulless body with affright, 
And strewed upon his head the unstable sand. 
Bízhan said: “O thou miserable! may none have 
A slave like thee! Why didst thou put to death 
That righteous Sháh, the lord of victory 
And throne, and by ancestral right both Sháh And king, the memory of Núshírwán? ”
Máhwí made answer thus: “The evil-doer 
Can look for naught but slaying and reproach. 
Now smite my neck for wrong done and fling down 
My head in presence of this company.”

The other gave reply: “I will so act 
That I shall banish vengeance from my heart,”
Struck off Máhwí's hand with the scimitar,
And said: "This hand hath not a peer in crime."
The hand thus lopped, he said: "Cut off his feet
That he may not escape," and further bade:—
Cut off his nose and ears, let him be placed
Upon a horse out on the burning sand
Until he sleepeth in his shame."

They bound him
From head to foot with cords, the clarions sounded,
A herald went the circuit of the host,
And, as he passed the entry of the tents,
Made proclamation: "Slaves that slay your masters!
Indulge no foolish thoughts, and may all those
Without compunction for a monarch's life
Be as Máhwí and never see the throne."

There was a prince, by name Guráz, at once
The glory and the pleasure of Máhwí.
He was the governor of Marv what time
Máhwí died wretchedly. As eldest son
He was his father's lustre, who had made
A crown of gold for him. When fortune loured
Upon Máhwí the horsemen rode to Marv
From all sides. Tumult spread. The war-cry rose,
And strife and turmoil filled the land. Guráz
Was slain mid those dark doings, and the day
Of all his race was done. He had three sons
Among his troops, three favourite sons possessed
Of crown and throne. A lofty pyre was kindled,
And he and his three sons were burned thereon.
None of the seed remained or if some did
Men harried them. The chieftains cursed that race,
All vengeful for the slaughter of the Sháh:—
"May it be cursed and may there never fail
A man to curse it as it hath deserved."

Bízhan, the Turk, too was an evil-doer.
His own time came, his wisdom was estranged,
And I have heard that he grew mad at last,
And was so till he slew himself. Well done,
Thou still revolving, crook-backed sky! Since then
Hath been the epoch of 'Umar, made known
The Faith, and to a pulpit changed the throne.

§ 15

Account of the Completion of the Sháhnáma

When five and sixty years had passed me by
I viewed my task with more anxiety,
And as my yearning to achieve it grew
My fortune's star receded from my view.
Persians well read and men of high degree
Wrote all my work out and would take no fee.
I over-looked from far, and thou hast said
That they had rather handselled me instead!
Naught but their praises had I for my part,
And while they praised I had a broken heart.
The mouths of their old money-bags were tied,
Whereat mine ardent heart was mortified.
Of famous nobles of this town 'Ali,
The Dílamite,¹ most shared the work with me,
For he, a man of ardent temper made,
Through kindliness of soul forwent no aid.
Husain, son of Kutíb, a Persian lord,
Asked me for naught without its due reward,
But furnished gold and silver, clothes and meat,
And found me ways and means, and wings and feet.
As for taxation, naught thereof know I;
All at mine ease in mine own quilt I lie.

¹ In Vol. i., p. 35, the names are given according to the reading of BCM.
What time my years attained to ten times seven
And one my poetry surmounted heaven.
For five and thirty years I bore much pain
Here in this Wayside Inn in quest of gain,
But all the five and thirty years thus past
Naught helped; they gave my travail to the blast,
And my hopes too have gone for evermore
Now that mine age all but hath reached fourscore.
I end the story of Sháh Yazdagird,
And in Sapandármad, the day of Ard,
And year four hundred of Muhammad’s Flight,
The last words of this royal book I write.
For ever flourishing be Sháh Mahmúd,
His head still green, his heart with joy imbued.
I have so lauded him that publicly
Andprivily my words will never die.
Of praises from the Great I had much store;
The praisesthat I give to him are more.
May he, the man of wisdom, live for aye,
His doings turn to his content alway.
This tale of sixty thousand couplets I
Have left to him by way of memory.

C. 2096

My life from days of youth to eld hath sped
In talk and hearkening what others said.
When this, my famous tale, was done at last
O’er all the realm my reputation past.
All men of prudence, rede, and Faith will give
Applause to me when I have ceased to live,
Yet live I shall; the seed of words have I
Flung broad-cast and henceforth I shall not die.

The Sháhnáma of Firdausí is ended.
INDEX

This Index and the Table of Contents at the beginning of the volume are complementary. References to the latter are in Roman numerals.

A
ABBREVIATIONS, list of, xi
Abtin, father of Faridun, 53, 103
Abu Bakr, Khalifa, 76
begins war with Persian Empire, 66
Abu 'Ubaida, Arab general, 66
supersedes Khalid in Syria, 66
Abu 'Ubaida, Arab general, 67
made commander in Persian campaign, 67
slain, 67
Afrasiyab, ruler of Turan, 25, 103
Ahriman, the Evil Principle, 8, 18, 73, 74, 79, 91
Al, place, 93
Alburz, Mount, 25
'All, the Dilmite, friend of Firdausi, 121
Altunlya, place, 92
Amul, city in Mazarardaran, 86
Apologue, 86
Apothegms, 87, 88, 110
Arab, Arabs, 3, 5, 25, 60, 69, 70, 72, 75 seq., 79, 89, 92, 94, seq., 114, 117
invasion of Iran by, 3, 65 seq.
steeds, 11
tribes, 65
triumph of, over Dhу Karr, 66
chieftain, incites Abu Bakr to invade Persia, 66
concentrate at Kadosiya, 67
Arab, Arabs, booty found by, at Ctesiphon (?), 68
annex Mesopotamia, 68
Khuzistan, 68
=Umar, 72
seal, 82
=Sa'd, 84
defeated, 85
Nushirwan's dream of, 92
Arabian, Arabians, 74, 85
Arabic, 81
Archmages, viii
Ard, day, 70, 122
Ardrshir Papakhan, first Sassanian Shah, 105, 109, 111
Ardrshir, son of Shahrwiz, Shah, vii, 43 seq.
makes Piruz general, 44
entertains Piruz at feast, 48
death of, 49
treasury of, squandered by Guraz, 53
Arish, famous Iranian archer, 25
Arjasp, king of Turan, 104
Arman, Iranian chief, 74
'Arus, treasure, 29
Arwand (Tigris), river, 85, 92
Asandiyar, son of Shah Gush-tasp, 25, 26 note, 104
Ashtad, Iranian chief, 11 seq.
chosen to visit Khusraw Parviz at Taisafun, 9
and Khurad parley with Galfnush, 11
visit Khusraw Parviz, 11
report to Shahrwiz, 27
Astrolabe, 73
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>INDEX</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Astrologer, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ázar, month and day, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ázar, Ábdagán (Ázargashasp q.e.), 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ázargashasp, spirit of the lighting, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temple of (Ázar Ábdagán) at Shíz (Takht-i-Saláimán) in Ázarbájíán, 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ázarmduktih, Sháh, vii, 56, 59, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reproaches Kubád, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end of, 59, 60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**B**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BABYLON, 65, 92</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zahhák, king of, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bactrian, camels, 93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bád Áwar, treasure, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baghdád, Persian settlement of, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raided by Arabs, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baghdad, city (Cf. Vol. viii, p. 109 note), 88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yazdagird quits, 88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bahrain, group of islands in Persian Gulf, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bahrám Chúbína, Íránian hero, 6, 15, 16, 22, 91, 105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assassination of, referred to, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romance of, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bahrám Gúr, Sháh, 26, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baigand, city and fortress between Bukhárá and Oxus, Máchwi encamps at, 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balkh, city, 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bestowed by Máchwi on his son, 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bandwi, maternal uncle of Khusrau Parwíz, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>execution of, referred to, 4, 16, 104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bárbad, minstrel, vii, 29 and note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visits Khusrau Parwíz in prison, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lament of, 30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Barda’, city on the borders of Ázarbájíán and Armenia, 15</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Balsám, general of Bízhán, 97, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marches on Marv, 97, 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Máchwi’s conduct to, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pursues and overtakes Máchwi, 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>captures Máchwi, 119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bartás, region in Turkistán, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barzin, father of Kharrád, 4, 9, 12, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basra (Bassora), city on the Shatt-el-Arab, 68, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>founded by 'Umar, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battle of the Bridge, 5, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bízhán, Khán of Turks, viii, 70, 96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Máchwi writes to, 96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consults his minister, 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sends troops to Marv, 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Máchwi makes war on, 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>riches against Máchwi, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lays ambush for Máchwi, 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sends Balsám in pursuit of Máchwi, 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hears of Máchwi’s capture, 119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puts Máchwi to death, 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goes mad and kills himself, 120, 121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brahman, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bridge, Battle of the, 5, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bukhárá, city on the Zarashán river in the province of Sughd, 97, 115, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bust, city in Sístán, 89</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**C**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CÉSAR, 10, 23</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>letter of, about the True Cross referred to, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chách (Táshkand), city in Túrán, 115, 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>battle-axes of, 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chahram (Jahram), city in Párs, 29, 61</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chín country (often = Turán), 10, 19, 41, 107, 118
sashes from, 12, 53
gold thread of, 82
Khán of, 87
merchantmen of, 89
shields of, 118
Christ, 24, 109
Cross of, 23
Christian, 23
Commander of the Faithful, 72 'Umar, the first. 72 and note
Contents Table of, vii
Cross, the true, 4, 5, 10, 24
restoration of, 7, 56
of Christ, 23
Elevation of, 43
Crystal, House of, 25 and note
Ctesiphon (Taisafán q.v.), 65 seq.
taken by Shahrbaraz, 43, 44
Sa'ad, 67
booty found at, 68

D

Dahistán, town, also district north of the Atrak, 95
Dai, day, 17
Dang, coin, 94 and note
Darkness, House of, 7
Dastagird, city, 7
Dhú Kár, Battle of, 4, 5, 66
Dilamite, 'All the, friend of Firdausí, 121
Dív, divs, 18, 25
= Áhriman, 47, 102, 104

E

Egyptian, 110
linen, 110

F

Faghfür of Chín, 87, 97, 102
Faithful, Commander of the, 72 'Umar, the first, 72 and note
Farab (Firabr), town on the Oxus opposite to Amu, desert cf, 115, 118
Faráyín (Guráz, Shahrbaráz q.v.), Sháh, vii, 50, 53, 105
accession-speech of, 52
counselled by his eldest son,
52
counselled by his youngest son, 53
misrule of, 53
plot against, 54
Faridún, Sháh, 25, 39, 53, 71, 86, 103
Farruhán (Farrukhán). See Faráyín.
Farrukhán (Farruhán). See Faráyín.
Farrukh-Hurmuzd (Hurmuzd q.v.), father of Rustam, 69
Farrukházad, Sháh, viii, 61 seq.,
70
Siyah Chashm and, 62
poisons, 63
Farrukházad, son of Hurmuzd, brother of Rustam, and favourite of Khusrav Parwíz, 23, 87, 92, 95
bribes Mihr Hurmuzd to murder Khusrav Parwíz, 33
defeats the Arabs, 85
counsels Yazdagird, 86, 87
leads the host to Khurásán, 89
entrusts Yazdagird to Máhwí, 95
goes to Rai, 96
Farúd, son of Shirín and Khusrav Parwíz, 39
Firdausí, 69
account of Arab conquest by, supplemented, 65
Yazdagird's death, 70, 107
reflections on, 108, 111
on completion of Sháhnáma, 121
friends and assistants of, 121
exempt from taxation, 121
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDEX</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Firdausi, time spent on Sháh-náma, by, 122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praise of Sultán Mahmúd, by, 122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flight of Muhammad, referred to, 122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ford and toll-house of Zark, 100 and note, 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GALBWÍ, Iránian chief, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gallúsh, Persian general, 5, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parley of, with Kharrád and Ashtád, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gang-dízh, stronghold, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garsíwaz, brother of Afrásiyáb, 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garsíyún, Iránian chief, 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gashasp, father of Ashtád q.v., 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gemini, constellation, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gil (Gíl, Gílán), district on south-west coast of Caspian, 93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glory. See Grace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grace or Glory, the divine, 8, 26, 30, 31, 41, 44, 47, 73, 74, 79, 90, 91, 95, 99, 100, 101, 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gúdarz, Iránian hero, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seventy sons of, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gumbadán, Mount, 93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stronghold on, 93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guráz (Shahrbaráz, Faráyín q.v.) general of Khusrau Parwíz and Sháh, vii, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rebellion of, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>message of, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>writes to Pirúz, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pirúz writes to, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>account of, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meaning of, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dual personality of, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marches on Taisafún, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confers with Iránian magnates, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>misrule of, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conspiracy against, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goes hunting, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guráz, end of, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guráz, son of Málhwí, referred to, 107, 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>governor of Marv, 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put to death with his sons, 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gurdwí, brother of Bahrám Chúbína, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gurdyá, sister of Bahrám Chúbína, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gurgán, province on the southeastern shores of the Caspian, 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gushtásp, Sháh, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gustaham, maternal uncle of Khusrau Parwíz, 4, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assassination of, referred to, 16, 104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAMADÁN, city in 'Irák 'Ajami, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haram, of Khusrau Parwíz, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harát, city in north-western Afghánistán, 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bestowed by Málhwí on his son, 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Háshim, Arab general, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sent by 'Umar in pursuit of Yazdagírd, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wins battle of Jalúlá, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>takes Hulwán, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Háshimite = Muhammad, 81 and note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heraclius, Eastern Roman Emperor, 5, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shírwi's letter to, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alliance of, with Shahrbaráz, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hilál, Arab, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slayer of Rustam son of Farrukh-Hurmuzd, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hindústán, 17, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Híra, city, west of the Euphrates near Nedjef, 5, 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kingdom of, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abolished by Khusrau Parwíz, 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attacked by Persians, 67</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

Houri, 81
House of Darkness, 7
Crystal, 25 and note
Hulwán, town on the border of 'Irák 'Ajamí, west of Kirmánsháh
Yazdagird retires to, 67
taken by Háshim, 68
Hurmużd, son of Núshirwán,
Sháh, 4, 15, 104
Hurmużd (Hurmużdsháh, Farrukh-Hurmużd q.v.),
father of Rustam, 72, 78
85, 89, 96
Hurmużd Shahránguráz (Shahránguráz q.v.), 54
Hurmużd, devotee, 102
pleads with Máhwí for Yazdagird, 102
Husain, friend of Firdausí, 121
Húshang, Sháh, 25, 41

Íránians, defeat of, at Marv, 116
ambushed, 118
Istákh (Persepolis), 50, 54
Yazdagird taken to, 64
made Sháh at, 65

J

Jahram. See Cháhram.
Jalúlá, 68
Jámaís, minister of Gushtásp, 26
Jamshíd Sháh, 25, 39, 103
Jarmána, place, 93
Jerusalem, 43
Elevation of the True Cross
at, 43
Jesus, 10
Jíhún (Oxus), river, 77, 115, 118
Jins, 81

K

Kábúl, city
falchion of, 98
Kácher Básíl, city in Túrán, 117
Kádisíya, town west of Euphrates and near
Nedjef, 5, 73, 74, 77, 78
Battle of, 5, 67, 69
date of, 67
canal of, 69
Rustam advances to, 73
Káian, crown, 11, 105
Kai Káás, Sháh, 25
Kai Khusráu, Sháh, 25, 103
Kai Kúbád, Sháh, 25
Kalát, stronghold, 91
Káran, Íránian hero, 25
Karkh, a suburb of Baghdad, 85
Arab defeat at, 85
Káshmirán, son of Farrukhzád,
92
Káwa, the smith, 30
flag of, 30, 67
Khálíd, Arab general, 66
begins hostilities against
Persian Empire, 66
recalled to lead Syrian cam-
paign, 66
INDEX

Khán of Chín, 87, 102
  =Bížhan, 97
Khárrád, son of Barzín, Íránian minister, 4, 11, 12, 24
  end of, 4
  chosen to visit Khusrau Parwíz at Taisfán, 9
Ashtád and, parley with Galínush, 11
  visit Khusrau Parwíz, 12
  report to Shírwi, 27
Khárrád, father of Hurmužd, 102
Khurásán, province in northeastern Írán, viii, 59, 69, 87, 88, 92
Máhwi becomes master of, 114
Khusrau Parwíz, Sháh, vii, 4 seq., 11, 12, 25, 26 note, 30, 31, 33 seq., 38 seq., 45 seq.
  charges against, 4, 5, 9, 10
  reply of, to charges, 5, 14 seq.
Háram of, 4, 5
  last days of, Theophanes’ account of, 6
Shírwi’s treatment of, 7
  sons of, executed, 7, 35
Shérfín and, 7
  imprisoned at Taisfán, 9
  accompanied by Shérfín, 29
Bárbad visits, 29
  laments over, 30
  steed of, 30
  son of, 31
  referred to, 33 and note
  kingdom of Híra abolished by, 66
Muhammad’s letter to, 66
Khusrau, father of Pírúz, vii, 44, 46, 48, 49, 51, 57
  Khusrau, a miller, viii, 99. See Miller.
Khúzistán (Susiana), province at head of Persian Gulf annexed by Arabs, 68
Khuzrá, treasure, 20
Kíbchák, region east of the Jaxartes and north of Táshkand, 93
Kirwán (Karwán, district north of Jaxartes?), 93
Kísrá Núshírwán. See Núshírwán.
Kubád, son of Pírúz, Sháh, 22, 25
Kubád (Shírwi q.v.), Sháh, vii, 3, 4, 9, 11, 12, 14, 24, 32, 47, 64
  tragic reign of, 3
  pestilence during, 3
  boorishness of, 3
  difficult situation of, 3
  reproached by his sisters, 7
Kúfa, city, west of Euphrates and north of Nédjef, 68, 69
  founded by Sa’ad, 67
Kurán, 81
  quoted, 81 and note
Kutíb, father of Husain, 121

L
Lázhawardí fort, 93
Luhrásp, Sháh, 104

M
Máchín (China), 107
Mahmúd, Sultán, praise of 122
Makhzám, place, 93
Máhwi, Persian chief, viii, 70, 74, 89, 95, 97, 100 seq. 118
  described, 87
  Farrukhzád entrusts Yazdagird to, 95
  accepts charge of Yazdagird, 96
  becomes disaffected to Yazdagird, 96
  writes to Bížhan, 96, 116
  betrays Yazdagird, 97, 98, 116, 117
  quest of, for Yazdagird, 100
  has tidings of Yazdagird, 101
  consults his warriors, 106
  son of, counsels, 107
INDEX

Máhwí, son of, receives Balkh and Harát, 115
governor of Marv, 120
punished with his sons, 120
sends miller to slay Yazdagird, 107, 116
troops after miller with instructions, 107
troops of, strip corpse of Yazdagird, 108
hears of death of Yazdagird, 108
bids miller throw corpse of Yazdagird into stream, 108
slays monks, 113
consults his intimates and minister, 113
advised by his minister, 113
claims the throne on false pretences, 114
becomes master of Khurásán, 114
evils rule of, 114
makes war on Bizhan, 115
conduct of, to Barsám, 117
crosses Oxus and camps at Baigand, 118
fleeing, 118
overtaken by Barsám, 118
captured by Barsám, 119
put to death by Bizhan, 120
Marchlords, viii
Mardánsháh (Yalán-sín, q.v.), 5, 6
son of, 5, 6
conspires against Khusraw Parwiz, 6
mutilation and execution of, 6
Mardánsháh (Mardásas), son of Shírin and Khusraw Parwiz, 39
Mardásas (Mardánsháh, q.v.), 7
evaluation of, 7
Márs, planet, 73, 89
Márusipand, palace, 11
Marv, oasis and city in ancient northern Khurásán, now in Turkistan, 70, 89, 116, 117

Marv, traditional scene of Yazdagird’s death, 70
Yazdagird at, 97, 116
thane of, 110
apotheosis of, 110
conduct of Máhwí to Barsám at, 117
Guráz, son of Máhwí, governor of, 120
Mázandarán, region between Alburz range and Caspian, 74
Mecca, city, 69
Mercury, planet, 73
Mesopotamia, annexed by Arabs, 68
Mih-Azar-Gushnasp, minister of Ardshír, son of Shirí, in Arabic Tabari, 43
put to death, 43
Mihr, feast, 40
Mihr ‘Hási, minister of Ardshír, son of Shirí, in Persian Tabari, 43
put to death, 43
Mihr Hurmužd, murderer of Khusraw Parwiz, vii, 34
account of, 5
referred to, 6, 33
conspires against Khusraw Parwiz, 6
put to death, 7
described, 33
Mihr-i-Núsh, 103
pleads with Máhwí for Yazdagird, 103
Mill, viii, 98, 116
Miller, viii, 79
Yazdagird and, 99
informs chief of Zark about Yazdagird, 100
informs Máhwí about Yazdagird, 101
bidden to slay Yazdagird, 107
bidden to fling corpse into stream, 108
Minúchihr, Sháh, 103
Mír Khánd, distich of, quoted, 56
Monks, 109
find Yazdagird, 109

VOL. IX
INDEX

Monks, lament over and entomb Yazdagird, 109 seq.
sentences of, over Yazdagird, 110
slain by Máhwí, 113
Mughíra, son of Shu'ba. See Shu’ba Mughíra, 69
Muhammad, the Prophet, 69, 81 seq.
letter of, to Khusrau Parwiz, 66
Flight of, referred to, 122
Muslim, 85

N

NAHÁVAND, city, south of Hamadán, 68, 69
Yazdagird concentrates his forces at, 68
Battle of, 69
Nárwan, forest of, 86
Nastúr, son of Shírín and Khusrau Parwiz, 39
Nile, 98
Nímrúz*, 5, 6
satrapy of, 69
Nishápúr, city in Khurásán, 95
Niyátás (Theodosius, son of Maurice), 23
Note on Pronunciation, xii
Nu’mán bin Munzír, prince of Híra, 5
Nu’mán, Arab general, 68
sent by ’Umar to fight Yazdagird, 68
defeats Pírúzás at Nahávand, 68
slain, 69
Núshírván, Sháh, 22, 26, 71, 80, 92, 105, 109, 110, 119
Letter of Counsel of, 22
division of Empire by, 69
dream of, 92

O

OMEN of the quince, 13, 14
Oxus (Jihún), river
referred to, 117 and note, 118

P

PAHLAVÍ, middle Persian language of Ashkánáid (Parthian) and Sásánian times, 50
Paidáwasís, Persian coin—five dinárs, 19
Párs (Persis, Parsistán), country on eastern shore of Persian Gulf, 68
Parsís, 64
Parwiz. See Khusrau Parwiz.
Persepolis (Istakhr), 65
Persia, 66
Persian, Persians, 5, 7, 20, 37, 40, 54, 60, 66, 67, 69, 70, 72, 77, 79, 85, 121
ideas on marriage, 7
language, 12, 65
=Ashtád and Khárrád, 24
exonorate Shírín, 38
empire, 65, 66
Gulf, 66, 68
win “The Battle of the Bridge,” 67
fail in attack on Híra, 67
defeat of, at Kádisíya, 67, 84
Jalúlá, 68
Náhávand, 69
Shu’ba Mughíra’s embassy to, 69
robes, 94
transcribe Sháhnáma for Firdausí, 121
Pestilence, in reign of Kubád, 3, 7
Pírúz, son of Khusrau, minister of Ardshír son of Shírwi, vii
appointed general, 44

*See p. 333 note.
### INDEX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 131  | P próz, letter of Guráz to, 46
      | writes to Guráz, 47
      | Guráz marches against, 48
      | appeals to Tukhár, 48
      | feasts with Ardshír, 48
      | informs Guráz of the death
      | of Ardshír, 51
      | put to death, 57
      | Rúm, Eastern Roman Empire, 10, 11, 20, 39, 41, 45, 46, 113
      | brocade of, 99, 101
      | monks of, slain by Máhwí, 113
      | Rúman, Rúmans, 23, 60
      | Russian, cloth, 110
      | Rustam, son of Zál, Iránian hero, 25
      | Rustam, Persian commander
      | in chief under Yazdagird
      | III., vii, 66, 67, 69, 73.
      | 81 seq., 90, 95
      | overthrows Azarmdukht, 59
      | advances to Kádisíya, 67,
      | 73
      | end of, 69
      | finds evil aspects in the stars,
      | 73
      | hears of Shu’ba Mughíra’s
      | arrival, 82
| 46   | P próz, letter of Guráz to, 46
      | writes to Guráz, 47
      | Guráz marches against, 48
      | appeals to Tukhár, 48
      | feasts with Ardshír, 48
      | informs Guráz of the death
      | of Ardshír, 51
      | put to death, 57
| 59   | Pírúz, son of Shápúr, Iránian
      | noble
      | takes Rustam’s letter to
      | Sa’ad, 50, 81
| 59   | Pírúzan, Persian general,
      | commands Persian forces at
      | Nahávand, 68
      | slain, 69
| 71   | Pisces, constellation.
      | Plague. See Pestilence.
      | Pronunciation, Note on, xii
| 56   | Púrándukht, Sháh, vii, 56
      | reproaches Kubád, 7
      | makes Shahránguráz prime
      | minister, 56
| 56   | True Cross and, 56
| 50   | Pusfarrukh, 50
| 13   | Quince, omen of the, 13, 14
| 102  | Rádvi, archimage
      | pleads with Máhwí for Yaz-
      | dagír, 102
| 68   | Rai, city and district near Tih-
      | rán, 68, 69, 89, 95, 96
| 17   | Rája, 17
      | letter of, 17
      | put in charge of Shírín, 17
| 95   | Raven, Raven-head, 91 and note,
      | 95 note, 96
| 38   | Revellers Rosary of 38, 40
| 50   | Roman, 50, 66
| 38   | Rosary of Revellers, 38, 40
| 91   | Rúaña, place, 91
| 82   | Sád, son of Wakkás, Arab
      | general, vii, 67, 68, 82
      | seq., 90
      | succeeds Abú ’Ubaida, 67
      | at Kádisíya, 67, 69
      | founds Kúfa, 67
      | takes Ctesiphon, 67
      | recalled, 68
      | sent by ’Umar to invade
      | Irán, 72
      | letter of Rustam to, 78
      | taken by Pírúz 80, 81
| 47   | Sada, feast, 40, 92
| 96   | Samarkand, city in Turkistán,
      | 96, 115
| 122  | Sapandármad, month, 70, 122
| 86   | Sarí, city in Mázandárán, 86
| 56   | Sásán, son of Dárá, 105 and note
      | lineage of 56, 105
| 4   | Sásánian, Sásánians, 4, 5, 46,
      | 47, 50, 54, 65, 72, 73, 76,
      | 77, 83, 105
| 4    | Dynasty, 4

---

**S**

Sa’ad, son of Wakkás, Arab general, vii, 67, 68, 82 seq., 90
succeeds Abú ’Ubaida, 67 at Kádisíya, 67, 69
founds Kúfa, 67
takes Ctesiphon, 67
recalled, 68
sent by ’Umar to invade Irán, 72
letter of Rustam to, 78
taken by Pírúz 80, 81
Sada, feast, 40, 92
Samarkand, city in Turkistán, 96, 115
Sapandármad, month, 70, 122
Sarí, city in Mázandárán, 86
Sásán, son of Dárá, 105 and note lineage of 56, 105
Sásánian, Sásánians, 4, 5, 46, 47, 50, 54, 65, 72, 73, 76, 77, 83, 105
Dynasty, 4
INDEX

Sásánian, Empire, conquered by the Arabs, 65 seq.
Satrapy, satrapies, Núshirwán's four, 69
Saturn, planet, 73
sphere of, 92
Seasons, confusion of the, 77 note
Semite, race, enmity of, with Iránians, 65
Shabdž, steed of Khusrau Parwiz, 30
Sháhnáma, viii, 4 seq., 43, 50, 61, 70
completion of, Firdausí on, 121
length of, 122
date when completed, 122
Shahrán, 102
pleads with Máhwí for Yazdagird, 102
Shahránguráz (Hurmu zd Shahránguráz, Guráz q.v.), vii, 50
heads conspiracy against Guráz, 54
Shahrbaráz (Guráz q.v.), Iránian general, 43, 50
rebellion of, 43, 44
alliance of, with Heraclius, 44
Shahr-barz. See Shahrbaráz.
Shahgráz (Shahrbaráz q.v.), 50
Shahrvaráz (Shahrbaráz q.v.), 50
Shahryár, son of Shírín and Khusrau Parwiz, 39
father of Yazdagird, 64
Shamrán, stronghold north of Harát (?), 91, 94
Shápur, father of Pírúz, 80
Shatt-al-Arab, the combined streams of the Tigris and Euphrates, 67
Shírín, wife of Khusrau Parwiz, vii, 28, 36
Khusrau Parwiz and, 7
has charge of Shírwí's horoscope, 16
Raja's letter, 17
companions Khusrau Parwiz in prison, 29
reproached and summoned by Shírwí, 36
Shírwí, makes her will, 36
goes to Court, 37
justifies herself, 38, 40
sons of, 39
unveils to the Court, 39
Shírwí falls in love with, 39
makes request of Shírwí, 40, 41
goes home, 40
distributes her wealth, 40
frees her slaves, 41
poisons herself, 42
Shírwí (Kubád q.v.), Sháh, vii, 7, 8, 11, 27, 28, 31 seq., 36, 45, 47, 64
treatment of Khusrau Parwiz by, 7
writes to Heraclius, 7
horoscope of, 16
kept by Shírín, 16
Ashtád and Kharrád report their interview with Khusrau Parwiz to, 27
reproaches and summons Shírín, 36, 37
falls in love with Shírín, 39
grants Shírín's requests, 40, 42
poisoned, 42
son of, 42
length of reign of, 42
Shu'ba Mughíra, companion of the Prophet, 69, 83
embassy of, 69, 82
Sikandar (Alexander the Great), Sháh, 26
Siyáh Chasm, slave of Farrukhzád, 62
handmaid of Farrukhzád and, 62
imprisoned, 62
released, 62
poisons Farrukhzád, 63
Siyáwush, son of Kai Káús, 25
and note, 26 note, 103
Snakes=Arabs, 91
Súr, Súrán, city near Ispahán, 74, 89, 95, 97, 100, 116, 118
Syrian, 66
INDEX

T

Tabarí, historian, 4, 56, 61, 64, 69
Arabic, 4, 5, 7, 43, 50
Persian, 4, 5, 43, 70
Tabaristán (Mázaradárán), 74
Table of Contents, vii
Tahmúras, Sháh, 25
Taisafún (Ctesiphon), city on left bank of Tigris, 9, 10, 90
Khusrau Parwiz imprisoned at, 9
Bárbad visits Khusrau Parwiz at, 29
Taráž, city north-east of Tásh-kand, 41
Taxation, Fírúzší’s exemption from, 121
Theophanes, Greek Chronicler, account of last days of Khusrau Parwiz by, 6
Tigris, river, 67
Toll-house and ford of Zark, 100 and note, 116
Tukhár, Iránian general, refuses to help Pírúz against Guráz, 48
Túr, son of Farídún, 103
Túrán, 11, 89, 99
Turk, Turks, 70, 96 seq., 105, 114, 117, 120
Turkish, 87
Turkistán, 15
Turkman, Turkmans, 25, 76, 94
king = Afrásiyáb, 25
Tús, city in Khurásán, viii, 90, 95
governor of, 92

U

‘Umar, Khalífa, 66 seq., 72, 76, 121
found Sír, 67
sends Háshim in pursuit of Yazdagird, 68
Nu’mán to fight Yazdagird, 68
Sa’ád to invade Frán, 72
Urmuzd, the Good Principle, 24

V

Venus, planet, 26, 73
Victory of Victories, The, 69
Virgo, constellation, 71

W

Wákkás, father of Sa’ád q.v., viii, 72, 78, 82, 90

Y

Yalán-sína (Mardánsháh q.v.), 6
Yazdagird, Sháh, viii, 5, 61, 64
seq., 68 seq., 72, 81, 90, 101, 105, 106, 113, 115, 116, 122
Era of, 64
taken for safety to Istakhr, 64
age of, at accession, 65
difficult position of, 65
historical importance of reign of, 65
flight of, from Ctesiphon, 67
Hulwán, 68
last attempt of, to recover his empire, 68
concentrates his forces at Nahávand, 68
defeated and a fugitive, 69
death of, referred to, 69
host returns to, after Kádisiyya, 85
hears of Rustam’s death, 85
quits Baghdád, 88
makes for Marv, 89
entrusted to Máhwi by Fárrúkhzád, 95, 96
at Marv, 97, 116
hears of the coming of the Turks, 97
betrayed by Máhwi, 98
defeated, 98, 116
INDEX

Yazdagird, miller and, 99 seq.
described, 99, 101
Māhwī bids miller slay, 107,
116
slain, stripped and flung into
stream, 108, 109 and note
corpse of, recovered, lamented
over and entombed,
109 seq.
Firdausi on, 111

Z

Zābulistān, 75*
Zahhāk, Shāh, 25, 65, 103

Zahhāk, an Aryan myth, 65
king of Babylon, 65
an Arab, 65
Zāl, son of Sām and father of
Rustam, 25
Zark, town south-east of Marv,
98
canal of, 98
corpse of Yazdagird flung
into, 109
recovered from, 109
ford and toll-house of, 100
and note
chief of, 100
hears from miller about
Yazdagird, 109

*See p. 333 note.
GENERAL LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

C.—Macan’s edition of the Sháhnáma
L.—Lumsden’s Do.
P.—Mohl’s do.
T.—Tihrán do.
V.—Vullers’ do.

AM. The Voyage and Travayle of Sir John Maundeville, Knight . . . Edited . . . by John Ashton.
BCM. The Chahár Maqála (‘‘Four Discourses’’) of Nidhámí-i-’Arúdf-i-Samarquandí. Translated into English by Edward G. Browne, M.A., M.B.
BGDF. The History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire. By Edward Gibbon. Edited by J. B. Bury, M.A.
BHA. The History of Alexander the Great, being the Syriac Version of the Pseudo-Callisthenes. Edited . . . with an English Translation and Notes, by Ernest A. Wallis Budge, M.A.
BLEA. The Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great, being a Series of Translations of the Ethiopic Histories of Alexander . . . By E. A. Wallis Budge, M.A.
BLHP. A Literary History of Persia. By Edward G. Browne, M.A.
BLRE. History of the Lower Roman Empire. By J. B. Bury.
BPB. Photius: Bibliotheca. Ex Recensione Immanuelis Bekkeri.
CIG. Corpus Inscriptiorum Graecarum.
CTC. Theophanis Chronographia. Ex Recensione Ioannis Classeni.
DAA. Arrianí Anabasis . . . F. Dübner.
DAI. Arrianí Indica . . . F. Dübner.
DEI. J. Darmesteter, Études Iraniennes.

135
GENERAL LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

DFKHP. History of the Parsees. By Desabhai Framji Karaka, C.S.I.

DHA. The History of Antiquity. From the German of Professor Max Duncker. By the late Evelyn Abbot, M.A.

DZA. Professor Darmesteter’s Trans. of the Zandavasta in the Sacred Books of the East. Reference to Parts 1 and pages.

EHI. The History of India as told by its own Historians. By Sir H. M. Elliot, K.C.B.

EP. Eastern Persia, an Account of the Journeys of the Persian Boundary Commission, 1870-71-72.

GDF. The History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire. By Edward Gibbon, Esq. With Notes by Dean Milman and M. Guizot. Edited, with additional Notes, by William Smith, L.L.D.


GHP. Histoire des Perses par le Comte de Gobineau.

GIP. Grundriss der Iranischen Philologie.

GKS. Kleine Schriften von Alfred von Gutschmid.


HAP. History of Art in Persia from the French of Georges Perrot and Charles Chipiez.

HB. The Country of Balochistan . . . By A. W. Hughes, F.R.G.S.

HEP. Essays on the Sacred Language, Writing and Religion of the Parsees. By Martin Haug, Ph. D. Edited and enlarged by E. W. West, Ph. D.

HIE. The Indian Empire. By W. W. Hunter, C.S.I., C.I.E., L.L.D.

HLP. The Legend of Perseus. By E. S. Hartland.

HQC. Q. Curtius Rufus . . . ed. Edmundus Hedicke.


HS. Syntagma Dissertationum quas olim auctor doctissimus Thomas Hyde S.T.P. separatim edidit.

JFB. The earliest English version of the Fables of Bidpai . . . now again edited and induced by Joseph Jacobs.

JP. Persia Past and Present, by Professor A. V. Williams Jackson.

JRGS. The Journal of the Royal Geographical Society.

JZ. Zoroaster. By A. V. Williams Jackson.

KA. Asia. By A. H. Keane, F.R.G.S.

KUR. Kitab-i-Yamini of Al Utbi. Translated by the Rev. James Reynolds, B.A.


LEC. The Lands of the Eastern Caliphate. By G. Le Strange.

1The second edition of Part I is referred to unless otherwise specified.
GENERAL LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

LPC. A View of the History and Coinage of the Parthians. By John Lindsay, Esq.

MA. Alexandre le Grand . . . Par Paul Meyer.

MCAI. Ancient India as described by Megasthenes and Arrian. . . . By J. W. M’Crindle, M.A.


MGN. Narrative of a Journey through the Province of Khorassan, etc. By Colonel C. M. MacGregor, C.S.I., C.I.E.


MLM. The Life of Muhammad. By William Muir, Esq.

MM. Maçoudi : Les Prairies d’Or. Texte et traduction par C. Barbier de Meynard et Pavet de Courteille.

MPC. Pseudo-Callisthenes, primum edidit Carolus Mullerus.

MSJP. A Second Journey through Persia, etc. By James Morier Esq.


NAR. Beiträge zur Geschichte des Alexanderromans, von Prof. Dr. Th. Nöldeke in Denkschriften der . . . Akademie der Wissenschaften . . . Wien, 1890.

NIN. Das Iranische Nationalepos von Theodor Nöldeke.


NPS. Nöldeke : Persische Studien. II. Sitzungsberichte der Kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften. CXXVI. Band.


RFGM. The Five Great Monarchies of the Ancient Eastern World. By George Rawlinson, M.A.

RH. The History of Herodotus. . . . By George Rawlinson, M.A.


(Elsewhere) The Rauzat-us-saфа ; or, Garden of Purity . . . By . . . Mirkhond . . . Translated by E. Rehatsek.


(Elsewhere) Professor Rawlinson’s Parthia in the Story of the Nations’ Series.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RPNS</td>
<td>Records of the Past. Second Series.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RSM</td>
<td>The Seventh Great Oriental Monarchy. By George Rawlinson, M.A.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAC</td>
<td>The Chronology of Ancient Nations . . . of Albidrúni . . . translated . . . by Dr. C. Edward Sachau.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHC</td>
<td>The &quot;Higher Criticism&quot; and the Verdict of the Monuments. By the Rev. A. H. Sayce.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SK</td>
<td>The Koran . . . Translated . . . by George Sale, Gent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SM</td>
<td>History of the Early Kings of Persia . . . Translated from the original . . . Persian of Mirkhond . . . by David Shea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SP</td>
<td>The Periplus of the Erythraean Sea . . . Translated from the Greek and annotated by Wilfrid H. Schoff, A.M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STD</td>
<td>The Dabistán . . . Translated . . . by David Shea and Anthony Troyer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WLS</td>
<td>In the Land of the Lion and Sun . . . By C. J. Wills, M.D.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WPT</td>
<td>Dr. E. W. West’s Trans. of the Pahlavī Texts in the Sacred Books of the East. Reference to Parts and pages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YMP</td>
<td>The Book of Sir Marco Polo . . . newly translated. . . By Colonel Henry Yule, C.B.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZT</td>
<td>Chronique de Abou-Djafar-Mohammed-Ben-Djarir-Ben-Yezid Tabari, traduite . . . Par M. Hermann Zotenburg.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

## VOLUME I

| Preface | PAGE vii |
| INTRODUCTION |
| Chapter I.—LAND AND PEOPLE | PAGE 3 |
| Chapter II.—POET AND POEM | PAGE 23 |
| Chapter III.—TEXT AND TRANSLATION | PAGE 76 |
| LIST OF PREVIOUS TRANSLATORS | PAGE 87 |
| ANCIENT PERSIAN CALENDAR | PAGE 88 |
| GENEALOGICAL TABLES | PAGE 90 |
| ABBREVIATIONS | PAGE 93 |
| NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION | PAGE 95 |

### THE SHÁHNÁMA

#### The Prelude—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Invocation</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Discourse in Praise of Wisdom</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Of the Making of the World</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Of the Nature of Man</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Of the Nature of the Sun</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Of the Nature of the Moon</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. In Praise of the Prophet and his Companions</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. On the Compilation of the Sháhnáma</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Of the Poet Dákší</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. How the present Book was begun</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. In Praise of Abú Mansúr, Son of Muhammad</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. In Praise of Sultán Mahmúd</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### THE BEGINNING OF THE HISTORY: THE PISHDÁDIAN DYNASTY

#### Gájúmart—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. The Greatness of Gájúmart and the Envy of Áhríman</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. How Siyámak was slain by the Dív</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. How Húshang and Gájúmart went to fight the Black Dív</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

HÚSHANG—

sect. 1. The Accession of Húshang and his civilising Arts . 122
2. How the Feast of Sada was founded . 123

TAHMÚRAS—

1. Tahmúras ascends the Throne, invents new Arts, subdues the Divs, and dies . 126

JAMSHÍD—

1. The Greatness and Fall of Jamshíd . 131
2. The Story of Zahhák and his Father . 135
3. How Iblís turned Cook . 137
4. How the Fortunes of Jamshíd went to Wrack . 139

ZAHHÁK—

1. The evil Customs of Zahhák and the Device of Irmá’il and Karmá’il . 145
2. How Zahhák saw Farídún in a Dream . 147
3. The Birth of Farídún . 150
4. How Farídún questioned his Mother about his Origin . 152
5. The Story of Zahhák and Káwa the Smith . 154
6. How Farídún went to Battle with Zahhák . 159
7. How Farídún saw the Sisters of Jamshíd . 161
8. The Story of Farídún and the Minister of Zahhák . 164
9. How Farídún bound Zahhák . 166

FARÍDÚN—

1. How Farídún ascended the Throne . 174
2. How Farídún sent Jandal to Yaman . 177
3. How the King of Yaman answered Jandal . 181
4. How the Sons of Farídún went to the King of Yaman . 183
5. How Sarv proved the Sons of Farídún by Sorcery . 184
6. How Farídún made Trial of his Sons . 186
7. How Farídún divided the World among his Sons . 189
8. How Salm grew envious of Íraj . 189
9. How Salm and Túr sent a Message to Farídún . 191
10. How Farídún made Answer to his Sons . 193
11. How Íraj went to his Brothers . 197
12. How Íraj was slain by his Brothers . 199
13. How Farídún received Tidings of the Murder of Íraj . 202
14. How a Daughter was born to Íraj . 205
15. The Birth of Minúchíhr . 206
16. How Salm and Túr had Tidings of Minúchíhr . 208
17. How Farídún received his Sons’ Message . 209
18. How Farídún made Answer to his Sons . 211
19. How Farídún sent Minúchíhr to fight Túr and Salm . 215
20. How Minúchíhr attacked the Host of Túr . 218
### GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

**Farídún (continued)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Vol. I.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>How Túr was slain by Minúchihr</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>How Minúchihr wrote to announce his Victory to Farídún</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>How Káran took the Castle of the Aláns</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>How Kákwi, the Grandson of Zahhák, attacked the Iránians</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>How Sálm fled and was slain by Minúchihr</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>How the Head of Sálm was sent to Farídún</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>The Death of Farídún</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Minúchihr—**

1. How Minúchihr ascended the Throne and made an Oration
2. The Birth of Zál
3. How Sálm had a Dream touching the Case of his Son
4. How Minúchihr took Knowledge of the Case of Sálm and Zál
5. How Zál went back to Zábulistán
6. How Sálm gave the Kingdom to Zál
7. How Zál visited Mihráb of Kábul
8. How Rúdába took Counsel with her Damsels
9. How Rúdába's Damsels went to see Zál
10. How the Damsels returned to Rúdába
11. How Zál went to Rúdába
12. How Zál consulted the Archimages in the Matter of Rúdába
13. How Zál wrote to Sálm to explain the Case
14. How Sálm consulted the Archimages in the Matter of Zál
15. How Síndukht heard of the Case of Rúdába
16. How Mihráb was made aware of his Daughter's Case
17. How Minúchihr heard of the Case of Zál and Rúdába
18. How Sálm came to Minúchihr
19. How Sálm went to fight Mihráb
20. How Zál went on a Mission to Minúchihr
21. How Mihráb was wroth with Síndukht
22. How Sálm comforted Síndukht
23. How Zál came to Minúchihr with Sálm's Letter
24. How the Archimages questioned Zál
25. How Zál answered the Archimages
26. How Zál displayed his Accomplishment before Minúchihr
27. Minúchihr's Answer to Sálm's Letter
28. How Zál came to Sálm
29. The Story of the Birth of Rustam
30. How Sálm came to see Rustam
31. How Rustam slew the White Elephant
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MINÚCHIHR (continued)</th>
<th>Vol. I. Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>32. How Rustam went to Mount Sipand</td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33. How Rustam wrote a Letter announcing his</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victory to Zál</td>
<td>332</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34. The Letter of Zál to Sám</td>
<td>334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35. Minúchihir’s last Counsels to his Son</td>
<td>335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NAUDAR—</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. How Naudar succeeded to the Throne</td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. How Pashang heard of the Death of Minúchihr</td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. How Afrásiyáb came to the Land of Irán</td>
<td>345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. How Bármán and Kubád fought together and how</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kubád was slain</td>
<td>346</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. How Afrásiyáb fought with Naudar the second</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. How Naudar fought with Afrásiyáb the third</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. How Naudar was taken by Afrásiyáb</td>
<td>355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. How Wisa found his Son that had been slain</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. How Shamásás and Khazarwán invaded Zábu-listán</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. How Zál came to help Mihráb</td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. How Naudar was slain by Afrásiyáb</td>
<td>362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. How Zál had Tidings of the Death of Naudar</td>
<td>364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. How Ighríras was slain by his Brother</td>
<td>367</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **ZAV—**                                              |             |
| 1. Zav is elected Sháh                                | 370         |

| **GARSHÁSP—**                                         |             |
| 1. How Garshásp succeeded to the Throne and died, and how Afrásiyáb invaded Irán | 374         |
| 2. How Rustam caught Rakhsh                          | 378         |
| 3. How Zál led the Host against Afrásiyáb            | 381         |
| 4. How Rustam brought Kai Kubád from Mount Alburz    | 382         |

| **INDEX**                                             |             |
|                                                      | 389         |

| **VOLUME II**                                         |             |
| **PAGE**                                              |             |
| **GENEALOGICAL TABLES**                               | 3           |
| **ABBREVIATIONS.**                                    | 5           |
| **NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION**                             | 6           |

| **THE KAIÁNIAN DYNASTY**                              |             |
|                                                      |             |
| **KAI KUBÁD—**                                        |             |
| **Sect.**                                             |             |
| 1. How Kai Kubád ascended the Throne and warred       |             |
| against Turán                                         | 11          |
| 2. How Rustam fought with Afrásiyáb                   | 13          |
| 3. How Afrásiyáb came to his Father                   | 16          |
| 4. How Pashang sued to Kai Kubád for Peace            | 18          |
| 5. How Kai Kubád came to Istakhr of Íárs             | 22          |
## GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

### Vol. II

#### Part I. The War with Mázandarán—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. The Prelude</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. How Kháús sat upon the Throne and was tempted to invade Mázandarán</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. How Zál gave Counsel to Kháús</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. How Kháús went to Mázandarán</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. The Message of Kai Kháús to Zál and Rustam</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### The Seven Courses of Rustam—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6. The First Course. How Rakhsh fought with a Lion</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. The Second Course. How Rustam found a Spring</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. The Third Course. How Rustam fought with a Dragon</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. The Fourth Course. How Rustam slew a Witch</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. The Fifth Course. How Rustam took Úlád captive</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. The Sixth Course. How Rustam fought with the Dív Arzhang</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. The Seventh Course. How Rustam slew the White Dív</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. How Kháús wrote to the King of Mázandarán</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. How Rustam went on an Embassy to the King of Mázandarán</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. How Kháús fought with the King of Mázandarán</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. How Kháús returned to the Land of Írán and farewell Rustam</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Part II. The Doings of Kai Kháús in the Land of Barbaristán and Other Tales—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. How Kai Kháús warred with the King of Hámadarán</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. How Kháús asked to Wife Súdáába, the Daughter of the King of Hámadarán</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. How the King of Hámadarán made Kháús Priscner</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. How Afrásiyáb invaded the Land of Írán</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. How Rustam sent a Message to the King of Hámadarán</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. How Rustam fought with Three Kings and delivered Kháús</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. How Kháús sent a Message to Afrásiyáb</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. How Kháús ordered the World</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. How Kháús beguiled by Iblís ascended the Sky</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. How Rustam brought back Kháús</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### The Story of the Fight of the Seven Warriors—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11. How Rustam went with the Seven Warriors to the Hunting-ground of Afrásiyáb</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. How Rustam fought with the Túránians</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sect.</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>How Pîlsam fought with the Íránians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>How Afrâsiyâb fled from the Battlefield</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>The Prelude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>How Rustam went to the Chace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>How Rustam came to the City of Samangan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>How Tahmina, the Daughter of the King of Samangan, came to Rustam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>The Birth of Suhráb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>How Suhráb chose his Charger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>How Afrâsiyâb sent Bârmân and Hûmân to Suhráb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>How Suhráb came to White Castle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>How Suhráb fought with Gurdâfrîd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>The Letter of Gazhdaham to Káús</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>How Suhráb took White Castle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>How Káus wrote to Rustam and summoned him from Zâbulistán</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>How Káus was wroth with Rustam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>How Káus and Rustam led forth the Host</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>How Rustam slew Zhanda Razm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>How Suhráb asked Hajîr the Names of the Chiefs of Írán</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>How Suhráb attacked the Army of Káus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>How Rustam fought with Suhráb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>How Rustam and Suhráb returned to Camp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>How Suhráb overthrew Rustam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>How Suhráb was slain by Rustam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>How Rustam asked Káus for an Elixir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>How Rustam lamented for Suhráb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>How Rustam returned to Zâbulistán</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>How Suhráb’s Mother received the Tidings of his Death</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Part IV. The Story of Siyáwush**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>The Prelude</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>The Story of the Mother of Siyáwush</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>The Birth of Siyáwush</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>How Siyáwush arrived from Zâbulistán</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>The Death of the Mother of Siyáwush</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>How Súdâba fell in Love with Siyáwush</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>How Siyáwush visited Súdâba</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>How Siyáwush visited the Bower the second Time</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>How Siyáwush visited the Bower the third Time</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>How Súdâba beguiled Káus</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>How Súdâba and a Sorceress devised a Scheme</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>How Siyáwush passed through the Fire</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### General Table of Contents

**Kai Kāūs—**

**Part IV. The Story of Siyáwush (continued)—**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>How Siyáwush begged Súdábá’s Life of his Father</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>How Káūs heard of the Coming of Afrásiyáb</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>How Siyáwush led forth the Host</td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>The Letter of Siyáwush to Káūs Káūs</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>The Answer of Káūs to the Letter of Siyáwush</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>How Afrásiyáb had a Dream and was afraid</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>How Afrásiyáb inquired of the Sages concerning his Dream</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>How Afrásiyáb took Counsel with the Nobles</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>How Garsíwaz came to Siyáwush</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>How Siyáwush made a Treaty with Afrásiyáb</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>How Siyáwush sent Rustam to Káūs</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>How Rustam gave the Message to Káūs</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>How Káūs sent Rustam to Sístán</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>The Answer of Káūs to the Letter of Siyáwush</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>How Siyáwush took Counsel with Bahrám and Zanga</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>How Zanga went to Afrásiyáb</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>How Afrásiyáb wrote to Siyáwush</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>How Siyáwush gave up the Host to Bahrám</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>The Interview of Siyáwush with Afrásiyáb</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>How Siyáwush displayed his Prowess before Afrásiyáb</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>How Afrásiyáb and Siyáwush went to the Chase</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>How Pirán gave his Daughter to Siyáwush</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>How Pirán spake to Siyáwush about Farangís</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>How Pirán spake with Afrásiyáb</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>The Wedding of Farangís and Siyáwush</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>How Afrásiyáb bestowed a Province on Siyáwush</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>How Siyáwush built Gang-dizh</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>How Siyáwush discoursed with Pirán about the Future</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>How Afrásiyáb sent Pirán into the Provinces</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>How Siyáwush built Siyáwushgird</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>How Pirán visited Siyáwushgird</td>
<td>287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>How Afrásiyáb sent Garsíwaz to Siyáwush</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>The Birth of Farád, the Son of Siyáwush</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>How Siyáwush played at Polo</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>How Garsíwaz returned and spake Evil before Afrásiyáb</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>How Garsíwaz returned to Siyáwush</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>The Letter of Siyáwush to Afrásiyáb</td>
<td>306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>How Afrásiyáb came to fight with Siyáwush</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>How Siyáwush had a Dream</td>
<td>308</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>The Parting Words of Siyáwush to Farangís</td>
<td>310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>How Siyáwush was taken by Afrásiyáb</td>
<td>312</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>How Farangís bewailed herself before Afrásiyáb</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>How Siyáwush was slain by Gurwí</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>How Pirán saved Farangís</td>
<td>323</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Vol. IX**
KAI KÁUS—

PART IV. THE STORY OF SIYÁWUSH (continued)—  

58. The Birth of Kai Khusrau ............................ 325
59. How Pirán entrusted Kai Khusrau to the Shepherds .... 328
60. How Pirán brought Kai Khusrau before Afrásiyáb .... 330
61. How Kai Khusrau went to Siyáwushgird ............. 333

PART V. HOW RUSTAM AVENGED SIYÁWUSH AND HOW GÍV BROUGHT KAI KHUSRAU TO ÍRÁN—  

1. Firdausí's Lament over his old Age ..................... 336
2. How Káús heard of the Case of Siyáwush ................. 337
3. How Rustam came to Káús ................................ 338
4. How Rustam slew Súdába and led forth the Host ....... 340
5. How Farámarz slew Warázád ............................ 341
6. How Surkha led his Troops to fight with Rustam ....... 344
7. How Afrásiyáb led forth the Host to avenge his Son ... 348
8. How Píšsam was slain by Rustam ....................... 350
9. How Afrásiyáb fled from Rustam ....................... 353
10. How Afrásiyáb sent Khusrau to Khutan ................. 355
11. How Rustam reigned over Túrán for Seven Years ....... 357
12. How Zarwára went to the Hunting-ground of Siyáwush .... 359
13. How Rustam harried the Land of Túrán ................. 360
14. How Rustam returned to Írán ........................... 361
15. How Gúdarz had a Dream of Kai Khusrau ............... 363
16. How Gív went to Túrán in Quest of Kai Khusrau ...... 365
17. The Finding of Kai Khusrau ............................ 369
18. How Gív and Kai Khusrau went to Siyáwushgird ....... 373
19. How Kai Khusrau won Bihzád ........................... 374
20. How Farangís went with Kai Khusrau and Gív to Írán .... 377
21. How Kulbád and Nástíhan fled from Gív ................ 378
22. How Pirán pursued Kai Khusrau ....................... 380
23. How Pirán contended with Gív .......................... 382
24. How Pirán was taken by Gív ............................ 385
25. How Farangís delivered Pirán from Gív ............... 386
26. How Afrásiyáb found Pirán on the Way ............... 388
27. How Gív disputed with the Toll-man ................. 390
28. How Kai Khusrau crossed the Jihán ..................... 392
29. How Kai Khusrau came to Ispahán ..................... 394
30. How Kai Khusrau came to Káús ......................... 397
31. How Tús refused Allegiance to Kai Khusrau ........... 399
32. How Gúdarz was wroth with Tús ....................... 402
33. How Gudarz and Tús went before Káús on the Matter of the Kingship .... 403
34. How Tús and Farámarz went to the Castle of Bahman and came back foiled .............. 405
35. How Kai Khusrau went to the Castle of Bahman and took it ......... 406
GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

KAI KÁUS——
PART V. HOW RUSTAM AVENGED SIYÁWUSH, Etc. (continued)——

VOL. II

SECTION

36. How Kai Khusrau returned in Triumph

37. How Káús set Khusrau upon the Throne of Kingship

INDEX

VOLUME III

ABBREVIATIONS

NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION

THE KAIÁNÍAN DYNASTY (continued)

KAI KHSURAU——
PART I. HOW KAI KHSURAU, TO AVENGE SIYÁWUSH, SENT A HOST AGAINST TÚRÁN——

SECTION

1. The Prelude

2. How the Nobles did Homage to Káí Khusrau

3. How Kai Khusrau made a Progress through his Realm

4. How Kai Khusrau sware to Káí Káús to take Vengeance on Afrásiyáb

5. How Kai Khusrau numbered the Paladins

6. How Kai Khusrau bestowed Treasures on the Paladins

7. How Kai Khusrau sent Rustam to the Land of Hind

8. How Kai Khusrau reviewed the Host

THE STORY OF FARÚD THE SON OF SIYÁWUSH——

9. The Prelude

10. How Tús went to Turkistán

11. How Farúd heard of the Coming of Tús

12. How Farúd and Tukhár went to view the Host

13. How Bahrám came to Farúd upon the Mountain

14. How Bahrám went back to Tús

15. How Rívniz was slain by Farúd

16. How Zarásp was slain by Farúd

17. How Tús fought with Farúd

18. How Gýv fought with Farúd

19. How Bizhán fought with Farúd

20. How Farúd was slain

21. How Jarífré slew herself

22. How Tús led the Host to the Kása Rúd, and how Paláshán was slain by Bizhán

23. How the Irániáns suffered in a Snowstorm

24. How Bahrám captured Kabúda

25. How the Irániáns fought with Tazháv

26. How Afrásiyáb had Tidings of Tús and his Host
GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

KAI KHUSRAU—
The Story of Farúd the Son of Siyáwush (continued)—

VOL. III

Sect. 27. How Pírán made a Night-attack on the Íránians 80
28. How Kai Khusrau recalled Tús 84
29. How Faríburz asked a Truce of Pírán 87
30. How the Íránians were defeated by the Turkmans 89
31. How Bahrám returned to look for his Whip upon the Battlefield 95
32. How Bahrám was slain by Tazháv 98
33. How Giv slew Tazháv in revenge for Bahrám 101
34. How the Íránians went back to Khusrau 104

PART II. THE STORY OF KÁMÚS OF KASHÁN—

1. The Prelude 110
2. How Khusrau reviled Tús 111
3. How Khusrau pardoned the Íránians 113
4. How Khusrau sent Tús to Túrán 115
5. The Message of Pírán to the Army of Írán 117
6. How Afrásiyáb sent an Army to Pírán 118
7. How Tús slew Arzhang 119
8. How Húmán fought with Tús 120
9. How the Íránians and Túránians fought the second Time 125
10. How the Túránians used Sorcery against the Host of Írán 128
11. How the Íránians retreated to Mount Hamáwan 131
12. How the Host of Túrán beleaguered Mount Hamáwan 132
13. How Pírán went in Pursuit of the Íránians to Mount Hamáwan 137
14. How the Íránians made a Night-attack 139
15. How Kai Khusrau had Tidings of his Host 142
16. How Faríburz asked to Wife Farangís, the Mother of Kai Khusrau 146
17. How Tús saw Siyáwush in a Dream 149
18. How Afrásiyáb sent the Khán and Kámus to help Pírán 151
19. How the Khán of Chín came to Hamáwan 153
20. How the Íránians took Counsel how to act 155
21. How Gúdarz had Tidings of the Coming of Rustam 156
22. How the Khán of Chín went to reconnoitre the Army of Írán 160
23. How Faríburz reached Mount Hamáwan 163
24. How Pírán took Counsel with the Khán of Chín 164
25. How Giv and Tús fought with Kámus 168
26. The Coming of Rustam 170
27. How the Íránians and Túránians arrayed their Hosts 174
28. How Rustam fought with Ashkabús 179
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PART II. The Story of Kāmūs of Kashān (continued)—Vol. III</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>29. How Pīrān held Converse concerning the Coming of Rustam</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30. How the Irānians and Türānians set the Battle in Array</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31. How Ālwā was slain by Kāmūs</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32. How Kāmūs was slain by Rustam</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PART III. The Story of Rustam and the Khān of Chīn—</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. How the Khān of Chīn had Tidings of the Slaying of Kāmūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. How Chingish fared with Rustam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. How the Khān of Chīn sent Hūmān to Rustam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. How Pīrān took Counsel with Hūmān and the Khān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. How Pīrān came to Rustam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. How the Türānians took Counsel for Battle with the Irānians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. How Rustam harangued his Troops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. How the Irānians and Türānians set the Battle in Array</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. How Rustam reproached Pīrān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. How the Battle was joined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. How Shangul fought with Rustam and fled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. How Rustam fought with Sāwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. How Rustam slew Gahār of Gahān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. How the Khān was taken Prisoner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. How the Host of the Türānians was defeated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. How Rustam divided the Spoil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. How Rustam wrote a Letter to Kai Khusrau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. How Kai Khusrau made Answer to Rustam’s Letter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. How Afrāsiyāb had Tidings of the Case of his Army</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. How Rustam fought with Kāfūr the Man-eater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. How Afrāsiyāb had Tidings of the Coming of Rustam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. Afrāsiyāb’s Letter to Pūlādwand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. How Pūlādwand fought with Gîv and Tūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. How Rustam fought with Pūlādwand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. The Wrestling of Rustam and Pūlādwand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. How Afrāsiyāb fled from Rustam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. How Rustam returned to the Court of the Shāh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. How Rustam went back to Sīstān</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PART IV. The Story of the Fight of Rustam with the Dīv Akwān—</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Prelude</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

**Kai Khusrau**—
**PART IV. THE STORY OF THE FIGHT OF RUSTAM, **etc. **(continued)**—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. How Khusrau summoned Rustam to fight the Dív Akwán</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. How Rustam went in Quest of the Dív</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. How the Dív Akwán flung Rustam into the Sea</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. How Afrásiyáb came to inspect his Steeds, and how Rustam slew the Dív Akwán</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. How Rustam went back to the Land of Írán</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PART V. THE STORY OF BÍZHAN AND MANÍZHA**—

| 1. The Prelude | 287 |
| 2. How the Irmandians appealed to Khusrau | 289 |
| 3. How Bízhān went to fight the wild Boars | 292 |
| 4. How Gurgín beguiled Bízhān | 294 |
| 5. How Bízhān went to see Manizhá, Daughter of Afrásiyáb | 296 |
| 6. How Bízhān went to the Tent of Manizhá | 298 |
| 7. How Manizhá carried off Bízhān to her Palace | 299 |
| 8. How Garsiwaz brought Bízhān before Afrásiyáb | 301 |
| 9. How Pirán begged Bízhān’s Life from Afrásiyáb | 305 |
| 11. How Gurgín returned to Írán and lied about Bízhān | 310 |
| 12. How Gív brought Gurgín before Khusrau | 315 |
| 13. How Kai Khusrau saw Bízhān in the Cup that showed the World | 318 |
| 14. How Khusrau wrote a Letter to Rustam | 319 |
| 15. How Gív bore the Letter of Kai Khusrau to Rustam | 321 |
| 16. How Rustam made a Feast for Gív | 324 |
| 17. How Rustam came to Khusrau | 326 |
| 18. How Kai Khusrau held Feast with the Paladins | 329 |
| 19. How Rustam made Petition for Gurgín to the Sháh | 331 |
| 20. How Rustam equipped his Escort | 333 |
| 21. How Rustam went to the City of Khutan to Pirán | 334 |
| 22. How Manizhá came before Rustam | 337 |
| 23. How Bízhān heard of the Coming of Rustam | 340 |
| 24. How Rustam took Bízhān out of the Pit | 344 |
| 25. How Rustam attacked the Palace of Afrásiyáb by Night | 347 |
| 26. How Afrásiyáb went to fight with Rustam | 349 |
| 27. How Afrásiyáb was defeated by the Íránians | 351 |
| 28. How Rustam returned to Kai Khusrau | 353 |
| 29. How Kai Khusrau made a Feast | 355 |

**INDEX**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>359</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**VOLUME IV**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviations</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Note on Pronunciation</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

**THE KAIÁNIAN DYNASTY (continued)**

**KAI KHUSRAU (continued)**

**PART VI. THE BATTLE OF THE TWELVE RUKHS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>The Prelude</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>How Afrásiyáb called together his Host</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>How Kái Khúsrau sent Gúdárz to fight the Túránians</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>How Gív was made the Bearer of Overtures from Gúdárz to Pirán</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>How Gív visited Pirán at Wísagírd</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>The Arraying of the Hosts</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>How Bízhán went to Gív to urge him to fight</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>How Húmán asked Pirán for Leave to fight</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>How Húmán challenged Ruhhám</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>How Húmán challenged Faríburz</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>How Húmán challenged Gúdárz</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>How Bízhán heard of the Doings of Húmán</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>How Gív gave the Mail of Siyáwush to Bízhán</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>How Húmán came to battle with Bízhán</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>How Húmán was slain by Bízhán</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>How Nástíhan made a Night-attack and was slain</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>How Gúdárz asked aid of Khúsrau</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>The Answer of Khúsrau to the letter of Gúdárz</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>How Khúsrau arrayed the Host</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>How Pirán wrote to Gúdárz Son of Kishwád</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>The Answer of Gúdárz to the Letter of Pirán</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>How Pirán asked Succour from Afrásiyáb</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>The Answer of Afrásiyáb to the Letter of Pirán</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>How the Íránians and Túránians fought a pitched Battle</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>How Gív fought with Pirán and how Gív’s Horse jibbed</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>How Gúdárz and Pirán arranged a Battle of Eleven Rukhs</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>How Pirán harangued his Men of Name</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>How Gúdárz and Pirán chose the Warriors for the Battle of the Eleven Rukhs</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>How Faríburz fought with Kulbád</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>How Gív fought with Gurwi</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>How Guráza fought with Siyámak</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>How Furúhíl fought with Zangula</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>How Ruhhám fought with Bármán</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>How Bízhán fought with Rúnian</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>How Hajír fought with Sipahram</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>How Guríjn fought with Andaríman</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>How Bartá fought with Kuhram</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>How Zanga, Son of Sháwarán, fought with Akhást</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>How Gúdárz fought with Pirán</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Kai Khusrau—

PART VI. THE BATTLE OF THE TWELVE RUKHS (continued)—

sect.
40. How Gúdarz returned to the Warriors of Irán . 109
41. How Lahhák and Farshídward bewailed Pírán . 112
42. How Lahhák and Farshídward took the Road to Túrán . 115
43. How Gustaham pursued Lahhák and Farshídward . 117
44. How Bízhan followed after Gustaham . 119
45. How Lahhák and Farshídward were slain by Gustaham . 121
46. How Bízhan beheld Gustaham in the Mead . 123
47. How Kai Khusrau built a Charnel-house for Pírán and for the other Chiefs of Túrán, and how he slew Gurví the Son of Zira . 126
48. How the Túránians asked Quarter of Kai Khusrau . 129
49. How Bízhan returned with Gustaham . 132

PART VII. THE GREAT WAR OF KAI KHSRAU WITH AFRÁSIYÁB—

1. In Praise of Sultán Mahmúd . 139
2. How Kai Khusrau arrayed his Host against Afrásiyáb . 145
3. How Afrásiyáb heard that Pírán was slain and that Kai Khusrau had arrayed his Host . 150
4. How Kai Khusrau had Tidings that Afrásiyáb advanced to fight with him . 157
5. How Shída came before his Father Afrásiyáb . 158
6. How Afrásiyáb sent an Embassage to Kai Khusrau . 161
7. How Kai Khusrau sent an Answer to Afrásiyáb . 168
8. How Kai Khusrau fought with Shída the Son of Afrásiyáb . 171
9. How Shída was slain by Khusrau . 175
10. How the Battle was joined between the Hosts . 177
11. How Afrásiyáb fled . 183
12. How Kai Khusrau announced his Victory to Káús . 185
13. How Afrásiyáb went to Gang-bihisht . 186
14. How Khusrau crossed the Jhún . 187
15. How Kai Khusrau fought with Afrásiyáb the second Time . 190
16. How Afrásiyáb took Refuge in Gang-bihisht . 193
17. The Letter of Afrásiyáb to the Faghfúr of Chín . 196
18. How Kai Khusrau arrived before Gang-bihisht . 198
19. How Jahn came to Kai Khusrau with an Embassage from Afrásiyáb . 200
20. How Kai Khusrau made Answer to Jahn . 204
21. How Kai Khusrau fought with Afrásiyáb and took Gang-bihisht . 207
22. How Afrásiyáb fled from Gang-bihisht . 211
23. How Kai Khusrau gave Quarter to the Family of Afrásiyáb . 212
### GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

**Kai Khusrau—**

**PART VII. THE GREAT WAR, etc. (continued)—**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>How Kai Khusrau exhorted the Iranians</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>How Kai Khusrau wrote a Letter with the News of his Victory to Kai Kaús</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>How Kai Khusrau had Tidings of the Coming of Afrasiyáb with the Host of the Faghfúr.</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>The Message of Afrasiyáb to Kai Khusrau</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>How the Iranians and Turánians fought</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>How Afrasiyáb made a Night-attack upon Kai Khusrau and was defeated</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>How the Faghfúr of Chín sent an Envoy to Kai Khusrau</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>How Afrasiyáb crossed the Sea</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>How Kai Khusrau sent the Prisoners and Treasure to Kaús with a Letter</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>The Answer of Sháh Kaús to the Letter of Khusrau</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>The Embassage of Kai Khusrau to the Faghfúr of Chín and the King of Makrán</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>How Kai Khusrau fought with the King of Makrán and how the King of Makrán was slain</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>How Kai Khusrau crossed the Sea</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>How Kai Khusrau reached Gang-dízh</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>How Kai Khusrau returned from Gang-dízh to Siyáwushgírd</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>How Kai Khusrau returned from Túrán to the Land of Iran</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>How Kai Khusrau returned to his Grand sire</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>How Afrasiyáb was captured by Húm of the Race of Faridún</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>How Afrasiyáb escaped from Húm</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>How Kaús and Khusrau came to Húm</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>How Afrasiyáb was taken the second Time and how he and Garsiwaz were slain</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>How Kaús and Khusrau returned to Párs</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>The Death of Kai Kaús</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>How Kai Khusrau fell into Melancholy</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>How the Nobles inquired why Khusrau had closed his Court</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>How the Iranians summoned Zál and Rustam</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>How Kai Khusrau saw Surúsh in a Dream</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>How Zál admonished Kai Khusrau</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>How Kai Khusrau answered Zál.</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>How Zál rebuked Kai Khusrau</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>How Kai Khusrau answered and how Zál excused himself</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>How Kai Khusrau gave his last Charge to the Iranians</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>How Kai Khusrau appointed Gúdarz to be his Mandatary</td>
<td>294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sect.</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>How Zal asked of Kai Khusrau a Patent for Rustam</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>How Kai Kausrau gave a Patent to Giv</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>How Kai Khusrau gave a Patent to Tús</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>How Kai Khusrau gave the Kingship to Luhrasp</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>How Kai Khusrau farewelled his Women</td>
<td>304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>How Kai Khusrau went to the Mountains and vanished in the Snow</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>How the Paladins were lost in the Snow</td>
<td>308</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>How Luhrasp had Tidings of the Disappearance of Kai Khusrau</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>How Luhrasp built a Fire-temple at Balkh</td>
<td>316</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>How Gushtasp quitted Luhrasp in Wrath</td>
<td>318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>How Gushtasp returned with Zarir</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>How Gushtasp set off for Rüm</td>
<td>323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>How Gushtasp arrived in Rüm</td>
<td>324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>How a Village-chief entertained Gushtasp</td>
<td>327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>The Story of Katayun the Daughter of Caesar</td>
<td>329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>How Caesar gave Katayun to Gushtasp</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>How Mirin asked in Marriage Caesar's second Daughter</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>How Gushtasp slew the Wolf</td>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>How Ahram asked Caesar's third Daughter in Marriage</td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>How Gushtasp slew the Dragon and how Caesar gave his Daughter to Ahram</td>
<td>346</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>How Gushtasp displayed his Prowess upon the Riding-ground</td>
<td>349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>How Caesar wrote to Ilyas and demanded Tribute</td>
<td>352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>How Gushtasp fought with Ilyas and slew him</td>
<td>355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>How Caesar demanded from Luhrasp Tribute for Irán</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>How Zarir carried a Message from Luhrasp to Caesar</td>
<td>359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>How Gushtasp returned with Zarir to the Land of Irán and received the Throne from Luhrasp</td>
<td>361</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Index**

**VOLUME V**

**ABBREVIATIONS.**

**Note on Pronunciation.**

---

**THE KAIÁNIAN DYNASTY (continued)**

**GUSHTÁSP—**

**PART I. THE COMING OF ZARDUHSHT AND THE WAR WITH ARJÁSP—**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>How Firdausí saw Dakíkí in a Dream</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>How Luhrásí went to Balkh and Gushtásp sat upon the Throne</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS**

**PART I. THE COMING OF ZARDUHSHT, etc. (continued)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>How Zarduhsht appeared and how Gushtásp accepted his Evangel</th>
<th>33</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>How Gushtásp refused to Arjásp the Tribute for Irán</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>How Arjásp wrote a Letter to Gushtásp</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>How Arjásp sent Envoys to Gushtásp</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>How Zarír made Answer to Arjásp</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>How the Envoys returned to Arjásp with the Letter of Gushtásp</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>How Gushtásp assembled his Troops</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>How Jámásí foretold the Issue of the Battle to Gushtásp</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>How Gushtásp and Arjásp arrayed their Hosts</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>The Beginning of the Battle between the Iránians and Túránians, and how Ardshír, Shírú, and Shídasp were slain</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>How Girámi, Jámásí's Son, and Nívzár were slain</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>How Zarír, the Brother of Gushtásp, was slain by Bidírafsh</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>How Asfandiyár heard of the Slaying of Zarír</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>How Asfandiyár went to Battle with Arjásp</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>How Nastúr and Asfandiyár slew Bidírafsh</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>How Arjásp fled from the Battle</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>How the Turkmans received Quarter from Asfandiyár</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>How Gushtásp returned to Balkh</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>How Gushtásp sent Asfandiyár to all the Provinces, and how the Folk received from him the good Religion</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>How Gurazm spake Evil of Asfandiyár</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>How Jámásí came to Asfandiyár</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>How Gushtásp imprisoned Asfandiyár</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>How Gushtásp went to Sístán and how Arjásp arrayed his Host the second Time</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>The Words of Dakíki being ended, Firdausí resumeth, praising Sháh Mahmúd and criticizing Dakíki</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>How the Host of Arjásp marched to Balkh and how Luhrásí was slain</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>How Gushtásp heard of the Slaying of Luhrásí and led his Army toward Balkh</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>How Gushtásp was put to Flight by Arjásp</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>How Jámásí visited Asfandiyár</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>How Asfandiyár saw his Brother Farshíward</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>How Asfandiyár came to the Mountain to Gushtásp</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>How Gushtásp sent Asfandiyár the second Time to fight Arjásp</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Vol. V**

**PAGE**
GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

Gushtásp—

PART II. THE STORY OF THE SEVEN STAGES—

sect.
1. The Praise of Mahmúd the great King. .................................................. 118

THE SEVEN STAGES OF ASFANDIYÁR—
2. The First Stage: How Asfandiyyár slew two Wolves .................................. 119
3. The Second Stage: How Asfandiyyár slew two Lions ..................................... 124
4. The Third Stage: How Asfandiyyár slew a Dragon ....................................... 125
5. The Fourth Stage: How Asfandiyyár slew a Witch ........................................ 128
6. The Fifth Stage: How Asfandiyyár slew the Símurgh .................................... 131
7. The Sixth Stage: How Asfandiyyár passed through the Snow .......................... 134
8. The Seventh Stage: How Asfandiyyár crossed the River and slew Gurgsár .......... 139
9. How Asfandiyyár went to the Brazen Hold in the Guise of a Merchant ............... 143
10. How the Sisters of Asfandiyyár recognised him ............................................. 147
11. How Bishútan assaulted the Brazen Hold .................................................... 150
12. How Asfandiyyár slew Arjásp ..................................................................... 152
13. How Asfandiyyár slew Kuhram .................................................................. 155
14. How Asfandiyyár wrote a Letter to Gushtásp and his Answer ......................... 159
15. How Asfandiyyár returned to Gushtásp ....................................................... 161

PART III. THE STORY OF ASFANDIYÁR’S FIGHT WITH RUSTAM—
1. How Asfandiyyár ambitioned the Throne and how Gushtásp took Counsel with the Astrologers. .................................................. 167
2. How Asfandiyyár demanded the Kingdom from his Father ................................ 170
3. How Gushtásp answered his Son ................................................................... 172
4. How Katáyún counselled Asfandiyyár ................................................................ 175
5. How Asfandiyyár led a Host to Zábul .............................................................. 177
6. How Asfandiyyár sent Bahman to Rustam ....................................................... 179
7. How Bahman came to Zál .............................................................................. 182
8. How Bahman gave a Message to Rustam ....................................................... 184
9. How Rustam made Answer to Asfandiyyár ..................................................... 187
10. How Bahman returned ................................................................................. 190
11. The Meeting of Rustam and Asfandiyyár ......................................................... 192
12. How Asfandiyyár summoned not Rustam to the Feast .................................... 196
13. How Asfandiyyár excused himself for not summoning Rustam to the Feast ...... 198
## General Table of Contents

**Part III. The Story of Asfandiyyar’s Fight, etc. (continued)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15. How Rustam answered Asfandiyyar, praising his own Race and Deeds</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. How Asfandiyyar boasted of his Ancestry</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. How Rustam vaunted his Valour</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. How Rustam drank wine with Asfandiyyar</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. How Rustam returned to his Palace</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. How Zal counselled Rustam</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. How Rustam fought with Asfandiyyar</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. How the Sons of Asfandiyyar were slain by Zawara and Faramarz</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. How Rustam fled to the Heights</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. How Rustam took Counsel with his Kin</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. How the Simurgh succoured Rustam</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. How Rustam went back to fight Asfandiyyar</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. How Rustam shot Asfandiyyar in the Eyes with an Arrow</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. How Asfandiyyar told his last Wishes to Rustam</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29. How Bishutun bare the Coffin of Asfandiyyar to Gushtasp</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30. How Rustam sent Bahman back to Iran</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Part IV. The Story of Rustam and Shaghad**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. The Prelude</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. How Rustam went to Kabul on behalf of his Brother Shaghad</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. How the King of Kabul dug Pits in the Hunting-ground and how Rustam and Zawara fell therein</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. How Rustam slew Shaghad and died</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. How Zal received News of the Slaying of Rustam and Zawara, and how Faramarz brought their Coffins and set them in the Charnel-house</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. How Faramarz led an Army to avenge Rustam and slew the King of Kabul</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. How Radaaba lost her Wits through Mourning for Rustam</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. How Gushtasp gave the Kingdom to Bahman and died</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Bahman, Son of Asfandiyyar—**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. How Bahman sought Revenge for the Death of Asfandiyyar</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. How Bahman put Zal in Bonds</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. How Faramarz fought with Bahman and was put to Death</td>
<td>287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. How Bahman released Zal and returned to Iran</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. How Bahman married his own Daughter Humai and appointed his Successor</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

#### Vol. V

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. How Humáí cast away her Son Dáráb on the River Farát in an Ark</td>
<td>294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. How the Launderer brought up Dáráb</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. How Dáráb questioned the Launderer's Wife about his Parentage, and how he fought against the Rúmans</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. How Rashnawád learned the Case of Dáráb</td>
<td>302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. How Dáráb fought against the Host of Rúm</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. How Humáí recognized her Son</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. How Humáí seated Dáráb upon the Throne</td>
<td>309</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### INDEX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>313</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### VOLUME VI

#### Genealogical Table of the Sásániáns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviations</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note on Pronunciation</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### THE KAIÁNIAN DYNASTY (concluded)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dáráb—</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. How Dáráb built the City of Dárábgird</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. How Dáráb defeated the Host of Shu'íb</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. How Dáráb fought with Failakús and took to Wife his Daughter</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. How Dáráb sent back the Daughter of Failakús to Rúm, and how Sikandar was born</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dárá, Son of Dáráb—</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. How Dará harangued the Chiefs and took Order for the Realm</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. The Death of Failakús and Sikandar's Accession to the Throne</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. How Sikandar went as his own Ambassador to Dárá</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. How Dárá fought with Sikandar and was worsted</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. How Dárá fought with Sikandar the second Time</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. How Sikandar fought with Dárá the third Time, and how Dárá fled to Kirmán</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. How Dárá wrote to Sikandar to propose Peace</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. How Dárá was slain by his Ministers</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. How Dárá told his last Wishes to Sikandar and died</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. How Sikandar wrote to the Nobles of Irán</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Sikandar—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. How Sikandar sat upon the Throne of Irán |
2. How Sikandar wrote to Dílárái and Rúshanak, the Wife and Daughter of Dárá, touching the Nuptials of Rúshanak.
### GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3. How Diláráí answered the Letter of Sikandar</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. How Sikandar sent his Mother, Náhíd, to fetch Rúshának, and how he married her</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. How Kaid of Hind had a Dream, and how Mihrán interpreted it</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. How Sikandar marched against Kaid of Hind and wrote a Letter to him</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. How Kaid of Hind answered Sikandar’s Letter and announced the Sending of the Four Wonders</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. How Sikandar sent back the Messenger to receive the Four Wonders</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. How Sikandar sent Ten Sages with a Letter to inspect the Four Wonders of Kaid of Hind</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. How the Ten Sages brought the Daughter, the Cup, the Leech, and the Sage, from Kaid of Hind to Sikandar</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. How Sikandar tested the Sage, the Leech, and the Cup sent by Kaid of Hind</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. How Sikandar led a Host against Fúr of Hind and wrote a Letter to him</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. How Fúr answered the Letter of Sikandar</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. How Sikandar arrayed his Host to fight with Fúr of Hind and made iron Steeds and Riders filled with Naphtha</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. How the Host of Sikandar fought with the Host of Fúr, how Fúr was slain by Sikandar, and how Sikandar seated Sawurg upon the Throne of Fúr</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. How Sikandar went on a Pilgrimage to the House of the Kaaba</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. How Sikandar led his Troops from Judda toward Misr</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. Sikandar’s Letter to Kaidáfá, Queen of Andalús, and her Answer</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. How Sikandar led his Troops to Andalús and took the Hold of King Faryán</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. How Sikandar went as an Ambassador to Kaidáfá and was recognised by her</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. How Kaidáfá counselled Sikandar</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. How Tainúsh, the Son of Kaidáfá, was wroth with Sikandar, and how Sikandar took Precaution against him</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. How Sikandar made a Compact with Kaidáfá and returned to his Troops</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. How Sikandar went to the Country of the Brahmins, inquired into their Mysteries, and received an Answer</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sect.</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. How Sikandar came to the Western Sea and saw Wonders</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. How Sikandar reached the Land of Habash, fought, and was victorious</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. How Sikandar reached the Land of the Narmpáí, how he fought and was victorious, how he slew a Dragon, ascended a Mountain, and was forewarned of his own Death</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. How Sikandar reached the City of Women, named Harám, and saw Wonders there</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29. How Sikandar went into the Gloom to seek the Water of Life and spake with Birds and Isrá’íl</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30. How Sikandar went to the East, saw Wonders, and built a Barrier against Yájúj and Májúj</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31. How Sikandar saw a Corpse in a Palace of Jewels on the Top of a Mountain, and the Speaking Tree, and how he was warned of his Death</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32. How Sikandar marched his Army to Chín, carried his own Letter to Faghfúr, and returned to his Army with the Answer</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33. How Sikandar returned from Chín, made War against the Sindians, and went to Yaman</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34. How Sikandar marched toward Bábíl and found the Treasure of Kai Khusráu in a City</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35. How Sikandar went to the City of Bábíl, wrote a Letter to Arastálís, and received his Answer</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36. Sikandar’s Letter to his Mother</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37. How Sikandar’s Life ended and how they carried his Coffin to Iskandariya</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38. How the Sages and other Folk lamented Sikandar</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39. How the Mother and Wife of Sikandar lamented him</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40. Firdausí’s Complaint of the Sky and Appeal to God</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**THE ASHKÁNIAN DYNASTY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. The Praise of Mahmúd</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. The Tribal Kings</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. How Pápak saw Sásán in a Dream and gave him a Daughter in Marriage</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. How Ardshír Pápakán was born, and of his Case with Ardawán</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. How Ardawán’s Slave-girl fell in Love with Ardshír and how he fled with her to Párs.</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. How Ardawán heard of the Flight of Ardshír with the Damsel and pursued them</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. How Ardawán wrote to Bahman, his Son, to take Ardshír</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Ashkánian Dynasty (continued)—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8. How Tabák helped Ardshír, fought with Bahman, and conquered him</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. How Ardawán led forth his Host for Battle with Ardshír and was slain</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. How Ardshír fought with the Kurds and was defeated</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. How Ardshír attacked the Kurds by Night and overthrew them</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. The Story of Haftwád and the Case of the Worm</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. How Ardshír fought with Haftwád and was worsted</td>
<td>236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. How Mihrák of Jahram sacked the Palace of Ardshír</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. How Ardshír heard about the Worm and made Shift to slay it</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. How Ardshír slew Haftwád</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Sásánian Dynasty

Ardshír Pápakán—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. How Ardshír Pápakán sat upon the Throne in Baghdád</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. The Case of Ardshír and the Daughter of Ardawán</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. How Shápúr was born to Ardshír by the Daughter of Ardawán, and how after seven Years Ardshír heard of his Son and acknowledged him</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. How Ardshír, to find out the Future of his Reign, sent to Kaid of Hind, and Kaid’s Reply</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. The Adventure of Shápúr with the Daughter of Mihrák, and his taking her to Wife</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. How Urmuzd was born to Shápúr by the Daughter of Mihrák</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Of the Wisdom of Ardshír and his Method of administering the Realm</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. How Kharrád praised Ardshír</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. How Ardshír charged Shápúr and died</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Thanksgiving to the Maker and Praise of Mahmúd, the great King</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Shápúr, son of Ardshír—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. How Shápúr sat upon the Throne and delivered a Charge to the Chieftains</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. How Shápúr fought with the Rúmans, how Bazánash, their General, was taken Priscner, and how Caesar made Peace with Shápúr</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. How Shápúr seated Urmuzd upon the Throne and died</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

URMUZD, SON OF SHÁPUR—

1. How Urmuzd addressed the Assembly. ... 302
2. How Urmuzd gave up the Throne to Bahrám, charged him, and died. ... 303

BAHRÁM, SON OF URMUZD—

1. How Bahrám succeeded to the Throne, charged the Nobles, and died. ... 307

BAHRÁM, SON OF BAHRÁM—

1. How Bahrám, Son of Bahrám, ascended the Throne, charged the Nobles, and died. ... 311

BAHRÁM BAHRÁMIYÁN—

1. How Bahrám Bahrámíyán succeeded to the Throne and died four Months after. ... 313

NARSI, SON OF BAHRÁM—

1. How Narsi succeeded to the Throne, counselled his Son, and died. ... 315

URMUZD, SON OF NARSI—

1. How Urmuzd, Son of Narsi, ascended the Throne, and how his Life ended. ... 318

SHÁPUR, SON OF URMUZD, SURNAME ZÚ’L AKTÁF—

1. How Shápur, Son of Urmuzd, was born forty days after his Father’s Death, and how he was crowned. ... 328
2. How Táír, the Arab, carried off the Daughter of Narsi and married her, how Shápur went to Yaman to fight him, and how his Daughter fell in Love with Shápur. ... 330
3. How Táír was bemused by his Daughter and how she came to Shápur, who took the Hold and slew Táír. ... 333
4. How Shápur went disguised as a Merchant to Rúm, how he was taken by Cæsar, and how Cæsar ravaged the Land of Irán. ... 335
5. How the Damsel took Measures to free Shápur, and how he fled with her from Rúm. ... 339
6. How the High Priest and the Captain of the Host, hearing of Shápur’s Arrival, went to him with the Troops. ... 345
7. How Shápur made a Night-attack, and how Cæsar was taken. ... 346
8. How Shápur went to Rúm and fought with Yánus, Cæsar’s Brother. ... 351
9. How the Rúmans placed Bazánúsh upon the Throne of Cæsar; his Letter to Shápur and the Answer. ... 353
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11. How Mání, the Painter, came to Shápûr with Pretence of being a Prophet, and was slain</td>
<td></td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. How Shápûr made his Brother Ardshír Regent till his own Son should grow up, and how his Days ended</td>
<td></td>
<td>360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ardshír, Brother of Shápûr—</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. How Ardshír sat upon the Throne and gave a Charge to the Officers</td>
<td></td>
<td>363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shápûr, Son of Shápûr—</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. How Shápûr, Son of Shápûr, sat upon the Throne and gave a Charge to the Officers</td>
<td></td>
<td>365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bahram, Son of Shápûr—</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. How Bahram sat upon the Throne and gave a Charge to the Officers</td>
<td></td>
<td>368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Yazdagird, Son of Shápûr—</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. How Yazdagird sat upon the Throne and gave a Charge to the Officers</td>
<td></td>
<td>374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. How Bahram Gur, Son of Yazdagird, was born and sent to be brought up by Munzir, the Arab</td>
<td></td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. How Bahram went to the Chase with a Damsel and how he displayed his Accomplishment</td>
<td></td>
<td>382</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. How Bahram showed his Accomplishment in the Chase before Munzir</td>
<td></td>
<td>384</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. How Bahram came with Nu'man to Yazdagird</td>
<td></td>
<td>386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. How Yazdagird put Bahram in Bonds, how he escaped by the good Offices of Tainúsh, and how he returned to Munzir</td>
<td></td>
<td>389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. How Yazdagird, by the Advice of an Archmage, went to the Spring of Sav and was killed by a Water-horse</td>
<td></td>
<td>391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. How the Iranians took Counsel and placed Khusrau upon the Throne</td>
<td></td>
<td>394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. How Bahram Gur heard of the Death of his Father and invaded Iran</td>
<td></td>
<td>395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. How the Iranians heard of Bahram's Pillaging and wrote to Munzir, and how he replied</td>
<td></td>
<td>397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. How Bahram Gur arrived at Jahram with the Host of Munzir, and how the Iranians went out to him</td>
<td></td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. How Bahram Gur harangued the Iranians as to his Fitness to rule, how they rejected him but promised him the Kingship if he would take the Crown from between the Lions</td>
<td></td>
<td>402</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>How Bahrám went to the Chase and slew Lions</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>How Bahrám went to hunt the Onager, showed his Skill before the Princes, and returned to Baghdád and Istakhr</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>How the Khán of Chín led forth a Host to war with Bahrám, and how the Iránians asked Quarter of the Khán and submitted to him</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>How Bahrám attacked the Host of the Khán and took him</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>How Bahrám took a Pledge from the Túránians, how he set up a Pillar to delimit the Realm, and placed Shahra upon the Throne of Túrán</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>How Bahrám wrote to announce his Victory to his Brother Narsí and returned to Irán</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>How Bahrám wrote a Letter of Directions to his Officials</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>How Bahrám called before him the Envoy of Cæsar, and how the Envoy questioned and answered the Archmages</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>How Bahrám dismissed Cæsar’s Envoy and charged his own Officials</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>How Bahrám went with his own Letter to Shangul, King of Hind</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>How Shangul received the Letter from Bahrám and made Reply</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>How Shangul prepared a Feast for Bahrám, and how Bahrám displayed his Prowess</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>How Shangul suspected Bahrám and kept him from Irán</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>How Bahrám fought with the Wolf at the Bidding of Shangul and slew it</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>How Bahrám slew a Dragon</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>How Shangul became troubled about Bahrám and gave a Daughter to him</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>How Faghfúr of Chín wrote to Bahrám and how he replied</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>How Bahrám fled from Hindústán to Irán with the Daughter of Shangul</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>How Shangul followed Bahrám, learned who he was, and was reconciled to him</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>How Shangul went back to Hind and Bahrám to Irán</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>How Shangul with seven Kings visited Bahrám</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>How Shangul returned to Hindústán, and how Bahrám remitted the Property-tax to the Land-owners</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>How Bahrám summoned Gipsies from Hindústán</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>How the Time of Bahrám came to an End</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sect.</td>
<td>How Yazdagird sat upon the Throne and exherted the Captains of the Host</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hurmuz</td>
<td>How Hurmuz, Son of Yazdagird, ascended the Throne</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pírúz</td>
<td>How Pírúz sat upon the Throne and made an Oration</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How Pírúz built the Cities of Pírúz-Rám and Bádán-Pírúz, and how he went to war with Túrán</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Letter of Khúshnawáz to Pírúz</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How Pírúz fought with Khúshnawáz and was slain</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balásh</td>
<td>How Balásh ascended the Throne and harangued the Irániens</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How Súfarai had Tidings of the Slaying of Pírúz, how he wrote a Letter to Khúshnawáz, and how Khúshnawáz replied</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How Súfarai fought with Khúshnawáz, and how Kubád was released from his Bondage</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kubád, Son of Pírúz</td>
<td>How Kubád sat upon the Throne and made an Oration to the Irániens</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How Súfarai went to Shíráz, how the Irániens slandered him to Kubád, and how Kubád slew him</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How the Irániens put Kubád in Bonds and committted him to Rízmír, the Son of Súfarai, and how Jámásp, the Brother of Kubád, was set upon the Throne</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How Kubád escaped from Ward with Rízmír, how he wedded the Daughter of a Thane, and how he took Refuge with the Haitálians</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How Kubád returned from Haitál to Irán, how he had Tidings of the Birth of his Son, Núshírwán, and reascended the Throne</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Story of Kubád and Mazdak, and how Kubád adopted the Faith of Mazdak</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How Núshírwán rejected the Faith of Mazdak and slew him and his Followers</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How Kubád nominated Kisrá as Successor, and how the Great gave him the name of Núshírwán</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sect.</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>220</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>221</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>224</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>230</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>234</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>236</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>239</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>244</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>247</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>248</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>249</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>254</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>255</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>259</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>261</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>263</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>265</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>267</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>272</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Part II. The Story of Búzurjmihr and the Seven Banquets of Núshírwán—**

1. How Núshírwán had a Dream and how Búzurjmihr interpreted it 281
GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

Nūshīrwān—
Part II. The Story of Būzurjmihr, etc. (continued)—Vol. VII

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>312</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Part III. The Story of Mahbūd and other Matters—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>354</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>364</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

**Nūshīrwān—**

**PART III. The Story of Mahbūd, etc. (continued)—Vol. VII**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13. How Būzurjmihr counselled Nūshīrwān and discoursed on good Deeds and Words.</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PART IV. The Introduction of the Game of Chess into Irān. The Legend of the Invention of the Game. The Discovery of the Book of Kalīla and Dimna**

| 1. How the Rāja of Hind sent the Game of Chess to Nūshīrwān | 384 |
| 2. How Būzurjmihr invented Nard, and how Nūshīrwān sent it with a Letter to the Rāja of Hind. | 389 |
| 3. The Story of Gav and Talhand, and the Invention of Chess | 394 |
| 4. How Nūshīrwān sent Barzwi, the Leech, to Hindustān to fetch a wondrous Drug, and how Barzwi brought back the Book of Kalīla and Dimna | 423 |

**INDEX** | 433 |

**VOL. VIII**

| Abbreviations | xv |
| Note on Pronunciation | xvi |

**THE SĀSĀNIAN DYNASTY (continued)**

**Nūshīrwān (continued)—**

**PART V. The Fall and Restoration to Favour of Būzurjmihr, and the Wisdom of Nūshīrwān—**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. How Nūshīrwān was wroth with Būzurjmihr and ordered him to be put in Ward</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. How the Ambassador of Cæsar came to Nūshīrwān with a locked Casket and how Būzurjmihr was set at large to declare its Contents</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Discourse on the Responses of Nūshīrwān</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Nūshīrwān’s Letter of Counsel to his Son Hurmuzd</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. How an Archmage questioned Nūshīrwān and how he made Answer</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PART VI. The Shāh’s last Years—**

| 1. How Nūshīrwān made ready to war against Cæsar | 43 |
| 2. How Nūshīrwān took the Stronghold of Sakīla and how a Shoemaker had Dealings with him. | 46 |
| 3. How the Envoys of Cæsar came to Nūshīrwān with Apologies and Presents. | 51 |
| 4. How Nūshīrwān chose Hurmuzd as his Successor. | 54 |
Nūshīrwān—

PART VI. THE SHAH’S LAST YEARS (continued)— Vol. VIII

5. How the Archimages questioned Hurmuzd and how he replied ........................................ 57
6. How Nūshīrwān appointed Hurmuzd as his Successor and gave him parting Counsels ........ 61
7. How Nūshīrwān had a Dream and how Bāzūrjmihr interpreted it as signifying the Appearance of Muhammad .................. 66

HURMUZD, SON OF NŪSHĪRWĀN—

1. The Prelude .......................................................................................................................... 77
2. How Hurmuzd ascended the Throne and harangued the Chiefs ........................................ 78
3. How Hurmuzd slew Ízid Gashasp, Zarduhsht, Sīmāh Barzin, and Bahrām Azarmihān, his Father’s Ministers ................................................................. 81
4. How Hurmuzd turned from Tyranny to Justice .................................................................... 90
5. How Hosts gathered from all Sides against Hurmuzd, and how he took Counsel with his Wazirs ........................................................................................................ 92
6. How Hurmuzd heard of Bahrām Chūbīna and sent for him .............................................. 96
7. How Bahrām Chūbīna came to Hurmuzd and was made Captain of the Host ................ 100
8. How Bahrām Chūbīna went with twelve thousand Cavaliers to fight King Sāwa ........ 106
9. How King Sāwa sent a Message to Bahrām Chūbīna and his Answer .............................. 113
10. How King Sāwa and Bahrām Chūbīna set the Battle in Array against each other .......... 115
11. How King Sāwa sent another Message to Bahrām Chūbīna and his Answer ................. 117
12. How Bahrām Chūbīna had a Dream in the Night, how he gave Battle the next Morning, and how King Sāwa was slain ................................. 121
13. How Bahrām Chūbīna sent a Letter announcing his Victory, and the Head of King Sāwa, to Hurmuzd, and his Answer ....................................................... 129
14. How Bahrām Chūbīna fought with Parmūda, Son of King Sāwa, and overcame him, and how Parmūda took Refuge in the Hold of Āwāzā .............................................. 134
15. How Bahrām Chūbīna sent a Message to Parmūda and how Parmūda asked Quarter .......... 138
16. How Bahrām Chūbīna asked of Hurmuzd a Warrant to spare the Life of Parmūda and the Answer ....................................................................................................... 141
17. How Hurmuzd’s Letter, granting Quarter to Parmūda, reached Bahrām Chūbīna, and how Bahrām Chūbīna was wroth with Parmūda ...................................................... 143
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Vol. VIII Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>How Parmūda came before Hurmuzd with the Treasures sent by Bahram Chūbina</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>How Hurmuzd heard of the Ill-doing of Bahram Chūbina and made a Compact with the Khán</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>How Hurmuzd wrote a chiding Letter to Bahram Chūbina and sent him a Distaff-case, Cotton, and Women’s Raiment</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>How Bahram Chūbina put on the Woman’s Dress and showed himself therein to the Chiefs of the Host</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>How Bahram Chūbina went to hunt and saw a Lady who foretold the Future to him</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>How Bahram Chūbina assumed the royal Style and how Kharrad, Son of Barzin, and the Archscribe fled</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>How Hurmuzd received News of Bahram Chūbina’s Doings, and how Bahram Chūbina sent a Frail of Swords to Hurmuzd</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>How Bahram Chūbina made known to the Chiefs his Designs upon the Throne, and how his Sister Gurdaya advised him</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Bahram Chūbina’s Letter to the Khán and how he coined Money with the name of Khusrau Parwiz and sent it to Hurmuzd</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>How Bahram Chūbina wrote to Hurmuzd and how Khusrau Parwiz fled from his Father</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>How Hurmuzd sent Ayin Gashasp with an Army to fight Bahram Chūbina and how he was slain by his Comrade</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>How Hurmuzd grieved, refused Audience to the Irānians, and was blinded by Bandwī and Gustaham</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>How Khusrau Parwiz heard of the Blinding of Hurmuzd</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Khusrau Parwiz—**

1. The Prelude | 196
2. How Khusrau Parwiz sat upon the Throne and made an Oration | 197
3. How Khusrau Parwiz visited his Father and asked Forgiveness | 198
4. How Bahram Chūbina heard of the Blinding of Shāh Hurmuzd and how he led his Troops against Khusrau Parwiz | 200
5. How Khusrau Parwiz and Bahram Chūbina met and parleyed | 204
6. How Bahram Chūbina and Khusrau Parwiz returned, how Gurdaya advised Bahram Chūbina, and how Khusrau Parwiz told his Purpose to the Irānians | 220
7. How Bahram Chubina attacked the Army of Khusrau Parviz by Night and how Khusrau Parviz fled 226
8. How Khusrau Parviz went to his Sire and fled to Rüm, and how Hurmuzd was slain 230
9. How Balrám Chúbina sent Troops after Khusrau Parviz and how Bandwi contrived to rescue him from their Hands 233
10. How Bahram, the Son of Siyâwush, took Bandwi and carried him to Bahram Chúbina 237
11. How Bahram Chúbina summoned the Magnates of Irán, how they discussed his Pretensions to the Kingdom, and how he acceded to the Throne 239
12. How Bandwi plotted with Bahram, the Son of Siyâwush, to slay Bahram Chúbina, and how Bandwi fled from Bond 245
13. How Khusrau Parviz went toward Rüm by the Desert-route and how a Hermit told him of the Past and Future 249
14. How a Cavalier of Cæsar came to Khusrau Parviz and how he sent an Answer by Gustaham, Bálwí, Andiyán, Kharrád, Son of Barzin, and Shápúr to Cæsar 257
15. How Cæsar answered the Letter of Khusrau Parviz 260
16. How Cæsar wrote to Khusrau Parviz, declining to help him, and his Answer 261
17. How Cæsar wrote the second Time to Khusrau Parviz about giving him Aid 264
18. How Khusrau Parviz answered Cæsar about the Alliance 269
19. How Cæsar made a Talisman and deceived the Envoys of Khusrau Parviz, and how Kharrád, Son of Barzin, solved the Mystery 271
20. How Kharrád, Son of Barzin, expounded the Faith of the Indians and exhorted Cæsar 275
21. How Cæsar sent a Host and his Daughter to Khusrau Parviz 278
22. How Khusrau Parviz led his Host to Æzar Æbádagán and how Bandwi met him on the Way 281
23. How Bahram Chúbina had Tidings of the Coming of Khusrau Parviz and wrote a Letter to the Chiefs of Irán, and how the Letter fell into the Hands of Khusrau Parviz and his Answer 284
24. How Khusrau Parviz fought with Bahram Chúbina and how Kût, the Rúman, was slain 288
25. How Khusrau Parviz fought with Fâhrâm Chúbina the second Time, was defeated, and escaped from him by the Help of Surúsh 292
26. How Khusrau Parwiz fought the third Time with Bahrám Chúbína and defeated him 300
27. How Khusrau Parwiz sent an Army under Nastúh after Bahrám Chúbína, and how Bahrám Chúbína captured him and reached the Khán of Chín 303
28. How Khusrau Parwiz pillaged the Camp of Bahrám Chúbína and wrote a Letter to Cæsar who answered it with a Robe of Honour and Gifts 306
29. How Niyátús was wroth with Bandwi and how Maryam made Peace between them 309
30. How Khusrau Parwiz gave Presents to Niyátús and the Rúmans, how he dismissed them to Rúm, and wrote Patents for the Nobles of Irán 312
31. Firdausí’s Lament for the Death of his Son 315
32. The Story of Bahrám Chúbína and the Khán of Chín 316
33. How Makádtúra was slain by Bahrám Chúbína 320
34. How the Lion-ape slew a Daughter of the Khán, how it was slain by Bahrám Chúbína, and how the Khán gave him a Daughter and the Kingdom of Chín 322
35. How Khusrau Parwiz heard of the Case of Bahrám Chúbína and wrote a Letter to the Khán, and how he replied 327
36. How Khusrau Parwiz sent Kharrád, Son of Barzín, to the Khán and how he schemed to slay Bahrám Chúbína 331
37. How Bahrám Chúbína was slain by Kulún as Kharrád, Son of Barzín, had planned 336
38. How the Khán had Tidings of Bahrám Chúbína’s Death and how he destroyed the House and Family of Kulún 343
39. How Khusrau Parwiz had Tidings of the Slaying of Bahrám Chúbína and honoured Kharrád, Son of Barzín 345
40. How the Khán sent his Brother to Gurdyá, the Sister of Bahrám Chúbína, with a Letter touching her Brother’s Death and asking her in Marriage as his Queen, and her Answer 346
41. How Gurdyá consulted her Nobles and fled from Marv 349
42. How the Khán received Tidings of the Flight of Gurdyá and how he sent Tuwurg with an Army after her, and how Gurdyá slew Tuwurg 351
43. How Gurdyá wrote to Gurdwī 354
44. How Khusrau Parwiz slew Bandwi 354
45. How Gustaham rebelled against Khusrau Parwiz and took Gurdyá to Wife 355
GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

KHUSRAU PARWIZ (continued) —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>46. How Khusrau Parwiz took Counsel with Gurdwí concerning Gustaham and how Gurdya, prompted by Gurdwí, slew him</td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47. How Gurdya wrote to Khusrau Parwiz and how he summoned and married her</td>
<td>361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48. How Gurdya showed her Accomplishment before Khusrau Parwiz</td>
<td>363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49. How Khusrau Parwiz sent an ill-disposed March-lord to Rai and how he oppressed the Folk there</td>
<td>365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50. How Gurdya made Sport before Khusrau Parwiz and how he gave Rai to her</td>
<td>367</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51. How Khusrau Parwiz portioned out his Realm</td>
<td>368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52. How Shirwí, the Son of Khusrau Parwiz, was born of Maryam with bad Auspices and how Khusrau Parwiz informed Caesar</td>
<td>371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53. How Caesar wrote a Letter to Khusrau Parwiz, sent Gifts, and asked for the Cross of Christ</td>
<td>374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54. How Khusrau Parwiz answered Caesar’s Letter and sent Gifts</td>
<td>379</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

THE STORY OF KHUSRAU PARWIZ AND SHIRIN —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>55. The Prelude</td>
<td>382</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56. How Khusrau Parwiz loved Shirín, how they parted, how he met her again while hunting and sent her to his Bower</td>
<td>383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57. How the Nobles heard that Shirín had come to the Bower of Khusrau Parwiz and how they advised him and were satisfied with his Answer</td>
<td>386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58. How Shirín murdered Maryam and Khusrau Parwiz put Shirwí in Bonds</td>
<td>389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59. How Khusrau Parwiz made the Throne of Tákdís</td>
<td>391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60. The Story of Sarkash and Bárbad, the Minstrel, and Khusrau Parwiz</td>
<td>396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61. How Khusrau Parwiz built the Palace of Madá’in</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62. Discourse on the Splendour and Greatness of Khusrau Parwiz</td>
<td>405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63. How Khusrau Parwiz turned from Justice, how the Chiefs revolted, and how Guráz called in Caesar</td>
<td>407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64. How Caesar withdrew through an Expedient of Khusrau Parwiz and how the Chiefs released Shirwí from Bonds</td>
<td>409</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65. How Khusrau Parwiz was taken and how Shirwí sent him to Taisafún</td>
<td>418</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INDEX | 423 |
GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

VOL. IX

Prefatory Note v
Abbreviations xi
Note on Pronunciation xii

THE SÁSÁNIAN DYNASTY (concluded)

Kubád (commonly called Shírwi)—

sect.
1. How Shírwi ascended the Throne, announced his Will, and sent Chiefs to his Father with Counsel and Excuses 8
2. How Khusrau Parwíz answered Shírwi 15
3. How Shírwi grieved for Khusrau Parwíz and how the Chiefs were displeased thereat 27
4. How Bárbad lamented Khusrau Parwíz, cut off his own Fingers, and burned his Instruments of Music 29
5. How the Chiefs demanded from Shírwi the Death of Khusrau Parwíz and how he was slain by Mihr Hurmuzd 32
6. How Shírwi asked Shírfín in Marriage, how Shírfín killed herself, and how Shírwi was slain 36

Ardshír, Son of Shírwi—

1. How Ardshír, Son of Shírwi, ascended the Throne and harangued the Chiefs 44
2. How Guráž was displeased at Ardshír being Sháh and how he caused Ardshír to be slain by Píruž Son of Khusrau 45

Guráž also called Faráyín—

1. How Guráž, (also called Faráyín,) received News of the Slaying of Ardshír, hastened to Írán, took Possession of the Throne, and was killed by Shahránguráž 51

Púrándukht—

1. How Púrándukht ascended the Throne and slew Píruž, Son of Khusrau, and how her own Life ended 56

Ázarmdukh—

1. How Ázarmdukh ascended the Throne and how she died 59

Farrukhzád—

1. How Farrukhzád ascended the Throne and how he was slain by a Slave 61
Yazdagird—
sect. 1. How Yazdagird ascended the Throne and addressed the Chiefs 70
2. How Sa’ad, Son of Wakkás, invaded Irán, how Yazdagird sent Rustam to oppose him, and how Rustam wrote a Letter to his Brother 72
3. How Rustam wrote to Sa’ad, Son of Wakkás, and how he replied 78
4. How Rustam fought with Sa’ad, Son of Wakkás, and was slain 83
5. How Yazdagird consulted with the Iránians and went to Khurásán 85
6. How Yazdagird wrote to Máhwí of Súr 89
7. How Yazdagird wrote to the Marchlords of Tús 90
8. How Yazdagird went to Tús and how Máhwí of Súr met him 95
9. How Máhwí of Súr incited Bīzhan to war with Yazdagird and how Yazdagird fled and hid himself in a Mill 96
10. How Máhwí of Súr sent the Miller to kill Yazdagird, and how the Archimages counselled Máhwí to forbear 101
11. How Yazdagird was slain by Khusráu, the Miller 107
12. How Máhwí of Súr was informed of the Obsequies of Yazdagird and ascended the Throne 112
13. How Bīzhan, hearing of the Slaying of Yazdagird and of Máhwí of Súr’s Accession to the Throne, led forth the Host to fight with him 115
14. How Máhwí of Súr was taken and slain by Order of Bīzhan 118
15. Account of the Completion of the Sháhnáma 121
CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS

VOLUME I.

Page xii, line 21, for 'Evil' read 'evil.'
Page xiii, line 15, for 'Born' read 'born.'
Page 4, line 4, delete 'still.'
Page 5, line 22, after 'camel' add 'of which the red-haired variety
was most esteemed.'
Page 6, line 21, for 'Scythian' read 'Elamitic.'
Page 7, line 19, for 'was' read 'became,' line 25 and elsewhere, for
'Tritá' and 'Traitáná' read 'Trita' and 'Traitana,'
Page 9, line 16 and elsewhere, for 'Ázarbiján' read 'Ázarbáiján.'
Page 10, bottom. The date of the fall of Nineveh has lately been
assigned to the year B.C. 612. See 'The Fall of Nineveh,'
p. 9 seq. By C. J. Gadd.
reference number 2, after R insert P.
Page 11, line 29 and elsewhere, for 'Hira and Anbar' read 'Híra and
Ambár.'
Page 13, reference number 2, for 'NESH' read 'NSEH.'
Page 14, line 25, for 'Sámanides' read 'Sámánids.'
Page 17, delete lines 7-10.
reference number 1, add 'See too A. V. Williams Jackson,'
'From Constantinople to the Home of Omar Khayyam,'
Ch. v.'
Page 19, line 19, for 'Sacaestan' read 'Sacaestán,'
reference number 3, delete 'iii.'
Page 21, line 7 and elsewhere, for 'Nuh' read 'Núh.'
line 12, for 'appealed' read 'turned.'
Page 29, line 12 from bottom, cf LEC, pp. 206, 207 and note.
Page 31, delete lines 13-16, and read 'that Fazl, son of Ahmad, is
referred to on both occasions.'
Page 33, line 23, delete full stop, insert comma, and for 'Such is not'
read 'not in.'
Page 34, five lines from bottom, delete 'While I sat looking on' and
read 'While I o'erlooked from far.'
Page 37, line 22, for 'Arúdí read 'Arúdi.'
Page 38, seven lines from bottom, for 'Bázh' read 'Bázh.'
six lines from bottom, after 'city' add reference number 1.
at bottom add note 'The quarter in which Bázh was situated
was known as Tabarán.'
Page 39, bottom, reference number 1, delete §1 and 7 'and read' The
too spiritual conception of the Deity in §1 and the refer-
ences to 'All in §7.'
CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS

Page 41, last line, for 'axe' read 'ax.'
Page 43, note 2, for 'fakkâ' read 'fakkâ,' and for 'Cf.' read 'Cf.'
Page 45, line 24, after 'indigo' add reference number 2.
line five from bottom, after 'Cemetery' add reference number 3.
at bottom add * Cf. Encl. Brit. (11th ed.), Vol. 11, p. 917,
col. 2.
* Professor A. V. Williams Jackson's suggestion that, as
burial in the Muhammadan cemetery was refused, the
corpse of Firdausi was reconveyed within the walls and
buried in ground belonging to him, seems far from im-
probable. From Constantinople to the Tomb of Omar
Khayyám, p. 291.
Page 50, line 7, for 'Ahriman' read 'Āhriman.'
Page 51, line 23, add reference number 1.
bottom, add * 'Thus Pîrân (see p. 55) may represent Perun,
the Slavonic god of thunder.'
Page 61, line 3, delete 'which' and to end of sentence, and insert 'i.e.
of Āzargashasp.'
Page 62, bottom, after reference number 7 insert DZA, i, 209.
Page 67, line 18, end, add 'bin.'
Page 68, line 9, end add 'or identical with.'
bottom, reference number 1, add NIN, 15.
Page 69, bottom, for '108' read '107.'
Page 71, line 19, after 'Oxus' insert 'Caspian.'
line 20, after 'Dardanelles' insert 'Mediterranean.'
bottom, reference number 6, after '80' add 'notes.'
Page 73, line 8 from bottom, for 'land' read 'earth.'
7 after 'Shâhs' add reference number 1.
5 after 'canal' add reference number 2.
bottom, add * 'Kai Kubâd. See Vol. ii, p. 22. * Id. 192.'
Page 74, line 8, after 'tree' add reference number 1.
bottom, add * 'Cercis Siliquastrum.'
Page 77, line 11, for the first half 'read' three-fifths.'
line 8 from bottom, after 'repetitions' add reference
number 1.
bottom, add * 'These of course do not include the great
duplications of tradition in the poem.'
Page 82, line 11, for 'regarded' read 'looked upon.'
line 25, after 'farr' add reference number 2.
bottom, add * 'pp. 369, 370.'
Page 83, line 18, before 'mûbîdân' insert—
line 25, after 'subject' add reference number 2.
bottom, add * 'The expression is used, however, of Bahrâm
Gûr (Vol. vii, p. 78) and of Nûshirwân (viii, p. 14).
It is also applied to non-Iránians, to Suhrâb, who was
opposing the Íráni ans (ii 145), Pîrân (ii, 261, 275, 324,
iii, 106), Pîlsam (ii, 352), Tazhâv, an Íránian deserter
(iii, 28), Bazânûsh (vi, 297), and there are other
instances.'
Page 84, line 3, for 'camp enclosure' read 'camp-enclosure.'
Page 85, line 20, for 'end' read 'beginning.'

Page 87, bottom, add 'Rogers, The Shah-namah of Fardusi. Translated from the original Persian. 1909. (A version partly in verse and partly in epitomized prose.)

Page 88, lines 11 and 27, for 'Ardibihisht 'read' Ardibihisht,' line 12 and bottom, for 'Sharivar 'read' Shahriyar,' lines 12 and 26, for 'Farvardin 'read' Farvardin,' line 17 and page 89, line 3, for 'Ādar 'read' Āzar.'

Page 89, line 4, for 'Din 'read' Dai.'

Page 90, line 9, for '3 generations 'read' 4 generations,' and add at bottom, 'See Vol. v. p. 203.'

Page 91, line 5 add as descendant from Tūr 'Māh Āfrīl, d.'

Page 91, line 10, add as descendant of Wīs 'Kūrūkhān.'

Page 91, line 11, for 'Pirān 'read' Pirān=Gulshahr.'

Page 92, line 15, to descendants of Afrāsīyāb add 'Manīzha, d. = Bizhan,' and delete 'Rūn.'

Page 93, lines 20 and 22, transpose 'EP' and 'EHI.'

Page 94, delete lines 4-5.

Page 100, line 4, for 'Shaddad son of Ad 'read' Shaddād son of 'Ad.'

Page 100, line 7, for 'Shaddad 'read' Shaddād.'

Page 100, line 10, for 'Nasiru'd 'read' Nāsiru'd.'

Page 104, after line 4 insert—

Page 106, line 12, for 'The' 'read' 'In,'

Page 108, line 15, for 'with 'read' to.'

Page 112, line 2, for 'The' 'read' 'In.'

Page 113, line 7 and elsewhere, for 'Ind' 'read' 'Hind.'

Page 117, line 2, Delete 'FOR.'

Page 118, line 4, for 'mountain of the holy 'read' Mountain of the Holy.'

Page 120, line 1, for 'Slain 'read' slain' and delete 'the Hand of.'

Page 121, line 5, for 'Fight 'read' 'fight.'

Page 126, line 5, add 'This is the first of many doublets in the poem.'

Page 129, line 6 from bottom, for 'o' 'read' 'of.'
Page 130, line 11, after 'gallery' insert . . .
  line 23, for 'have' read 'find,' and add to reference 4
    'WPT. i. 142.'
Page 131, line 15, for 'They' read 'they.'
Page 132, line 11, add full stop at end.
Page 135, line 3, for 'departed from' read 'abandoned.'
  line 11 from bottom, end, delete comma and insert full stop.
Page 138, line 8 from bottom, delete 'thou my' and read 'any.'
Page 141, line 4 from bottom, for 'light' read 'Grace.'
Page 142, line 5 from bottom, for 'downstricken' read 'down-
    stricken.'
  line 4 from bottom, for 'Áspikán' read 'Áspíkán.'
Page 143, line 7, for '1' read '2.'
  15, for '2' read '3.'
  20, for 'Baghdad' read 'Baghdád.'
  25, after 'Ispahan' add reference number 4.
  31, for reference number 3 read 5.
  33, for reference number 4 read 6.
  bottom, after reference 3 insert '2T, i. 117,' and for
    reference numbers 4 and 5 read 5 and 6.
Page 145, line 25, for 'Evil' read 'evil.'
Page 147, line 7, for 'Kúrds' read 'Kurds.'
Page 161, line 6, for 'Bait al' read 'Baitul.'
Page 171, line 2, for 'HIS REIGN WAS' read 'HE REIGNED.'
Page 173, line 31, for 'glory' read 'Glory.'
Page 174, after line 21 add '§24. We have here another doublet.
    Cf. p. 290.'
Page 175, line 13, for 'He,' read 'Be.'
Page 181, line 13, delete 'never' and insert it after 'children.'
  2 from bottom, end, insert comma.
Page 184, line 18, for 'except' read 'unless.'
Page 189, line 4 from bottom, for 'Envious' read 'envious.'
Page 199, line 7 from bottom, for 'Slain' read 'slain.'
Page 201, note, line 4, for 'Námah' read 'Námah.'
Page 205, line 9, for 'Born' read 'born.'
Page 207, line 13, for 'Chach' read 'Chách.'
Page 208, line 12, for 'wagons did they fill' read 'woins they
    filled.'
Page 209, line 19, for 'no longer harboureth' read 'hath ceased
to harbour.'
  line 20, for 'evident' read 'plain.'
Page 211, delete line 2 and read 'With treasure and brocade,
    dinárs and gems.'
Page 212, line 21, for 'All' read 'all.'
  line 7 from bottom, for 'torquoise' read 'turquoise.'
Page 219, line 5 from bottom, for 'a' read 'the' and after 'ball'
    add reference number 1.
  bottom, insert 'See p. 79.'
Page 221, line 18, for 'Announce' read 'announce.'
  line 7, from bottom, for 'he' read 'He.'
CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS

Page 224, line 11, after 'me' insert 'stay.'
Page 224, line 12, for 'Stop to draw breath' read 'To breathe.'
    22, for 'moralising' read 'moralling.'
Page 226, line 4, delete 'of our.'
Page 227, line 21, for 'Slain' read 'slain' and delete 'the Hand of.'
Page 228, line 9, for 'produce of it' read 'fruit thereof.'
Page 230, line 9, for 'our avenging' read 'vengeful.'
    line 8, beginning, insert §29.
    5 from bottom, beginning, insert §31.
Page 237, bottom, note 1, add 'But cf. Vol. v. p. 30.'
Page 250, side reference, prefix 'V.'
Page 252, line 15, for 'Danbar' read 'Dambar.'
Page 256, line 4, for 'Dunbar' read 'Dambar.'
Page 275, line 3 from bottom, for 'Explain' read 'explain.'
Page 280, line 9, and elsewhere, for 'Almighty' read 'almighty'
    when not absolute.
Page 284, line 1, for 'Aware' read 'aware.'
Page 292, line 20, for 'War against' read 'fight.'
Page 293, end of note, add '309.'
Page 299, line 6 from bottom, for 'Wroth' read 'wroth.'
Page 307, line 7 from bottom, add reference number 1 after 'lasso.'
Page 325, line 11, for 'Sám' read 'Zál.'
Page 337, line 2, delete 'FOR.'
Page 338, line 6, for 'Yast' read 'Yasht,' and at bottom, note 1,
    after 1 insert 'Cf. p. 59.'
From 342, line 3 from bottom, for 'Knowhow' read 'Know how.'
Page 347, line 10, for 'lowered' read 'loured.'
Page 351, side reference, insert 2.
    4 lines from bottom, insert comma after 'throb.'
Page 352, line 4, delete semicolon.
Page 354, line 21, for 'Guzhdaham' read 'Gazhdaham.'
Page 355, line 4 from bottom, delete comma at end.
Page 358, line 6 and elsewhere, for 'Hirmund' read 'Hirmund.'
Page 366, line 12, delete 'not.'
Page 373, line 2, for 'HIS REIGN WAS' read 'HE REIGNED.'
Page 378, line 7, for 'lance' read 'spear.'
Page 380, line 6 from bottom, after 'harm' add reference number 1,
    and at bottom add 'Cf. BLHP, i. 452. Jackson,
    "From Constantinople to the Tomb of Omar
    Khayyam," p. 119.'
Page 381, line 4 from bottom, for 'plants' read 'plans.'

VOLUME II.

Page v, line 13, end, add—
Page ix, line 25, delete 'Kai.'
Page 3, line, 12, for 'Kataín' read 'Katáyún.'
CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS

Page 3, line 15, to children of Gushtásp add Farshídward, Shírú, and thirty-seven others (un-named), for 'Bíshútan' read 'Bíshútan and for' Afríd 'read' Afríd. bottom, after (20) insert =d. of Káid.

Page 5, line 20, after 'd'Or,' add full stop, and for 'texte' read 'Texte.'

Page 6, heading, for 'NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION' read 'ABBREVIATIONS.'

Page 18, line 4, for 'Khazarwán' read 'Khazarwán.'

Page 19, line 18, for 'Turkeštán' read 'Turkistán.'

Page 27, line 1, delete full stop at end.

line 4 from bottom. There is actually a tribe existing to this day among the Elburz Mountains, or the fastnesses of ancient Hyrcania, which still bears the name Div Sapeed.' S. G. W. Benjamin, Persia and the Persians, p. 302.

Page 29, note 1, add 'Vol. v, p. 116.'

Page 61, line 9, for 'bears' read 'bear.'

Page 69, line 20, add semicolon at end.

Page 81, line 3 from bottom, after 'crystal' insert reference number 9 and at bottom add 'Ruins near Aivan-i-Kaif (Kai?) some forty miles South-east of Tíhrán are still traditionally ascribed to Kai Káús. See A. V. Williams Jackson. From Constantinople to the Home of Omar Khayyám, p. 123.'

Page 89, line 25, end, insert comma.

26 after 'Káús' insert comma.

Page 96, line 6 from bottom, after 'Zawará' insert reference number 1 and at bottom add 'This is the first mention of Rustam's brother.'

Page 97, line 5, for 'a Zam of' read 'Zam's stream with.' bottom, delete 'The name of a river' and read 'i.e. the Oxus.'

Page 103, line 12, for 'What ever' read 'Whatever.'

Page 118, bottom, for 'i, p. 236' read 'v, p. 30.'

Page 119, bottom, after 'V' insert full stop.

Page 121, line 21, after 'him' insert reference number 1, and at bottom add 'C. adds rightly:— They led him herdwards That they might have their portion from that steed; As I have heard, he covered forty mares And one became with foal.'

Cf. p. 128 and NIN, p. 45 note 1.'

Page 157, line 7, for 'spoken' read 'unspoken.'

Page 166, line 16, for 'heart and eyes' read 'Heart and Eyes.'

Page 200, line 11, for 'she' read 'She.'

Page 221, line 13, for 'unled' read 'unsoiled.'

Page 224, end of last line, insert reference number 1 and add at bottom 'See pp. 38 seq., 88 seq.'

Page 225, line 12, for 'All-righteous' read 'all-righteous.'

Page 229, line 16, for 'Who' read 'who.' and elsewhere.
CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS

Page 247, line 5 and elsewhere, for 'Almighty' read 'almighty' when not absolute.

Page 252, line 4, for 'my' read 'mine.'

Page 256, line 6 from bottom, for 'caparisoned' read 'betrapped.'

Page 257, line 2 from bottom, delete full stop and insert comma at end.

Page 261, line 21 and elsewhere, for 'Holy' read 'holy' when not absolute.

Page 265, line 18, delete comma at end.

Page 281, line 22, for 'Irán' read 'Turbán.'

Page 285, line 1, for 'dressed' read 'drest.'

Page 306, line 14, end, insert semicolon.

Page 310, line 4 from bottom, for 'All-holy' read 'all-holy.'

Page 312, line 4 from bottom, after 'league' insert comma.

Page 313, line 5 from bottom, end, insert comma.

4 from bottom after 'hearing' insert comma.

Page 321, line 1, end, add reference number 1.

12, end, add reference number 2.

bottom, insert 'See p. 261.' See p. 293.'

Page 328, line 11, for 'Kalúr' read 'Kalú.'

5 from bottom, for 'blunt' read 'pointless.'

4 from bottom, for 'would go' read 'hunted,' and insert full stop at end.

3 from bottom, delete 'To hunt,' and for 'at' read 'At.'

Page 341, line 8 from bottom, for 'Kawa' read 'Káwa.'

Page 374, line 6 from bottom, end, insert reference number 1.

bottom, insert 'See p. 312.'

Page 377, line 22, insert reference number 1.

bottom, insert 'See p. 273.'

Page 384, line 7 from bottom, delete comma and insert full stop at end.

Page 390, bottom, delete '' and insert ''. 

Page 395, line 3, end, insert reference number 1.

bottom, insert 'See p. 363.'

Page 412, last line, for 'toward' read 'tow'rd.'

VOLUME III.

Page 3, line 24, end, add' Kisari Mohan Ganguli and published by.'

Page 14, line 30, end, add reference number 5 and 'The text also allows the view that Farúd dwelt on Mount Sapad. See Vol. v, p. 30.'

Page 15, Note 1, end, add 'There was no difficulty in finding an additional rhyme without using 'Pashan.' 'Gashan' (much) rhymes with 'Pashan' in Vol. vii, p. 397 and note.

Page 20, line 22, end, add reference number 1, and at bottom 'Cf. Vol. i, p. 61.'

Page 36, line 8, for 'Tis' read 'Tis.'

Page 45, line 23, for 'that' read 'thou.'
CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS

Page 59, line 17 and elsewhere, for 'Almighty' read 'almighty' when not absolute.
Page 68, line 18, for 'stoneand' read 'stone and.'
Page 83, note 2, end, add ' (p. 10).'
Page 84, line 7 from bottom and elsewhere, for 'All-holy' read 'all-holy' when not absolute.
Page 102, line 22 for 'Omnipotent' read 'omnipotent.'
Page 110, line 2 and elsewhere, for 'Who' read 'who.'
       6, for 'Whom' read 'whom.'
Page 130, line 11, add comma at end.
Page 134, line 6, end, add
       line 15, end, add ' .'
Page 141, line 2 from bottom and elsewhere, for 'Holy' read 'holy'
       when not absolute.
Page 148, note, for 'Pehlevan' read 'Pehlevan and after ' donna'
       delete comma
Page 151, line 4 from bottom, add full stop at end.
Page 172, note, for 'Car' read 'car.'
Page 191, line 12, for 'Abul' read 'Abul.'
Page 194, line 8, for 'Khan' read 'Khán.'
Page 213, line 22, for 'Oleader' read 'O leader.'
Page 234, note, for 'Et' read 'et' and for 'comblan' read 'com-'
       blant.'
Page 237, line 7, prefix '.
Page 241, line 22, delete 'far.'
Page 251, note, for 'Sur' read 'sur.'
Page 275, line 10, end, delete !
Page 285, line 8 from bottom, for 'fraicheur' read 'fraicheur.'
       last line, add reference number 2.
Page 287, side reference, for 'V. 1063' read 'V. 1065' and subse-
       quent side references consecutively, i.e., 'V. 1066,'
       'V. 1067,' etc., up to page 305.
Page 294, line 7, for 'buffalos' read 'buffaloes.'
Page 298, note, for 'La' read 'la.'
Page 304, line 11, delete semicolon and insert comma.
Page 305, line 25, add side reference 'V. 1086,' and read subsequent
       side references consecutively, i.e., 'V. 1087,'
       'V. 1088,' etc., up to page 356.
Page 318, note, for 'Il' read 'il.'
Page 328, line 12, end, insert semicolon.
Page 348, line 15, add comma at end.

VOLUME IV.

Page v, line 5, end, delete full stop and insert —
Page ix, line 10, for 'wrath' read 'Wrath.'
Page 8, line 10, end, add 'See Vol. vii, pp. 381, 422.'
Page 31, line 6, delete comma and insert semicolon.
Page 40, line 9, end, add reference number 1, and insert at bottom
       'Cf. Vol. i, p. 386 and note.'
CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS

Page 85, note, prefix reference number 1.

Page 139, note 2, add 'It is interesting to find the dog appearing in the Bock of Tobit in which there are Irānian elements. Cf. Vol. iii, p. 271 and Encl. Brit. 11th Ed. s.v. Tobit.'

Page 141, line 9, end, delete——

Page 143, line 6, from bottom, insert comma at end.

Page 144, line 8, delete comma and insert semicolon.

Page 150, line 8, for 'buffalos' read 'buffaloes.'

§3. There appears to be a doublet here as Afrāsiyāb is first said to be beyond Jaz and then at Baigand, i.e., in the neighbourhood first of the Jaxartes and then of the Oxus, but the context favours the latter position.

Page 155, line 10, delete and insert 'He ranged the army's centre and its wings.'

Page 256, line 1, delete and insert 'All filled with minstrelsy and harp and wine.'

bottom, delete comma and insert semicolon.

Page 259, line 7 from bottom, delete 'Barda', a cavern 'and insert 'to Barda', one.'

Page 262, note 2, Add 'The situation of Barda' would, however, make Lake Gokcha more appropriate. Cf. p. 259.'

Page 304, line 14, end, delete comma and insert semicolon.

Page 324, line 12 from bottom, for 'shore' read 'river,' and at bottom add note 'The Euphrates.'

Page 325, line 8 after 'city' add reference number 1 and at bottom add note 'Shūrāb. Cf. Vol. vii, p. 254,'

Page 339, line 1, for 'sea' read 'river.'

Page 340, line 3, for 'sea' read 'stream.'

Page 344, line 16, for 'sea' read 'stream.'

25, for 'sea' read 'river.'

28, for 'sea' read 'stream.'

31, for 'sea' read 'stream.'

Page 346, line 18, end, add reference number 1, and at bottom add note 'Cf. Vol. v, p. 233 note.'

VOLUME V.

Page 14, line 2 from bottom, end, add reference number 11, and at bottom 'Spitāma seems to mean 'White.' See JZ, p. 13.'

Page 30, line 10, for 'Girdkuh' read 'Girdkūh.'

line 24, add 'It has been stated by an oriental authority that Dīzī Gumbadān ('the Domed Fort') and Girdkūh were identical. See LEC, p. 365.'

Page 71, line 13, for 'his' read 'a.'
CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS

Page 71, line 17, end, add reference number 1 and at bottom: 'In Firdausi Nūsh Āzar is the son of Asfandiyār, but in Dakiki may of course be a brother and the one referred to above.'

Page 126, line 4, end, add reference number 1 and at bottom: 'Cf. p. 233 note.'

Page 133, line 21, for 'wisdon' read 'wisdom.'

Page 160, line 23, end, add quotation mark.

Page 161, last line, end, insert full stop.

Page 214, line 14, end, add quotation mark.

Page 277, line 8, insert full stop.
6 from bottom, end, insert semicolon.

Page 288, note 1, add 'Cf. E.P. i, 256.'

VOLUME VI

Page vi, line 3, for 'Married' read 'married.'

Page ix, line 14, for 'Rúmáns' read 'Rúmans.'

Page 3, line 8 from bottom, delete 'Rustam.'
7 from bottom, for 'Chubíná' read 'Chúbíná.'
4 from bottom, for 'Shirwi' read 'Shirwi.'

Page 6, line 21, for 'Muller' read 'Müller.'

Page 15, line 10, for 'legend' read 'Legend.'
3, add 'Cf. Vol. vii, p. 79.'

Page 17, line 1, for 'Mukaifa' read 'Mukaifa.'

Page 39, line 6 from bottom, end, delete ? and insert!

Page 64, line 8, for 'Ravi' read 'Rávi.'

Page 81, line 2, end, insert hyphen.

Page 89, line 5, for 'Married' read 'married.'

Page 98, line 14, end, insert comma.

Page 133, line 4, end, insert semicolon.

Page 135, line 12 from bottom, read 'He must not privily devise.'
10 from bottom, for 'wise' read 'sage.'

Page 136, line 4, end, insert!

Page 137, line 7, end, insert comma.

Page 150, bottom line, end, insert comma.

Page 154, line 13 from bottom, end, insert full stop.

Page 161, line 20, end, insert reference number 1.
bottom, insert note 'Cf. Vol. i, pp. 118, 132.'

Page 207, line 7, after 'above' insert (p. 195).'

Page 209, line 10, end, insert reference number 2, and at bottom add note
'Mohl, rightly according to Nöldeke (NIN, p. 26 and note), reads 'Sámániys' for 'Ashkániys.' The former claimed descent from Bahrám Chúbíná.'

Page 210, line 13 from bottom, end, delete comma.

Page 212, note, add 'Cf. p. 201.'

Page 231, line 4 from bottom, end, insert comma.

Page 250, line 9 from bottom, for 'Chubína' read 'Chúbína.'

Page 288, line 9, beginning, delete ".

Page 291, line 10 from bottom, after 'Oh' insert !

Page 292, line 1, end, insert comma.
CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS

Page 296, line 6 from bottom, for 'Rámdəns' read 'Rúmans.'
Page 298, line 13 from bottom, for 'Pars' read 'Párs.'
Page 304, bottom line, end, insert comma.
Page 312, line 3, for 'respect' read 'respecteth' and for 'thou art' 'thou'rt.'
Page 316, second note, prefix 2.
Page 323, note, line 5 from bottom, end, insert comma.
Page 327, line 7, for 'Ambar' read 'Ambár.'
   line 8, for 'Abbasid' read 'Abbásid.'
Page 339, note, for 'Shammás' read 'Shammás.'
Page 372, line 2 from bottom, for 'the spring of' read 'a lake near.'
   bottom line, after 'birth-place' add, reference number 8, and at bottom add note 'The lake in question being the source of two rivers the expression 'Spring' used by Firdausí in connexion with it is not wholly inappropriate.'
Page 376, line 7 from bottom, for 'great' read 'Great.'
Page 387, line 12 from bottom, prefix 'Director of the British Museum.
Page 402, line 1, end, insert comma.

VOLUME VII.

Page vii, line 4, for 'SASÁNIAN' read 'SÁSÁNIAN.'
Page xi, line 13 from bottom, for 'Feasts' read 'Banquets.'
Page 85, line 16 from bottom insert comma at end.
   3 from bottom, for 'Kharzarwán' read 'Khazarwán.'
Page 95, line 18 end delete comma and insert semicolon.
Page 106, line 15, after 'scabbards' insert comma.
Page 110, line 15, for 'an as' read 'as an.'
Page 118, line 11 from bottom, for 'Irán' read 'Írán.'
Page 155, line 9 from bottom, delete semicolon and insert comma.
Page 156, line 6, after 'Hormisdas' delete comma and insert 'III.'
Page 184, note, line 14 from bottom, after 'bunch' delete . and insert ?
Page 185, bottom note, prefix 4.
Page 207, heading, for 'KUBAD' read 'KUBÁD.'
Page 209, line 2, after 'below' insert reference number 1, and at bottom add '1 Cf. MHP, ii, 77, RH, Bk. iii, ch. 35 and note.'
   line 3 from bottom, end, delete 1 and insert 2, and before note delete 1 and insert 2.
Page 217, line 4 from bottom. Sura appears to be identical with Thapsacus of which Tipshah (1 Kings, iv. 24) meaning probably 'ford' seems to have been the Hebrew form. The army of Cyrus the Younger in his expedition against his brother Artaxerxes II. (Mnemon) crossed the river there on foot. Xenophon, Anabasis, I, iv, 17.
CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS

Page 227, line 5 from bottom, after ' crown ' insert comma.
Page 231, bottom line, delete full stop and insert comma.
Page 239 and 247, heading, read ' NÚŠHİRWAṈ.'
Page 251, line 13 from bottom, for ' Garshasp ' read ' Gashasp.'
Page 263, line 6 from bottom, delete comma and insert semicolon.
Page 275, bottom line, end, insert comma.
Page 300, line 11, insert comma after ' For ' and ' know.'
Page 331, line 4, delete ' the ' and insert ' from.'
Page 348, line 20, for ' Sáhh ' read ' Sháh.'
Page 369, line 18, for ' frowning face ' read ' looks afrowned.'
Page 395, line 10, for ' was ' read ' were.'
Page 400, line 1, for ' crown ' read ' treasure.'
Page 410, bottom line, for ' Almighty ' read ' almighty.'

VOLUME VIII

Page v, line 17, for ' answer ' read ' Answer.'
Page viii, line 13 from bottom, add ' to Caesar.'
Page xv, line 20, for ' PCHAP ' read ' HAP.'
Page 72, line 21, for ' Khán's read ' Khán's.'
Page 91, note, for ' Parwiz read ' Parwiz.'
Page 122, line 14, delete first hyphen.
Page 138, line 19, delete id.
Page 143, line 10, insert comma after ' Letter ' and ' Parmida.'
Page 147, line 11, for ' great ' read ' Great.'
Page 153, line 18, delete full stop and insert comma.
Page 183, line 16, for ' Zab ' read ' Záb.'
Page 190, line 16, for ' Garabzin, ' ' Galabzin ' read ' Garábzin ' ' Galábzin'
Page 191, line 12, according to Muir's ' The Life of Mohammed,' edited by T. H. Weir (1923), p. 431 note, the battle of Dhú Kár was fought A.D. 611.
Page 192, note, for ' PCHAP ' read ' HAP.'
Page 205, line 6 from bottom, after ' take ' insert reference number 1 and at bottom add ' See Vol. 5, p. 156 note.'
Page 225, justify line 25.
Page 265, line 22, delete full stop and insert comma.
Page 270, line 5, for ' Luhrasp ' read ' Luhrásp.'
Page 272, line 1, insert comma after ' one.'
Page 279, line 4 from bottom, for ' and readers of the stars ' read ' with the astrologers.'
Page 285, line 5, for ' great ' read ' Great.'
Page 287, line 20, for ' achieved ' read ' accomplished.'
Page 313, line 21, end, delete full stop and insert comma.
Page 317, line 2 from bottom, delete comma.
Page 327, line 13, for ' brave ' read ' Brave.'
Page 328, bottom, for ' in haste ' read ' with speed.'
Page 343, bottom, for ' gory ' read ' glory.'
CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS

Page 348, line 6 from bottom, for 'in a letter to the king.' read 'to the monarch in a letter.'
Page 353, line 5, for 'If' read 'It'
Page 362, line 11 from bottom, delete hyphen.
Page 374, line 8, for 'Ot' read 'Of.'
Page 411, line 8, for 'the' read 'thy.'
Page 421, line 12 from bottom, for 'Galínus' read 'Galínúsh.'
GENERAL INDEX

This Index and the General Table of Contents in this volume are complementary. References to the latter are in Italics.

A

Aaishma Dageya, demon, iii., 272
=Asmodeus probably, iii, 272
Ábán, genius, iii, 287, 328
'Abbás, Arab chief, attacks Hurmuzd, viii, 93
'Abbásid, 'Abbásids, Muhammadan dynasty, vi, 327
rise of, i, 13
fall of, i, 14
Abbreviations, General List of, ix, 135
Abdaas, bishop, vi, 372
Abraham, patriarch, vi, 65
Abtin (Aptya, Áthwyâ), mythical Irânian hero, husband of Farának and father of Faridún, ix, 53, 103
legend of, i, 145
Zahhák slays, i, 151, 153
Faridún avenges, i, 170
mythological origin of, i, 171, 172, 174
Abú-'Alí Muhammad, Persian poet, Sháhnáma of, i, 69
Abú Bakr, the first Khalífa (A.D. 632-4), i, 12, ix, 76
begins war with Persian Empire, ix, 66
Abú Dulaf, friend of Firdausí, i, 35
assists Firdausí, i, 35
reciter of the Sháhnáma, i, 39

Abú'l 'Abbás Fazl bin Ahmad, minister of Mahmúd and perhaps a patron of Firdausí, i, 30, 100, iv, 141
account of, i, 36
disgrace of, may have affected Firdausí, i, 37
Abú'l Fazl, minister under the Sámanids, father of Abú 'Alí al Bal'ami, who translated Tabari, vii, 430
patron of Rúdághi, vii, 383
Abú'l Kásim (Firdausí, q.v.), i, 24, 38, 99, 112, iv, 140,
v, 89, 119, vi, 20, 207,
viii, 28
Abú'l Kásim of Gurgán, shaikh, iii, 191
dream of, about Firdausí, iii, 191
Abú' Muzaffar. See Nasr.
Abú Mansûr bin Abu'r Razzák, prince of Tús, i, 67 seq.,
vi, 16
Sháhnáma of, vi, 16
probably compiled by
Magi for, i, 69, viii, 71,
73
importance of, for Firdausí, vii, 73.
Abú Mansûr bin Muhammad, son of above (?), 139
patron of Firdausí, i, 29, 110
murdered, i, 29, 111
praise of, i, 110
advice of, to Firdausí, i, 111
Abū Raihán Muhammad. See Albrúñi.
Abū Tālib, uncle of Muhammad, i, 12
Abū 'Ubayda, Arab general, ix, 66
supersedes Khálid in Syria, ix, 66
Abū 'Ubayda, Arab general, ix, 67
made commander in Persian campaign, ix, 67
slain, ix, 67
Accession of a Sháh, ceremony at, vi, 409
Achaemenid, Achaemenids, the, first historical Persian
dynasty, i, 64, v, 10, 281, vi, 194, 197, 198
Achshunwar. See Akhsunwar.
'Ád, father of Shaddád, q.v.
Arab tribe, viii, 276
'Adan, seaport and territory in southern Arabia, vi, 386
Ádár. See Ázar.
Ádárbád, son of Mahrásand, Zoroastrian Saint, v, 16
note ordeal of, v, 16 note
Aden. See 'Adan.
Adonis, iv, 315
Aégean sea, vi, 204
Afrásiyáb, son of Pashang, ruler of Túrán and one of the
arch-enemies of Irán, i 42-
153, i, 42, 55, 72, ii, 11, 13,
14, 16 seq., 20, 79, 81,
98 seq., 118, 127, 149, 184,
189, 242 seq., 257 seq., 283,
286, 288, 322 seq., 335, 347
seq., 360 seq., 390, 373,
380, 381, 386, 392 seq.,
401 seq., iii, 8, 12, 13, 15, 23,
26, 27, 29, 40, 42, 47, 73,
76 seq., 100, 108, 123, 134,
136, 143, 146, 152, 153,
164, 165, 175, 183, 185,
193, 200 seq., 207 seq., 211,
213, 218, 223, 228, 241,
260 seq., 268, 271, 277
seq., 285, 295, 298, 300,
320, 333, 337, 339, 346
Afrásiyáb—cont.
seq., iv, 7, 8, 17, 19 seq.,
25, 29, 46, 56, 58 seq., 65,
66, 70, 75, seq., 83, 89, 93,
94, 96, 103, 108, 110, 113,
117, 128, 129, 145, 146,
150 seq., 192 seq., 235, 252,
253, 273, 287, 289, 294 v,
12, 13, 21, 44, 62, 176,
203, 208, vi, 15, 79, 177,
240 and note, vii, 330,
335, 337, 339, viii, 242,
300, 349, ix, 25, 103
one of the Zoroastrian triad
of evil, i, 59 and note
mythological origin of, i,
337
first mention of, in Sháhnáma, i, 342
advocates war with Nau-
dar, i, 343
bidden by Pashang to in-
vade Irán, i, 343
sends Shamásás and Khaz-
karván to invade Sístán, i,
345
marches to Dahistán, i, 346
writes to Pashang, i, 346
encourages Bármand to chal-
lenge the Iránians to single
combat, i, 347
rewards Bármand, i, 348
fights with Nauadar, i, 348
and seq.
encounters Káran, i, 350
victorious, i, 350, 352
beleaguerers Nauadar in Dah-
istán, i, 353
sends Kurúkhán to attack
Párs, i, 353
takes Nauadar and other
chiefs prisoners, i, 355
hears of the death of Bár-
máand bids Wísá pur-
sue Káran, i, 356
hears of the Turkman de-
feats, i, 362
sends for, and slays, Nauadar,
i, 362
spares the other captives at
IGHIRFÁS' request, i, 363
Afrasiyab, imprisons the captives at Sarl, i, 363
advances to Rai, i, 363
wroth with, and slays, Ighriras, i, 367
fights with Zal, i, 368
Pashang's wrath with, i, 374
invades Iran, i, 374 seq., 381
sends Kulun to intercept Rustam, i, 382
fights with Arabs for Iran and takes it, ii, 92
king of Turan and Chin, ii, 99
expelled from Iran by Kai Kaus and Rustam, ii, 101
fights with the Seven Warriors, ii, 111 seq.
nearly taken prisoner by Rustam, ii, 14, 116, 354,
iii, 242, 250 and note
plot of, against Suhrab and Rustam, ii, 129
gifts of, to Suhrab, ii, 130
identical with Astyages in legend, ii, 191
referred to, ii, 322, 347, 394,
iii, 206, iv, 145, 150, 194
invades Iran, ii, 224 seq.
dream of, ii, 232, 243, 297,
iv, 170, 267
determines to sue for peace and sends hostages, ii,
235 seq.
receives Zanga and consults Piran, ii, 253 seq.
sends Piran to welcome Siyawush, ii, 258
plays at polo with Siyawush, ii, 264
marries Farangis to Siyawush, ii, 275
recalls Siyawush, from Gang-dizh, ii, 285
sends Garsiwaz to Siyawushgird, ii, 289
deceived by Garsiwaz respecting Siyawush, ii, 296 seq.

Afrasiyab, sends Garsiwaz to summon Siyawush and Farangis to court, ii, 300 seq.
attacks, takes, and has Siyawush executed, ii, 314 seq.
appealed to by Farangis, ii, 317
ill-treatment of Farangis by,
ii, 320, 322
referred to, iv, 204
appeal of Piran to, ii, 324
referred to, iv, 205
spares Farangis, ii, 325, and her son Kai Khusrau, ii,
327
interview of, with Kai Khusrau, ii, 332
referred to, iv, 205
sends Surkha against the Iraunians, ii, 344
marches to avenge Surkha, ii, 348
fights with Tus, ii, 353
rescue of, from Rustam by Human, ii, 354
crosses the sea of Chin, ii, 356
consults Piran about Kai Khusrau, ii, 356
returns, ii, 362
vengeance of, on Iran, ii, 363
pursues Kai Khusrau, ii, 388 seq.
disgraces Piran, ii, 390
turns back at the Jihun, ii, 394
Kai Khusrau's oath to take vengeance on, iii., 21
hears of the approach of the Iranian host, iii,
71
bids Piran gather troops,
iii, 71, 79
numbers the host, iii, 79
loss of kindred of, in battle,
iii, 94
rewards Piran, iii, 106
reinforces Piran, iii, 118

VOL. IX.
Afrāsiyāb, announces to his chiefs the defeat of his host, iii, 242
exhorted by his host to continue the war, iii, 243, 249
makes his preparations, iii, 243, 250
sends Farghār to spy on Rustam, iii, 250
consults with Shīda, iii, 250
describes Rustam, iii, 251
receives Farghār's report, iii, 253
consults with Pirān, iii, 253
bids Pirān continue the war, iii, 254
sends Shīda to summon Pūlāwdand, iii, 255
consults Pūlāwdand, iii, 256
interferes in the fight between Rustam and Pūlāwdand, iii, 263
withdraws to Chīn and Māchūn, iii, 265
go in pursuit of Rustam and is defeated, iii, 280
hears of the case of Bīzhan and Manīzha, iii, 301
consults Kurākhān, iii, 301
sends Garsīwaz to search Manīzha's palace, iii, 301
sentences Bīzhan to death, iii, 304
respite Bīzhan, iii, 308
imprisons Bīzhan, iii, 309
disgraces Manīzha, iii, 309
escapes from Rustam, iii, 348
bids Pirān prepare for war, iii, 349
arrays the host against Rustam, iii, 350
flees from Rustam, iii, 352
goes to Khallukh, iv, 10
addresses his nobles, iv, 10
sends Shīda to Kharazm, iv, 11.
Pirān against Irān, iv, 11
reinforcements and bids him break off negotiations with Gīv, iv, 20
Afrāsiyāb, receives tidings from Pirān, iv, 77
=king of Gang, iv, 134
Kai Khusrau's great war with, 152, iv, 135 seq.
encamped at Baigand (Kunduz), iv, 151
hears ill tidings of Pirān and of the host, iv, 151
distress of, iv, 152
swears to be avenged on Kāi Khusrau, iv, 152
hears of the advance of Kāi Khusrau, iv, 153
harangues and equips his host, iv, 153
patrols the Jihūn with boats, iv, 153
holds a council, summons Kurākhān, and crosses the Jihūn, iv, 154
sends Kurākhān with half the host to Bukhārā, iv, 154
marches to Amwī, iv, 154
encamps in Gīlān, iv, 155
arrays his host, iv, 155
takes his post at the centre, iv, 155
gives Shīda command of the left wing, iv, 155
sends Jahn to guard Shīda's rear, iv, 155
gives a grandson command of the right wing, iv, 156
commands to Gurdkīr, Nastūh, Ighīrās, and Garsīwaz, iv, 156
proposes to invade Nīmrūz, iv, 156
reviews the host and prepares to encounter Kāi Khusrau, iv, 158
urged by Shīda not to delay the attack, iv, 159
reply of, iv, 160
wishes to meet Kāi Khusrau in single combat, iv, 161
sends Shīda on an embassage to Kāi Khusrau, iv, 161
Afrasiyab, hears of Shida's death, iv, 176
grief of, iv, 176
commands in person against Kai Khusrau, iv, 179
sends Jahn to the left, iv, 180
reinforced by Garsiwaz, iv, 181
forced by Garsiwaz and Jahn to quit the field, iv, 182
returns to camp, iv, 183
abandons his camp and re-crosses the Jihun, iv, 184
joins forces with Kurakhân, iv, 186
stays at Bukhârâ, iv, 186
withdraws to Gang-bihisht, iv, 187
reinforced by Kâkula, iv, 188
sends troops to Châch, iv, 188
under Tawurg desertward, iv, 188
marches to meet Kai Khusrau, iv, 190
commands the centre, iv, 190
hears of Kurakhân's defeat and return, iv, 193
hears that Rustam is advancing, iv, 194
fails in attempt to surprise Rustam and withdraws to Gang-bihisht, iv, 194, seq.
asks aid from the Faghfur, iv, 196
prepares Gang-bihisht for a siege, iv, 197
besieged in Gang-bihisht, iv, 198, 208, seq.
offers terms of peace to Kai Khusrau, iv, 203
rallies his troops at the storming of Gang-bihisht, iv, 209
escapes, iv, 211
gets possession of the treasures of Piran, iv, 219

Afrasiyab, arrays his host to fight with Kai Khusrau, iv, 220
offers Kai Khusrau peace or single combat, iv, 221
fights a general engagement against Kai Khusrau, iv, 223, 226
defeated and escapes by flight, iv, 227
army, of, surrenders to Kai Khusrau, iv, 228
takes refuge at Gang-diz, iv, 230
captive kindred of, sent to Kai Kâus by Kai Khusrau, iv, 232
Kai Kâus on, iv, 237
Khusrau's inquiries concerning, iv, 247
hears of Kai Khusrau's approach and quits Gang-diz, iv, 248
searched for by Kai Khusrau, iv, 248
fears of the Irâniâns concerning, iv, 249
Kai Khusrau takes counsel with Kai Kâus about, iv, 258
wanderings and wretched plight of, iv, 259
takes refuge in a cave near Barda', iv, 259
lament of, overheard by Hum, iv, 260
capture of, by Hum, iv, 261
Darmesteter on, iv, 136
pition and unbound by Hum, iv, 262
escapes into lake Urumiah, iv, 262 and note
attracted by the voice of Garsiwaz, iv, 265
holds converse with Garsiwaz, iv, 266
recapture of, by Hum, iv, 266
slain by Kai Khusrau, iv, 268
Afrasyâb, daughter of Fa-rangîs, iv, 304
Khân of Chân descended from, vii, 334
hoard of, viii, 148, 406
Africa, vi, 30
Áfrigh, king of Kházân, ii, 190
'Afrît, genie, i, 42
Agâni, Sargôn I. of, v, 293
Age, old, Firdausî's lament over his, ii, 336
Golden. See Golden.
Aghraératha (Ighríras, q.v.), iv, 137
Aghrérad (Ighríras, q.v.), i, 338
Aghríras. See Ighríras.
Agni, Vedic personification of fire, ii, 25
Ahdnámak (Andarznámak), Pahlavi treatise, vi, 257
Ahmad, son of Ismâ'îl, Sâmânîd, vii, 383
Ahmad, son of Safî, lord of Marv, v, 260, 261
Ahmad, Fâzî son of. See Ábâ'î 'Abbâs Fâzî.
Ahmad Hasan Maimândî, minister of Mahmûd, i, 32, 39, 45
Ahmad ibn Muhammad, patron of Firdausî, i, 29
Ahran, Rûman chief, 154, iv, 342 seq., 353
bidden by Caesar to slay the dragon of Mount Sakîla, iv, 342
takes counsel with Mîrîn, iv, 342
referred by Mîrîn to Hîshwî, iv, 344
Ahran, required by Gushtâsp to furnish him with arms, iv, 345
goes with Gushtâsp and Hîshwî to Mount Sakîla, iv, 346
Hîshwî and, welcome Gushtâsp on his return, iv, 347
gives gifts to Gushtâsp, iv, 347
Ahran, has the dead dragon conveyed to Caesar's court, iv, 348
marries Caesar's third daughter, iv, 348
Mîrîn and, display their accomplishment on the riding-ground, iv, 349
Caesar's wrath with Mîrîn and, iv, 351
Mîrîn and, send a scornful message to Caesar, iv, 353
set to guard the baggage, iv, 355
evies Gaiúmart, i, 118
son of (the Black Dîv), i, 119
Surúsh warns Gaiúmart against, i, 119
ridden by Tahmûrâs, i, 125, 127
=Zâhâk, i, 162
=Salûm and Tûr, i, 194
Áhriman = Afrásiyáb, i, 366
Faith of, ii, 358; vi, 281, 290
=Idolater, viii, 54
=Bandwi or Gustaham, viii, 89
=Kharrád, son of Barzin, viii, 111
=Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 295

Ahuna Vairya, Zoroastrian sacred formula, v, 17

Ahura Mazda (Urmuzd), the Zoroastrian Good Principle, i, 116, 235; ii, 25, 81; iv, 137

Ahwáz, city and province (Khúzístán, Susiana), i, 286; vi, 35, 199, 298, 357; vii, 197, 198, 201, 214, 224; viii, 400, 402

Airán-végó (Irán-vej q.v.), ii, 189
Akem Manau, Zoroastrian demon, iii, 271, 272
=Ákúmán = Akwan, iii, 272
assails Zarduhsht v, 17

Akesines (Chínáb), Indian river, vi, 31, 64

Akhást, Turánian hero, 151; iv, 105
chosen to fight with Zanga, iv, 97
slain by Zanga, iv, 106

Akhushwar (Achushwar), Haitálíán king, vii, 160

Akki, foster-father of Sargon I of Agani, v, 293

Aknaton, Pharaoh (XVIII dynasty)
lover of peace like Yazdagird, son of Shápur, vi, 371
‘Akr Bábil, prison, viii, 194, 196
Ákúmán. See Akem Manau.

Akwán, dív, i, 150, iii, 270 seq., 280 seq., 284, 309
Story of, iii, 271
Professor Nölke de on the, iii, 271
Firdausí on, iii, 273, 281
boulder of, iii, 271, 276, 309, 343, 344, 347
removed from pit’s mouth by Rustam, iii, 345

Akwán, appears in the form of an onager, iii, 273 seq.
pursued by Rustam, iii, 275
foils Rustam, iii, 276
takes Rustam at a disadvantage, iii, 276
offers Rustam a choice of deaths, iii, 277
outwitted by Rustam, iii, 277
slain by Rustam, iii, 281
described by Rustam, iii, 282

Ál, place, ix, 93

Aláns (Alani), people, now the Ossetes of the Caucasus, 141, 167, i, 217; iv, 14, 60, 65, 301; vi, 395; viii, 360

invade Irán, i, 19

castle of the, i, 223
taken by Kháran, i, 223, seq.,
castellan of, duped by Kháran, i, 224
monarch of, vi, 305
Núshírwán’s dealings with, vii, 216, 239 seq.

King of = Khusraw Parwíz, viii, 208, 209, 213

Alár, a village in Ardshír-Khurra q.v., vi, 205

Albirúni, Abú Raihán Muham-mad, Oriental author and chronologist (A.D. 973–1048), ii, 189
account of Alfrír (Gangdîzh?) by, ii, 190

Alburz, mountain-range south of the Caspian, also mythical range (Hara-bere-zaiti) surrounding the earth, 142, i, 4, 71, 145, 158, 235, 248, 250, 277, 298, 351, 373; ii, 11, 23, 27, 79, 96, 144, 336, 401; iii, 120; iv, 136; v, 202; vii, 177; ix, 95

Farídún taken by his mother to, i, 152

Zál cast away, and found, upon, i, 241 seq.
Alburz, Kai Kubád brought by Rustam from, i, 382 seq.
Kai Káús' buildings on, ii, 81
Aleppo (Chalybon - Beroea), city in northern Syria, vii, 218; viii, 41
Alexander I, king of Epirus
Italian expedition of, vi, 12 attributed to Alexander the Great, vi, 12
Alexander the Great (Sikandar q.v.), B.C. 356-323, son of Philip II of Macedon and his queen Olympias, i, 14, 49; ii, 8 seq.; iv, 314; v, 30; vi, 193, 194, 204, 252, 253, 373; vii, 393
barrier of, i, 16; vi, 78
legend of, in the Kurán, vi, 78
persecutor of Zoroastrianism, i, 15, 59, 61, 63, 338
paternity of, i, 55 and note; vi, 16, 18
one of the Zoroastrian triad of evil, i, 59 and note
said to have burnt the Zoroastrian scriptures, i, 63
Zoroastrianism under, i, 63
Era of, ii, 190
accompanied by experts to the East, vi, 11
Romance of, origin and growth of, vi, 12 seq.
diagram to illustrate, vi, 84
Syriac Christian Legend of, See Syriac.
Muhammad's references to, in the Kurán, vi, 15, 77
Persian national hero, how he became, vi, 15
cities founded by, vi, 13, 18
name, Persian legend of his, vi, 19
Aristotle, tutor of, vi, 29
letter to, vi, 68
correspondence about the succession with, vi, 81
Alexander the Great, Roxana (Rúshának) and, vi, 30, 32
reign of, first years of, in history and romance, vi, 30
Darius' banquet, his flight from, vi, 30
his pursuit of, vi, 31
murderers of, his treatment of them in history and romance, vi, 32, 33
daughter of, marries, vi, 33
Fakirs and, vi, 61
Calanus and, vi, 61
Porus and, historical account of, vi, 63
camp of, his visit to, vi, 64
iron steeds, his device of, vi, 64
stature of, vi, 64
Cleophas and, vi, 65
Ammon, Oasis of, his visit to, vi, 65
Candace (Kaidáfá) and, vi, 65 seq.
Antigonus (Naitkún), assumes name of, vi, 66
Plutarch's Life of, vi, 67
Brahmans, visit of, to the, vi, 67
Indus mistaken for the Nile by, vi, 68
marvels of his return-journey, vi, 69
admiral of (Nearchus), vi, 69
Amazons and, vi, 12, 72
legend of, vi, 72
Gloom and Fount of Life, legend of his expedition to, in the Pseudo-Ca
clisthenes, vi, 74 seq.
Andreas, his cook, legend of, vi, 76
in the Kurán, vi, 77
Will of, vi, 81
death of, vi, 82
dispute over his place of interment, vi, 82
corpse of, taken to Memphis, vi, 82
Alexander, the Great, interred at Alexandria, vi, 82
  tomb of, vi, 82
  Mas‘ūdī on, vi, 82
  S. Chrysostom on, vi, 82
  wars on the death of, vi, 197
Alexander, son of Alexander the Great and Cleophas (?), vi, 65
Alexandria (Iskandariya q.v.), city and sea-port in Egypt, vi, 13, 15, 17, 83
  founded by Alexander the Great, vi, 13
Pseudo-Callisthenes originated at, vi, 13
Alexander, the Great, buried at, vi, 82
  his tomb at, vi, 82
  Mas‘ūdī on, vi, 82
  S. Chrysostom on, vi, 82
Alfír (Gangdizh ?), palace-fortress of the capital of Khârazm, ii, 190
Al Hadr. See Hatra.
‘Alí, husband of Fátima, daughter of Muhammad, and fourth Khalífa (A.D. 656 –661)
  Muhammad on, i, 12, 106
  cult of, i, 13
  known as “the Lion,” i, 13, 107
  assassination of, i, 13
Firdausí’s references to, i, 24, 37, 40, 41, 106, 107;
  ii, 337 and note
‘Alí, the Dílamite, friend and helper of Firdausí, i, 35;
  ix, 121
  transcriber of the Sháh-náma, i, 39
Alí, terminal, Firdausí’s use of, iii, 283
Al Iskandarús. See Halai.
Al Khidr (Khír q.v.), the Green Prophet, vi, 78 and note
Alkús, Tûrânian hero, ii, 114
Alkús, fights with, and worsts, Zawára, ii, 115
  slain by Rustam, ii, 115
Allah, Muhammadan name of the Deity, i, 50
Al Mansúr, ‘Abbásid Khalífa (A.D. 754-775), founder of Baghdád, vi, 254
Almás, river, iii, 251
Alp-Arselan (Arslán), Seljúk Sultán (A.D. 1063-1073), ii, 219 note
Alptíqín, founder of the Ghazníví dynasty, i, 20
Altúlīya, place, ix, 92
Alwá, Rustam’s spear-bearer, slain by Kámús, 149, iii, 188
Alwá, Iránian hero, probably identical with the above, v, 166
  slain by Núsh Ázar, v, 226
Amasis, viii, 193
Amazons, their disputed visit to Alexander, the Great, vi, 12, 72
  origin of, vi, 71
  described, vi, 153 seq.
Síkandar’s correspondence with, and visit to, vi, 153 seq.
Ambár (Anbár, Pirúz - Shápur), city on the left bank of the Euphrates some forty miles west of Baghdád, founded by Shápur son of Urmuzd (Sapor II.) The word means “granaries.”
  vi, 327; viii, 188
foundations of, attributed to the Azdites, i, 11
Ambassadors, instances of kings and chiefs going in person as ambassadors or spies, vi, 325
Ambúl, place, iii, 41
Amen-Ra, Egyptian god personated by Nectanebus, vi, 16
Ameshapentas, the, personifications of good qualities in Zoroastrian theology, iii, 271; v, 15 seq.

Amida (Diyárbakr), city on the upper Tigris, vii, 187

Amin, 'Abbásid Khalífah, (A.D. 809-813), i, 14

Ammianus Marcellinus (4th century A.D.) Roman historian, v, 13

Ammon, Oasis of, Alexander the Great's visit to, vi, 30, 65

'Ammúriya, Rómán stronghold in Asia Minor between Sivri Hisár and Ak-Shahr probably representing the ancient Amorium but sometimes confounded with Angora (Angúriya) the ancient Ancyra further to the north-east, vi, 23 note, 89, viii, 46 ( Cf. LEC, pp. 134, 153)

Failakús marches from, against Dáráb, vi, 23

Amorium. See 'Ammúriya.

Amr, Arab chief, attacks Hurmuzd, viii, 93

Ámul, city in Mázandarán, i, 145, 177, 289, 298, 344, 366, 367; ii, 18, 104; v, 284; vii, 89, 237; viii, 355, 356, 358, 392; ix, 86

Ámul. See Amví.

Amulet, of Kai Khusráu, iv, 133 given by Zarduhsht to Asfandiyár, v, 130

Ámví (Ámul, Amúyah, now Charjú), city on the left bank of the Oxus where crossed by the route from Mary to Bukhárá, iv, 11, 65, 154, 184, 206; vii, 91 and note, 331, 357, 359; viii, 354

Ánábdéh, vi, 32

Anæsthetics, employment of, i, 236, 321 seq.

Anbár. See Ambár.

Ancyra. See 'Ammúriya.

Andalús (Land of the West or of the Vandals), Spain, 159, vi, 66, 122, 138

queen of (Kaidáfa q.v.), vi, 121 seq.

Andamán, Íránian noble, vii, 202

Andaráb, town in Afghánistán between Bákhl and Kábül, iv, 65

Andarímán, Túránían hero, 151, ii, 264; iv, 26; v, 29

fights with Gustaham, iv, 87

steed of, slain by Hajír, iv, 87

rescued by the Turkmans, iv, 87

chosen to fight with Gúrgín, iv, 97

slain by Gúrgín, iv, 104

Andarímán (Vandaremaini), brother of Arjásp, v, 12, 141, 155 commands one wing of the host, v, 46 executed by Asfandiyár, v, 158

Andarznámak (Ahdnámak), Pahlaví treatise, vi, 257

Andív, country, vii, 313

Andiyán, Íránian warrior, 172

vii, 225, 257, 259, 269, 293, 294, 296
deceived by Caesar's tálisman, viii, 273

Bahrám Chúbína writes to, viii, 285 receives Kímán, viii, 313

Andreanticus, sea, vi, 77

Andreas, Alexander the Great's cook, legend of, vi, 76 seq.
in Kurán, vi, 77

Androphagoi, the, iii, 191

Anestres Castrí=Núshírwán, vii, 383

Angora. See 'Ammúriya.

Angra Mainyu=Ahriman, ii, 28

Animals, domestication of, i, 126

Ant, the, Firdausí's plea for, i, 201 and note
Antákiya (Antioch), city in Syria on the Orontes, 167, vii, 41
taken by Núshírwán, vii, 218, 258 seq.
Antigonus (Naitkún), name assumed by Alexander the Great in legend, vi, 66
Antioch. See Antákiya.
New, vii, 218, 259
Antiochus, Macedonian general, vi, 76
Antiochus Sidetes, ii, 80, 81
Aogemaid, Pahlavi treatise, iv, 136
Antipater, regent in Macedonia for Alexander the Great, intrigued against by Olympias, vi, 82
Aphrodite, goddess, iv, 315
Apollo, god, and the Python, vii, 203
Apologues, i, 242, 265, 285; iii, 332; iv, 18, 21, 28, 47; vi, 310; ix, 86
Apotheosis, i, 259, 260; 11, 157, 158, 179, 224, 254, 273, 298, 300, 313, 315, 330, 357, 383; iii, 53, 91, 96, 107, 188, 212, 260, 277, 301, 316, 341, 348, 350, 351; iv, 13, 32, 33, 38, 39, 59, 93, 108, 121, 131, 268; v, 78, 105, 168, 214, 242, 249, 250, 265; vi, 50, 303, 343; vii, 17, 18, 20, 42, 270, 277, 296, 301, 403; viii, 119, 166, 206, 215, 221, 235, 295; ix, 87, 88, 110
Apprentice, a merchant’s, entertains, and finds favour with, Bahram Gúr, vii, 40 seq.
Apries (Pharaoh-Hophra, B.C. 589-570), vi, 16
Apsershon, peninsula on the western shore of the Caspian, i, 58, note
Áptya. See Abtín.
Arabia, ii, 100; vi, 70, 72, 206, 322, 355; viii, 24 note
trade of, ancient, i, 11
Írán and, the portion of Írãj, i, 189
Shápúr son of Urmuzd’s expedition to, vi, 322
Arabian, Arabian, vi, 378, 388, ix, 74, 85
Faith, vi, 95
Nights, i, 51; vi, 71, 78, 250; vii, 317
provenance of, vi, 250
vii, 3
quoted, vi, 73
Arabic, i, 32; vi, 147, 205; viii, 73; ix, 81
infrequent in Sháhnáma, i, 47
versions of Pahlavi texts, vi, 255 seq.
Fables of Bídpaí (Kalila and Dimna) translated into,
vii, 382, 430
Tabarl. See Tabari.
Arachosia, the district about Kandahar, vi, 32
Aragàn (Rámkubád), town, vii, 188
Aral Sea, i, 57 note; iii, 10
Arar tree, vi, 19
Aras (Araxes), river in Ázarbájían, v, 13, 14
confused with the Oxus, i, 71, 370
Árash, king of the Khúzians q.v., iv, 146, 148
Árash, son of Káí Kúbád. See Káí Árash.
Árash, Ashkánian king, vi, 197, 210
Árash, Íránian chief, vi, 394
Arash, city. See Hulwán.
Arastáls (Aristotle q.v.), 160, vi, 35
counsels Sikandar, vi, 179
sentences of, over the coffin of Sikandar, vi, 185
Árásti, uncle of Zarduhsht (Zoroaster), v, 17
Araxes (Aras q.v.), battle of, vii, 76
Árayish-i-Rúm (Hierapolis), city in northern Syria, west of the Euphrates and north of Aleppo, vii, 217, 218, 254; viii, 188
taken by Núshírwán, vii, 255
Arba, river, viii, 194, 195
Arch, iv, 179
correspondence. v, 86
Archery, i, 263, 297, 312, 359; ii, 163, 266, 293, 328; iii, 53 seq., 74, 93, 98 seq., 179 seq., 246; iv, 38, 48, 99, 101, 102, 104, 107, 122, 179, 338; v, 111, 122, 229, 239 seq., 272; vi, 379, 383 seq.; vii, 54, 55, 80, 118, 122, 125
Archimedes, 141, 168, 170, 176
Architect, Rúman, and Khusrú Parvíz, viii, 401 seq.
Architecture, invention of, i, 129, 133
Archscribe, 171. See Îzíd Gas-hasp and Míhrán.
Ard, day, i, 88, q.v., ii, 287; iv, 252; vi, 298, 390 and note; vii, 112; ix, 70, 122
Sháhnáma finished on the day of, i, 24
Ardabil (Bádán - Píruz q.v.), city in Ázarbájían, ii, 336, 405, iv, 147, 188; vii, 89, 163, 224; viii, 93, 99, 100, 184, 226
Ardawan, Bahram, Artabanus III or IV, the last Ashkánian (Parthian) king, 160, 161, vi, 3, 205, 214 seq., 254 seq., viii, 214, 285
Macrinus, his war and treaty with, i, 81
effect of, on Persian coinage, i, 81
= Bahrám, vi, 197, 210
status of, in Persian tradition, vi, 201
| Ardawan, daughter of 161, vi, 202  |
| marries Ardshir Pâpakân, vi, 202, 229 |
| incited by her brother Bahman to poison Ardshir Pâpakân, vi, 259 |
| condemned to death, vi, 260 |
| saved by Ardshir Pâpakân’s minister, vi, 260 |
| gives birth to Shâpûr, vi, 261 |
| restored to favour, vi, 265 |
| writes to Pâpak, vi, 214 |
| summons Ardshir Pâpakân to court, vi, 214 |
| receives gifts from Ardshir Pâpakân, vi, 215 |
| highly esteems Ardshir Pâpakân, vi, 215 |
| sons of, vi, 215, 255, 267 |

- note their fate, vi, 228, 229 and note, 259
- disgraces Ardshir Pâpakân, vi, 216

| Ardshir Pâpakân intrigues with slave-girl of, 160, vi, 201, 217 seq. |
| eldest son of, made ruler of Pars, vi, 218 and note |
| consults the astrologers, vi, 218 |
| Ardshir Pâpakân, vainly pursued by, vi, 221 seq. |
| returns to Rai, vi, 223 |
| writes to his son about Ardshir Pâpakân, vi, 223 |
| Ardshir Pâpakân marches against, vi, 227 |
| prepares to encounter Ardshir Pâpakân, vi, 227 |
| defeated, captured by Khurâd, and slain by Ardshir Pâpakân, vi, 228 |
| buried by Tabâk, vi, 229 |
| palace of, at Rai spared (?) by Ardshir Pâpakân, vi, 229 and note |

| Ardshir, secretary of, slain by Shâpûr, vi, 256 |
| = Mihrak = Mîthrak = Mâdik (?), vi, 256 |
| Ardibihisht, ameshaspenta q.v., iii, 286, 328 |
| month, i, 82; v, 16, 39. 92 note |
| Ardshir, son of Bîzhan, goes with Zarîr to Rûm, iv, 360 |
| hails Gushtâsp as Shâh, iv, 362 |
| Ardshir, son of Gushtâsp, 155, v, 26, 51 |
| death of, foretold by Jâm-âsp, v, 49 |
| slain, v, 57 |
| Ardshir, Írâniân hero, perhaps the son of Bîzhan, supra |
| tells Nastâr where to find Zarîr, v, 67 |
| takes Farâmarz prisoner, v, 288 |
| Ardshir (Bahman q.v.), Shâh, vi, 213, 271 and note |
| meaning of, v, 259 and note |
| Ardshir (Artaxerxes II), brother of Shâpûr, Sâsânian Shâh, 163, vi, 3, 328 |
| Shâpûr arranges for the succession with, vi, 360 seq. |
| title of, vi, 364 |
| abdication of, vi, 364 |
| Ardshir, high priest temp., Pirûz, vii, 179 seq. |
| released by Khûshnawáz, vii, 180 |
| Ardshir, high priest temp. Nûshîrwân, vii, 304, 333. 337, 342 |
| discourse of, vii, 305 |
| questions Bûzurjmîhr, vii, 308 |
| Ardshir Khurra (Khurra-i-Ardshir), city, (Gûr or Jûr, now Fûrzâbâd), and district in Pars, vi, 199, 205, 206, 229 and note, 231, 241, 245; vii, 206; viii, 251, 252, 412 and note |
Ardshir Khurra, city, Ardshir Pāpakán builds a Fire-temple in, vi, 230
makes irrigation-works in, vi, 230
meaning of, vi, 290 note
Ardshir Pāpakán (Artaxerxes I), Shāh and founder of the Sásánian dynasty, 160, 161; i, 42; ii, 10; v, 10; vi, 193, 209 note, 213 seq., 294 seq., 303, 307, 315, 322, 325, 405; vii, 79, 185, 212; viii, 191, 214, 222, 265, 270, 285, 392, 393; ix, 105, 109, 111
Notes on, vi, 193 seq., 254 seq.
founds a new national dynasty, restores Zoroastrianism, and collects its scriptures, i, 62 seq.
genealogical table of his descendants, vi, 3
rise of, compared to that of Cyrus the Great, vi, 194
Tabari’s account of, vi, 198
legend of Cyrus the Great transferred to, vi, 195
birth of, vi, 213
summoned to court by Ardawán, vi, 214
equipped by Pāpak, vi, 214
presents gifts to Ardawán, vi, 215
Ardawán favours, vi, 215
prowess of, in the chase, vi, 215
disgraced, vi, 216
writes to Pāpak, vi, 216
advised by Pāpak, vi, 216
intrigues with Gulnár, vi, 217 seq.
hears from Gulnár of the presage of the astrologers, vi, 219
flees with Gulnár to Pārs, vi, 220 seq.
followed by the divine Grace in the form of a mountainsheep, i, 374; vi, 221 seq.
Ardshir Pāpakán, adherents flock to, vi, 223
addresses his supporters, vi, 224
founds a city, vi, 202, 224
receives promises of help, vi, 224
joined by Tabák, vi, 225
Tabák and, defeat Bahman, son of Ardawán, vi, 226
marches from Pārs against Ardawán, vi, 227
defeats and slays Ardawán, vi, 228
as recorded in Kārnámak, vi, 202
gives the spoil to the troops, vi, 229
spares (?) Ardawán’s palace at Rai, vi, 229 and note
Tabák counsels, vi, 229
marriage of, with Ardawán’s daughter, vi, 202, 229, 259
returns to Pārs, vi, 229
builds Khurra-i-Ardshir, vi, 229 and note
irrigation-works of, at Khurra-i-Ardshir, vi, 230
war of, with the Kurds, vi, 196, 230 seq.
and Haftwád, vi, 236 seq.
message sent by arrow to, vi, 238
worsted by Haftwád and entertained and counselled by two youths, vi, 239 seq.
slays Mihrak, vi, 241
marches to attack the Worm, vi, 241
gives instructions to Shahrgir, vi, 241
stratagem of, against the Worm, vi, 242
slays the Worm and its attendants, vi, 244
summons Shahrgir, vi, 244 and note
takes Haftwád’s stronghold, vi, 244
Ardshir Pāpakān, defeats and slays Haftwād and Shāh-wi, vi, 245
carries off the spoil, vi, 245
builds a Fire-temple, vi, 245
rewards the two youths, vi, 245
invasion of Kīrmān by, vi, 205, 245
goes to Taisafūn, vi, 245
principles of government of, vi, 250, 273 seq., 286 seq.
Reign of, 161, vi, 254 seq.
Note on, vi, 254
length of, vi, 254
Tabari on, vi, 254
coins of, vi, 256, 257, 265
Shāpūr crowned by, vi, 257
cities of, vi, 257
prophecy of, vi, 257
enthroned at Baghdād, vi, 258
title of King of kings of, vi, 193, 199, 254, 258, 273
inaugural address of, vi, 258
daughter of Ardawān and, stories of, vi, 255
plot of, with her brother Bahman, to poison, vi, 259
discovers plot against him, vi, 260
consults his minister, vi, 260
condemns the daughter of Ardawān to death, vi, 260
minister of, saves daughter of Ardawān and mutilates himself, vi, 196, 261
Shāpūr, son of, born, vi, 261
hears about Shāpūr from his minister, vi, 262
recognises and acknowledges Shāpūr, vi, 264
restores the daughter of Ardawān to favour, vi, 265
rewards his minister, vi, 265
makes a new coinage in honour of his minister, vi, 256, 265
builds Jund-i-Shāpūr, vi, 266

Ardshir Pāpakān, harassed by wars, consults Kāid, vi, 266
wroth at Kāid's advice, vi, 267
seeks in vain for the daughter of Mihrak, vi, 268
referred to, vi, 270
discovers Urmuzd, vi, 271
counsels Urmuzd, vi, 280
calls and counsels Shāpūr, vi, 286 seq.
Church and State, his views on, vi, 250 seq., 286
duration of his dynasty, vi, 252, 257, 289
death of, vi, 291
Balūchistān, his failure to conquer, vii, 242
Nard, invention of, attributed to, vii, 382
True Cross in treasury of, viii, 380
Ardshīr, son of Shīrwi, Shāh, 175, ix, 43 seq.
makes Pirūz general, ix, 44
entertains Pirūz at feast, ix, 48
death of, ix, 49
treasury of, squandered by Gurāz, ix, 53
Aregat-aspa. See Arjāsp.
Aries, constellation, i, 88, 118, 310, 335; iii, 26, 38, 187, 318; iv, 24, 147, 158, 180; v, 39, 109, 118, 119, 126; viii, 342, 394
Ariobazanes, the murderer of Darius Codomanus, vi, 32
Ariobazanes, satrap, vi, 32 and note
Ārish, legendary Irānian archer,
v, 62; vii, 234 and note; vii, 75, 219 and note; ix, 25
Aristobulus, Greek writer, temp. Alexander the Great, vi, 12
Aristotle (Arastǎlis q.v.), Greek philosopher (B.C. 384-322)
Aristotle, Alexander the Great’s tutor, vi, 29
letter to, vi, 68
correspondence with, about the succession, vi, 81, 83
silk-worm, his account of, vi, 204
Arjásp, Túránian hero, ii, 264; iv, 26
Arjásp (Aregat-aspa), king of Túrán, 155, 156, i, 61; ii, 9, 29; iii, 109; v, 9, 11 seq., 20, 22, 24 seq., 29, 31, 31 seq., 89, 98, 99, 107 seq., 116, 141, 142, 159, 167, 171, 172, 180, 206; vii, 330, 335, 337, 359; viii, 95, 104, 148; ix, 104
hoard of, viii, 148
in receipt of tribute from Gushtásp, v, 32
hears of Gushtásp’s resolve not to pay tribute, summons, and harangues his priests, v, 36
sends Bidírafsh and Námkhást to Gushtásp, v, 37, 40
receives Gushtásp’s answer and calls out the host, v, 45
gives one wing to Kuhram, v, 46
the other to Andarímán, v, 46
the chief command to Gurgsárá, v, 46
banner to Bidírafsh, v, 46
vanguard to Khashásh, v, 46
rear to Húshdív, v, 46
marches against Irán, v, 46
defeat of, foretold by Jámsásp, v, 52
gives one wing to Bidírafsh, v, 55
the other to Gurgsárá, v, 56
centre to Námkhást, v, 56
takes the rear himself, v, 56
Arjásp, gives Kuhram the command in chief, v, 56
thrice offers rewards to any that will fight Zaríf, v, 61, 62
offer of, accepted by Bidírafsh, v, 62
calls for Bidírafsh to fight Nastúr, v, 69
fights with the Iránians, v, 71
defeat of, v, 72
proclaimed by Gushtásp, v, 75
hears of Asfandiyár’s imprisonment and of Gushtásp’s absence in Sístán, v, 86
Summons his chiefs, v, 86
sends Sitúh as spy to Irán, v, 86
on receiving Sitúh’s report calls out the host, v, 87
sends Kuhram to attack Balkh, v, 90
marches against Gushtásp, v, 94
commands the centre, v, 95
defeats Gushtásp and beleaguers him on a mountain, v, 96
Asfandiyár’s vow of, and prayer for, vengeance on, v, 103, 104
hears of Asfandiyár’s arrival, v, 108
proposes to retreat, v, 108
sends away the spoil of Balkh, v, 108
five sons of, v, 108
persuaded by Gurgsárá to remain and fight, v, 108, 109
makes Gurgsárá leader of the host, v, 109
arrays the host, v, 109
commands the centre, v, 109
surveys the battlefield from a height, v, 110
prepares for flight if needful, v, 110
Arjasp, dismayed at Asfandiyar’s prowess, reproaches Gurgsår, v, 111
hears of Gurgsår’s capture and flees, v, 112
entertains Asfandiyar disguised as a merchant, v, 145
questions Asfandiyar, v, 146
allows Asfandiyar to entertain the Turkman chiefs, v, 149
prepares to attack Bishútan, v, 151
bids Kuhram prepare for war, v, 151
sends out Turkhán with troops to reconnoitre, v, 151
hears from Kuhram that Asfandiyar has come, v, 152
bids the Turkmans march out in force, v, 152
palace of, attacked by Asfandiyar, v, 153
arms and encounters Asfandiyar, v, 153, 154
beheaded by Asfandiyar, v, 154
palace of, fired and his women carried off by Asfandiyar, v, 154, 162
head of, thrown from the ramparts of the Brazen Hold, v, 157
sons of, grieve for, v, 157
Asfandiyar takes the treasure of, v, 161
Khán of Chin descended from, vii, 334
Arjuna, one of the five Pândavas (Indian mythology) iv, 138, 139
Ark, 158
Arman, Armenia or district in Ázarbáiján, vii, 263
Armani, Iranian chief, ix, 74
Armenia (Arman, Irmán q.v.), country, iii, 12; vi, 202, 203; vii, 153, 224; viii, 93, 96, 184, 193, 202, 377
Armenia, Roman, vii, 187
Armenian, Armenians (Irmánians), iii, 286; viii, 188, 189, 195, 226, 248, 282
version of the Pseudo-Calisthenes, vi, 14
—like, viii, 254
=Mausíf, viii, 293 and note
Armín, son of Kai Kubád. See Kai Armín.
Arnawáz, sister of Jamshíd, wife of Zahhák and Farídún, and mother of Iraj, i, 142
married to Zahhák, i, 146 seq.
counsels Zahhák as to his dream, i, 148
Farídún meets, i, 162
Zahhák tries to kill, i, 167
son of, by Farídún, i, 177
Arnold, Mathew, his "Sohrab and Rustum," ii, 118
Arrán, the modern Karabagh, the region between the Kur and Aras rivers, i, 9
Arrian, Greek historian (A.D. 96-180), vi, 31, 68
Anabasis of, vi, 12
Indica of, vi, 12
Caspian Gates of, vi, 32
on the stature of Pórus, vi, 64
Ichthýophagi, vi, 69 seq.
Alexander and the Amazons, vi, 72
death of Alexander, vi, 82
Arrow-shots, three famous, viii, 75
Bahrám Chúbína’s, viii, 126
Arsaces, name of the founder and other kings of the Parthian (Ashkánian) dynasty, vi, 197
Arsacid, Arsacids, dynastic title of the above, iii, 9; vi, 205, 255; vii, 156, 185, 212
imperial system of, vi, 198
some of, escape from Ardashir Pápakán to Armenia, vi, 203
Arzacid, rivalry of, with Sásánians, viii, 73
Arsalás, murderer of Darius Codomanus, vi, 32
Arses, Sháh (B.C. 338-336) vi, 29
Arslán Jázb, one of Mahmüd’s generals, i, 100
referred to, i, 114
Artabanus III (II according to some reckonings), Parthian king (A.D. 10-40), iii, 9, 10
Artabanus, son of above, iii, 9
Artabanus, Persian captain of the guard temp. Xerxes, v, 282
Rustam and, v, 282
Artabanus III or IV (Ardawán q.v.), vi, 201
Artang, the house of the heresiarch Mán, ii, 19 and note; vii, 355 and note; viii, 172 and note, 362 and note
Artaxerxes Longimanus, Sháh, v, 281, 282
Bahman and, v, 282
Artaxerxes Mnemon, Sháh, i, 59
Artaxerxes Ochus, Sháh (B.C. 359-338), vi, 18 note, 29
Nectanebus II conquered by vi, 29
murdered, vi, 29
Artaxerxes I, Sásánian Sháh. See Ardshír Pápákán.
Artaxerxes II (Ardshír brother of Shápur), Sásánian Sháh, vi, 363
Arts, invention of the. See Gaiúmart, Húshang, Tahmúras, and Jamshíd.
Arús, treasure, viii, 406 and note, ix, 20
Arwánd (Djila, Tigris), ii, 392, 404; vi, 329; viii, 90; ix, 85, 92
Farín’s crossing of the, i, 160
Arzhang, a div and commander of the troops of Mázan-
darán, i43; ii, 43, 44, 56 seq., 63, 64; v, 203

Arzhang, put in charge of Kai Káus and his troops when taken prisoners, ii, 41
slain by Rustam, ii, 57
Arzhang, dungeon of, iii, 309
Arzhang, Turánian hero, 148, iii, 76, 77
challenges the Iránians, iii, 119
slain, iii, 120
Arzhang, Mání the heresiarch’s house. See Artang.
Aryan, Aryans, race, iii, 10 and note, iv, 137
race, i, 7
early seats of, i, 7
meaning of, i, 7
organization of, i, 7
primitive religion of, i, 7
belief in magic of, i, 8
division of, i, 8
India and Irán conquered by, i, 8
Indian, their relations with the Iránians, i, 15
Arzú, daughter of Sarv and wife of Salm, i, 188 and note
referred to, i, 178 seq.
Arzú, daughter of Máhiyár the jeweller, vii, 59, 61
referred to, vii, 55, 56, 58
sings to Baharám Gúr, vii, 60
Baharám Gúr woos and weds, vii, 61 seq.
meaning of, vii, 65 note
Ascalon, city in Palestine, v, 292
Asclépias acida, plant. See Homa.
Asfandiyárp (Spenot-data, Span-
dát), mythical Iránian hero, son of Sháh Gush-
tásp, and the rival in legend of Rustam, 155-
157, i, 42, 55; ii, 29; v, 9, 10, 12, 24 seq., 29, 30,
41 seq., 45, 49, 69 seq.,
90 seq., 258, 259, 261,
279, 281 seq., 289, 290,
293; vi, 15, 49, 55,
200, 213, 224, 242, 251,
271; viii, 95, 104 and
Asfandiyár—cont.

note; 171, 270, 332, 395
note; ix, 25, 26 note, 104
inviolability of, v, 19
sisters of, 156, v, 20, 22
carried off by the Turk-
mans, v, 93, 100, 171
rescued by, v, 153, 162
lament over, v, 252 seq.
mariage of, with Humái, v, 22, 77
ignored by Firdausí, v, 22
birth of, v, 32
answers, in conjunction with
Zarír and Jámsp, Ar-
jás’s letter, v, 42
triumph of, over Arjásp
foretold by Jámsp, v, 52
given command of one wing,
v, 55
addresses his five brothers,
v, 65
hears his father’s offer of
the crown and throne to
the avenger of Zarír, v, 66
slays Bídírafsh, v, 70
presents the head of Bídíra-
fish and the steed of Zarír
to Gushtásp, v, 71
divides the host, v, 71
attacks, with Nástur and
Núsh Ázar, the Turkmans,
v, 71
grants quarter to the Turk-
mans, v, 72
made chief ruler of Irán
under Gushtásp and sent
by him to convert the
world, v, 76
rests from his labours, v, 77
makes Farshídward govern-
or of Khurasán, v, 77
reports the success of his
administration to Gusht-
tásp, v, 77
slandered by Gurázim, v, 78
recalled to court, v, 80 seq.
sons of, 157, v, 80, 81
resigns his host to Bahman,
v, 82
arraigned by Gushtásp, v, 83
Asfandiyár, put in bonds, v,
84
sent to Gumbadán, v, 84
solaced by Bahman and
others, v, 85
Jámsp advises Gushtásp
to release, v, 97
hears of arrival of Jámsp,
v, 98, 99
parley of, with Jámsp, v,
99 seq.
eight and thirty brothers
of, v, 101, 103, 111, 160
bids Jámsp send for black-
smiths, v, 101
breaks his bonds himself, v,
102, 206
calls for his steed and arms,
v, 102
sets off with Jámsp, Bah-
man, and Núsh Ázar, v,
103
vow of, v, 103
laments over Farshídward,
v, 104
prays that he may avenge
Farshídward on Arjásp, v,
104
shrouds Farshídward, v, 105
sees and addresses the corpse
of Gurázim, v, 105
passes the Turkman trenches
and defeats the outposts,
v, 106
interview of, with Gusht-
tásp, v, 106
receives the promise of the
crown and undertakes to
deliver Gushtásp, v, 107
arrays and leads the host,
v, 109
attacks the Turkmans, v,
110
defeats Kuhram, v, 110
takes Gúrgsár prisoner, v,
111
defeats Arjásp, v, 112, 206
grants quarter to the Turk-
mans, v, 113
distributes the spoil, v,
114

VOL. IX.
Asfandiyár, undertakes to rescue his sisters from the Turkmans, v, 115
prepares to invade Túrán, v, 115
Seven Stages (Haft Khwán) of, ii, 29; v, 27, 118, 119, 121, 135, 162; viii, 171
Story of, 136, v, 116 seq. compared with Rustam’s, v, 117
rivalry in legend between Rustam and, v, 116
quits Bākh and goes, with Gurgsár as guide, to Túrán, v, 120
offers the kingdom of the Turkmans to Gurgsár in return for faithful service, v, 120
questions Gurgsár, v, 120 seq., 124, 125, 128, 131, 134, 139, 141
during his adventures in the Seven Stages, leaves Bishútán in command, v, 122, 124, 126, 129, 132 note, 144
praised by Bishútán and the host, v, 123, 125, 131, 133
scythed chariot made by, v, 126
revived by Bishútán after encountering the dragon, v, 127
song of, v, 129
amulet given to, by Zardusht, v, 130
encourages the Iránians to persevere, v, 136
prays for deliverance from the snow, v, 138
leaves the baggage behind, v, 138
reproaches Gurgsár for giving false information, v, 139, 140
offers to make Gurgsár captain of the Brazen Hold if he will be a trusty guide, v, 140

Asfandiyár, guided by Gurgsár crosses ford with host, v, 140
cursed by Gurgsár, v, 141
slays Gurgsár, v, 141
surveys the Brazen Hold, v, 142
captures, questions, and slays two Turkmans, v, 142
Bishútán and, consult, v, 143
stratagem of, to take the Brazen Hold, v, 116, 143
disguised as a merchant, interviews Arjásp, v, 145
assumes the name of Kharrád, v, 146
questioned by Arjásp, v, 146
trades as a merchant in the Brazen Hold, v, 147
meets his sisters, v, 147
gives a banquet to the Turkman chiefs, v, 149
surprises the Brazen Hold, v, 152 seq.
provides for his sisters’ safety, v, 153
attacks the palace of Arjásp, v, 153
encounters Arjásp, v, 154
beheads Arjásp, v, 154
fires Arjásp’s palace, v, 154
carries off the women, v, 154
quits the Brazen Hold and leaves Sáwa in charge, v, 154
joins Bishútán, v, 155
pursues Kuhrám to the Brazen Hold, v, 156
encounters and takes Kuhram prisoner, v, 157
grants no quarter to the Turkmans, v, 158
puts to death Andarimán and Kuhram, v, 158
announces his victory to Gushtásp, v, 159
disposes of the spoil, v, 161
Asfandiyár, carries off his sisters, the womenfolk of Arjásp, and others from the Brazen Hold, v, 162.

sets fire to, and dismantles, the Brazen Hold, v, 162.

sends his sons homeward by different routes, v, 162.

returns himself by the Seven Stages, v, 162.

picks up his left baggage, v, 162.

hunts while waiting for his sons, v, 162.

rejoined by his sons, v, 163.

welcome of, on his return to Irán, v, 163.

banquets with Gushtásp, v, 164.

fight of, with Rustam, Story of, 156.

recited by Nadr, son of Háirth, at Mecca, v, 166.

complains to his mother of Gushtásp's treatment of him, v, 167.

counseled by his mother, v, 168, 175.

fate of, foretold by Jámaesp, v, 169.

recounts his deeds before Gushtásp, v, 170.

promised the throne by Gushtásp when he has brought Rustam and his kin in bonds to court, v, 173, 174.

meets with an ill omen on starting for Zábulistán, v, 177.

consults with Bishútán, v, 178.

sends Bahman on an embassy, v, 179 seq.

message of, to Rustam, v, 179.

receives Rustam's answer from, and is wroth with, Bahman, v, 191.

converses of Rustam with Bishútán, v, 192.

Asfandiyár, goes attended to meet Rustam, v, 192.

parleys with Rustam, v, 192 seq.

declines Rustam's invitation to visit him, v, 193.

invites Rustam to a feast, v, 195.

repents of having invited Rustam, v, 196.

counseled by Bishútán to keep on friendly terms with Rustam, v, 196, 217.

does not summon Rustam to the feast, v, 197.

wrangles with Rustam, v, 198 seq.

does not assign Rustam his proper seat at the feast, v, 200.

remonstrated with by Rustam, v, 200.

bids Bahman resign his own seat to Rustam, v, 200.

vilifies Zál and Rustam, v, 201.

recounts his lineage, v, 205.

his exploits, v, 205.

his capture of a hill-fort, v, 206.

tries a handgrip with Rustam, v, 208.

challenges Rustam, v, 209.

astonished at Rustam's prowess at the board, v, 210.

declines Rustam's overtures, v, 211 seq.

calls Zábulistán "Babble- stead," v, 216.

parodies Rustam's address to royal tent-enclosure, v, 216.

arms for fight with Rustam, v, 223.

refuses Rustam's suggestion of a general engagement, v, 224.

informed by Bahman of the slaying of Núsh Azar and Mihr-i-Núsh, v, 227.
Asfandiyár, enraged with Rustam, v, 228
wounds Rustam and  
Rakhsh, v, 229 
jeers at Rustam, v, 229 
calls upon Rustam to surrender, v, 230 
returns to camp, laments for Nūsh Āzar and Mihr-i-Nūsh, and sends their corpses to Gushṭāsp with a message, v, 232 
converses with Bishútan of the fight with Rustam, v, 232, 240 
Sīmūrg instructs Rustam how to overcome, v, 237 seq.
branch of tamarisk fatal to, v, 239 and note 
summoned by Rustam to fight and becomes despondent, v, 240 
Rustam’s final effort for peace with, v, 241 seq. 
Bahman and Bishútan hear of the overthrow of, v, 244 
address of, to Bishútan, v, 245 
Rustam bewails, v, 246 
confides Bahman to Rustam, v, 248 
foretells evil for Rustam, v, 248 
gives his last charge to Bishútan, v, 249 
death of, v, 250 
Rustam laments over, v, 250 
corpse of, sent to Gushṭāsp by Rustam, v, 251 
funeral procession of, conducted by Bishútan, v, 251 
lamentations over, v, 252 seq.
corpse of, displayed by Bishútan, v, 253 
Rustam writes to Gushṭāsp to excuse himself in the matter of, v, 256 
Xerxes and, v, 282
GENERAL INDEX

Ashkash, appointed governor of Makrân, iv, 244
Kai Khusrau welcomed by, on his return from Gandizib, iv, 251
Ashtád, Íránian chief, ix, 11 seq., chosen to visit Khusrau Parwiz at Taisafún, ix, 9 and Kharrad parley with Galínúsh, ix, 11 visit Khusrau Parwiz, ix, 12 report to Shírwí, ix, 27
Asia, iv, 315, v, 293, viii, 187
Minor, vi, 30; viii, 193, 194
Central, vi, 73
Asmodeus, demon, iii, 272
Asoka, Indian king (B.C. 264-228-7), i, 15
Asp, as Persian termination, ii, 9
Assurbanipal, Ísraian king, and Khusrau Parwiz, reigns of compared, viii, 193
Assyria, v, 292
Assyrians, i, 10
invasions of Írán by, i, 10
Astawad, See Haftwâd.
Astitilhâd, demon, iv, 137
Astrobale, i, 104, 188, 310 note; ii, 215, 273; iv, 158, 297; vi, 376; vii, 353; ix, 73
Astrologer, Astrologers, Astrology, i, 104, 188, 255, 310 and note; ii, 233, 284, 409; iv, 27, 158, 159, 279, 284, 334, 335; v, 48, 168 seq., 263; vi, 108, 109, 114, 132, 195, 198, 201, 218, 227, 377; ix, 73
importance of, in Sháhnámá, i, 52
consulted by Farídún, i, 194
Minúchîhr, i, 251, 307
Zál, i, 255
Sâm, i, 278
Kai Káús, ii, 103, 215, 217
Afrásiyáb, ii, 273; iv, 158
Siyáwush, ii, 282
Rustam, iii, 219
Kai Khusrau, iv, 158
Húmán, v, 310

Astrologer, consulted by Sikan-dar, vi, 180
Ardawan, vi, 218
Yazdagird, son of Sháhpur, vi, 375 seq., 390
Bahrám Gúr, vii, 144, 145
Khán of Chin, vii, 353
Talhand, vii, 408, 413, 418
Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 372
Astyages (Istwégv), king of the Medes (Manda q.v., B.C. 584-550) conquered by Cyrus, i, 18; vi, 194
identified by Armenian historians with Zählák, i, 72, 144
Mandane and, legend of, ii, 190
Afrásiyáb and, in legend, ii, 191
Asura, See Ahúra.
Atbara, tributary of the Nile, vi, 65
Athenaeus, Greek writer (2nd-3rd centuries A.D.), iv, 316
Deipnosophistae of, ii, 10 quoted, iv, 314
Athens, schools of, closed by Justinian, vii, 280
Áthravans, priests of the Cult of Fire, i, 56
Áthwyâ, See Abťin.
Atkinson, James, on the Sháhnámá, vi, 250
Atossa, wife of Cambyses and Darius Hystaspis, v, 11 =Hutaosa, wife of Gush-tásp (?), v, 11
Atropatene (Ázarbáiján q.v.), i, 9, 61
primitive seat of Fire-worship, i, 56
sub-kingdom in Parthian times, vi, 198
Attack, town on the Indus in northern India, vi, 52
Aurand, father of Sháh Luhrásp, v, 205
Aurval-aspa (Luhrásp q.v.), iv, 316; v, 11
GENERAL INDEX

Autumnal equinox, iv, 313
Kai Luhrasp crowned at, iv, 313
Avars, Caucasian tribe, vii, 194
Avasta. See Zandavasta.
Avidius Cassius, Roman general, vi, 291 note
Awa, Iranian hero, iv, 149
Áwáza, stronghold, 170, viii, 134, 138
Axumite, Ethiopian, dynasty, vii, 24 note
Áyás, region, v, 61, 74, 107
Áyín Gashasp (Yazdánbakhsh), Iranian noble, 171, viii, 75, 150 note, 222
Hurmuzd consults, vii, 174, 177 and the prisoner, story of, vii, 177 seq.
marches to Hamadán, viii, 178
consults a seer, viii, 178 murdered, viii, 181
avenged by Bahram Chù-bina, viii, 181
troops of, disperse, viii, 181
Ázad Sarv, Firduisi's authority for the Story of Rustam and Shaghâd, v, 260 seq.
Ázad Sarv, archmage and agent of Nushirwan, v, 261, vii, 283 and note
goes to Marv, vii, 283
discovers Búzurjmih, vii, 283
returns with Búzurjmih to court, vii, 283
Ázâda, Rúman slave-girl, vi, 382
go hunting with Bahram Gúr, vi, 382
tries to shame Bahram Gúr in his markmanship, vi, 383
slain by Bahram Gúr, vi, 384 and note
Ázar (Ázarbâjíjan q.v.), ii, 195
Ázar, genius, iii, 287, 328
Ázar (Adar), month and day, i, 88, 89; vi, 411; viii, 244, 421; ix, 17
Ázar Ábdagán (Ázarakhsh, Ázargashasp q.v.), Fire-
temple at Shiz (Takht-i-Sulaimán) near the southeastern border of Ázar-
bájíjan, not at Tabriz with which the place has been wrongly identified (NT, p. 100, note), 172, iv, 259; vii, 86, 224, 362; viii, 282; ix, 74
importance of, i, 61
visited by Kai Khusrau, iii, 20
Kai Khusrav and Kai Káús go on a pilgrimage to, iv, 258
Khátün, wife of Khán, sent to serve at, vii, 5
Bahram Gúr visits, vii, 86, 94
Núshirwán visits, vii, 250, 363
Ázar Afrúz, third son of Asfandiýár, v, 81
Ázarakhsh (Ázargashasp, Ázar Ábdagán q.v.), Fire-
temple, i, 61
importance of, i, 61
Ázarbâjíjan (Atropatene q.v.), province in north-western Persia, i, 9, 61; ii, 336; iv, 136; v, 16; vi, 198, 203; vii, 160, 214
meaning of, i, 56
Ázargashasp, spirit of the light-
ning, i, 73, 248, 309, 349; ii, 57, 204, 345; iii, 23, 53, 72, 92, 97, 114, 194, 276, 327; iv, 84, 100, 147, 175, 275, 307, 360; vi, 381; vii, 21, 79, 232; viii, 46, 122, 152, 176, 245, 256, 415
temple of (Ázar Ábdagán q.v.), iv, 136, 258, 259; vii, 89, 250, 317, 365; viii, 68, 184, 210 and note
visited by, Kai Khusrav, iii, 20
Azargashasp, temple of, Kais Khusrau and Kai Káós go on a pilgrimage to, iv, 258 referred to, iv, 264 =Gushasp q.v., vi, 212 and note
Bahrám Gúr visits, vii, 86, 139 high priest of, converts Sapínúd to Zoroastrianism, vii, 139 Núshírwán visits, vii, 250, 363 Khusrau Parwíz visits, viii, 283, 307, 312
Azargashasp, Iránian warrior, viii, 296
Ázar Makán, father of Fárrukhzád, viii, 408
Ázarmdukh, Sháh, 175, v, 294; ix, 56, 59, 69 reproaches Kubád, ix, 7 end of, ix, 59, 60
Ázarnarsi, son of Hurmuzd son of Narsí, vi, 318
Azdites, Arab tribe, i, 11
Ázhi, Azi (Daháká, Zahhák q.v.), i, 142; ii, 81

B
Bábak, Tribal King. See Pápak.
Bábak, muster-master of Núshírwán bidden to enrol the host, 167, vii, 230 insists on Núshírwán’s attendance for enrolment, vii, 231 asks pardon of the Sháh, vii, 232
Bábar, founder of the Mogul dynasty in India resolutions of, as to wine drinking, vii, 75 note
Babblestead, nonce name given by Asfandiyár to Zábúl-istán, v, 216
Bábíl (Babylon q.v.), 160

Bábr-i-Bayán, a surcoat of leopard or tiger skin worn by Rustam in battle, iii, 184, 186 referred to, iii, 278
Babylon (Bábíl, gate of the god), city on the left bank of the Euphrates, now represented by the modern Hillah on the right bank, ii, 80; iii, 286; vi, 17, 31, 81, 83; viii, 194, 249; ix, 65, 92
hanging gardens of, v, 293
Sikandar marches toward, vi, 176, 178 prodigious birth at, vi, 81, 180
Sikandar sickens at, vi, 181 dies at, vi, 81, 183 Zahhák king of, ix, 65
Babylonia, ii, 80, 81
Babylonian, vi, 254 script, vi, 320
Bacchus, Saint and Martyr, viii, 188
Bactria, region between the Hindu Kush and the Oxus, vi, 32, 198
Bactrian plains, iii, 10 camels, viii, 47; ix, 93
Badakshán, region south of the Upper Oxus and east of Balkh, famous for its rubies, iv, 65, 192 signet-ring of, i, 300 gem of, vi, 382 and note
Bádán-Pírúz (Sháhrám - Pírúz, Ardábíl q.v.), city built by Sháh Pírúz in Azarbájíán, 166, vii, 160, 163
Bádar, Badr, battle of, ii, 337 note, v, 166
Bád Áwar, treasure viii., 406, and note, ix., 20.
Baetón, Greek writer, temp. Alexander the Great, vi, 12
Baghdád, city on the Tigris, founded by the 'Abbásíd Khalífa Al Mansúr
Baghdad—cont.
as his capital in A.D. 762
on the site of an old Babylonian city (Baghdadu),
161, 165, i, 14, 160; iii, 35; iv, 147, 256; v, 28; vi, 254, 290, 322, 327; vii, 83 and note; viii, 109
note, 112, 174, 193, 203, 393; ix, 68
Ardshir Paphakan enthroned at, vi, 258
Yazdagird quits, ix, 88
Persian settlement of, ix, 67
raided by Arabs, ix, 67
Baghz, vi, 32
Bagos, vi, 29
Bahar, district in Turkistan
where Siyavushgird was built, ii, 286
Bahman (Vohu Manau), ameshaspenta q.v., iii, 286, 327; v, 16; vi, 362 and note
Yasht, Pahlavi Text, vii, 188
month and day, iv, 81 note, v, 310; vii, 31 and note
Bahman (Ardshir, Artaxerxes),
son of Asfandiyar, Shâh,
136, 137, i, 42; ii, 9; v, 81, 166, 251, 254, 293, 297, 303; vi, 20 note, 34
and note, 49, 200, 213, 270 and note; viii, 270
eldest son of Asfandiyar, v, 80
Asfandiyar resigns the host to, v, 82
hears of Asfandiyar's imprisonment, v, 85
goes with others to solace him, v, 85
accompanies Asfandiyar from Gumbadân, v, 103
sent on an embassage, v, 179 seq.
crosses the Hîrmund, v, 182
coming of, reported to Zâl, v, 182
interview of, with Zâl, v, 183
Bahman, follows Rustam to the
hunting-ground, v, 184
tries to kill Rustam, v, 184
interview of, with Rustam, v, 185 seq.
entertained by Rustam, v, 186
astonished at Rustam's appetite, v, 186
leaves Rustam, v, 190
gives Rustam's answer to Asfandiyar, v, 191
Asfandiyar's wrath with, v, 191
resigns his seat at the feast to Rustam, v, 200
informs Asfandiyar of the slaying of Nûsh Azar and Mihr-i-Nûsh, v, 227
hears of Asfandiyar's overthrow, v, 244
confided to Rustam by Asfandiyar, v, 248
Zawara warns Rustam against, v, 250
remains with Rustam, v, 252, 256
instructed by Rustam and profits thereby, v, 256
Gushtasp advised by Jâmâsp to write to, v, 258
Gushtasp's letter of recall to, v, 258
equipped by Rustam for his journey, v, 258
welcomed and called Ardshir by Gushtasp, v, 259 and note
long arms of, v, 281
appointed by Gushtasp to succeed him, v, 279
historical position of, in Persian legend, v, 281
ascends the throne and harangues the chiefs on the vengeance due for Asfandiyar, v, 283
invades Sîstân, v, 284 seq.
sends a hostile message to Zâl, v, 285
Bahram, rejects Zal's conciliatory overtures, v, 286
sacks Zal's palace, v, 286
pillage Zabolistan, v, 287
fights, defeats, and executes Faramz, v, 288
Bishuat intercedes for Zal
with, v, 288
stops the pillage of Zabol
and releases Zal, v, 289
quits Zabol by Bishu'tan's advice, v, 290
passes over his son Sasdan and nominates Humaid and her issue as successors to the throne, v, 291
death of, v, 294
referred to, v, 310
Bahram, son of Ardawar, 160, 161, vi, 202, 225, 227, 260
made ruler of Pars, vi, 218
and note
referred to, vi, 222
bidden by Ardawar to seek out Ardshir Papatkan, vi, 223
wounded and put to flight by Ardshir Papatkan and Tabak, vi, 227
escapes to Hind after the defeat of Ardawar, vi, 228
urges his sister to poison Ardawar, vi, 259
Bahram, Iranian magnate, temp. Nushirwan, vii, 312; viii, 22
Bahram, castle of, in Azarbaijan, 146, vi, 336, 405
seq.
Bahrain, group of islands off the Arabian shore of the Persian Gulf, vi, 330; ix, 68
Bahram, genius, iii, 287, 328; vii, 406 and note
day, viii, 279
fatal to Bahram Chubina, viii, 337 and note, 339
and note
Bahram, moralist, quoted by Firdausi, ii, 186

Bahram (Vardanes), son of Gudarz and brother of Giv, Iranian hero and Parthian king, 145, 147, 148;
i, 33, 35, 38, 39, 57, 62, 85, 127, 138, 144, 158, 249,
257, 258, 271, 290, 318, 338, 340; iii, 13, 15, 19,
43, 46 seq., 67, 72, 95 seq., 114, 116, 132, 200, 214,
232; iv, 8, 312; vi, 197
takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107
seq.
goes with Siyawush against Afrasiyab, ii, 226
put in command by Siyawush, ii, 226, 257
interviews Farud, iii, 47 seq.
Farud presents his mace to,
iii, 50
reports his interview with Farud to Tus, iii, 51
tries to save Farud, iii, 52
reproaches the Iranians, iii,
66
slays Kabuda, iii, 74
rescues the crown of Rivniz, iii, 94
loses his whip, iii, 11, 95
becomes fey, iii, 95
succours a wounded brother,
iii, 97
finds his whip, iii, 95
loses his horse, iii, 95
set on by Turkmans, iii, 98
Ruin, iii, 99
wounds Ruhn, iii, 99
interviews Piran, iii, 99
attacked by Tazhav, iii, 101
found by Giv, iii, 102
death and burial of, iii, 104
Bahram, son of Zarasp, Iranian hero, goes with Zarir to
Ruin, iv, 360
commands the host in Zarir's absence, iv, 360
hails Gushtasp as Shah, iv,
362
Bahrám, Iránian warrior or king, iv, 268
Bahrám = Ardashir, vi, 197, 210
Bahrám, son of Pîrúz, Iránian warrior, temp. Bahrám Gúr, vii, 85
Bahrám, father of Shirwí temp. Núshíhrwán, vii, 251, 262
Bahrám, son of Urmuzd, Sásánian Sháh (Varahran I), 162, vi, 3 receives the throne from, and is counselled by, Urmuzd, vi, 303 seq. mourns for Urmuzd, vi, 306 Reign of, vi, 307 seq.
Note on, vi, 307 appoints his successor and dies, vi, 309 Mání and, vi, 327
Bahrám, son of Bahrám, Sásánian Sháh (Varahran II), 162, vi, 3, 308 appointed to succeed his father, vi, 309 Reign of, vi, 310 Note on, vi, 310 story told of, vi, 310
Bahrám, son of Shápúr, Sásánian Sháh (Varahran IV), 163, vi, 3, 371 Reign of, vi, 368 Note on, vi, 368 ruler of Kirmán, vi, 368 title of, vi, 313, 368 seal of, vi, 368 Tabârî’s account of, vi, 368 daughter of, vi, 369 resigns the throne to his brother, vi, 369 dies, vi, 369
Bahrám, son of Siyâwush, 172, viii, 75, 163, 245 reported slain, viii, 128 returns with captive sorcerer, viii, 128 speech of, viii, 166 related to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 187 wife of viii, 187
Bahrám, son of Siyâwush, wife of, warns Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 247 pursues Khusrâw Parwíz, viii, 233 besieges Khusrâw Parwíz, viii, 236 beguiled by Bandwí, viii, 236, 245 returns with Bandwí to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 238 blamed by Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 238 given custody of Bandwí, viii, 238 slain by Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 247
Bahrám, Iránian general, left in charge of host by Khusrâw Parwíz, viii, 296
Bahrám, father, in Persian Tabârî, of Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 77
Bahrám, name of, inscribed on cup incites Khusrâw Parwíz to afflict Rai, viii, 365 and note
Bahrám Ázarmíhán, Iránian scribe, 170
Hurmuzd attempts to suborn, viii, 85 seq.
reveals state-secret to Hurmuzd, viii, 88 put to death, viii, 89
Bahrám Bahramiyân, Sásánian Sháh (Varahran III), 162, vi, 3, 316, 324, 334 Reign of, vi, 313 Note on, vi, 313 miscalled “Kirmánsiháb,” vi, 313, 368 appoints his son to succeed him, vi, 314, 315
Bahrám Chúbína, son of Gashasp, marchlordin of Rai, Persian warrior and usurper, 170-173, i, 14; vi, 209, 250; viii, 70, 73, 184, 187, 199, 209, 214, 215, 343 seq., 352 seq.
Bahrám Chúbína—cont.
356 seq., 360, 383; ix, 6, 15, 16, 22, 91, 105
Romance of, viii, 72 seq.,
187, 191, 304 note; ix, 5
Nöldreke on, viii, 73
account of, viii, 72
seller of sheep’s heads and,
viii, 74, 107
dream of, viii, 75
withholding of booty by,
viii, 76, 148
insult of Hurmuzd to, viii,
76
defeat of, in Lazic war, viii,
76
sends swords to Hurmuzd,
viii, 76
parentage of, viii, 76, 77
malicious speech about, viii,
77, 150
coigne of, viii, 77, 173
brought to notice of Hurmuzd, viii, 98
described, viii, 98, 206
identified by Zád Farrukh,
viii, 99
sent for by Hurmuzd, viii,
100
consulted by Hurmuzd, viii,
100
made commander-in-chief,
viii, 102
selects his troops, viii, 102
justifies his method in so
doing, viii, 104
receives Rustam’s banner
from Hurmuzd, viii, 105
Mihrán as recorder from
Hurmuzd, viii, 106
marches from Taisafún, viii,
106
refuses to be recalled, viii,
108
marches to Khúzistán, viii,
109 and note
hay-seller and, viii, 109
marches toward Dáma-
ghán, viii, 109
parley of, with Faghfúr,
viii, 112
Bahrám Chúbína, refuses Sáwa’s
offers, viii, 113 seq., 117
seq.
counseled by Kharrád, viii,
121
arrays his host, viii, 122
prayer of, before battle,
viii, 123
encourages the Iránians
against Sáwa’s sorcery,
/etc., viii, 124 seq.
defeats and slays Sáwa, viii,
126
doings of, after battle with
Sáwa, viii, 130
rewarded by Hurmuzd, viii,
133
ordered to attack Parmúda,
viii, 133
holds revel in a garden,
viii, 135
attacked by and defeats
Parmúda, viii, 135 seq.
besieges Parmúda in Áwáza,
viii, 138
informs Hurmuzd, viii, 138
negotiates for surrender of
Áwáza with Parmúda,
viii, 138 seq.
receives surrender of, and
insults, Parmúda, viii, 143
blamed by Kharrád and
archscribe, viii, 144
tries to appease Parmúda,
viii, 145
has inventory made of the
wealth in Áwáza, viii, 147
sends Ízíd Gashasp with
spoil to Irán, viii, 148
Hurmuzd begins to suspect,
viii, 151
advances of, to Khán re-
jected, viii, 153
goes to Balkh, viii, 153
guided by an onager, viii,
156
incited to seek the king-
ship, viii, 158
change in, viii, 158
questioned by Kharrád, viii,
158
Bahrám Chúbína, sends Yalân-
sína after Kharrád and
archscribe, viii, 159
pardons archscribe, viii, 160
luck of, viii, 162
renounces allegiance to
Hurmuzd, viii, 162
intercepts the royal letters,
viii, 163
consults the chiefs, viii, 163
becomes friends with the
Khán, viii, 172
appoints a prince for Khurá-
sán, etc., viii, 173
marches to Rai, viii, 173
avenges murder of Ayín
Gashasp, viii, 181
historical campaign of,
against Khusrau Parwíz,
viii, 189
carline and, viii, 189, 303
marches to the Nahrawán,
viii, 201
spies' report of, to Khusrau
Parwíz, viii, 201
Khusrau Parwíz marches to
meet, viii, 203
interview of, with, viii,
204 seq.
tampers with troops of
Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 225
combat of, with Khusrau
Parwíz, viii, 228
arrives at Taisafún, viii, 231
sends Bahrám, son of Siyá-
wush, in pursuit of Khus-
rau Parwíz, viii, 233
blames Bahrám, viii, 238
chides, warns and im-
prisons Bandwi, viii, 238
addresses the magnates, viii,
239
elected Sháh, viii, 243
gives malcontents three
days to quit Írán, viii, 244
plot against, viii, 245 seq.
warned, viii, 247
slays Bahrám, son of Siyá-
wush, viii, 247
hears of Bandwi's escape,
viii, 248

Bahrám Chúbína, deceived by
forged letters, viii, 287,
293, 294
marches against Khusrau
Parwíz, viii, 287
goes to Azár Ábadagán,
viii, 288
arrays his host, viii, 289
fights with and slays Kút,
viii, 290
sends back corpse of Kút,
viii, 291
worsts Rúmans, viii, 292
"Harvest of," viii, 292
charges and routs Khusrau
Parwíz' centre, viii, 294
fights with Gurdwi, viii, 294
goes to fight Khusrau Par-
wíz and his body-guard,
viii, 297
leaves Jánfurúz in charge
of host, viii, 297
puts to flight and pursues
Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 298
Surúsh saves Khusrau Par-
wíz from, viii, 299
deserted by his chiefs, viii,
302
retreats, viii, 302
releases Nástúh, viii, 306
goes to Rai, viii, 306
welcomed by Khán, viii, 316
asks oath of Khán, viii, 317
counsels Khán to resist
Makátúra, viii, 318
challenged by Makátúra,
viii, 319
fight of, with Makátúra, viii,
320
Khán sends gifts to, viii, 321
asked by Khán's wife to
avenge death of her
daughter on lion-ape, viii,
324
battle of, with lion-ape, viii,
325
extradition of, demanded by
Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 328
urges Khán to make war
on Írán, viii, 330
sets forth for Írán, viii, 331
Bahrám Chúbína, Kharrád attempts to prejudice, with Khán, viii, 333 arrives at Marv, viii, 336 fatal day of, viii, 337, 339 Kulún seeks interview with, viii, 339 stabs, viii, 340 sister of, mourns, viii, 340 dying speech of, viii, 341 makes Yalán-sína his mandatory, viii, 342 letter of, to Khán, viii, 343 burial of, viii, 343 name of, on cup, viii, 365 and note
assassination of, referred to, ix, 4

birth of, vi, 375
Yazdagird advised by magnates to choose governor for, vi, 376 put in Munzir’s charge, vi, 372, 378 goes with Munzir to Yaman, vi, 378 nurses of, vi, 378 education of, vi, 378 seq.
obtains his tutors’ dismissal, vi, 380 makes choice of steeds, vi, 380 slave-girls, vi, 381 goes to the chase with a slave-girl, vi, 382 markmanship of, vi, 383 seq.
slays his slave-girl, vi, 384 and note
goes hunting with Nu’mán and Munzir, vi, 384 picture of, hunting, sent to Yazdagird, vi, 385

Bahrám Gúr, returns with Nu’mán to Yazdagird, vi, 386
complains of Yazdagird to Munzir, vi, 387 receives advice and his slave-girl from Munzir, vi, 388 falls into disgrace at court, vi, 389 asks Tainúsh to intercede for him, vi, 389 released and returns to Munzir, vi, 390 welcomed by Munzir, vi, 390 hears of his father’s death and of the election of Khusrau, vi, 395, 396 claims the kingship and is supported by Munzir, vi, 396 seq.
interview of, with Jawánwi, vi, 398 negotiates with the Íránians, vi, 401 seq.
Íránians produce examples of Yazdagird’s cruelty to, vi, 404 addresses the Íránians, vi, 404 proposes to decide the question of the kingship by ordeal, vi, 405 promises to rule justly, vi, 406 agrees to be the first to face the ordeal, vi, 409
Reign of, 164, vii, 3 seq.
Note on, vii, 3 seq.
length of, vii, 3 largely legendary, vii, 3 character of, vii, 3 resembles James V of Scotland, vii, 3
accession of, vii, 7 age of, at, vi, 373 inaugural measures at, vii, 7 seq.
holds eight days’ court, vii, 7 seq.
appoints ministers, vii, 8, 11
Bahrám Gúr, sends letters to the chiefs, vii, 8
pardons his enemies, vii, 9
makes festival for three days, vii, 9
rewards Nu'mán and Munzír, vii, 10
honours Khusrau, vii, 10
remits arrears of taxes, vii, 11
restores the nobles exiled by Yazdagird to their honours, vii, 11
proclamations of, vii, 12, 79, 82
persecutes the Christians, vi, 373; vii, 4
war of, with Rūm, vii, 4
adventures of, 164, vii, 4, 12 seq.
forbids wine-drinking, vii, 23
allows wine-drinking again, vii, 25
whip of, vii, 47, 54, 63, 64
equipage of, for the chase, vii, 48, 76
loses and finds his tughral, vii, 49, 50
visit of, to Barzin, vii, 49 seq.
marries Barzin's daughters, vii, 53
hunting-feats of, vi, 383
seq.; vii, 54, 55, 77, 80, 81
visits a jeweller, vii, 56 seq.
course of life of, bewailed by Rúzbih, vii, 56
many wives of, vii, 56
asks and obtains Arzú in marriage, vii, 61 seq.
visit of, to Farshídvard, vii, 68
forbids all plundering, vii, 79
ear-marks and brands onagers, vii, 81
remits the tribute of Barkúh and Jaz, vii, 82
visits Baghdád, vii, 83
holds revel at Baghdád, vii, 83

Bahrám Gúr reproaches Rúzbih for parsimony, vii, 83
reported to be given up to pleasure, vii, 84
reproached by his chiefs, vii, 84
secret preparations of, against the Khán, vii, 85
summons his chiefs, vii, 85
levies a host, vii, 86
makes Narsi viceroy, vii, 86
goes to Azar Abádagán, vii, 86, 94, 139
march of, to Marv against the Khán, vii, 89
defeats the Khán at Kashi-mihan, vii, 4, 5, 90, 170
note
marches on Bukhárá, vii, 90
defeats the Turkmans, vii, 91
grants peace to the Turkmans, vii, 91
boundary pillar of, vii, 92, 160, 161, 164
makes Shahra ruler of Túrán, vii, 92
goes to Istákhr, vii, 95
makes gifts of treasure, vii, 95, 96
deposits the Khán's crown in a Fire-temple, vii, 95
goes to Taisafún, vii, 95
welcomed by Narsi and the chiefs, vii, 96
remits taxes for seven years, vii, 5, 97
happiness of the world under, vii, 99
bestows Khurásán on Narsi, vii, 99
inquires about Caesar's envoy, vii, 100
gives audience to Caesar's envoy, vii, 101
Caesar's questions to, vii, 102
parting gifts of, to Caesar's envoy, vii, 106
addresses the archmages, vii, 106
Bahrám Gúr, wazír complains of Shangul to, vii, 109 writes to Shangul, vii, 110. visit of, to Hind, vii, 5, 112 seq. motive of, vii, 5 fabulous, vii, 6 bears his own letter to Hind, vii, 112 audience of, with Shangul, vii, 112 entertained by Shangul, vii, 116 wrestles before Shangul, vii, 117 displays his marksmanship before Shangul, vii, 118 calls himself Barzwi, vii, 121 slays monsters, vii, 121 seq. offered a daughter and great advancement by Shangul, vii, 127 takes to wife one of Shangul's daughters, vii, 128 receives an invitation from Faghfúr, vii, 129 reply of, vii, 130 tells Sapínúd of his wish to quit Hind, vii, 131 meets some Iránían merchants and pledges them to secrecy, vii, 133 feigns sickness, vii, 134 escapes with Sapínúd, vii, 134 reproached by Shangul, vii, 135 makes a league with Shangul, vii, 137 welcome of, on his return, vii, 137 addresses the nobles, vii, 138 praised by the nobles, vii, 139 makes a new treaty with Shangul, vii, 140 entertains Shangul and seven other kings, vii, 140 seq.

Bahrám Gúr, appointed Shangul's heir, vii, 143 parting gifts of, to Shangul, vii, 144 takes account of his treasures, vii, 144 term of life of, foretold by the astrologers, vii, 144 resolves to levy no more taxes, vii, 145 unsuccessful attempts of, to benefit his subjects, vii, 146 seq. Gipsies introduced into Irán by, vii, 6, 149 appoints Yazdagíd his successor, vii, 150 death of, vii, 6, 150 Firdausi's reflections on, vii, 150, 151 mourning for, vii, 151 Bahrám-Gushnasp, father, in Arabic Tabári, of Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 77 Bahrám Tal, viii, 138 and note Baidá (White), a town in Păr on a few miles north of Shíráz, not to be confounded with the stronghold known as 'White Castle' further north, i, 236; vi, 198 and note, 199 Baigand, city and fortress (Kuhanduz ?) between Bukhárá and the Oxus, vii, 176 Afrásiyáb encamps at, iv, 151 marches from, iv, 154 Máhwi encamps at, ix, 118 Baisinghar Khán, grandson of Timúr the Lame, life of Firdausí by, i, 23 edition of Sháhnáma of, 1, 23 preface to, i, 67 Baiüt'ul Mukaddás (Gang-i-Dizhukht), Zahák's capital (Babylon ?), also an Arab name for Jerusalem, i, 161
### GENERAL INDEX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Baitu‘l Harâm, the Kaaba g.v.</td>
<td>vi, 119, 121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bâj, Zoroastrian system of praying</td>
<td>i, 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bakhtagán, father of Bûzurjmîhîr</td>
<td>vii, 279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baku, town on the peninsula of Apsheron on the western shores of the Caspian and a chief centre of the petroleum industry</td>
<td>i, 58 note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bakyûr, mountain where Afrâsiyâb had a palace</td>
<td>iv, 136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balaam, prophet</td>
<td>v, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bal’âmî, Abû ‘All Muhammad al-</td>
<td>(died A.D. 996), Sâmânîid minister and compiler of the Persian version of Tabari’s Annals, vii, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balas (Balâsh g.v.), Sâsânîan Shâh</td>
<td>vii, 170 seq.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balâsh, king of Kîrmân, slain by Arshîr Pâpakân</td>
<td>vi, 205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balâsh (Balas), Sâsânîan Shâh</td>
<td>166, vi, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appointed regent by Pîrûz,</td>
<td>vii, 164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hears of the overthrow of Pîrûz,</td>
<td>vii, 169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reign of, vii, 170 seq.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note on, vii, 170</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character of, vii, 171</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>introduces public baths, vii, 171</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end of, vii, 171</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>title of, vii, 171</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accession of, vii, 171</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sûfârâî’s letter to, vii, 173</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>welcomes Sûfârâî on his return from Tûrân, vii, 181</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dethroned, vii, 182</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balkh, city in northern Afghanîstân</td>
<td>154, 155, ii, 101, 228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>231, 242, 246, 249, iii, 153, 192; iv, 19, 20, 65, 150, 157, 255; v, 18, 20, 29, 31, 33, 41, 48, 73, 86, 87, 91, 104, 171, 255; stack, viii, 273</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Falkh—cont.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vii, 94, 331, 359, 384; viii, 22, 74, 95, 153, 159, 161, 173; ix, 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ancient seat of Aryan civilization, i, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>situated on ancient trade-route, i, 57</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seat of the Magi, i, 60 seq.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zoroaster’s successful evangel at, i, 61; v, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zoroaster slain at, i, 61, v, 92, 93</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rhyme-word, Firdausi’s difficulty with, i, 74</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Şâhnâmâma, scene of, shifted to, ii, 9; iv, 317</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siyâwûsh defeats Garsîwâz at, and takes, ii, 229</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luhrâsp makes, his capital, iv, 713</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>becomes a devotee at, v, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kuhrâm sent by Arjâsp to attack, v, 90</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stormed, v, 92, 93</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luhrâsp slain at, v, 91, 93</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spoil of, sent away by Arjâsp, v, 108</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asfandiyâr quits, to invade Tûrân, v, 120</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aphorist of, viii, 221</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bestowed by Mâhwi on his son, ix, 115</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balûch, Balûchistân (Gedrosia, Makrân), country, 167, ii, 80, 226; iii, 34; iv, 136; vi, 12, 70; vii, 340</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arshîr Pâpakân’s ill success against, vii, 242</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nûshîrwân conquers, vii, 242 becomes prosperous, vii, 362</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balûchis, people, vii, 241 seq.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ravages of, vii, 217, 241</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chastised by Nûshîrwân, vii, 242</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bálwî, Iranian noble, 172, viii, 257, seq.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deceived by Cæsar’s talisman, vii, 273</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Eálwi, praised by Caesar, viii, 279
receives Chákch, viii, 314
Bámdát, father of Mazdak, vii, 188
Bámiyán, city in Afghánistán, north of the Kuh-i-Baba mountains and famous for its Buddhist remains, iv, 65
Banák, Iránían chief, temp. Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 202
Bandáwa, Sindian chief, defeated by Sikandar, vi, 175
Band-i-Kaisar, dam at Shúhshtar, vi, 295
Bandvi, Iránían noble temp. Kubád, vii, 207
Bandvi, maternal uncle of Khusrau Parvíz, 171-173, vii, 200, 202, 204 seq., 224, 225, 227, 231, 234, 245 seq., 289, 296, 298, 356, 357; ix, 4
imprisonment of, viii, 77, 176
Gustáham and, escape and revolt, vii, 182
referred to, vii, 189
put to death, vii, 191, 355
accompanies Khusrau Parvíz in his flight, viii, 231
turns back and murders Hurmužd, viii, 232
rejoins Khusrau Parvíz, viii, 233
promises to save Khusrau Parvíz, viii, 234
disguises himself as Khusrau Parvíz, viii, 235
beguiles Báhrám, son of Siyáwush, viii, 236, 245
imprisoned by Báhrám Chúbína, viii, 238
Bandví, Báhrám Chúbína hears of escape of, viii, 248
entertained by Mausíl, viii, 249
goes with Mausíl to meet Khusrau Parvíz, viii, 282
Báhrám Chúbína writes to, viii, 285

Eándwi, causes defection of Báhrám Chúbína’s chiefs, viii, 302
insults of, to Niyátús, viii, 309, 310
reconciled to Niyátús, viii, 311
minister of Khusrau Parvíz, viii, 313
adherents of, beheaded, viii, 370
execution of, referred to, ix, 16, 104
Baní Tayy, Arab tribe, viii, 188
Banquets, the Seven, of Núshírwán, 168. See Núshírwán.
Bánúghashasp, daughter of Rustam and wife of Gív, ii, 4
stays with Rustam while Gív seeks Káí Khusrau, ii, 365
suitors of, ii, 383, 384
rejoins Gív, ii, 395
Bár, mountain-range in Khurásán, v, 30
Bár, treasure, viii, 406 and note
Baráhám, a Jew, 164, vii, 13
entertains Báhrám Gúr scurvily, vii, 16 seq.
goods of, confiscated, vii, 20
Bárbad, minstrel, 175, viii, 396 seq., 406, ix, 29 and note
supersedes Sarkash, viii, 399
visits Khusrau Parvíz in prison, ix, 29
lament of, ix, 30
Barbar, Barbaristán, town and country (British Somaliland), 143, ii, 52 seq., 82, 90, 93, 98; iii, 207, 269; iv, 136, 148; vi, 114; vii, 327; viii, 381
identification of, ii, 79
king of, ii, 83, 94, 95
taken prisoner by Guráza, ii, 97
sends embassy to Gusk-tásp, v, 75
Barda', city in Arrán q.v., now in ruins, on the Tharthúr a tributary of the Kur, iv, 147; vii, 341; viii, 99, 100, 184, 222, 226; ix, 15
Afrásiyáb takes refuge in a cave near, iv, 259
Bardí. See Baidá.
Barkháh, city between Istakhr and Yazd, vii, 79, 80
tribute of, remitted by Bahram Gúr, vii, 82
Barmá́n (Purmáya q.v.), brother of Farídún, i, 90, 91
Bárman, son of Wisa, Turánian hero, 142, 144, 151, i, 92, 342; ii, 18, 129, 130, 150, 349; iii, 79, 210; iv, 149
spies out the Iránian host, i, 346
challenges the Iránians to single combat and slays Kubád, i, 347
rewarded by Afrásiyáb, i, 348
besieges Gazhdaham in White Castle, i, 354
defeated and slain by Káran, i, 354
revival of, in legend, ii, 119
marches on Irán, ii, 228
defeated by Siyáwush, ii, 229
chosen to fight Ruhllám, iv, 97
slain by Ruhllám, iv, 102
Barrier, Alexander's (Sikandar's), in the Caucasus, 160, i, 16, vi, 189, 249
legend of, vi, 78
site of, vi, 79
described, vi, 164
Barsaentes, satrap, vi, 32
murderer of Darius Codomans, vi, 32
executed, vi, 32
Barsám, general of Búzhan, ix, 97, 117
marches on Marv, ix, 97, 116
Máhwí's conduct to, ix, 117
Barzám, pursues and overtakes Máhwí, ix, 118
captures Máhwí, ix, 119
Barsam, the sacred twig, implement in Zoroastrian religious ceremonial, i, 80
Barsine (Stateira), eldest daughter of Darius Codomanus, vi, 33
marries Alexander the Great, vi, 33
Barta, Iránian hero, 151, iii, 25, 92; iv, 149
chosen to fight with Kuhíram, iv, 97
slays Kuhíram, iv, 105
Bartáš, region in Turkistán, ix, 19
Barzín, sacred Fire and Fire temple on the Binalúd Kuh, south west of Tús and Mashad in Khurásán, i, 237; ii, 107; vi, 391; viii, 216
Iránians worship at, vi, 400
Barzín, Fire-temple built by Luhrásp at Balkh, iv, 318
Barzín, Iránian hero, i, 365; ii, 12, 22, 73; iii, 25, 127, 273
Barzín, father of Bihzád, temp. Yazdagírd son of Shápúr, vi, 395
Barzín, Iránian noble, temp. Bahram Gúr, 164
visited by Bahram Gúr, vii, 49
entertains Bahram Gúr, vii, 50 seq.
gives his daughters in marriage to Bahram Gúr, 164, vii, 53
Barzín, father of Rád and Dád, temp. Bahram Gúr, vii, 86
Barzín, father of Ustád, temp. Núshírwán, vii, 251
Barzín, father of Shádán, vii, 382, 423
Barzín, bower of, vii, 83
Barzín, general of Núshírwán, vii, 17
Barzin, father of Kharrád, 171-173, viii, 74, 76, 190, 205 and passim, ix, 4, 9, 12, 27
Barzin, father of Jahn, viii, 391
Barzwi, nonce-name assumed by Bahím Gûr in Hind, vii, 121, 134
Barzwi, physician and sage, temp. Núshírwán, 169, vii, 383
goest on a mission to Hind, vii, 424
consults a sage, vii, 427
hears of the book of Kalila and Dimna (Fables of Bidpai), and procures it for Núshírwán, vii, 427, 428
translates the above into Pahlavi, vii, 382, 428
asks boon of Núshírwán, vii, 429
Basra (Bassora), city on the Shatt-el-Arab, ix, 68, 69
founded by 'Umar, ix, 67
Bastám, city near Dámaghán on the road to Nishápûr, vii, 357
Bástán-náma (Khudái - náma), Firdausi’s chief authority, v, 24, 27, 261; vi, 17, 84
traditional origin of, i, 67
discussed, i, 68
translated into Arabic by Ibn Mukaffa’, vi, 16, 373
modern Persian, i, 67 seq.; vii, 382
Bastavairi, Bastvar (Nastůr q.v.), v, 12, 25
Bátárún (Marcian), Rúman general, viii, 41, 47, 52
Baths, public, introduction of, by Balás, vii, 171
Battle of the Twelve Rukhs, 151, iv, 7 seq., v, 29
Firdausi’s reflections on, iv, 98, 106
Eleven Rukhs, 151, iv, 88
arranged by Gúdarz and Pirán, iv, 95 seq.
of the Bridge, ix, 5, 67
Battlestead = Brazen Hold, v, 121
Bazánúsh (Valerian, q.v.), 161
defeat of, and capture by, Shápûr son of Ardshîr, vi, 294, 295
single combat of, with Garshasp, vi, 297
bridge built by, at Shúsh-tar, vi, 298
Bazánúsh (Jovian q.v.), 162, 163, vi, 324, 326
elected Emperor, vi, 353
sues for peace, vi, 353
accepts Shápûr’s terms, vi, 355
Bazh, suburb of Tâs, i, 38
Bázarangi, dynasty of Tribal kings, vi, 198
Bázûr, Túránian warlock, iii, 128
uses magic against the Iránians, iii, 128
wounded by Ruhhám, iii, 129
Beas (Hyphasis), easternmost of the rivers of the Punjáb, vi, 64
Bedouins, i, 135, 179
desert of the, iv, 148
commanded by Zahîr in Kai Khusrau’s host, iv, 148
Bel, Babylonian god, v, 293
temple of, v, 293
Belisarius, Roman general (A.D. 505-565), vii, 186, 187, 217, 218
Berber, race in northern Africa, vi, 73
Berbera, trading-station in the Gulf of Aden, ii, 79
Berlin, viii, 192
Berozias, Barzwi q.v., vii, 383
Bessus, satrap, temp. Alexander the Great, vi, 32
assumes royal state in Bactria, vi, 32
executed, vi, 32
Bhima, one of the five Pândavas, iv, 138, 139
Bhútán, Indian kingdom, between Assam and Thibet, vi, 81
Bibliotheca, of Diodorus, v, 293
Bíd, a div, ii, 44, 54, 55, 93
slain, ii, 59, 64; iii, 256; iv, 296; v, 204
Bódád, city of Cannibals in the vicinity of Sughd, iii, 244 seq.
meaning of, iii, 244 note
stormed by Rustam, iii, 246
Bídrafsh (Vidrafsh), Turánian hero, 155, v, 24, 25, 41, 51, 52, 62 seq.
goes as envoy to Gushtásp, v, 37, 40 seq.
returns with Gushtásp’s answer, v, 44
receives banner from Arjásp, v, 46
commands one wing, v, 56
volunteers to fight Zarîr, v, 62
slays Zarîr, v, 63
fights Nastúr, v, 70
slain by Asfandiyár, v, 70
head of, presented to Gushtásp, v, 71
Bîdpai, Indian sage, vii, 383
Fables of (Book of Kalíla and Dimna), brought to Persia, 169, vii, 213, 382
Bih Áfríd, daughter of Gushtásp, ii, 3; v, 22
taken captive by the Turkans, v, 93, 94, 100
goes with Humáí to draw water and meets Asfandiyár, v, 147
escapes from Arjásp’s palace, v, 153
laments over Asfandiyár, v, 252
reproaches Gushtásp, v, 254
Biháfríd, ancestor of Ardshír Pâpakán, vi, 200
Bih Ardshír, Seleucia q.v. as rebuilt by Ardshír Pâpakán, vi, 254, 291 note, viii, 194, 196
Bihbîhán, town near the left bank of the Táb river in Pârs, vii, 188
Bihisht (Paradise), name of the country round Gang, iv, 195
Bihistún. See Bistún.
Bihruz, a scribe temp. Bahram Gúr, vii, 71 seq.
makes an inventory of the goods of the miser Farshídward, vii, 72
Bihzád ("well bred"), the horse of Siyáwush and subsequently of Kai Khusráu, 146, ii, 391; iv, 172, 303
Siyáwush’s last charge to, ii, 312
Farangís instructs Kai Khusráu how to obtain, ii, 374 seq.
Bihzád, Gushtásp’s horse, v, 56, 69
Bihzád, Iránian chief, temp. Yazdagird son of Shahpúr, vi, 395; vii, 85 (?)
Bihzád, Iránian chief, temp. Kabád son of Pîráz, vii, 207
Bínlúd, mountain-range, west of Mashhad, north of Nishápúr, v, 29
Birds, Sikandar holds converse with, 160, vi, 160
Bírka-i-Ardshír, city in Pârs founded by Ardshír Pâpakán, vi, 290 and note
Bírmáya, cow, i, 151
supplies the infant Farídún with milk, i, 151
slain by Zahhák, i, 152, 153, 162
Birthmark, characteristic of Kaian race, ii, 372; iii, 49 and note
described, ii, 372; iii, 49
Siyáwush’s, iii, 49
Kai Khusráu’s, ii, 372; iii, 49 and note
Farúd’s, iii, 49
Bísa (Fasá, Pásá, city south of Lake Bakhtígán in Pârs, vii, 89?)
GENERAL INDEX 229

Bishop or prelate g.v., iv, 341, 348 as militarist, i, 373, 378; iv, 197; v, 306; vi, 352 advises Caesar, iv, 330 Núshzád’s last requests to, vii, 275

Bishútán (Peshó-tanu), brother of Asfandiyár, 156, 157, v, 66, 117, 178, 179, 182, 195, 216, 223, 244 seq., 249 seq., 261, 288 seq. an immortal, v, 12, 19 birth of, v, 32 commands the host during Asfandiyár’s absence in the Seven Stages, v, 122, 124, 126, 129, 132, 144, 150 Asfandiyár praised by the host and, v, 123, 125, 131, 133 revives Asfandiyár after his encounter with the dragon v, 127 prays for deliverance from the snow, v, 138 Asfandiyár and, consult, v, 143 sees Asfandiyár’s signal and approaches, the Brazen Hold, v, 150 passes himself off as Asfandiyár, v, 143, 151, 152 joined by Asfandiyár, v, 155 advises Asfandiyár, v, 179 Asfandiyár holds talk about Rustam with, v, 192 advises Asfandiyár to maintain friendly relations with Rustam, v, 196, 217 Rustam served with untempered wine by, v, 211 despair of, at the situation between Rustam and Asfandiyár, v, 218 laments for Núsh Azár and Mihr-i-Núsh, v, 232 Asfandiyár talks of the fight with Rustam to, v, 240

Bishútán, hears of Asfandiyár’s overthrow and laments for him, v, 244 Rustam bewails Asfandiyár to, v, 246 Asfandiyár’s last charge to, v, 249 heads Asfandiyár’s funeral train, v, 251 displays the corpse of Asfandiyár, v, 253 reproaches Gushtásp, v, 253 Jámásp, v, 254 consoles Katáyún, v, 255 supports Rustam’s overtures to Gushtásp, v, 257 intended by Gushtásp to be Bahman’s minister, v, 279 intercedes for Zál, v, 288 intercession of, accepted, v, 289 counsels Bahman to quit Zálbul, v, 290

Bístám (Gustaham g.v.), viii, 255 and note, 256

Bístún (Bagistana i.e. “Place of God,” Behistún, Bístún), a lofty rock a few miles east of Kirmánsháh and famous for its inscriptions, i, 379; ii, 128; iii, 12, 184, 350; iv, 190; v, 56, 184; vii, 61, 363; viii, 209 inscription of Darius Hystaspis at, i, 6; v, 11 Gotarzes at, iii, 9, 11 =Zál’s white elephant, i, 328 =Rustam, v, 229

Bíwarasp (Zahhák), i, 72, 144 meaning of, i, 135

Bíward, Turánian hero, iii, 161 comes to aid Pirán, iii, 152

Bíward, Iránian chief temp. Yazdagird son of Shápúr, vi, 395

Bízhan, Iránian hero, son of Giv, 147, 150-152, ii, 4, 366 and note; ii, 4, 366 and note; iii, 20, 45, 67, 76 seq., 81, 92, 101, 115, 121,
Bízhan—cont.
129, 130, 133, 139, 141,
157 seq., 211, 234, 247,
248, 253, 259, 264, 271,
284 seq., 289, 330 seq., 337
seq., 349, 350, 352 seq.:
iv, 7, 13, 26 seq., 56, 77,
88, 91, 102, 123 seq., 147,
292; vi, 194
favourite with the poet, iv, 8
parentage of, iii, 324
friendship of, with Gustah-
ham the son of Gazhdam-
ham, iii, 15
relations of, with Giv, iii, 15
undertakes to slay Palashán,
iii, 26
to carry off the crown
and handmaid of Tazhāv,
iii, 27
swears to avenge Zarāsp, iii,
59
borrows a steed from
Gustaham, iii, 59
the mail of Siyawush,
iii, 60, 69
worsts Farūd, iii, 62
praises Farūd to Tūs, iii, 62
fights with Farūd, iii, 64
Palashán, iii, 70
pursues Tazhāv, iii, 77
takes Ispanwī captive, iii, 78
prowess of, with Kāwa’s
standard, iii, 93
shares his steed with Gusta-
ham, iii, 95
goes with Giv in quest of
Bahram, iii, 102
attacks Bidād, iii, 244
goes to summon Rustam,
iii, 245
worsted by Pālandwand, iii,
258
Story of, and Manizha, 150,
iii, 12, 285 seq.
historical basis of, iii, 11
Mohi on, iii, 285
Firdausi on, iii, 287
referred to, viii, 72
volunteers to go to the help
of the Irmānians, iii, 291

Bízhan, goes to Irmān with
Gurgin, iii, 292
destroyed the wild boars, iii,
293
envied by Gurgin, iii, 294
steed of, iii, 296, 302, 313
interview of, with Manizha’s
nurse, iii, 297
visits Manizha, iii, 298
drugged, iii, 299
wakes in Afrasiyab’s palace,
iii, 300
holds revel with Manizha,
iii, 300
discovered by Garsiwaz, iii,
302
taken before Afrasiyab, iii,
303
sentenced to death, iii, 304
lament of, iii, 305
imprisoned, iii, 309; v, 116
searched for by Gurgin,
iii, 310
receives Rustam’s ring, iii,
340
Rustam’s conditions of re-
lease for, iii, 345
released, iii, 346
pardons Gurgin, iii, 346
joins in attack on Afrāsi-
yāb’s palace, iii, 347
presented to Kai Khosrau
by Rustam, iii, 354
holds converse with Kai
Khusrau, iii, 356
desires to fight Hūmān, iv,
39
asks Giv to lend him the
mail of Siyawush, iv, 40
seeks Gúdarz’ permission to
fight Hūmān, iv, 41
receives the mail of Siyā-
wush from Giv, iv, 45
parleys with Hūmān, iv,
45
returns after the fight in
Hūmān’s armour, iv 51,
defeats night-attack and
slays Nastihan, iv, 54
attacks with Giv Pirán’s
centre, iv, 83
| Bizhan, fights with Farshídward, | Bizhan, Khán of Turks, lays amb- |
| iv, 87 | bush for Máhwi, ix, 118 |
| chosen to fight with Rún, | sends Barsám in pursuit of |
| iv, 97 | Máhwi, ix, 118 |
| slays Rún, iv, 103 | hears of Máhwi’s capture, |
| asks Gúdarz for help for | ix, 119 |
| Gustaham, iv, 117 | puts Máhwi to death, ix, 120 |
| rescues Gustaham, iv, 124 | goes mad and kills himself, |
| seq., 132 | ix, 120, 121 |
| brings back the corpses of | Black Dív. See Dív. |
| Lakhár and Farshídward, iv, 126, 132 | horse, Gushtásp’s, v, 18 |
| Kai Khusrau remonstrated | cured by Zarduhsht, v, 18 |
| with, by, and other nobles, | Stone, meteorite built into |
| for refusing audience, iv, | the wall of the Kaaba at |
| 275 | Mecca, ii, 163 and note, |
| Kai Khusrau gives audience | vi, 65 |
| to, and other nobles, iv, | Blest, Country of the, vi, 74, 76 |
| 283 seq. | Boars, wild, devastate Írmán, |
| Kai Khusrau’s gift to iv, | iii, 290 |
| 295 | slain by Bizhan, iii, 293 |
| brings Luhrásp before Kai | Bombyx Mori. See Silk. |
| Khusrau, iv, 300 | Book of Kings, Firdausi’s Sháhnáma, i, 43 |
| sets out with Kai Khusrau | Indication and Revision, |
| on his pilgrimage, iv, 306 | Mas’údlí’s, vi, 252 |
| refuses to turn back when | quoted, vi, 252 |
| hidden by Kai Khusrau, | Boot, golden. See Golden. |
| iv, 307 | Börysthenes, river (Dnieper q.v.), |
| Kai Khusrau farewells and | iii, 191 |
| warns, and his comrades, | Boulder of the Dív Akwán, iii, |
| iv, 308 | 271, 343 seq., 347 |
| disappears and is sought | Rustam carried off on, iii, |
| in vain by, and his | 276 |
| comrades, iv, 308 | flung into the sea with, |
| end of, iv, 309 | iii, 278 |
| Gúdarz’ grief for, iv, 310, | raised from the sea, iii, 309 |
| 312 | used to cover Bizhan’s pris- |
| sons of, go with Zarír to | on, iii, 309 |
| Rúm, iv, 360 | removed from pit’s mouth |
| hail Gushtásp as Sháh, iv, | by Rustam iii, 345 |
| 362 | Boundary-pillar, Bahrám Gúr’s, |
| | vii, 92, 160, 161, 164 |
| Bizhan, Ashkánian king, vi, 197, | Bowl, the full, symbolism of, vi, |
| 210 | 63 |
| Bizhan, Khán of Turks, 176, ix, | Brabantio, his warning to |
| 70, 96 | Othello, vi, 324 |
| Máhwi writes to, ix, 96 | Brádrók-résh, a Karap, v, 15 |
| consults his minister, ix, 97 | slayer of Zarduhsht, v, 15 |
| sends troops to Marv, ix, 97 | Brahman, Hindu priest, iii, 29 |
| Máhwi makes war on, ix, 115 | iv, 50; v, 207, vii, 425; |
| marches against Máhwi, ix, | ix, 21 |
Brahmans (Gymnosophistæ), 159
vi, 64
Palladius on, vi, 61
country of, vi, 143, 147
hear of Sikandar’s coming
and write to him, vi, 143
Sikandar’s interview with,
vi, 67, 143 seq.
described, vi, 144
reply to Sikandar’s ques-
tions, vi, 144 seq.
Sikandar quits, vi, 147
Brahmanism supersedes Bud-
dhism in eastern Iran, i, 16
Brains, human, prescribed to
Zahhák by Iblís, i, 139, 146
Bramble-grubber, 164. See Diláfrúz.
Brand-mark, iii, 291
of Káús, iii, 291
Brazen Hold, the 156, v, 116, 117, 119 seq., 159, 197, 206, 255
route to, v, 120, 135
described, v, 121, 135, 141
Asfandiyár’s stratagem for
taking, v, 116, 143
surprised from within by
Asfandiyár, v, 152 seq.
left in charge of Sáwa, v, 154
Arjásp’s head thrown from
the ramparts of, v, 157
Asfandiyár destroys, v, 162
referred to, viii, 171
Bride, the one of the Kai Káús’
treasures, iv, 295
given by Kai Khusrau to
Giv, Zál, and Rustam, iv,
295
Brides of the Treasury, Genii
that watch over secret
hoards, vi, 250
Bridge, Battle of the, ix, 5, 67
Browning, Robert, his poem of
“The Glove,” vi, 384
Bucephala, city founded by
Alexander the Great, vi, 18
Bucephalus, horse of Alexander
the Great, vi, 18
birth of, vi, 26
a mare (Ethiopic version),
vi, 18
offered by Darius to Porus,
vi, 31
death of, vi, 18, 64
city built by Alexander, in
memory of, vi, 18
Buddha, birth stories of, vii, 383
Buddhism, in eastern Iran and
Kábulistán, i, 15
superseded by Brahman-
ism, i, 16
regarded as idolatrous by
Zoroastrians, i, 16
Buddhist saints, story of two, vi, 63
Budge, Dr. E. A. Wallis, his
editions of the Syriac
and Ethiopic versions of the
Pseudo-Callisthenes,
vi, 14, 17 note
Budini, race, vi, 73
Búti, demon, assails Zarduhsht
i, 62; v, 17
Bukhára, city on the Zarafshán
river in the province of
Sughd, ii, 241; iv, 65;
vii, 331, 348, 359, 384;
i, 97, 115, 117
Kurákhán sent to, iv, 154
Afraşıyáb joins Kurákhán
at, iv, 186
Fire-temple built by Túr at,
iv, 225
Bahám Gúr attacks, vii, 90
receives tribute from, vii, 94
Bukhtakán. See Bakhtagán.
Bulghár (Bulgaria), viii, 406
Bull, mythological, i, 71; ii,
407; vii, 245
-fish, ii, 128
Bandahish, Pahlavi text, i, 91,
92, 117, 125, 131, 235,
236, 337 note, 338, 369;
ii, 3 note, 11, 26, 81, 118,
189
meaning of, i, 70 note
GENERAL INDEX

Bu‘dah-i-h, account of Creation in, i, 117
Búráb, court-carrier to Cásar, iv, 326
refuses to employ Gushtásp, iv, 327
Buráza, minister under Yazdagird son of Shápur, vii, 4
Burial-place of Rustam’s race, the scene of the battle between Bahman and Farámarz, v, 287
Burjak and Burjátúr, vi, 207.
See Youth’s, the two.
Burjásp, Túránian hero, iv, 26
commands the left wing, iv, 26
Burns, quoted, viii, 3
Burrus, Pratorian prefect temp. Nero, vii, 279
Burzmíhr, Íránian warrior, vii, 86
bears Narš’s letter to Bahram Gúr, vii, 94
Burzmíhr, scribe, viii, 81, 87, 313 =Búzurjmíhr (?) q.v., vii, 71
Burzúyalá, Túránian hero, iv, 182
fights and flees from Ká Khusraú, iv, 183
Búspás, nonce name used by Húmán when parleying with Rustam, iii, 198
Bust, city in Sástán, situated at the junction of the Kandháár and Helmund rivers, i, 252; iv, 65; v, 173, 277, 287; vi, 175; vii, 173, 395; ix, 89
stream of, i, 252
Buzgúsh, name of tribe, ii, 55
and note, iii, 207
Búzurjmíhr, chief counsellor of Núshírván in Íránian tradition and famous for his wisdom, 167-170, i, 27; v, 261; vii, 5; viii, 3 seq., 67 seq.
associated with the Persian Wisdom-literature, vii, 278
Búzurjmíhr, a semi-mythical personage, vii, 280
found by Azád Sarv at Marv, vii, 283
undertakes to interpret Núshírván’s dream vii, 283
goes with Azád Sarv to court, vii, 283
adventure of, with a snake, vii, 284
interprets Núshírván’s dream, vii, 284
rewarded and honoured by Núshírván, vii, 286, 289, 304, 311, 315, 388
accomplishments of, vii, 286
discourses of, at the Seven Banquets of Núshírván, vii, 287 seq.
on fate and fortune, vii, 291
on the attainment of greatness, vii, 291, 296
on what is worthiest, vii, 291
on sages, vii, 288, 291, 292, 294, 296 seq., 309
on fools, vii, 297, 298, 306
on conduct, vii, 288, 291 seq., 299, 309
on kings, vii, 290, 294, 295, 301, 312
on the wise administrator, vii, 294
on sons, vii, 295, 303, 311
on riches and poverty, vii, 295
questioned by Ardshír and Yazdagird, vii, 308
on scribes, i, 27; vii, 311
on loyalty, vii, 312
discourse of, vii, 366
questioned by Núshírván, vii, 367 seq.
expounds the game of chess, vii, 380, 388
invents the game of nard, vii, 381, 389
welcomed on his return from Hind by Núshírván, vii, 393
Būzurjmîhr, goes hunting with, and is suspected of theft by, Nūshîrwan, viii, 4

- disgraced by Nūshîrwan, viii, 5
- instructs Nūshîrwan’s page, viii, 5
- refuses to admit himself in the wrong, viii, 6 seq.
- treated with increasing rigour, viii, 7, 8
- released, viii, 9
- divination by, viii, 10 seq.
- advises with Nūshîrwan, viii, 47 seq.
- instructed by Nūshîrwan to prove Hurmuzd, viii, 56 seq.
- abolition of Fire-worship foretold by, viii, 68
- death of, viii, 69, 71
- =Burzmihr (?), viii, 71
- Mas‘udî on, viii, 71

Byzantine title, vii, 218

C

Cæsar, the dynastic title of the kings of the West or Rûm who were regarded as being descended from Salm, the son of Farîdûn, 154, 161, 162, 165, 167, 169, 172-174, i, 262; ii, 383; iii, 9; vi, 112, 297, 353; vii, 163; viii, 8 seq., 19, 43 seq., 51 seq., 230, 232, 245, 252 seq., 257 seq., 299, 306 seq., 334, 373 seq., 408 seq.; ix, 10, 23

transliteration of, i, 84 and note

temp. Luhrâsp, 154, iv, 339 seq.; v, 11, 32, 167
daughter of=Katâyun, iv, 314; v, 167, 205
capital of, founded by Salm, iv, 325

Cæsar, temp. Luhrâsp, Nastâr, master of the herds to, iv, 325
- refuses to employ Gush-tâsp, iv, 326
- Bûrâb, court-farrier to, iv, 326
- refuses to employ Gush-tâsp, iv, 327
- proposes to give his eldest daughter in marriage, iv, 329
- wrath of, at his daughter’s choice of Gush-tâsp, iv, 330
- yields to bishop’s counsel, iv, 331
- refuses to provide for his daughter and Gush-tâsp, iv, 331
- bids Mirîn slay the wolf of Fâskûn, iv, 333
- inspects the slain wolf, iv, 341
- marries his second daughter to Mirîn, iv, 341
- bids Ahran slay the dragon of Mount Sakîl, iv, 342 third daughter of, iv, 342 seq.
- married to Ahran, iv, 348
- rejoices in his two sons in law, iv, 348
- proclaims the tidings of the slaying of the wolf and the dragon, iv, 349
- sons-in-law of, display their accomplishment on the riding-ground, iv, 349
- sees Gush-tâsp’s prowess and questions him, iv, 350
- learns the truth about the wolf and the dragon and asks pardon of Gush-tâsp and Katâyun, iv, 351
- wrath of, with Mirîn and Ahran, iv, 351
- seeks to find out through Katâyun who Gush-tâsp is, iv, 351
Caesar, temp. Luhrásp, receives Gushtásp with honour at court, iv, 352
Ilyás refuses to pay tribute to iv, 352
receives a scornful message from Mirín and Ahran, iv, 353
takes counsel with Gushtásp, iv, 353
bids Gushtásp lead forth the host, iv, 354
arrays the host, iv, 355
Gushtásp brings the dead body of Ilyás to, iv, 355
welcomes Gushtásp after his victory, iv, 356
consults Gushtásp about demanding tribute from Irán, iv, 356
sends an envoy to Luhrásp, iv, 356
gives audience to Zarir, iv, 360
replies to, and dismisses Zarir, iv, 361
questions Gushtásp, iv, 361
sends Gushtásp to Zarir's camp, iv, 361
goes to feast with Gushtásp and discovers who he is, iv, 363
gives gifts to Katayún, iv, 363
the Iránian chiefs, iv, 364
parts in good will from Gushtásp, iv, 364
sends embassy to Gushtásp on hearing of Arjásp's defeat, v, 75
temp. Humáí, sues to Rushnawád for peace, v, 307
=Failakús q.v., vi, 24, 26, 27
=Sikandar q.v., vi, 40, 42, 49
113, 114, 118, 121, 122, 124, 128, 129, 142, 158, 161, 170, 174, 178, 183
=Valerian (Bazánúsh q.v.), vi, 326
=Jovian (Bazánúsh q.v.), vi, 353, 354
Caesar, temp. Shápür son of Ardshír, 161
pays tribute, vi, 298
temp. Shápür son of Urmuzd, 162, vi, 341 seq., 345 seq.
Shápür in disguise visits, vi, 336
entertained by, vi, 337
discovered by, vi, 337
arrested by, vi, 337
sewn up in an ass's skin by, vi, 338
put in charge of wife of, vi, 338
invades and ravages Irán, vi, 338
Shápür prepares to attack, vi, 340
overthrown by Shápür at Taisafún, vi, 346 seq.
Shápür's treatment of, vi, 349, 357
mother of, vi, 351
brother of (Yánus q.v.), vi, 351
temp. Yazdagird son of Shápür, vi, 389
pays tribute, vi, 389
temp. Bahrám Gur, 165
embassage of, to Bahrám Gur, vii, 5, 86, 100
marches on Irán, vii, 84
propounds questions to Bahrám Gur, vii, 102
envoy of, questioned by the high priest, vii, 104
temp. Núshírwán, 167, 169, 172-174, vii, 244 seq., 269, 273
replies to Núshírwán concerning Munzir, vii, 245
treasures of, taken by Núshírwán, vii, 255, 258
sues to Núshírwán for peace, vii, 261
sends tribute to Núshírwán, vii, 362
death of, viii, 43
temp. Núshírwán, Hurmuzd, and Khusrau Parwiz, 172
Cæsar, temp. Nushirwân, etc.,
offends Nushirwân, vii, 44 seq.
marches against Nushirwân, vii, 46
attacks Hurmuzd, vii, 93
retakes cities, viii, 93
makes peace with Hurmuzd,
viii, 95
welcomes Khusrau Parwiz,
viii, 257
offers help to Khusrau Parwiz,
viii, 261
changes his mind, viii, 262
consults the astrologers, viii,
264
decides to help Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 265
offers daughter to Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 266
offers of, accepted by Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 269, 270
talisman of, viii, 271, 275
deceives Rúman envoys,
vii, 272
mastered by Kharrád,
vii, 274
gifts of, to Kharrád, viii, 278
writes to Khusrau Parwiz,
vii, 279
praises Rúman envoys, vii,
279
counsels Maryam, vii, 279,
280
gives Niýátus charge of Maryam, vii, 280
corpse of Kút sent to, vii,
291
Khusrau Parwiz announces death of Bahram Chúbína to, vii, 345
daughter of, gives birth to Shírwí, viii, 371
Khusrau Parwiz' letter to, viii, 373
rejoicing of, at birth of Shírwí, viii, 374
embassy of, to Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 374
gifts of, given by Khusrau Parwiz to Shírwí, viii, 381

Cæsar, temp. Nushirwân, etc.,
invited to seize Irán, vii, 408
tricked by Khusrau Parwiz
and retreats, vii, 410
letter of, about the True Cross referred to, ix, 22
Cæsarean birth, of Rustam, i,
236, 321 seq.
Calanus (Sphinês), Indian ascetic, vi, 61
Onesicritus and, vi, 61
Alexander the Great and,
v, 61
death of, vi, 61
derivation of, vi, 61
identical with the sage sent
by Kaid to Sikandar
(see Four Wonders), vi, 62
Calendar, Zoroastrian, i, 88; iii, 286
adopted by Darius Hystaspis, i, 59
Callinicus. See Káliniyús.
Callisthenes, Greek historian
temp. Alexander the Great
vi, 12, 74
Romance of Alexander
fathered on, vi, 13
account of, vi, 13
Callitris quadrivalvis, the Arar
tree, vi, 19
Cambyses, father of Cyrus the
Great, ii, 190
identical with Siyáwhush in legend, ii, 191
Cambyses, son of Cyrus the
Great and King of Persia
(B.C. 528-521), v, 10, 11; vi, 16
Camel, piece in chess, vii, 422
position of, vii, 422
move of, vii, 422
Cancer, constellation, iii, 125,
151, 255; vii, 257
moon in, an evil omen, i, 188; iii, 255 (?)
Candace (Kandake, Kaidáfa
q.v.), dynastic title of the
queens of Ethiopia, vi
13, 72
Candace Alexander the Great and, vi, 65 seq.
Candahar. See Kandahar.
Cannibalism, iii, 191, 244
Canopus, star, i, 188
of Yaman, i, 266; ii, 203; iii, 297; vi, 382
Cappadocia (Pálawina), vi, 294
Captives, mutilation of, vi, 323, 334, 348, 357
settlement of, vi, 327, 357
Carlino and Bahram Chubina, viii, 189, 303
Carnelians, ii, 123
of Yaman, ii, 123
Carrhae, defeat of Crassus at, i, 15
Carthaginians, the, vi, 30
Alexander the Great's legendary visit to, vi, 30
Casabon, Isaac, vi, 13
Caspian Sea, i, 3, 4, 16, 19, 56, 57, 338; ii, 189, 336; iii, 10, 192; iv, 136; v, 13
Caspian Gates, iv, 315; vi, 31, 32
Cassander (B.C. 350-297), eldest son of Antipater and King of Macedonia, vi, 82
Castellan, bishop as. See Bishop.
Castes, division of Aryans into, i, 7
Iraniants into, i, 130, 132
Castle, White. See White Castle of the Alans. See Alans.
Bahman. See Bahman.
Oblivion, vii, 84
Kubad son of Prituz confined in, vii, 184 escapes from, viii, 184
Catholicus, viii, 195
Catullus, Roman poet (B.C. 84-54), i, 60
on Persian next of kin marriage, i, 60
Caucasus, mountain-range running in a south-easterly direction from the Black Sea to the Caspian, i, 16; iv, 316; vi, 15; vii, 214, 217; viii, 72
Caucasus, passes in, i, 16; vi, 79 fortified, i, 16, vii, 153, 187, 216, 239
Mas'udis's account of, vii, 215
barrier (mythical) of Alexander the Great (SikanDar) in, i, 16; vi, 78, 189, 249
legend of, in the Kur'an, vi, 78
site of, vi, 79
described, vi, 164
Cave, cavern, in Mazandaran, ii, 28
White Div's, ii, 28, 55, 58 seq.
Afrasiyab's, in Azarbajjan, iv, 136 seq., 259 seq.
Central clime. See Clime.
Chach (Shas, Old Tashkand, now in ruins), city on the right bank of the Jaxartes west of Ferghana, famous for its bows, ii, 241, 258; iv, 19, 187, 188, 255; vii, 167, 329, 334, 340, 343, 348, 358, 359; viii, 314, 377; ix, 115, 116
bow of, i, 227; iii, 123, 181, 227; v, 244; vi, 384; viii, 125, 126, 294
government of, given to Tus by Rustam, ii, 358
thane of, one of Firdausi's authorities, vi, 197, 210
referred to, vi, 229 and note
daughter of governor of, vii, 285
intrigue of, vii, 285
executed, vii, 286
battle-axes of, ix, 118
Chaghán, district on the right bank of the Oxus where that river is crossed from Tirmid, and city further north on the upper waters of river of the same name, iii, 152, 177, 228; vii, 94, 157, 359
Chaghán, ceded by Kubád to the Haiťálians, vii, 198
monarch of = Faghánish, vii, 333
Chaghwán = Chaghán (?), vi, 174
Sikandar visits, vi, 174
quits, vi, 175
Cháha, hostelry of, i, 45
Chahár Makála , Persian treatise,
i, 23
account of Firdausi in, i, 38,
39, 45
Chahram (Jahram q.v.), city in Párs
Chalah, viii, 193
Chálandshán. See Chánland-
shán.
Chalcedon, viii, 194, 195
Chalybon-Beroea (Aleppo), city in northern Syria, vii, 218;
vi, 41
held to ransom by Núshir-
wán, vii, 218
Champions, the Twelve, vii, 156.
See Rukhs.
Chamrosh, mythical bird, i, 235
Chánlandshán (Khalanjan, Khánlanján), district and
town (Firúzán) near Ispa-
hán on the Zayinda river
(see LEC. pp. 206, 207
and note), i, 29
Ahmad ibn Muhammad of,
patron of Firdausi, i, 29
Firdausi’s escape from
drowning at, i, 26, 29
Chao-wou = Sáwa q.v., viii, 72
Characters, chief, of Sháhnáma,
i, 49
Characteristics, of Írán, i, 3 seq.
Characteristics of a Happy Man,
Pahlaví text, vii, 279
Charam, place in Írán, iii, 40, 41,
52, 68, 85, 86, 111, 112
Charbar, place on the coast of
Balúchistán (Makrán), vii,
70
Chares of Mytilene, Greek writer
and official at the court of
Alexander the Great ii
10; vi, 61
Chares of Mytilene, story by, of
Hystaspes and Zariádres
quoted, iv, 314
Charinda, river, iii, 10 note
Charjui (Amwi q.v.), city on the
Oxus, vii, 91 note
Charogos. See Tainúsh.
Chase, equipage for, vii, 48, 76;
viii, 384
Chess, game of, 169, vi, 201;
vii, 14 and note, 280, 385
seq.; viii, 371
Note on, vii, 380
sent by the Rája of Hind to
Núshirwán, vii, 5, 380,
384 seq.
expounded by Búzurjmihr,
vii, 380, 388
symbolism of, vii, 381
two forms of, vii, 381, 388,
422
changes in powers of pieces
in, vii, 381
Mas’úfí on, vii, 382
invention of, Story of the,
169, vii, 394 seq.
Chess-board, vii, 14, 385, 388
Chess-men, vii, 14, 380, 388
Chevy Chase, ii, 82
Chigíl (Naryn ?) district and
river, tributary of the
Jaxartes, iv, 155
monarch of, v, 110
commands the left, v, 110
= Arjásp, v, 54, 86
Turkman of, = Gurgsár, v,
139
Chihrzád (Humái), daughter and
wife of Sháh Bahman, ii,
3; v, 290 and note
meaning of, v, 290 and note
Chújast (Khanjast, Urumiah),
lake in Ázarbáiján, iv,
136 note
Children, sometimes brought up
un-named, i, 8, 179
Chín, country, China, but gen-
erally in the Sháhnáma
equivalent to Chinese
Tartary and sometimes
to Túrán, 160, 165, 173.
Chin, country, China—cont.
assigned by Farídún to Túr, i, 189
brocade of, i, 269, 233 and passim
coasts of, vi, 173
cloth of gold from, ii, 275; vi, 182, 334
dínárds of, iv, 241
Faghfúr of. See Faghfúr.
helm of, i, 132
images of, v, 35
implements of, vi, 122
Khán of. See Khán.
King of=Áfrásíyáb, ii, 99; iv, 165, 170, 230
=Khán, iii, 227, 228; vii, 87
=Árjásp, v, 36, 52, 55, 69, 86, 108
=Faghfúr, vii, 131
lord of=Mahmúd, iv, 142
=Síkandar, vi, 113
=Faghfúr, vi, 171
mace of, iii, 129
ornaments of, ii, 232; vi, 102, 139
paper of, vi, 172
pen of, vi, 57, 99
prince of=Khán, iii, 226
=Áfrásíyáb, iv, 194
=Árjásp, v, 35
=Parmúda, vii, 142
=Sáwa, vii, 222
rarities of, vi, 171, 173; vii, 49
robes of, iii, 329; viii, 205, 257
Rose of=daughter of the
Khán, vii, 363 and note
sea of, i, 113, 140, 252, 349; ii, 12, 256, 276, 285, 356, 357; iii, 151, 252; iv, 237, 254; v, 109, 203, 233, 239 note; vi, 149; vii, 343; viii, 377
shield of, iii, 125, 140, 256; ix, 118
Síkandar goes to, vi, 169
silk of, i, 157; iii, 104, 165; v, 159, 295; vi, 85, 266; vii, 73, 92, 347, 364, 418; viii, 258, 269, 374
steel of, iii, 186
stuff of, vi, 143, 215
ware of, vii, 78
sage of, vii, 235
sashes from, ix, 12, 53
gold thread of, ix, 82
merchantmen of, ix, 89
China, country, vi, 204
silk industry of, vi, 204
Chínáb (Akesines), river in the
Punjáb, vi, 31, 64
Chinese, viii, 72
language, vi, 147
Chingish, Túrání hero, 140, iii, 207
volunteers to avenge Kámús, iii, 194
challenges Rustam, iii, 194
slain by Rustam, iii, 195
Chínwí, noble of Chín, vii, 331
Chionítæ, people, v, 13
geographical position of, v, 13
Chorene, Moses of. See Moses.
Chosrau, Chosroes I (Kísrá), Sásáníán Sháh, vii, 212, 281. See Násírítär,
Chosroes, king of Armenia, vi, 202
Christ, 174, vi, 339; vii, 207, 249, 264, 270, 273, 276; ix, 24, 109
Faith of, vi, 133, 339; vii, 274; viii, 43, 191, 272, 310, 380
account of, vii, 276
father of, viii, 276
mother of, vii, 276
Cross of, vii, 377, 380; ix, 23
laughter of, vii, 191, 380
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Christian, Christians</td>
<td>167, vi, 342; vii, 171, 254, 270; viii, 21, 67, 195, 196, 256, 272, 308, 310, 381; ix, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Faith</td>
<td>vi, 104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>persecution of</td>
<td>vii, 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Firdausí's view of</td>
<td>vii, 219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wife of Nūshīrwān</td>
<td>vii, 263, 274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother of Nūshzād</td>
<td>vii, 263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>helps Nūshzād in his revolt</td>
<td>vii, 266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laments for Nūshzād</td>
<td>vii, 276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>support Nūshzād</td>
<td>vii, 266, 272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut gates of Kārsán against Khusrau Parwiz</td>
<td>viii, 252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christianity</td>
<td>vi, 138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polemics against</td>
<td>vii, 219, 270, 273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chúbín (Júbín), father, according to Mas‘údí, of Bahram Chúbína</td>
<td>viii, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chúbína</td>
<td>vii, 215, 222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meaning of</td>
<td>viii, 98 note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cilicia (Kaidáfa), most southeasterly province of Asia Minor</td>
<td>vi, 294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circesium</td>
<td>viii, 188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City of Women</td>
<td>160. See Harím.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Claudius, Roman emperor (A.D. 41–54)</td>
<td>iii, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleophas, Indian queen</td>
<td>vi, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alexander the Great and</td>
<td>vi, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climate</td>
<td>of Írán</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mázandarán</td>
<td>ii, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clime, Climes, the seven</td>
<td>i, 40, 71, 122, 123, 238; ii, 15 note, 372; iii, 290, 317; vi, 179, 262, 266, 273, 280, 376, 377; vii, 395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kai Khusrau surveys</td>
<td>in his divining-cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central</td>
<td>i, 71, 122; ii, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloud, emblem of prosperity</td>
<td>i, 73, 113, 114; ii, 263 and note; iv, 141; vi, 96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloud, thunder-, as water-stealing demon</td>
<td>i, 7 of bale = Afrasiyáb, ii, 13 name given by Rustam to himself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clough, quoted</td>
<td>viii, 187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cocks and hens, taught to crow daybreak</td>
<td>i, 126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colchians, people of the southeastern shores of the Euxine</td>
<td>vi, 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colic, cure of</td>
<td>vii, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commander of the Faithful</td>
<td>ix, 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Umar, the first</td>
<td>ix, 72 and note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commons, king of</td>
<td>vii, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communists (Mazdakites, q.v.), viii, 185</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Companions of the Prophet (Muhammad)</td>
<td>139 praise of, 139, i, 106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constantinople</td>
<td>vii, 316; viii, 194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conspirator against Nūshīrwān escapes to</td>
<td>vii, 316</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contents, General Table of</td>
<td>ix, 139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cook, chief, of Nūshīrwān, grievance of</td>
<td>viii, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cordwainer. See Shoemaker.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corn-land, taxes on</td>
<td>vii, 215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corpse</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cos, island in the Ægean sea</td>
<td>vi, 204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silk industry of</td>
<td>vi, 204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cosmogony, ancient Íránian</td>
<td>i, 5, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Firdausí's, 102, iv, 136</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country of the Blest. See Blest.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Courses, the Seven, of Rustam</td>
<td>143, ii, 29, 44 seq.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crassus, the triumvir (B.C. 115–53)</td>
<td>i, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>defeat of, at Carrhæ</td>
<td>i, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creation, Zoroastrian account of</td>
<td>i, 5, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Firdausí's account of</td>
<td>i, 102 seq.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crete, island, south of Greece</td>
<td>vi, 323 note.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CRETE, MINOS KING OF, LEGEND OF, VI, 323 NOTE
CROCODILE, III, 278
==ASSASSIN, I, 111
==KÁMÚS, III, 192
CROSS, THE, 174, VI, 351, 352; VII, 249, 270, 276; VIII, 308, 309, 374
CAPTURED BY DÁRÁB, VI, 306 AND NOTE
RELIGION OF, VI, 138
PASSION OF, VI, 339
THE TRUE, VIII, 191, 196, 253, 377, 378, 380; IX, 4, 5, 10, 24
RESTORATION OF, IX, 7, 56
OF CHRIST, IX, 23
ELEVATION OF, IX, 43
CROWS AND OWLS, STORY OF, VIII, 263 AND NOTE
CRYSTAL, HOUSE OF, IX, 25 AND NOTE
CTESIAS. SEE KTESIAS.
CTESIPHON (TALAFUN Q.V.), CITY ON THE LEFT BANK OF THE TIGRIS
SOME 25 MILES BELOW BAGHDÁD, ORIGINALLY AN EXTENSION
OF SELEUCIA ON THE RIGHT BANK OF THAT RIVER,
II, 80; VI, 321, 322, 325, 372; VIII, 42, 188, 189,
193, 194, 196; IX, 65 SEQ.
TAKEN BY SHAHRBARÁZ, IX, 43, 44
SA'AD, IX, 67
BOOTY FOUND AT, IX, 68
CULTURE-HEROES. SEE GAUMÁRT,
HÚSHANG, TAHMÚRAS, AND JAMSHÍD, I, 118 SEQ.
CUP, DIVING-, OF KAI KHUSRAU,
III, 317, 318, 323
INEXHAUSTIBLE, OF KAAD, 159,
VI, 94, 100, 109
POISONED, PROFFERED TO ARD-
SHÍR PÁPAKÁN, VI, 259
CRYSTAL, TO DETECT POISON (?), VII, 51
CYBELE, GREEK GODDESS, VI, 71
=HÍTTITE MA, VI, 71
CYMBALS, OF THE BRIDES OF THE
TREASURE, VI, 250; VII, 35 AND NOTE

VOL. IX.

CYPRUS, OF KISHMAR. SEE KISH-
MAR.
CYRUS THE GREAT (B.C. 558-528),
SON OF CAMBYSES AND
FOUNDER OF THE PERSIAN
EMPIRE
LEGEND OF, IN HERODOTUS
IDENTICAL WITH THAT OF KAI
KHUSRAU, II, 9, 190
IN CTESIAS TRANSFERRED TO
ARDÍRSH PÁPAKÁN, VI, 195
RISE OF, I, 18
COMPARED TO THAT OF ARDI-
SHÍR PÁPAKÁN, VI, 194
HISTORICAL PARALLEL WITH KAI
KHUSRAU, V, 10

D

DABISTÁN, 17TH CENTURY PERSIAN
TREATISE, V, 28
CYPRUS OF KISHMAR, ACCOUNT
OF, IN, V, 28
DÁD, ÍRÁNÍAN WARRIOR, VII, 86
DÁDÁFRÍD, MELODY, VIII, 398 AND
NOTE
DAÉVAS. SEE DIV.
DAGHWI, DESERT IN TURKISTÁN, II,
193; IV, 117
DAHAE I.E., "FOES" OR "ROBBERS,"
A NAME GIVEN BY THE ÍRÁN-
IANS TO THE NOMAD TRIBES
DWELLING EAST OF THE CASPIAN
AND NORTH OF THE
ATRAK IN THE REGION NOW
OCCUPIED BY THE YAMUT
TURKMANS, I, 19; III,
10
DAHÁKA (AZHI, AZÍ, ZAHHÁK
Q.V.), EVIL SPIRIT, I, 7, 142,
172
DAHISTÁN, STEAD OR HOME OF THE
DAHAE Q.V. AND TOWN
BETWEEN HARÁT AND MARV,
I, 280, 344 SEQ., 349, 363,
IV, 61, 72, 79, 148, 157;
IX, 95
NAUDÁR BELEAGUERED IN, BY
AFRÁSIYÁB, I, 353
Dai, genius, i, 88, 89; iii, 287, 328
month or day, i, 88, 89; vi, 43; vi, 306; viii, 173, 421; ix, 17
pa Mihr, day, i, 88; vi, 16
Dáp Marj, place where Bahram Gúr is said to have been drowned, vii, 6
Dáitya, river, v, 13
Daizan (Táir q.v.), vi, 322
legend of, vi, 322
daughter of, legend of, vi, 323
Dakhma, "Tower of Silence," i, 81 and note
Dakki, Persian poet, 139, 154, 155; ii, 3 note, 8; vi, 10, 13; vi, 196; viii, 190
account of, i, 28, 67, 69, 109; vi, 20
Firdausi and, v, 21 seq., 30, 87, 88
work of, compared with the Yátkár-i-Zarírán, v, 24 seq.
Dámaghán, city on the road from Tíhrán to Nishápúr and the capital of the province of Kúmis, ii, 15; iv, 255; viii, 109, 189
Dáman-i-Kuh, the northerm "mountain-skirt" of modern Persia, iii, 15
Damascus, chief city in Syria, vi, 195
Nicolaus of, Greek historian, temp. Augustus, vi, 195
Damávand, volcano nearly 20,000 feet high and the culminating peak of the mountain-range south of the Caspian, i, 143, 144, 148; vi, 202; viii, 391
Zahhák fettered on, i, 169, 173
Arish's arrow-shot from, v, 12
Dambar, city in Kábulistán (?) which was regarded as Indian, i, 252, 256; iv, 278, 283, 284; vii, 396, 399, 421
Dámdád, Nask, i, 70 note
Damúr, Túránian hero, ii, 296, 319; iv, 156
overthrown by Siyáwush, ii, 295
advocates execution of Siyáwush, ii, 317
Danbar. See Dambar.
Dandamis. See Mandanes.
Dáng, coin, ix, 94 and note
Dánishwar, the dihkán, supposed compiler of the Bástán-náma, temp. Yazdagird III, i, 67, 68
Danube, river, v, 11
Darius' expedition to, v, 11
Dará, son of Dáráb, Sháh (Darius Codomanus q.v.) 158, i, 42; ii, 3, 9; v, 281; vi, 83 seq., 112, 113, 123, 124, 132, 137, 170, 172, 188, 325, 353; viii, 220, 242, 387
first historic Sháh in the Sháhnáma, i, 49
origin of name, v, 297 note
legendary son of Dáráb, vi, 17, 27
appointed by Dáráb to succeed him, vi, 27
Reign of, 158, vi, 29 seq.
Note on, vi, 29 seq.
historical account of, vi, 29
movements of, after his final defeat by Alexander (Sikandar), vi, 31
Sikandar's correspondence with the wife and daughter of, vi, 33
accession of, vi, 34
letter of, to the kings, vi, 34
pays his troops, vi, 35
ambassadors come to, vi, 35
demands tribute from Sikandar, vi, 36
GENERAL INDEX

Dará, marches against Sikandar, vi, 37
Sikandar's visit to the camp of, vi, 38
invites Sikandar to a banquet, vi, 40
ambassador of, recognises Sikandar, vi, 40
sends horsemen in pursuit of Sikandar, vi, 41
defeated by Sikandar, vi, 43
collects another army, vi, 43
defeat of, vi, 44
goes to Chahram, vi, 44
Istakhr, vi, 44
takes counsel with his chiefs, vi, 45
collects a new host, vi, 46
marches from Istakhr, vi, 46
defeat of, vi, 46
withdraws to Kirmán, vi, 46
bewails himself, vi, 47
letter of, to Sikandar, vi, 49
Fúr, vi, 50
marches against Sikandar, vi, 51
abandoned by his troops and flees, vi, 51
murdered by his ministers, vi, 52
murderers of, arrested by Sikandar, vi, 53
dying interview of, with Sikandar, vi, 53
vengeance promised to, by Sikandar, vi, 53
tells his last wishes to Sikandar, vi, 54
bestows Rúshanak upon Sikandar, vi, 55, 86
dies, vi, 55
burial of, vi, 56
Sásán, son of, vi, 211
kindred of, support Ardashir Pápakán, vi, 223
Dará (Dará), city, viii, 41, 194
taken by Núshírwán, viii, 41
ceded by Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 188
Dará Panáh, viii, 189, 284
goes disguised to Khusrau Parwiz' camp, viii, 286
betrayed by Bahram Chúbína, viii, 286
returns to Bahram Chúbína, with forged letter, viii, 287
Daráb, Sháh, son of Bahman and Humáí, i, 158, i, 42; ii, 3, 9; v, 281, 292, 297
seq.; vi, 11, 34 and note, 49, 83, 84, 86, 132, 137, 172, 188; vii, 215; viii, 191
foundling legend of, ii, 11; v, 293 seq.
Tabari's version of, v, 297 note
birth of, v, 294
referred to, v, 294 seq.
exposed on the Farát, v, 295
found and adopted by a launderer, v, 296 seq.
royal birth of, asserts itself, v, 298
youthful escapades of, v, 298
brought up as a cavalier, v, 299
feels lack of natural affection for the launderer, v, 300
hears of his case from the launderer's wife, v, 300
enlists, v, 301
seen by Humáí, v, 302
and the adventure of the ruined vault, v, 303
receives gifts from Rashnawád, v, 304
questioned by Rashnawád, v, 304
prowess of, against the Rúmans, v, 305, 306
praised and rewarded by Rashnawád, v, 305, 306
captures the Cross, v, 306
and note
takes of the spoil one spear, v, 307
returns to Irán, v, 307
Dáráb, Rashnawád hears from
the launderer and his wife
of the case of, v, 308
Rashnawád writes to Humáí
about, v, 308
recognised by Humáí as
being her son, v, 308
appears with Rashnawád
before Humáí, v, 309 seq.
crowned by Humáí and
accepts her excuses, v, 310
Humáí proclaims the ac-
cession of, v, 311
visited by, and rewards, the
launderer and his wife,
v, 311, 312
Reign of, 158, vi, 11 seq.
Note on, vi, 11 seq.
father of Sikandar in Per-
sian legend, vi, 16
legendary father of Dárá, vi, 17
harangues the chiefs, vi, 20
ambassadors come to, vi, 21
employs Rúman artificers,
v, 21
wars with the Arabs, vi, 21
defeats and demands tribute
from Arabs, vi, 22
wars with Rúm, vi, 22
defeats Failakús, vi, 23
grants terms of peace to
Failakús, vi, 24
marries the daughter of
Failakús, vi, 25
returns to Pars, vi, 25
becomes disaffected towards
his wife (Náhid), vi, 25
marries again, vi, 27
Dárá is born to him, vi, 27
fails in health, vi, 27
appoints Dárá to succeed
him, vi, 27
dies, vi, 28
Dáráb, Dárábgird, city in Pars,
158, vi, 17, 198, 199; viii, 313
Darband, town and pass be-
tween the Caucasus q.v.,
and the Caspian, ii, 336; viii, 369 note
Darband, Pass of, described,
i, 16
fortification of, i, 16, 17
and note, vii, 213, 239
Masúdí's accounts of,
vi, 215
Darí, vii, 430 and note
Dariel, Pass of, in the Caucasus,
vi, 79
Darius, Hystaspis, Sháh, i, 9, 65;
v, 10; viii, 187
trilingual inscription of, at
Bíhistún, i, 6
Zoroastrian calendar adopt-
ed by, i, 59
reign of, and Gushtásp's
compared, v, 11
conversion of, v, 11
Darius, Codomanus (Dárá q.v.)
Sháh, i, 49; vi, 16, 17, 29
defeated at Íssus, vi, 30
Alexander escapes from the
banquet of, vi, 30
defeated at Gaugamela, vi,
31
asks that his family may be
restored to him, vi, 31
writes to Porus, vi, 31
historical account of the
death of, vi, 31
daughter of, marries Alex-
ander, vi, 33
corpse of, sent to Párs, vi,
33
assassins of, punished, vi, 33
Dareja, river in Ázarbáiján, v,
14
Darkness, Land of. See Gloom.
House of, ix, 7;
Dármán, viii, 202
Darmesteter, Professor, on Fir-
dausi's geography, ii, 79,
80
on Afrásiyáb's capture by
Húm, iv, 136
Story of the Worm, vi, 203
Haftwád, vi, 206
Darún, Zoroastrian religious rite,
v, 19
Daryai Rúd, river in Ázarbáiján,
v, 14
Dastagird, city, viii, 193, 196; ix, 7
   taken by Heraclius, viii, 194
Dashma, Irânian hero, iv, 148
Dâstân (Zâl q.v.), i, 84, 248, 264
Dâstân-i-Sâm (Zâl q.v.), i, 84
Dâstân-i-Zand (Zâl q.v.), i, 245
   and note, 248
Date-palm, i, 4
taxes on, vii, 215, 225
Daughter of Kaid. See Kaid, Four Wonders of.
Daulat Shâh, author of "Lives of the Poets," i, 24
Death, early, Firdausi's justification of, ii, 119
Dead Sea, viii, 192
Deinon. See Dinon.
Deipnosophistae, of Athenæus, ii, 10
   quoted, iv, 314
Derketo, goddess, v, 292
   legend of, v, 292
Destiny, Muhammadan and Zoroastrian conceptions of, i, 52
Dêwasârm, king of Hind, vii, 381
   sends the game of chess to Nûshîrwân, vii, 380
Dharma, Indian god of righteousness, iv, 138
   follows in the form of a dog the Pândavas in their pilgrimage, iv, 139
Dhoulkarnain. See Zu'î-karnain.
Dhû Kâr, battle of, viii, 188, ix, 4, 5, 66
   historical account of, viii, 190
   date of, viii, 191
Diagram to illustrate reign of Gushtâsp, v, 27
   Persian Romance of Alexander the Great, vi, 84
Dibâ-i-Khusrau, treasure, viii, 406 and note
Dice, vii, 381
   used in the game of nard, vii, 381, 389
   symbolism of, vii, 381, 382
Dihkân, Persian generic title, i, 56, 81
   Faith of, vi, 95
Dijla (Arwand, Tigris q.v.), river, i, 160
   Farîdûn's crossing of, i, 160
Diláfrûz, Irânian hero, iv, 147
   Diláfrûz, a bramble-grubber,
   Bahram Gur and, vii, 70
   seq.
Diláfrûz-i-Farrûkhpâ'î, Irânian slave-girl, 162, vi, 3
   slave to Cæsar's wife, vi, 338
   pitties Shâpûr, vi, 339
   discovers who Shâpûr is, vi, 339
   frees Shâpûr from the ass's skin, vi, 340
   escapes with Shâpûr from Rûm, vi, 340 seq.
   entertained by a gardener, vi, 342
   praised by Shâpûr, vi, 346
   named and honoured by Shâpûr, vi, 356
   meaning of, vi, 356 note
Dîlam, Dîlamân, district on the Caspian now represented by Talish and part of Gilân, vi, 202, 227; vii, 243, 244, 362
Dîlamids (Buyids), dynasty ruling in south-western Irán in the 10th century A.D., i, 14, 21, 45
Dîlamite, 'All the friend and helper of Firdausî, i, 35; ix, 121
Dilânjâm, Caesar's (temp. Luhràsp) second daughter, iv, 333
   asked in marriage by Mîrîn, iv, 333
   married to Mîrîn, iv, 341
Dilârâi, wife to Dârâ and mother of Rûshanan, 158, 159, vi, 87 seq.
   visited by Nâhid, vi, 89
Dimna, Kalîfa and, 169. See Fables of Bidpai.
GENERAL INDEX

Dīnā-i Ma'nog-i Khirad, Pahlavī text, ii, 189
quoted, vii, 279
Dinár, gold coin, i, 81, 231, 363 and passim
Dīnawari, Arabic historian
(ninth century), vi, 16, 64, 80, 81, 256, 323; vii, 6, 156, 186, 214
Dīnkard, Pahlavī text, i, 70 note, 373; ii, 26, 81; vi, 252
Diodorus, Greek historian, temp.
Julius Cæsar and Augustus, v, 293
Bibliotheca of, v, 293
Diognetus, Greek writer, temp.
Alexander the Great, vi, 12
Dionysus, Greek god, vi, 71
temple of, visited by Sīkandar, vi, 71
Diram. See Drachm.
Dirázast (Longimanus), title, v, 281; vi, 324 and note
Div, divs (Daévas), demons or
rebel against Tāhmūras, i, 127
overthrown by Tāhmūras, i, 127
teach Tāhmūras the art of writing, i, 127
build edifices for Jamshid, i, 133
Div, divs, carry Jamshid on his
throne up to the sky, i, 133
title of honour, ii, 29
song of a, ii, 31
Arjāsp informed by a, of
Gushtāsp’s resolve not to
pay tribute, v, 36
Mazdak’s five, vii, 205
Būzurjmīr’s ten, vii, 368
Akwàn. See Akwàn.
=Āhriman, 139, i, 82, 126, 150, 195, 260; ii, 46, 324, 342, 379, 386, 400; iii, 189, 293, 333; iv, 63, 84, 201, 206, 278, 282, 286, 289 seq., 301, 322, 341; v, 35, 81, 180, 188, 189, 194 seq., 218, 228, 242; vi, 349; vii, 93, 107, 109, 117, 143, 154, 206, 227, 268, 289, 303, 304, 323, 332, 368 seq., 376, 390; viii, 27, 50, 87, 123, 215, 222, 304, 341, 346, 411; ix, 47, 102, 104
=Bahram Chühina, viii, 153, 219, 293, 298
—witch, viii, 161
=Zahhāk, viii, 242
=Kulun, viii, 342
Binder of the=Tahmūras, i, 42, 125, 126, 214
=Gúdarz, iv, 35
=Rustam, iii, 253, 262
Black, son of Āhriman, 139, i, 82, 117; ii, 53; v, 199; viii, 171
White, 143, i, 82; ii, 27, 39
seq., 43, 44, 54, 55, 58 seq., 66, 93, 163, 373; iii, 143, 256, 314; iv, 136, 296; v, 117, 176, 203, 207, 234
defeats Kāfūs, ii, 40
blood of, cures blindness, ii, 58, 62
slain by Rustam, ii, 60
Divining-cup. See Cup.
Dneiper (Borysthenes), river in
southern European Russia, flowing into the Black
Sea, iii, 191
Don (Tanaïs), river in southern European Russia, flowing into the Sea of Azov, iv, 315 note, 316
Doni, The Morall Philosophie of, vii, 383
Drachm (diram), silver coin, i, 81
Dragon, i43, i54, i56, 160, 164, 165, i, 42, 123; vi, 132, 146
Faridún takes the form of, i, 186
of the Kashaf, i, 235
Sám and the, i, 296 seq., v, 202
slain by Rustam and Rakhsh, ii, 48 seq.
of Mount Sakila, iv, 342 seq.
Gushtasp and, iv, 343 seq.
teeth of, produced by Hishwi to Caesar, iv, 351
referred to, iv, 358
Sikandar’s adventure with, vi, 71, 151
slain by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 42, 123 seq.
described, i, 123, 296; iv, 345; v, 202; vi, 151; vii, 43, 123
Dragon=Afrásiyáb, iii, 22, 46, 211, 219, 222, 248, 319, 343; iv, 270
=Aluriman, i, 195; iii, 330
=Ardawán, vi, 222
=Fúr, vi, 113
=Giv, iii, 58
=Hümán, iv, 43, 52
=Paláshán, iii, 26
=Púladwand, iii, 264
=Rakhsh’s dam, i, 379
=Rakhsh, i, 380
=Rustam, iii, 222
=Zahhák, i, 155, 158, 161, 163, 168, 169, 275, 288, 292
Dragon’s child=Rúdáiba, i, 304
Drangiana (Sístán), province in eastern Iran, i, 4; vi, 32
Dream, dreams, veridical, i, 51
Firdausí on, vii, 281
Dream, Abúl Kásim of Gurgán’s, iii, 190
Afrásiyáb’s, ii, 232 seq.
referred to, ii, 243, 297; iv, 170, 267
Firdausí’s, of Mahmúd, i, 112
Dakik, v, 23, 30
Gúdarz’s, ii, 363, 404
Gushtás’s, v, 19
Kaid’s, v, 62, 91
Katáyún’s, iv, 316, 329, 330
Núshirwán’s, vii, 282 seq.; ix, 92
Odatís’, iv, 315
Pápak’s, vi, 200, 212
Pírán’s, ii, 325
Sám’s, i, 243, 244
Siyáwush’s, ii, 309
Tús’, iii, 149
Zariadres’, iv, 315
Draupadi, joint wife of the five Pandavas, iv, 138 and note, 139
Drought and famine in Iran, i, 3, 5, 370, 371; ii, 363; vii, 159, 162
Pírúz’s measures to alleviate, vii, 159, 162
breaking up of, described, vii, 163
Mazdak’s parable concerning, vii, 201
Drváspa, genius of cattle, iv, 137
Dualism, i, 5, 49, 50, 52, 56, 58
taught by Urmuzd to Zar-duvhsh, v, 16
Dughdhóvá, v, 14, 15
account of, v, 14
Dúk, plain, viii, 202, 254
mountain, viii, 289
Dukhtnúsh. See Núsha.
Dunbar. See Dambar.
Duncker, Professor, ii, 9
on date of Zandavasta, ii, 9
Dúrásróbó, a Karap q.v., v, 15
Dust, prevalence of, in Iran, i, 3
as a metaphor, i, 73 and passim
Dynasty, dynasties, Iránian, i, 49
Pishdádian q.v.
Kalánian q.v.
Dynasty, Ashkánian q.v.
Sásánian q.v.

E

ECLIPSE of sun, total, temp.
Pirúz, vii, 159

Edessa, S. James of, i, 374

Eggs, golden, as tribute, vi, 24, 36, 160, 169

Egypt (Mısır, q.v.), ii, 80; vi, 12, 16, 17, 72, 81, 82; viii, 187, 193

Pseudo-Callisthenes written in, vi, 13
invaded by Alexander the Great, vi, 30

Egyptian Egyptians, vi, 16;
viii, 193; ix, 110
falsification of history by, vi, 16
thorn, viii, 210
linen, ix, 110

Ekbatana (Hamadán), the capital of Media, i, 17; ii, 191; vi, 31, 32
capital of the Manda, q.v., i, 17

Elam (Susiana, Khúzistán), ancient kingdom and Persian province at the head of the Persian Gulf, i, 9; vi, 194, 198

Elburz. See Alburz.

Elements, the four, i, 102, 286

Elephant, elephants, i, 112 and passim
towers on, iv, 179
Fúr’s, vi, 115, 116

Síkandar’s device to overcome, vi, 115, 116
=Rustam, iii, 221, 253
=Rakhsh, iii, 257
=Fúr, vi, 117

piece in chess, vii, 285, 423
position of, vii, 388, 422
move of, vii, 422

White, Zál’s, i, 41f., i, 328
referred to, i, 377

Elephantine, the=Rustam, ii, 65, 67

Eleven Rukhs, Battle of the, iv, 88
arranged by Gúdarz and Pirán, iv, 95 seq.

Firdausi’s reflections on, iv, 7, 98, 106

Ellípi, kingdom of, i, 9, 17

Elixir, i, 44, ii, 177, 178

Elymais (Elam, q.v.), kingdom, vi, 198

Endless peace, the, vii, 217

Enótokoitai, the, vi, 80

Epirus, ancient kingdom in northern Greece, vi, 12

Alexander I of, vi, 12
his expedition to Italy, vi, 12

Equinox, autumnal, iv, 313

Erinder, river, iii, 10 and note, 11

Esdras (Ezra), Jewish priest and scribe, supposed by the Muhammadans to have restored from memory the law lost during the captivity, vii, 207, 264

Ether, viii, 275

Ethics, Muhammadan, respected, vii, 74

Ethiop, Ethiopian, Ethiopic, i, 44; iii, 226; vi, 43, 71, 80

=Indian, vi, 13, 68
western and eastern, vi, 13, 68, 71
version of the Pseudo-Callisthenes, q.v., vi, 17 and note, 18, 30, 33, 66, 67, 71, 74, 82, 83

Ethiopia, vi, 72
flight of Nectanebus to, vi, 18 note
western and eastern, vi, 68
=India, vi, 68

Eumenes, Greek ephemerist, temp. Alexander the Great, vi, 12

Euphrates (Farát, q.v.), river, ii, 80; v, 292; vi, 31, 327; vii, 217; viii, 188, 190
Euxine, sea, i, 16; ii, 191, 336; vi, 72
Eye, metaphor for child, i, 178, 180, 181, 185, 194; ii, 297, 328; v, 272; vii, 279, 350
evil, ii, 204, 252; iii, 141, 157, 337; iv, 144, 282; v, 194, 245, 251, 290; vi, 266, 402; vii, 78, 81, 172; viii, 16, 417
turns milk to bane, vii, 320 seq., 324, 325

F

FABLES OF BIDPAI (Book of Kalila and Dimna), vii, 213, 427 seq.; viii, 202 note, 390
introduction of, into Persia, vii, 213
translation of, vii, 382, 383
Firdausi's account of, vii, 430
vogue of, vii, 383
origin of, vii, 383
Nūshirwān's acquisition of, vii, 423 seq.
Faghānīsh, temp. Pīrūz, king of the Haitālians, 168, vii, 157
helps Pīrūz for a consideration, vii, 157
temp. Nūshirwān, 168
made king instead of Ghātkar, vii, 333
Nūshirwān takes counsel about, vii, 333
descent of, from Bahram Gūr, vii, 334
Nūshirwān writes to, vii, 337
makes submission to Nūshirwān, vii, 360
Faghfūr, dynastic title of the rulers of Chín and Máchin, 152, 153, 160, i, 262; ii, 383; iv, 11, 135, 196, 238 seq.; v, 221; vi, 35
Faghfūr—cont.
80, 113, 169 seq., 325; vii, 340, 343, 408; viii, 74; ix, 87, 97, 102
temp. Kai Khosrau, helps Afrāsiyāb, iv, 219
Khān and, sue to Kai Khosrau for peace, iv, 229
orders Afrāsiyāb to quit Khutan and Chin, iv, 230
grants facilities to Kai Khosrau for his march through Chin, iv, 239
Khán of Chin and, welcome Kai Khosrau, iv, 240
confirmed in the possession of Chin and Machín, iv, 252
temp. Sikandar, ambassadors from, come to Dārā, vi, 35
Sikandar visits as his own ambassador, vi, 170
gives audience to Sikandar, vi, 170
entertains Sikandar, vi, 171
answers Sikandar, vi, 172
gifts of, to Sikandar, vi, 173
sends envoy with Sikandar, vi, 173
temp. Bahram Gūr, 165
daughter of, the wife of Shangul, vii, 115
hears of Bahram Gūr's exploits in Hind, vii, 129
invites Bahram Gūr to visit him, vii, 129
Bahram Gūr's reply to, vii, 130
temp. Nūshirwān, viii, 97
Faghfūr, son of Sāwa, viii, 74, 75, 120
confused with Faghfūr of Chin, viii, 74
parley of, with Bahram Chūbīna, viii, 112
head of, on spear, viii, 132
Failakús (Philip II of Macedon), grandfather in Iranian legend of Sikandar (Alexander the Great), 158, vi, 57, 102, 112, 125, 139, 131, 151, 182; vii, 215; viii, 387
wars with Dáráb, vi, 22
allied with the king of Rús, vi, 22
marches from 'Ammúriya to encounter Dáráb, vi, 23
defeated and returns to 'Ammúriya, vi, 23
sues for peace, vi, 23
agrees to send tribute, and give his daughter in marriage, to Dáráb, 158, vi, 24, 25
adopts Sikandar as his heir, vi, 27
Faith, Faiths, the four, vi, 92, 95
of Christ, Christian, vi, 133, 352, 356
of Ahriman, ii, 358; vi, 281, 290
Faithful, Commander of the, ix, 72
'Umar, the first, ix, 72 and note
Fakirs, the, vi, 61
Alexander the Great and, vi, 61
Onesicritus and, vi, 61
Fakká', a kind of drink, i, 43
note
Falátún (Plato), vii, 100; viii, 264
Falconry, ii, 108, 196; vi, 176; vii, 42, 48 seq., 54, 55, 76
and note
origin of, i, 126
Famine. See Drought.
Farab (Fáriyáb? q.v.), iv, 185
Farab (Firabr), desert and town on the right bank of the Oxus opposite to Æmwi, q.v., vii, 91, 92
desert of, ix, 115, 118
Fará'in, Iranian chief, vii, 207
Farámarz, son of Rustam, 146, 157, ii, 4, 319, 341 seq., 349, 351, 354; iii, 18, 30, 35, 36, 202, 232, 252, 326, 328; iv, 14; v, 173, 174, 182, 183, 198, 231, 260, 261, 272, 274, 281, 283, 284
parentage of, iii, 323
appointed to expel the Turkmans from Zábulistan, iii, 31
referred to, v, 184
Zawára and, sent by Rustam to bid Zál and Rúdába prepare to receive Asandiyár, v, 190
slays Mihr-i-Núsh, v, 227
goes to Rustam and Asandiyár, v, 247
marches against Kábul, v, 274, 276
takes the corpses of Rustam, Zawára, and Rakhsh from the pits, and conveys them to Zábul for burial, v, 274 seq.
fights with the king of Kábul and puts him and his kin to death, v, 276, 277
makes a Zábuli king of Kábul, v, 277
returns to Zábul, v, 277
hears of Bahman's invasion and marches against him, v, 287
defeated and put to death, v, 288
Farának, wife of Abtin and mother of Farídún, i, 90, 145, 157
Farídún brought up by, on Birmana's milk, i, 151
taken by, to Mount Alburz, i, 152
told by, about his origin, i, 153
prays for Farídún's safety, i, 158
Farának, rejoices over Farídún's success, i, 175

Farának, daughter of Barzín, vii, 53

married to Bahrám Gúr, vii, 53

Farangis, daughter of Afrásiyáb, wife of Siyáwush, and mother of Kai Khúsrau, 145, 146, 148, ii, 270 seq., 288 seq., 299, 306, 373, 381, 386 seq.; iii, 96, 117, 203, 211

Mandane and, identical in legend, ii, 191

Siyáwush marries, ii, 270

Afrásiyáb summons, to court, ii, 300 seq.

Siyáwush confides in, ii, 307 seq.

Afrásiyáb appealed to by, ii, 317 seq.

imprisoned, ii, 320

sentenced, ii, 322

Pírán saves and takes charge of, ii, 324 seq.

Kai Khúsrau born of, ii, 326

dwells at Siyáwushgírd, ii, 333

instructs Kai Khúsrau how to find Bihzád, ii, 374

gives Gív the mail of Siyáwush, ii, 376

crosses the Jíhán, ii, 392

provided for by Kai Kábís, ii, 399

Faríburz marries, iii, 148

referred to, iii, 146 seq., 202; iv, 205, 213, 216

death of referred to, iv, 304

Farát (Euphrates), river, 158, v, 294, 309; vi, 37, 42, 43, 290; viii, 93, 250

Dáráb cast away upon, v, 295

Faráyín (Guráz, Shahrbaráz q.v.), Sháh, 175, ix, 50, 53, 105

accession-speech of, ix, 52

counselling by his eldest son, ix, 52

Faráyín, counselled by his youngest son, ix, 53

misrule of, ix, 53

plot against, ix, 54

Farfúriyús (Porphyrogenitus ?), Rúman general, 167, vii, 218

defeated by Núshírwán, vii, 256

makes report to Cásar, vii, 260

Farghán, Rúman architect, and Khúsrau Parwíz, viii, 401 seq.

Farghána, region south of the Jaxartes, east of Sughd, iii, 109

Farghár, Túránian hero, iii, 250

goes to spy on Rustam, iii, 250

reports to Afrásiyáb, iii, 253

Farhád, Íránian hero, ii, 73, 85, 138, 316, 338, 340; iii, 11, 20, 25, 34, 45, 48, 127, 268, 289, 313, 327, 331, 352; iv, 13, 15, 21, 25, 42, 147, 292

Parthian origin of, iii, 11

goes as envoy to the king of Mázandarán, ii, 63

takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 111

steed of, iii, 313

goes with Rustam to rescue Bízhán, iii, 334

left in command by Gív, iv, 83

put in command of the left wing, iv, 92

left at Gang-bíhisht, iv, 219

Farhád, Íránian general, temp.

Núshírwán, vii, 251

commands left wing, vii, 251

Farhád, lover of Shírín, viii, 192

Faríburz, son of Kai Kábís, 148, 151, ii, 3, 62, 199, 316, 335, 336, 340, 358, 405 seq., 409; iv, 14, 24, 32, 45, 50, 145 seq., 164, 166, 167, 174, 177, 182, 187,
Fariburz—cont.

211, 213, 215, 238, 239, 253, 258, 268, 289, 331; iv, 13, 34, 37, 91
encampment of, described, ii, 155
claims of, to the throne supported by Tús, ii, 401, iii, 13
recognises Kai Khusrau as Sháh, ii, 410
Kai Khusrau’s letter to, iii, 84
reads to the chiefs Kai Khusrau’s letter, and supersedes Tús, iii, 86
sends Ruhhám to Pírán, iii, 87
obtains an armistice and prepares to renew the campaign, iii, 89
fights and is defeated, iii, 90
returns to Írán, iii, 111
asks Rustam to support his suit to Farangís, iii, 146
marries Farangís, iii, 148
leads the van of Rustam’s expedition to succour Tús, iii, 148
meets Gúdarz, iii, 163
joins forces with Tús, iii, 169
goes to Kai Khusrau with tidings of victory, iii, 236 seq.
returns to the host, iii, 241, 243
commands the right wing, iv, 24
superseded *pro tem.* by Katmára, iv, 92
chosen to fight with Kulbád, iv, 97
slays Kulbád, iv, 99
commands with Tukhár the troops from Kháwar, iv, 148
slays Fartás, iv, 181
commands the right, iv, 191
takes part in the siege of Gang-bihísht, iv, 199

Fariburz, Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles for refusing audience, iv, 275
Kai Khusrau’s gift to, iv, 295
sets out with Kai Khusrau on his pilgrimage, iv, 306
refuses to turn back when bidden by Kai Khusrau, iv, 307
Kai Khusrau farewells and warns, and his comrades, iv, 308
vanishes and is sought in vain by, and his comrades, iv, 308
veryly reminds his comrades of Kai Khusrau’s warning, iv, 309
end of, iv, 309

mythological origin of, i, 171 seq.

Zahhák’s dream of, i, 147 seq.
advent of, prophesied, i, 149
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Faridún, birth of, i, 150</th>
<th>Faridún, becomes Shāh, i, 168</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>father of, slain by Zahhák, i, 151</td>
<td>fetters Zahhák upon Mount Damáwand, i, 169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brought up on the milk of the cow Birmáya, i, 151</td>
<td>Reign of, i, 170, seq.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taken by his mother to Mount Alburz, i, 152</td>
<td>Note on, i, 171, seq.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palace of, burned by Zahhák, i, 152, 153</td>
<td>three sons of, i, 174, 177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>questions his mother about his origin, i, 152</td>
<td>ethnical significance of, i, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contemplates revenge on Zahhák, i, 154</td>
<td>accession of, i, 174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dissuaded by his mother, i, 154</td>
<td>holds a feast, i, 175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Káwa revolts to, i, 157</td>
<td>makes a progress through the world, i, 176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resolves to war with Zahhák, i, 157</td>
<td>builds himself a seat, i, 177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brothers of, i, 158</td>
<td>sends Jandal on a mission, i, 177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ox-head mace invented by, i, 158</td>
<td>receives Jandal’s report, i, 182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rewards the smiths, i, 158</td>
<td>instructs his sons how to deal with Sarv, i, 182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goes to fight Zahhák, i, 159 seq.</td>
<td>sons of, outwit Sarv, i, 184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visited and instructed by Surush, i, 159</td>
<td>receive Sarv’s daughters in marriage, i, 185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>life of, attempted by his brothers, i, 160</td>
<td>return home, i, 186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saves himself by his magic power, i, 160</td>
<td>proved by Faridún, i, 186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>van of, led by Káwa, i, 160</td>
<td>named by Faridún, i, 187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crosses the Arwand (Dijla, Tigris), i, 160</td>
<td>wives of, named by Faridún, i, 188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enters Zahhák’s capital, i, 161</td>
<td>horoscopes of, taken by Faridún, i, 188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overthrows Zahhák’s talisman, i, 161</td>
<td>divides the world among his sons, i, 189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seeks in vain for Zahhák, i, 162</td>
<td>grows old, i, 189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finds the sisters of Jamshíd, i, 162</td>
<td>Salm and Túr write to, to demand the abdication of Íraj, i, 191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hears where Zahhák is, i, 163</td>
<td>makes answer to his sons, i, 193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Story of, and Zahhák’s minister (Kundrav), i, 164</td>
<td>holds converse with Íraj, i, 195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doings of, reported to Zahhák by Kundrav, i, 165</td>
<td>writes to Salm and Túr, i, 197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attacked by, and overthrows, Zahhák, i, 168, 288</td>
<td>Íraj’s head sent to, i, 202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>counselled by Surush about Zahhák, i, 168, 169</td>
<td>mourning of, for Íraj, i, 203 seq.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sight of, injured by mourning for Íraj, i, 204</td>
<td>hopes for issue from Íraj, i, 205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recovers his sight, i, 206</td>
<td>gifts of, to Minúchihir, i, 207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gives a feast to the nobles, i, 207</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Faribdun, receives an embassage from his sons, i, 209
makes answer to his sons, i, 211
sends Minuchihr to fight with Salm and Tur, i, 215
hears of Minuchihr's victory, i, 222
Minuchihr sends the heads of Salm and Tur to, i, 222,
229
welcomes Minuchihr on his return in triumph, i, 230
confides Minuchihr to Salm, i, 231
gives thanks to God and prays for death, i, 232
distributes the spoil to the troops, i, 232
enthrones Minuchihr, i, 232
passes his last days in austerities, i, 232
dies, i, 232
burial of, i, 233
mourning for, i, 233, 237
Firdausi's reflections on, i, 170, 232
final warfare of Zahhak with, i, 278, cf. 173
Mount Sipand besieged by order of, i, 329
Grace of, i, 335
saying of, ii, 219 and note
flag of = flag of Kawa, vi, 59
capital of, vii, 215, 238
Farikin (Maiyafarkin, Martyropolis), city in Roman Armenia, vii, 200
taken by Kubad, vii, 200
Fariryab, city half way between the town of Marv Rud and Balkh, iv, 65
Farr, i, 82. See Grace.
Farruhán (Farrukhán). See Farayin.
Farrukh, ruler of Nimirz, viii, 375
Farrukhán (Farruhán). See Farayín.
Farrukhánzad (Farrukházad q.v.), viii, 193
Farrukh-Hurmuzd (Hurmuzd q.v.), father of Rustam, ix, 69
Farrukházad (of glorious birth), name assumed by Gushtaşp in Rúm, iv, 351 seq., 357, 360
Farrukházad, Sháh, 175, ix, 61 seq., 70
Siyah Chashm and, ix, 62
poisons, ix, 63
Farrukházad (Farrukhánzad q.v.), son of Hurmuzd, brother of Rustam, and favourite of Khusrau Parwíz, ix, 23, 87, 92, 95
conspires with Guráz, viii, 408, 412
goes to the host, viii, 412
rebels in favour of Shírwi, viii, 413
brother of, viii, 413 and note
conspires with Tukhár, viii, 414
proclaims Shírwi Sháh, viii, 416
hears where Khusrau Parwíz is hiding, viii, 419
holds talk with Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 420
bribes Míhr Hurmuzd to murder Khusrau Parwíz, ix, 33
defeats the Arabs, ix, 85
counsels Yazdagírd, ix, 86, 87
leads the host to Khurásán, ix, 89
entrusts Yazdagírd to Máhwí, ix, 95
goes to Rai, ix, 96
Farrukházad, Iránían warrior, viii, 241, 296
speech of, viii, 240
Farsang (parasang), measure of length, about 3.88 miles, i, 82
Farshidward, son of Wísa and brother of Píran, Túránian hero, 152, i, 92; iii,
Farshídward—cont.
90, 166, 198, 205, 252;
iv, 7, 10, 119, 122, 125,
133, 153, 160, 162
summons Pirán to save
Farangís, ii, 322
commands with Lahhák the
right wing, iv, 26
attacks the Iránians in
flank, iv, 82
opposed by Zanga, iv, 83
goes to help Pirán and
attacks Gîv, iv, 85
prowess of, iv, 86
fights with Gurâzâ, iv, 87
Bizhan, iv, 87
Lahhák and, put in joint
command, iv, 84
Pirán’s instructions to,
iv, 95
hear of the death of Pirán
and the coming of Kai
Khusrau, iv, 112
lament for Pirán, iv, 112
take counsel with the
host, iv, 113
fight and escape Iránian
outpost, iv, 116
referred to, iv, 118, 120,
126
repose themselves, iv, 121
corpses of, brought back
by Bizhan, iv, 126, 132
deaths of, announced to
Afrásiyâb, iv, 152
Farshídward, brother of Asfandiyyâr,
155, v, 20, 22, 110,
114, 141, 171
governor of Khurásân, v, 77
stationed on the Iránian
right, v, 94
mortally wounded by Kuh-
ram, v, 95, 101, 104
Asfandiyyâr laments for, v,
101, 104
resolves to avenge, v, 104
dies, v, 104
shrouded by Asfandiyyâr, v,
105
Farshídward, a miser, 164, vii,
67 seq.

Farshídward, a miser, Bahram
Gûr visits, vii, 68 seq.
pretended destitution of,
vii, 68 seq.
wealth of, described, vii, 70,
72, 73
Fartûs, Tûrânian hero, iii, 182,
213, 231, 251
comes to aid Pirán, iii, 152
hears of the coming of
Rustam, iii, 175
slain by Farîrûz, iv, 181
Farûd, son of Siyâwush and
Jarîra daughter of Pirán,
and half brother of Kai
Khusrau, i 45, 147, i, 92,
370; ii, 3, 291; iii, 8, 14,
42 seq., 72, 85, 87, 93, 107,
111 seq.; iv, 42, 135;
v, 30
birth of, ii, 291
hostility of Tûs to, iii, 13
Story of, 147, iii, 37 seq.
referred to, iii, 39
advised by Tukhâr, iii, 47,
52 seq.
interview of, with Bahram,
iii, 47 seq.
birth-mark of, iii, 49
gives his mace to Bahram,
iii, 50
eighty slaves of, the, iii, 55
their mockery of Tûs, iii,
56
their mockery of Gîv, iii,
58
slays the steed of Tûs, iii, 56
wounds the steed of Gîv, iii,
58
slays the steed of Bizhan,
iii, 61
worsted by Bizhan, iii, 62
attacks the Iránians, iii, 63
prowess of, iii, 64
mortally wounded, iii, 64
dies, iii, 65
mother and slaves of,
destroy themselves, iii, 66
burial of, iii, 68
Kai Khusrau’s grief for, iii,
84 seq., 112
Farúd, son of Shírín and Khusrau Parwíz, ix, 39
Farukházád. See Fárrukházád.
Farwardín, genius, i, 88; iii, 287, 328
name of month and day, i, 88, 133, 263; iii, 230, 286, 317, 323; vi, 375; vii, 363; viii, 367, 371
origin of, iii, 286
Fáryán, king, father-in-law of Kádúrúsh, 159, vi, 66, 67, 124 seq., 171, 172
city of, taken by Sikandar, vi, 124
slain, vi, 125
daughter and son-in-law of, taken prisoners, vi, 125
brought before Náitkún, vi, 126
sentenced to death, vi, 126
pardoned, vi, 126
Fáskún, forest in Rúm, iv, 333, 335 seq.
Wolf of, 154
described, iv, 333, 336
Mírín bidden by Caesar to slay, iv, 333
Gúshtásp undertakes to slay, iv, 336
keeps tusks of, iv, 338
tusks of, produced before Caesar by Híshwí, iv, 351
referred to, iv, 359
Fáṭímá, daughter of Muhammad and wife of 'All, i, 12
Fázi. See Abú'l-Abbás Fázi.
Feast. See Mihrán, Naurúz, New Year's Day, Sada.
Férgána. See Fargána.
Fight of the Seven Warriors, 143, ii, 82, 107 seq.
Firdausí—cont.
72, 78, 80 seq., 197, 198, 202, 250, 254, 294, 313, 315, 321 seq., 326, 328
368; vii, 3, 4, 6, 153, 156, 159, 185, 186, 188, 213, 214, 217 seq., 317; viii, 71, 73, 74, 187, 190, 192, 193, ix, 69
materials for the life of, i, 23 seq.
personal references of, in the Sháhnáma, i, 24 seq.
conclusions from, i, 35
date of birth of, i, 24
Muhammadan of the Shí'ite sect, i, 24, 106, 107
fond of wine, i, 25; iv, 313; v, 164, vi, 291, 306, 309, 314, 362, 369; vii, 277
owned or occupied land, i, 25; vi, 411; ix, 112
escape of, from drowning, i, 26, 29
son of, i, 26; vii, 190
referred to (?), 1, 27; vii, 277, 311
death of, 173, i, 26; viii, 190
complains of old age, 160, i, 26; ii, 336; iv, 141; v, 262; vii, 220
patrons, friends and helpers of, i, 29 seq., 35, 39, 110; ix, 121
exempted from taxation, i, 35, 39; ix, 121
Nízámí's account of, i, 38 seq., 45
later legends of, iii, 15, 109, 191; iv, 8
Dákí, and. See Dákí.
Mahmúd and, See Mahmúd.
Satire of. See Mahmúd.
Sháhnáma of. See Sháhnáma.
Yúsuf and Zulíka of, i, 45
admits Muhammadan traditions into Sháhnáma, viii, 42
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index Item</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Firdausi, and rhyme-word</td>
<td>viii, 397, note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>account of Arab conquest by</td>
<td>ix, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yazdagird’s death</td>
<td>ix, 70, 107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reflections on</td>
<td>ix, 108, 111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on completion of Sháhnáma</td>
<td>ix, 121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time spent on Sháhnáma</td>
<td>ix, 122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praise of Sultán Mahmúd</td>
<td>See Mahmúd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire, ancient cult of the Aryans</td>
<td>i, 7, 49, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>priests of. See Magi</td>
<td>region of, ii, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Húshang’s discovery of</td>
<td>i, 123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>institution of the Cult of</td>
<td>i, 116, 123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feast of Sada</td>
<td>i, 124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ordeal by</td>
<td>ii, 219 seq.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacred</td>
<td>vi, 21, 201, 212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire—fane or temple</td>
<td>154. See Ázar Abádagán, Ázar-gashasp, Barzin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—worship, abolition of, prophesied, viii, 68</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fírúz, Iránian king</td>
<td>iv, 149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fírúzábád. See Gúr</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fírúzí Kuh, pass in the Alburz range</td>
<td>ii, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish, mythological</td>
<td>i, 71, 72, 148, 252; ii, 15, 299; iv, 279; vii, 341 and note, 406; viii, 212 and note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salt, the, legend of</td>
<td>vi, 76 seq.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—eaters. See Ichthyophagi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fleece, Golden. See Golden</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flesh-meat, introduction of</td>
<td>attributed to Áhriman, i, 138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flight, of Muhammad, referred to</td>
<td>ix, 122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flying-machine, of Kai Káús</td>
<td>ii, 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fo-lin</td>
<td>vi, 73 and note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Footman (pawn), piece in chess</td>
<td>vii, 385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>position of</td>
<td>vii, 388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>move of</td>
<td>vii, 422</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>promotion of</td>
<td>vii, 422</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ford and toll-house of Zark</td>
<td>ix, 100 and note, 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort, hill, Malcolm’s description of a</td>
<td>i, 236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fortifications vitrified</td>
<td>vi, 79, 165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fount of Life, the</td>
<td>vi, 74 seq., 158 seq.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sikandar’s expedition to</td>
<td>vi, 158 seq.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>account of, in the Pseudo-Callisthenes</td>
<td>vi, 74 seq.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sikandar fails to find</td>
<td>vi, 160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Founts, the Seven</td>
<td>viii, 392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Four, Wonders of Kaid</td>
<td>See Kaid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Faiths</td>
<td>vi, 91, 95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frangrasyan (Afrásiyáb, q.v.),</td>
<td>i, 338; ii, 81, 189; iv, 137, 138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frashókart, son of Gushtasp</td>
<td>v, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frásiyáv (Afrásiyáb, q.v.),</td>
<td>i, 338; ii, 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fravashi</td>
<td>i, 369; ii, 82; iii, 286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frazdânava, lake or river</td>
<td>v, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frúbá, sacred Fire</td>
<td>vi, 201, 255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Funj, leader of Khán’s host, temp.</td>
<td>Núshirwán, vii, 330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Für (Porus, q.v.), dynastic title and Indian king, temp.</td>
<td>Sikandar, 159, vii, 31, 51, 62, 64, 110, seq. 123, 132, 135, 137, 170, 172, 175; vii, 395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dárá’s letter to</td>
<td>vi, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sikandar’s war with</td>
<td>vi, 67, 112 seq.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routed by Sikandar’s iron steeds</td>
<td>vi, 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>single combat of, with Sikandar</td>
<td>vi, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slain</td>
<td>vi, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>troops of, submit to Sikandar</td>
<td>vi, 118</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Vol. IX.**
Furúhil, Iránian hero, 151, iv, 24, 33
chosen to fight with Zangula, iv, 97
slays Zangula, iv, 101

G

Gabriel, angel, i, 114; iv, 140; vi, 138 note

Gahan (Kahan, town above Juwayn on the Farah
river which flows into the northern end of the
Lake of Zirih in Sístán ?) 149, iii, 152, 177, 224, 225

Gahár, Túránian hero, 149, iii, 216, 224, 251
comes to aid Piran, iii, 152
slain by Rustam, iii, 225

Gaiúmart, the first Shâh and culture-hero, and the first
man in Zoroastrian tradition, 139, i, 90, 91, 116,
123; vi, 208; viii, 24, 55, 260, 269, 310, 376
Reign of, i, 117 seq.
Note on, i, 117
greatness of, i, 118
culture-hero, i, 118
son of, i, 119
slain by Black Div, i, 120
envied by Ahriman, i, 119
warned by Surúsh, i, 119
grief of, for the death of Siyámak, i, 120
bidden by Surúsh to avenge Siyámak, i, 120
goes with Húshang to fight Black Div, i, 121
death of, i, 121
Firdausi’s reflections on, i, 121
rites of, vii, 53
Faith of, vii, 273; vii, 277
Galbwi, Iránian chief, ix, 74
Galínúsh, put in charge of Khusrav Parwiz, viii, 421; ix,
5, 11, 12
parley of, with Kharrád and Ashtád, ix, 12 seq.

Gandarep, monster, i, 143
slain by Keresáspa, i, 172, 173

Gang, mountain, iv, 162; v, 216
Gang, sea of, ii, 362

Gang, stronghold in Túrán and seat of Afrásiyáb, ii, 241,
261, 309, 344, 357, 369; iii, 236, 253; iv, 258
king of = Afrásiyáb, iv, 134
two places known as, iv, 136
=Gang-bihisht q.v., iv, 190, 195, 197, 198, 202, 208,
218, 220, 221, 229, 232
=Gang-dizh q.v., iv, 247

Gang-bihisht, north of the Jaxartes, stronghold and seat of
Afrásiyáb, 152, iv, 135, 136, 207 seq., 228
Afrásiyáb at, iv, 187
marches from, iv, 190
returns to, iv, 196
described, iv, 195
prepared for a siege by Afrásiyáb, iv, 197
besieged by Kai Khusrau, iv, 198, 208 seq.
taken by storm, iv, 209 seq.
occupied by Kai Khusrau for a while, iv, 218
Gúdarz left in command of, iv, 219
Gustaham, son of Naudar,
left in command of, iv, 238
Kai Khusrau dwells for a year in, iv, 254

Gang-dizh (Gang-i-Siyáwush), stronghold, 145, 153, iv,
135, 136, 186 note, 203, 257, 264; ix, 25
possible identification of, ii, 189
meaning of, ii, 19
building and description of, ii, 279 seq.
Afrásiyáb takes refuge at, iv, 230
Kai Khusrau resolves to pursue Afrásiyáb to, iv, 231
marches to, iv, 247
GENERAL INDEX

Gangdizh, Kai Khusrav, forbids his troops to injure, iv, 247
enters, iv, 248
remains a year at, iv, 249
advised by his paladins to leave, iv, 249
appoints a governor for, iv, 249
distributes treasure at, iv, 250
Gang-i-Dizhukht (Baitu'1 Mukanaddas q.v.), i, 161, 226
Gang-i-Siyawush. See Gang-dizh.
Ganges, Indian river, vi, 64
Garâmik-kart. See Girâmî.
Garcha, Turâni hero, iii, 152
comes to aid Pirân, iii, 152
Garden of the Hesperides, vi, 74
Indians, vii, 196
Gardener, a, vi, 341
entertains Shâpûr son of Urmuzd, vi, 341 seq.
sent by Shâpûr to the high priest, vi, 344
describes Shâpûr, vi, 344
rewarded by Shâpûr, vi, 357
Gargwi, Turâni hero, v, 109
commands the left, v, 109
Garfb, surface-measure, vii, 215
and note
Garshâsp. See Keresâspa.
Garshâsp, son of Zav, Shâh, 142, i, 90, 91, 174; ii, 336
Reign of, i, 373 seq.
Note on, i, 373
relation of, to Keresâspa, i, 174
accession of, i, 374
death of, i, 375
Garshâsp, Turâni hero, i, 42, 144, 207, 212, 214, 239, 345; ii, 4; iii, 260, 273; v, 202
relation of, to Keresâspa, i, 174
Garshâsp, Turâni chief, temp. Shâpûr son of Ardshîr, vi, 297
single combat of, with Bazarânush, vi, 297
Garshasp, Irânian noble, temp.
Nûshîrwan, viii, 18
Garsiwaz, brother of Afrâsiyâb, 145, 150, 153, i, 92, 342, 349; ii, 3, 188, 189, 193, 195, 228, 231 seq., 249, 253, 264, 268, 269, 286, 289 seq., 313 seq.; iii, 197, 208, 306, 310, 350, 352; iv, 10, 135 seq., 209 seq., 252, 268; vi, 325; ix, 103
defeated by Siyâwush, ii, 229 seq.
sues for peace to Siyâwush, ii, 237 seq.
fails to string the bow of Siyâwush, ii, 266
visits Siyâwush, ii, 289 seq.
envies Siyâwush, ii, 292 seq.
challenges Siyâwush, ii, 294
slanders Siyâwush, ii, 296 seq.
betrays Siyâwush, ii, 301 seq.
compasses the death of Siyâwush, ii, 315 seq.
charged with the execution of Farangis, ii, 322
goes to Manîzhas palace, iii, 301
finds Bîzhan, iii, 302
takes Bîzhan before Afrâsiyâb, iii, 303
ordered to execute Bîzhan, iii, 304
imprison Bîzhan, iii, 309
disgrace Manîzha, iii, 309
put in charge of the elephants, iv, 156
reinforces Afrâsiyâb, iv, 181
Jahn and, compel Afrâsiyâb to quit the field, iv, 182
commands the rear, iv, 191
taken prisoner by Rustam at the storming of Gangbihisht, iv, 210
referred to, iv, 211
sent to Kai Khus, iv, 233
imprisoned, iv, 235
Garsíwaz, sent for by Kai Káús and Kai Khusrau, and put to the torture, iv, 265
voice of, attracts Afrásiyáb from lake, iv, 265
holds converse with Afrásiyáb, iv, 266
slain by Kai Khusrau, iv, 269

Garsiyún, Iránian chief, ix, 115
Gashan, as rhyme-word, viii, 397 note
Gashasp, Iránian chief, vi, 394
addresses the nobles on the succession to the throne, vi, 394
Gashasp, Iránian general, temp. Núshírwán, vii, 251
put in charge of baggage-train, vii, 251
Gashasp, Iránian noble, vii, 17, 18
Gashasp, father in Sháhnáma of Bahram Chúbina, viii, 76, 99, 162, 169, 304
Gashasp, father of Ashtád q.v., ix, 11
Gáthas, ii, 8; v, 11, 12, 17
Gaugamela, village near Nineveh, vi, 31, 32 note
battle of, vi, 31
Gaumata (the false Smerdis), Magus, vi, 207
usurpation, and death of, i, 58
overthrow of, celebrated at the Magophonia, i, 59
Gav, king of Hind, 169, vii, 395 seq.
mother of, vii, 395 seq.
two marriages of, vii, 395, 396
two sons of, vii, 395, 396
becomes queen, vii, 397
tries to keep peace between her sons, vii, 397 seq.
hears of the death of Tal-hand, vii, 419
reproaches Gav, vii, 420

Gav, mother of, chess invented to appease, vii, 421
death of, vii, 423
birth of, vii, 395
tutor of, vii, 397, 398, 401, 402, 407, 408, 410, 413, 417, 421
rivalry between Tal-hand and, vii, 397 seq.
war between Tal-hand and, vii, 404 seq.

attempts of, at accommodation with Tal-hand, vii, 405, 408, 413
defeats Tal-hand, vii, 412
proposes a decisive battle to Tal-hand, vii, 414
victory of, vii, 416
invents chess to console his mother for the death of Tal-hand, vii, 421

Gaza, city in south-western Palestine, vi, 30
siege of, by Alexander the Great, vi, 30

Gazhdaham, Iránian hero and castellan of White Castle, 144, i, 369; ii, 131, 132, 134, 138, 139, 145, 146; iii, 15, 25, 33, 40, 45, 294; iv, 13, 24, 149
besieged by Bárman, i, 354
relieved by Káran, i, 354
Suhráb described by, ii, 136
evacuates White Castle, ii, 137

Gedrosia (Makrán, Balúchistán), vi, 69

Gelani. See Gilán.

Gemini, constellation, vi, 155; viii, 86, 203; ix, 73

Genealogical tables
Pishídádian dynasty, i, 90, 91
Kaírán dynasty, ii, 3
Sásánían dynasty, vi, 3
Kings and heroes of Túrán, i, 92
Iránian heroes, ii, 4

Genealogies, fictitious, v, 282, 290, 293; vi, 199, 211
Genealogies, of Pápak in Tabarí, vi, 200
Mas’údí, vi, 200
Geography, Firdausi's, ii, 28
Darmester on, ii, 79, 80
Geometrician, vi, 377
Geopothros (Gotarzes q.v.), iii, 9
George, Armenian general, viii, 195
Germanus, vii, 218
Germany, vi, 73
Gharcha (Georgia), country between the Caucasus and the Aras, iv, 14, 65
king of, iv, 149
Gharchis (Georgians), vii, 94
Ghátkar, ruler of the Haitáilans, q.v., 168; vii, 334; 335
hears of, and destroys, the Khán's embassy to Núshírwán, vii, 330
prepares to oppose the Khán, vii, 330
defeated, vii, 332
Ghaznín, city in Afghánistán, the capital of Sultán Mahmúd, i, 20, 257; iv, 14; v, 173; vii, 173
Ghee, clarified butter, vi, 105
Ghul, a sorceress, i, 42; v, 117, 128
referred to, v, 121
described, v, 130
slain by Asfandiyár, v, 131
Ghund, a dáv, ii, 44, 54, 55, 93; iii, 256; iv, 296; v, 204
Ghúr, district in Afghánistán between Harát and Ghaznín, ii, 101
Ghuz, a Turkish tribe and desert east of Gurgán, iv, 60
Gf, Gílán, district on the southwest coast of the Caspian, 167, i, 230, 231; ii, 226, 293; iv, 148, 265; v, 13; vi, 227; vii, 224, 340, 362, ix, 93
river of = Kizil Uzun, also called Safíd Rúd, iv, 154
waters of = Caspian, i, 230
Gíl, Afrásiyáb's camp in, iv, 155
Núshírwán's dealings with, vii, 216, 242 seq.
captives from, settled at Súrsán, vii, 328
Gimirrá. See Kimmerians.
Gipsies, the, 165, vii, 6
Nódeke on, vii, 6
language of, vii, 6
brought into Irán by Bah-rám Gúr, vii, 149
Girámfí (Garámik-kart), son of Jámásíp, 155, v, 24 seq., 58
death of, foretold by Jámásíp, v, 59
worst Námkhást, v, 59
rescues Káwa's flag, v, 59
slain, v, 59
Giravgard, Túránían stronghold on the Oxus, iii, 73, 80
occupied by the Iránians, iii, 78
Girduni, Sírdarra, pass in the Alburz range, ii, 28; vi, 32
Sawachi, pass in the Alburz range, ii, 28
Girdkuh, fortress, v, 30
Girih (Jirrah), place south of Shíráz, vi, 199
Giv—cont.
307 seq., 311 seq., 330 seq.,
337 seq., 350, 353 seq.;
iv, 7, 8, 11, 13, 15, 16, 19
seq., 26 seq., 39 seq., 52,
54, 56, 59, 69, 82 seq., 90,
99, 102, 136, 147, 157, 223,
226, 227, 233 seq., 292,
296, 306 seq.; v, 207,
208; vi, 194; viii, 168
meaning of, ii, 335
historical character, iii, 9
relationship of, to Rustam,
ii, 155, 365, 384; iii, 323
son of Gúdarz, ii, 158
wife of, ii, 365, 384; iii, 323
sister of, ii, 384; iii, 323
father of Bizhan, ii, 366
and note
solicitude of, for Bizhan,
ii, 15
harries Mázdárán, ii, 39
taken prisoner in Mázdárán,
ii, 40
released by Rustam, ii, 58
taken prisoner in Háma-
varán, ii, 90
released by Rustam, ii, 97
goes in search of Kai Káuš,
ii, 104
takes part in the Fight of
the Seven Warriors, ii,
107 seq.
bears letter from Káuš to
Rustam, ii, 139
encampment of, described,
ii, 155
helps to saddle Rakhs for
the fight with Suhrábl, ii,
160
Suhrábl described by, ii, 166
quarrels with Tús over the
future mother of Siyá-
wush, iii, 194
sent by Gúdarz to seek Kai
Khusrau, ii, 364 seq.
finds Kai Khusrau, ii, 370
receives the mail of Siyá-
wush, ii, 377
exploits of, in defence of
Kai Khusrau, ii, 378 seq.
Giv, tells how he captured
Píráń’s wife and sister, ii,
383
overthrows Píráń and his
host, ii, 385
releases Píráń, ii, 387
at the Jihún, ii, 391 seq.
announces Kai Khusrau’s
arrival in Irán, ii, 394
accompanies Kai Khusrau
to Ispahán, ii, 396
rewarded by Kai Káuš, ii,
399
goes on an embassy to Tús, ii
400
bears Kai Khusrau’s letter
to the castle of Bahman,
ii, 408
undertakes to slay Tázháv,
iii, 28
burn the barricade at the
Kása rúd, iii, 29
horse of, wounded by Farúd,
iii, 58
lends Bizhan the mail of
Siyáwush, iii, 60, 69
sees Paláshán approaching,
iii, 69
burns the barricade at the
Kása rúd, iii, 73
parleys with Tázháv, iii, 75
rouses the Irániáns, iii, 81
rallies the host, iii, 91
many kindred of, slain, iii, 94
urges Bahrám not to return
to the battlefield, iii, 96
goes in quest of Bahrám, iii,
102
takes Tázháv captive, iii,
102
buries Bahrám, iii, 104
made adviser to Tús, iii, 116
interrupts Tús’ parley with
Húmán, iii, 122
raids Khutan, iii, 247
steed of, iii, 257
worsted by Púládwan, iii,
258
interferes in the fight
between Rustam and
Púládwan, iii, 263
Gīv, opposes Bīzhan’s expedition to Irmān, iii, 291
questions Gurgin about Bīzhan, iii, 311
wroth with Gurgin, iii, 314
appeals to Kai Khusrau, iii, 315
comforted by Kai Khusrau, iii, 315, 318
sent to summon Rustam, iii, 319
met by Zāl, iii, 321
tells Bīzhan’s case to Rustam, iii, 322
announces Rustam’s approach to Kai Khusrau, iii, 326
goes to welcome Rustam, iii, 353
holds parley with Pīrán, iv, 20
overtures of, rejected and returns to Gūdarz, iv, 21
commands the rear, iv, 24
referred to, iv, 30
tries to stop Bīzhan from fighting Hūmān, iv, 40, 43
overruled by Gūdarz, iv, 43
refuses to lend Bīzhan the mail of Siyāwush, iv, 43
repents of his refusal, iv, 44
son of = Bīzhan, iv, 76
ordered to dispatch troops to oppose Lakhhák and Farshidward, iv, 82
sends Zanga and Gurgin, iv, 83
leaves Farhād in command and attacks with Bīzhan Pīrán’s centre, iv, 83
defeats Rūn, iv, 84
fights with Pīrán, iv, 84
attacked by Lakhhák and Farshidward, iv, 85
superseded pro tem. by Shīdūsh, iv, 92
chosen to fight with Gurwi, iv, 97

Gīv, takes Gurwi prisoner, iv, 100
opposes Bīzhan’s going to help Gustaham, iv, 119
consents to Bīzhan’s going to help Gustaham, iv, 120
brings Gurwi before Kai Khusrau, iv, 127
given a command, iv, 149
commands the rear, iv, 191
takes part in the siege of Gang-bihiśht, iv, 199
goes with the captives to Kai Kāūs, iv, 233
gives Kai Kāūs tidings of Kai Khusrau, iv, 234
rewarded by Kai Kāūs, iv, 236
returns to Gang-bihiśht with letter for Kai Khusrau, iv, 238
made governor of the country between the sea and Gang-dizh, iv, 246
welcomes Kai Khusrau on his return from Gang-dizh, iv, 250
rewarded by Kai Khusrau, iv, 252
Gūdarz and, meet Hūm, iv, 263
hear of Hūm’s adventure with Afrāsiyāb, iv, 263
Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles for refusing audience, iv, 275
sent by Gūdarz to summon Zāl and Rustam, iv, 278
bidden with other chiefs by Kai Khusrau to make an assembly on the plain, iv, 291 seq.
Kai Khusrau’s gift to, iv, 295
receives grant of Kum and Ispahān, iv, 298
sets out with Kai Khusrau on his pilgrimage, iv, 306
refuses to turn back when bidden by Kai Khusrau, iv, 307
Giv, Kai Khusrav farewell and warns, and his comrades, iv, 308
disappears and is sought in vain by, and his comrades, iv, 308
end of, iv, 309
grief of Gúdarz for, iv, 310, 312
Givgán, Íránian hero, ii, 109,
155; iii, 34; iv, 24
Gloom, the (Land of Darkness),
160, v, 30; vi, 79
conception of, vi, 73
visited by Asfandiyár, v, 76
Sikandar’s expedition to,
vi, 74 seq.
account of, in the Pseudo-
Callisthenes, vi, 74 seq.
Sikandar hears of, vi, 158
enters, vi, 159 seq.
emerges from, vi, 162
jewels of, vi, 162
Glory, the divine. See Grace.
Glove, The, Browning’s poem of, referred to, vi, 384
note
Go-between, old woman as, i,
280 seq.
Gog and Magog (Yájúj and
Májúj, q.v.), the barbarous
nomads of northern Asia,
i, 16; vi, 78
Golden, Age, i, 129, 134
boot, iv, 34, 180, 243, 282,
300, 359
Fleece, land of the, i, 57
Gomer. See Kimmerians.
Good Thoughts, Words, and
Deeds, Zoroastrian formula, 169, vii, 317, 318
symbolised in the game of
nard, vii, 381
Gordyene, kingdom, south of
Armenia, vi, 198
Gotarzes, Parthian king and
Íránian hero (Gúdarz, q.v.), iii 109
memorial tablet of, iii, 9
Geopothis, iii, 9
coin of, iii, 9
Gotarzes, war of, with Vardanes,
iii, 10, 11
Meherdates, iii, 10 seq.
character of, in history,
iii, 10
Grace or Glory, the divine, i,
113, 114, 116, 123, 130
seq., and passim
account of, i, 82
visible appearances of, i, 82,
130, 374, 385; vi, 221
seq.
Granicus, river in Asia Minor
flowing into the Propontis (Sea of Marmara), vi,
30
battle of the, vi, 30, 31
Grapes, bunch of, Kúbád and
the, vii, 183 note
Greece, vi, 30
Greed and Need, personification of,
vi, 146; vii, 71, 205,
206, 368, 369
Greek, Greeks, i, 10; v, 282;
vi, 82
relations of, with the Íránians, i, 14
history and legend in relation to Persian dto, ii, 9
conception of India, vi, 68
captives, mutilation of, by
the Persians, vi, 373
philosophers entertained by
Núshírván, vii, 280
Green, Prophet, the, See Al
Khídr.
sea, the, vi, 174 note, viii,
46 and note
Gretna Green, vi, 323 note
Griffon, fabulous bird, i, 235 and
note
Gúdarz, son of Kíshwád, Íránian
hero, and father of Giv, a
reminiscence of the Parthian king Gotarzes, q.v.,
146, 148, 151–153, i, 42;
ii, 4, 33, 35, 38, 62, 70,
73, 83, 91, 127, 138, 142,
157, 177, 178, 193, 250,
286, 290, 316, 318, 335,
Gudarz—cont.

taken prisoner in Mázandarán, ii, 40
released by Rustam, ii, 58
receives Ishpahan from Kai Kâús, ii, 78
taken prisoner in Hamávarán, ii, 90
released by Rustam, ii, 97
censures Kai Kâús, ii, 105
takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107
mediates between Kai Kâús and Rustam, ii, 144 seq.
encampment of, described, ii, 153
sons and grandsons of, ii, 158; iii, 33; ix, 25
loss of, iii, 83 note, 94, 131; iv, 310, 312
survivors of, iv, 298
consoles Siyáwush for his mother’s death, ii, 199
appointed ruler of Sughd and Sipanjáb, ii, 358
returns to Irán, ii, 362
sees Surúsh in a dream, ii, 363

Gúdarz, sends Gív to seek for
Kai Khusrau, ii, 364
hears of Kai Khusrau’s
arrival in Irán, ii, 395
welcomes Kai Khusrau and
Gív, ii, 396
accompanies them to Is-
takhr, ii, 399
dispute of, with Tús, ii, 400 seq.
goesto Kai Khusrau to
the castle of Bahman, ii,
407
advises Tús to avoid
Kalát, iii, 41
supersedes Tús, iii, 83
informs Kai Khusrau about
Farúd and the defeat of
the Iránians, iii, 83
sends Bizhan for Káwa’s
standard, iii, 92
Iránian watchman and, iii,
156 seq.
meets Faríburz, iii, 163
Rustam, iii, 171
warns Rustam not to trust
Pírán, iii, 212
sends Ruhák to help Rus-
tam, iii, 227
praises Rustam, iii, 248
steed of, iii, 313
goes to welcome Rustam,
iii, 353
sent to invade Túrán by Kai
Khusrau, iv, 15
ordered to negotiate with
Pírán, iv, 15
negotiations failing, marches
from Raíbad to meet
Pírán, iv, 22
arrays his host, iv, 24
gives the right wing to
Faríburz, iv, 24
baggage to Hajír, iv, 24
left wing to Ruhák, iv, 24
rear to Gív, iv, 24
posts a watchman on the
mountain-top, iv, 25
takes his station at the cen-
tre, iv, 24
| Gúdarz, counsels Búzhan as to his fight with Húmán, iv, 41 |
| over-rules Gív’s objections, iv, 43 |
| rewards Búzhan, iv, 52 |
| prepares to resist a night-attack, iv, 53 |
| gives a force to Búzhan, iv, 54 |
| joins battle with Pirán, iv, 55 |
| writes to Kai Khusrau, iv, 56 |
| sends Hajir with the letter, iv, 57 |
| receives Kí Khusrau’s reply, iv, 62 |
| prepares to renew the fight, iv, 63 |
| receives Rúin with a letter from Pirán, iv, 67 |
| entertains Rúin, iv, 68 |
| dismisses Rúin with presents and the reply to Pirán’s letter, iv, 74 |
| prepares for the flank-attack of Láhhák and Farshídward, iv, 82 |
| sends Hajir with orders to Gív, iv, 82 |

| Gúdarz, slays Pirán, iv, 109 |
| drinks Pirán’s blood, iv, 109 |
| sends Ruhham to fetch Pirán’s corpse, iv, 110 |
| harangues the host, iv, 110 |
| resumes his command, iv, 111 |
| calls for volunteers to pursue Láhhák and Farshídward, iv, 116 |
| sends Gustaham, iv, 117 |
| Búzhan to help Gustaham, iv, 119 |
| comes before Kai Khusrau with the other champions, iv, 126 |
| receives Isphán, iv, 129 |
| commands the left wing, iv, 147 |
| takes part in the assault on Gang-bihisht, iv, 208 |
| left in command at Gang-bihisht, iv, 219 |

| Gív and, meet Húm, iv, 263 |
| hear of Húm’s adventure with Afrásiyáb, iv, 263 |
| gives Kai Khusrau and Kai Káis tidings of Afrásiyáb, iv, 264 |
| Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles for refusing audience, iv, 275 |
| takes counsel with other nobles, iv, 277 |
| sends Gív to summon Zál and Rustam, iv, 278 |
| goes with other chiefs to meet Zál and Rustam, iv, 282 |

| audience of, with Kai Khusrau, iv, 283 seq. |

| holds, with other chiefs, at the bidding of Kai Khusrau, an assembly on the plain, iv, 291 seq. |
| Kai Khusrau’s charge to, iv, 294 |
| gift to, iv, 295 |

| asks Kai Khusrau for a patent for Gív, iv, 298 |
GENERAL INDEX

Gúdarz, goes with Kai Khúsrau on his pilgrimage, iv, 306
turns back at the bidding of Kai Khúsrau, iv, 307
laments the loss of the paladins, iv, 310, 312
returns to Irán, iv, 310
promises fealty to Luhrásp, iv, 312
grandsons of, go with Zarír to Rúm, iv, 360
hail Gushtásp as Sháh, iv, 362
Gúdarz, Ashkánian king, vi, 197, 210
Gúdarzíans, descendants of Gúdarz son of Kishwád, iii, 108, 115, 200, 214
Gulár, place, vi, 206
Gulgún (bright-bay), steed of Gúdarz, iii, 366
steed of Luhrásp, v, 64
steed of Bahrám Gúr, vii, 57
Gulshár, wife of Pírán, ii, 269, 276, 288, 387, 390
prepares Jaírís’s wedding outfit, ii, 270
presents gifts to Farangís, ii, 275
announces the birth of Kai Khúsrau to Pírán, ii, 326
referred to, ii, 383
Gulzárýn, river in Turkestán (Jaxartes), ii, 358, 381; iv, 187, 189, 190, 218, 219; vii, 329, 340, 360
Gulnár, slave-girl of Ardashán, vi, 217
meaning of, vi, 217 note
intrigue of, with Ardashir Pápakán, vi, 217 seq.
reports the presage of the astrologers to Ardashir Pápakán, vi, 219
flees with Ardashir Pápakán to Párs, vi, 220
Gumbádán, mount and stronghold, v, 29, 86, 152, 171, 177, 206; ix, 93
situation of, v, 30
Asfandiýár warded at, v, 84
Gund-i-Shápúr (Shápúr Gird, Ráš Shápúr, Kand-i-Shápúr, Jund-i-Shápúr), city in Khúzistán, north-west of Shúshtar and now represented by the ruins of Sháhábád, vi, 295; vii, 219, 276
built for Roman captives, vi, 295
Mání-gate of, vi, 327
Núshzád imprisoned at, vii, 264 and note
Gúr (Júr, Zúr, Fíruzábád), city in Párs, south of Shíráz, vi, 190, 205, 229 note, 230, 245
Gúr, nickname of Bahrám son of Yazdagird, vii, 6
Nóldeke on, vii, 6
Gúrán, king of Kírmán, iv, 146
Guráz (Shahrbaráz, Faráyín q.v.), general of Khúsrau Parwíz and Sháh, 174, 175, viii, 194, 408, 409 seq.; ix, 44
conspires with Farrukhzád, vii, 408
invites César to take Irán, viii, 408
rebels, viii, 411; ix, 45
letters of, ix, 45, 46
letter of Píráz to, ix, 47
account of, ix, 50
meaning of, ix, 50
dual personality of, ix, 50
marches on Táisafán, ix, 51
confers with Iránian magnates, ix, 51
misrule of, ix, 53
conspiracy against, ix, 54
goes hunting, ix, 55
end of, ix, 55
Guráz, son of Mándíwí, referred to, ix, 107, 115
governor of Marv, ix, 120
put to death with his sons, ix, 120
Gurází, Íránían hero, 151; ii, 73, 340; iii, 20, 25, 34, 45, 48, 92, 129, 141, 253; iv, 15, 24, 34

takes king of Barbar prisoner, ii, 97
takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107 seq.
encampment of, described, ii, 155
goes with Rustam to rescue Bizhan, iii, 334
fights with Farshídward, iv, 87
chosen to fight with Siyámak, iv, 97
slays Siyámak, iv, 100

Gurazm (Kavárazem), a relative of Gush tásp, 155, v, 12, 22, 53, 99, 101, 102, 104 seq., 171, 205, 261
envies Asfandiyár, v, 78
death of, referred to, v, 97
Asfandiyár addresses the corpse of, v, 105

Gurdáfríd, daughter of Gázhdáham, 144, ii, 119, 138
referred to, ii, 131
encounter of, with Suhráb, ii, 132 seq.
beguiles Suhráb, ii, 133 seq.

Gurdír, son of Afrásiyáb, ii, 92
commands the troops from Tartary, Khallukh, and Balkh, iv, 156

Gurdwí, brother of Bahrám Chúbína, 173, 174, viii, 74, 202, 205, 206, 231, 293, 295, 296, 298, 342, 349, 354, 358; ix, 6
a legitimist, viii, 74

Gustáham and, persuade Khusráu Parwíz not to make a night-attack, viii, 224
takes charge of baggage, viii, 228
Bahram Chúbína writes to, viii, 285

Gurdwí, fights with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 294
receives province, viii, 313
informs Khusráu Parwíz of Gurdwí’s doings, viii, 356
writes to, and sends Khusráu Parwíz’ letter to, Gurdwí, viii, 360
wife of, goes with letters to Gurdwí, viii, 360
hears of the plight of Rai and informs Gurdýa, viii, 367

Gurdýa, sister of Bahrám Chúbína, 171, 173, 174, ii, 119; viii, 74, 104 note, 187, 191, 347, seq., 358
365; ix, 6
a legitimist, viii, 74
present at council, viii, 164
speech of, viii, 165, 167, 171
referred to, viii, 221
counsels Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 221
laments Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 340
resident at Marv, viii, 346 seq.
informs her followers of the Khán’s offer of marriage, viii, 349
starts for Irán, viii, 351
parleys with Tuwurk, viii, 352
arrives at Ámwi, viii, 354
doings of reported to Khusráu Parwíz, viii, 356, 358
met by Gustáham, viii, 356
asked in marriage by Gustáham, viii, 357
receives letters from Khusráu Parwíz and Gurdwí, viii, 360
plots murder of Gustáham, viii, 360
justifies murder of Gustáham, viii, 361
reports death of Gustáham to Khusráu Parwíz, viii, 361
| Gurdya, dresses up as a warrior to please Khusrau Parviz, viii, 363 |
| Gurgín, goes with Bīzhan in quest of Manízha, iii, 296 |
| prowess of, in drinking, vii, 364 |
| appoints overseer of royal bower, viii, 364 |
| diverts Khusrau Parviz and saves Rai, vii, 368 |
| Gurgán (Hyrcania), province watered by the Atrak and Gurgán rivers on the south-eastern shores of the Caspian, 168, iv, 61; vi, 373; vii, 89, 237, 337, 338, 357, 358, 361; viii, 15, 355; ix, 89 |
| undertakes embassage to Afrásiyáb, iii, 29 goes with letter from Kai Khusrau to Rustam, iii, 274 |
| accompanies Bīzhan to Ir- mán, iii, 292 |
| refuses to help Bīzhan against the wild boars, iii, 293 |
| envies and beguiles Bīzhan, iii, 294 |
| Gurgín, searches for Bīzhan, iii, 310 |
| finds Bīzhan’s steed, iii, 311 |
| questioned by Gív about Bīzhan, iii, 312 |
| false account of, about Bīzhan’s disappearance, iii, 313 |
| Gív’s wrath with, iii, 314 |
| appears before Kai Khusrau, iii, 316 |
| imprisoned, iii, 317 |
| appeals to Rustam, iii, 331 |
| released, iii, 333 |
| goes with Rustam to rescue Bīzhan, iii, 334 |
| pardoned by Bīzhan, iii, 346 |
| opposes Lakháhák, iv, 83 |
| chosen to fight Andarimán, iv, 97 |
| slays Andarimán, iv, 104 |
| Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles for refusing audience, iv, 283 seq. |
| audience of, with Kai Khusrau, iv, 283 seq. |
| Gurgás, tribe, v, 43 and note |
| Gurgás, Túránian hero, 156, v, 117, 131 seq., 140, 233 note |
| made captain of the host by Arjásp, v, 46 |
| given command of one wing, v, 56 |
| persuades Arjásp to remain and fight Asfandiyár, v, 108, 109 |
| made leader of the host, v, 109 |
| taken prisoner by Asfandiyár, v, 111 |
| offers to guide Asfandiyár to the Brazen Hold, v, 113 |
| goes as guide with Asfandiyár to Túrán, v, 120 |
| offered the kingdom of the Turkmans by Asfandiyár in return for faithful service, v, 120 |
Gurgsár, describes the route to the Brazen Hold, and the Seven Stages, v, 120 seq., 124 seq., 128, 132, 134
chagrin of, at Asfandiyár's successes, v, 124, 128, 131, 133
reproached by Asfandiyár for giving false information, v, 139, 140
offered the captainship of the Brazen Hold by Asfandiyár in return for trusty guidance, v, 140
shows the Iránians a ford, v, 140
questioned by Asfandiyár for the last time, v, 141
curses Asfandiyár, v, 141
slain by Asfandiyár, v, 141
Gúrkán (Južján), city and district between Marvúd and Bakh, iv, 65
Gurkils, tribe (?), vii, 15
Gurúkhán, Iránian hero, iv, 149
Gurwí, Túránian hero, i45, i51, i52, ii, 296, 314, 319, 338, 340; iii, 197, 199, 237; iv, 7, 99, 111, 252; v, 272
challenges and is overthrown by Siyáwush, ii, 295
advocates the execution of Siyáwush, ii, 317
carries out the execution of Siyáwush, ii, 320
chosen to fight with Gív, iv, 97
taken prisoner by Gív, iv, 100
brought by Gív before Kai Khusrau, iv, 127
executed, iv, 129
Gurzbán, vi, 394. See Gurkán.
Gushasp, sacred Fire, vi, 201
Gushasp, chief scribe, temp. Bahram Gúr, vii, 11
bidden to remit the arrears of taxes, vii, 11

Gushasp, nonce-name assumed by Bahram Gúr, vii, 59 seq.
Gushasp, nonce-name assumed by Bahram Gúr, vii, 59 seq.
Gúsh-bistár, a savage, vi, 80, 177
meaning of, vi, 177 note
interview of, with Sikandar, vi, 177
Gushtasp (Vistásp, Vishtásap, Hystaspes¹), son of Lührásap, father of Asfandiyár, and -Sháh, 154-157, i, 42, 61; ii, 3, 9; iii, 109; iv, 314 seq., 334 seq., v, 24 seq., 61, 68, 90, 92 seq., 103 seq., 119, 130, 148, 154, 155, 159, 166 seq., 180, 181, 183, 205, 206, 208 seq., 213, 216, 220, 221, 233 note, 243, 248 seq., 281, 289, 293; vi, 20, 49, 55, 200, 213, 251, 252, 258; vii, 359; viii, 41, 68, 95, 148, 213, 270, 392, 393; ix, 25
son of Lührásap, iv, 318
jealousy of, respecting the grandsons of Kai Káüs, iv, 318
asks Lührásap to appoint him heir to the crown, iv, 318
departs in wrath for Hind, iv, 319
arrives at Kábúl, iv, 320
overtaken by Zarír, iv, 320
takes counsel with the chiefs, iv, 321
returns to Lührásap, iv, 322
pardoned by Lührásap, iv, 322
determines to quit Irán, iv, 323
takes a steed of Lührásap's, iv, 323
story of, in Rúm, ii, 10; iii, 285; iv, 324 seq.
interview of with Híshwí, iv, 324

¹ The Hystaspes of legend not necessarily the father of Darius I. See Vol. iv, p 314 seq.
Gushtásp, mainly seeks work in Rún as a scribe, iv, 325
herdsman, iv, 326
camel-driver, iv, 326
blacksmith, iv, 327
dreamed of by Katáyún, iv, 329
goes to Caesar’s palace, iv, 330
chosen for her husband by Katáyún, iv, 330
marries Katáyún, iv, 331
spends his time in the chase, iv, 332
makes friends with Híshwí, iv, 332 and note
asked by Híshwí to undertake the adventure of the wolf of Fáskún, iv, 335
undertakes to slay the wolf of Fáskún, iv, 336
provided with steed and arms by Mírín, iv, 336
goes with Mírín and Híshwí to the forest of Fáskún, iv, 337
prays for help, iv, 337
gives thanks for his victory, iv, 338
takes the wolf’s tusks, iv, 338
welcomed by Híshwí and Mírín on his return, iv, 339
discovers to Katáyún his royal race, iv, 340
referred to, iv, 343 seg.
asked by Híshwí to undertake the adventure of the dragon of Mount Sakíla, iv, 345
bids Ahran provide a steed, sword, and other arms, iv, 345
goes with Ahran and Híshwí to Mount Sakíla, iv, 346
takes two of the dragon’s teeth, iv, 346
gives thanks for his victory, iv, 347

Gushtásp, welcomed by Híshwí and Ahran on his return, iv, 347
accepts gifts from Ahran and bestows part upon Híshwí, iv, 347
returns to Katáyún, iv, 348
goes to the sports on Caesar’s riding-ground, iv, 349
prowess of, at polo and archery, iv, 350
questioned by Caesar, iv, 350
reproaches Caesar for his treatment of Katáyún, iv, 350
claim of, to have slain the wolf and the dragon, iv, 351
confirmed by Híshwí, iv, 351
reconciled to Caesar, iv, 351
goes to court and is received with honour by Caesar, iv, 351
consulted about Ilyás by Caesar, iv, 353
leads forth the host, iv, 354
refuses the overtures of Ilyás, iv, 354
brings the body of Ilyás to Caesar, iv, 356
routs the host of Ilyás, iv, 356
returns in triumph to Caesar, iv, 356
recognised by Zarir, iv, 360
goes to Zarir’s camp, iv, 361
hears of Luhrásp’s abdication in his favour, iv, 362
saluted as Sháh by the chiefs, iv, 362
invites Caesar to a feast, iv, 362
sets out for Irán with Katáyún, iv, 364
parts in good will from Caesar, iv, 364
welcomed and crowned by Luhrásp, iv, 364
Gushtâsp, Reign of, 154, v, 9 seq.
   Notes on, v, 9 seq., 116 seq.,
   166 seq., 260 seq.
division of, v, 9
points of interest in, v, 9
compared with that of
Darius Hyasaspis, v, 10
diagram to illustrate, v, 27
legend of Zarduhsht and, v, 18
black horse of, v, 18, 28
sees his place in Paradise, v, 19
Ridge of, v, 29
succeeds Luhrâsp as Shâh,
v, 31
sons of, v, 32
pays yearly tribute to Arjâsp, v, 32
converted by Zarduhsht, v, 33
helps to spread the Faith,
v, 34
establishes Mihr Barzín and
other Fire-fanes, v, 34
conversion of, recorded on
Cypress of Kishmar, v, 34
advised by Zarduhsht not
to pay tribute to Arjâsp,
v, 35
receives embassage from
Arjâsp and takes counsel
with his chiefs, v, 41
sends answer to Arjâsp, v, 43
summons the host, v, 47
marches against Arjâsp, v,
48
bids Jâmasp foretell the
issue of the fight, v, 48
distress of, at Jâmasp’s
prophecy, v, 53
encouraged to fight by
Jâmasp, v, 54
gives Zarir the standard and
the command of the cen-
tre, v, 55
one wing to Asfandiyâr,
v, 55
other wing to Shidasp, v,
55
the rear to Nastür, v, 55
Gushtâsp, takes up his position
on a height, v, 55, 56, 63
referred to, v, 60, 64 seq.,
89
hears of the death of Zarir,
v, 64
wishes to avenge Zarir, v,
64, 68
dissuaded by Jâmâsp, v, 64,
69
offers his daughter Humáí
to the avenger of Zarir,
v, 64
crown and throne to the
avenger of Zarir, v, 66
gives his steed and arms to
Nastûr, v, 69
sees and laments over Zarir’s
corpse, v, 73
bids Nastûr lead the host
home, v, 74
marries Humáí to Asfandiyâr,
v, 74
gives Nastûr a command
and bids him invade
Tûrân, v, 74
rewards the host, v, 75
builds a Fire-fane and makes
Jâmâsp its archmage, v,
75
Mansion of, v, 75
writes to his governors to
announce the defeat of
Arjâsp, v, 75
receives embassies and tri-
but from César and from
the kings of Barbaristân,
Hind, and Sind, v, 75
makes Asfandiyâr chief
ruler of Irân and sends him to convert the world,
v, 76
sends the Zandavasta to
each clime, v, 77
Gurazm slanders Asfandiyâr
to, v, 78
sends Jâmâsp to recall As-
andiyâr to court, v, 80
convokes an assembly and
arraigns Asfandiyâr, v,
82 seq.
Gushtásp, puts Asfandiyár in bonds, v, 84
sends Asfandiyár to Gumbadán, v, 84
takes the Zandavasta to Sístán, v, 85
welcomed by Rustam and Zál, v, 85
kings revolt from, v, 85
while in Sístán hears from his wife of the sack of Balkh and the captivity of his daughters, v, 93
calls together his chiefs and summons the host, v, 94
marches from Sístán toward Balkh, v, 94
takes command of the centre, v, 94
thirty-eight sons of, slain, and defeat of, in fight with Arjásp, v, 95, 96
takes refuge on a mountain, v, 96, 100
consults Jámásp, v, 96
sends Jámásp to Asfandiyár with the offer of the crown in return for help, v, 97
interview of, with, and promise to resign the crown to Asfandiyár, v, 106
commands the centre, v, 109
makes thanksgiving for victory, v, 113
promises to resign the crown to Asfandiyár when he has delivered his sisters from captivity, v, 114
summons troops, rewards Asfandiyár, and sends him to invade Túrán, v, 115
hears of Asfandiyár's success and writes to him, v, 160
gives a banquet on Asfandiyár's return, v, 164
consults Jámásp and the astrologers on Asfandiyár's future, v, 168

Gushtásp, Asfandiyár recounts his deeds to, v, 170 seq.
promises to resign the throne to Asfandiyár when he has brought Rustam and his kin in bonds to court, v, 173, 174
Asfandiyár sends the corpses of Núsh Ázar and Mihr-i-Núsh, and a message to, v, 232
Asfandiyár's last message to, v, 249
hears of Asfandiyár's death and laments for him, v, 252
wrath of the nobles with, v, 252
reproached by Bishútan, v, 253
Humái and Bih Áfríd, v, 254
Rustam's overtures to, v, 256
Bishútan testifies in Rustam's favour to, v, 257
reconciled, and writes to Rustam, v, 257
advised by Jámásp to write to Bahman, v, 258
writes to Rustam and Bahman to recall the latter, v, 258
welcomes and gives Bahman the name Ardshír, v, 259
tells Jámásp of his wishes as to the succession, v, 279
dies, v, 280

Gustaham, son of Naudar and brother of Tús, i, 90; ii, 127, 336; iv, 194
Tús and, sent by Naudar to conduct the Persian women to Alburz, i, 351, 353
heear of Naudar's death, i, 364
passed over in the succession, i, 369, 370
Kai Khusrau sends troops to succour, iv, 157

VOL. IX.
| Gustaham, son of Naudar, attacks the Tūrānians, iv, 178 | Gustaham, son of Gazhālam, rescued by Bīzhan, iv, 124 seq. |
| reports his defeat of Khurākhān, iv, 193 | healed by Kai Khusrau, iv, 133 |
| takes part in the assault on Gang-bihisht, iv, 208 | Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles for refusing audience, iv, 275 |
| left in command of Gang-bihisht, iv, 238 | audience of, with Kai Khusrau, iv, 283 seq. |
| goes to welcome Kai Khusrau on his return from Gang-dīzāh, iv, 252 | Kai Khusrau’s gifts to, iv, 295 |
| left behind as viceroy on Kai Khusrau’s return to Irān, iv, 254 | sets out with Kai Khusrau on his pilgrimage, iv, 306 |
| Gustaham, son of Gazhdaḥam,1 | refuses to turn back when bidden by Kai Khusrau, iv, 307 |
| Irānian hero, 152, i, 369; ii, 12, 58, 197; iii, 19, 25, 33, 45, 48, 59, 92, 93, 127, 129, 139, 141, 211, 247, 248, 253, 273, 289, 294, 322, 350; iv, 7, 13, 15, 24, 33, 93, 132 seq., 149, 191, 292 | Kai Khusrau farewell and warns, and his comrades, iv, 308 |
| takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107 seq. | disappears and is sought in vain by, and his comrades, iv, 308 |
| friendship of, for Bīzhan, iii, 15 | end of, iv, 309 |
| lends Bīzhan a steed, iii, 60 | Gustaham, Irānian warrior, temp. Yazdagird son of Shāpūr, vi, 394 |
| mounts behind Bīzhan, iii, 95 | lions of, slain by Bahrām Gūr, vi, 410 |
| attacks Bīdād, iii, 244 | Bahrām Gūr’s commander-in-chief, vii, 85 |
| sends Bīzhan to summon Rustam, iii, 245 | Gustaham (Bistām q.v.), maternal uncle of Khusrau Parwīz, 171-174, vii, 199, 200, 202, 204 seq., 227, 228, 231, 255, 257, 259, 269, 282, 289, 293, 295, 298; ix, 4, 6 |
| goes with Rustam to rescue Bīzhan, iii, 334 | imprisonment of, viii, 77, 170 |
| fights with Andarimān, iv, 87 | Bandwi and, escape and revolt, viii, 182 |
| made commander in chief pro tem. vice Gūdarz, iv, 92 | informs Khusrau Parwīz of the binding of Hurmuzd, viii, 184 |
| Gūdarz instructs, iv, 92 | referred to, viii, 189 |
| resigns his command to Gūdarz, iv, 111 | revolt of, viii, 191, 355 |
| volunteers to pursue Lahhāk and Farshidward, iv, 116 | saves Khusrau Parwīz from Turk, viii, 220 |
| wounded, iv, 123 | 1This is assumed in all cases where it is doubtful which Gustaham is meant. Cf. Vol. i, p. 369. |
GENERAL INDEX

Haft Khwán, ii, 29; v, 117 and note of Rustam and Asfandiyár compared, v, 117

Mán, ii, 29

Haftwád (Haftánbúkht, Astawadh), Tribal King, 167, vi, 199

account of, in Tabari, vi, 205
daughter of, vi, 205, 206, 233, 234
becomes guardian of the Worm, vi, 236

Nöldeke and Darmesteter on, vi, 206
son of, vi, 206
helps his father against Ardshír Pápákán, vi, 236

Story of, 161, vi, 232 seq.
seven sons of, vi, 233, 235
rise to power of, vi, 235
builds, and migrates to, a stronghold, vi, 235
Ardshír Pápákán and, vi, 236 seq.
slain by Ardshír Pápákán, vi, 245

origin and seat of, i, 19, 20
confused with the Turks, vii, 4
Bahrám Gúr's defeat of, vii, 4
help Pirúz, vii, 156, 157
Pirúz's expedition against, vii, 159, 164 seq.
tradition of, vii, 160
king of, vii, 160, 184
helps Kubád, vii, 198
Kubád's flight to, vii, 170, 184, 198

H

HABASH (Ethiopia), 160, vi, 149
people of, encountered by Sikandar, vi, 149

Haftánbúkht. See Haftwád.
Haft Khán, ii, 29

Gustaham (Bistám), Gurdví and, dissuade Khusrau Parwíz from making a night-attack, viii, 224
treasurer, viii, 229 and note accompanies Khusrau Parwíz in his flight, viii, 231
turns back and murders Hurmuzd, viii, 232
rejoins Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 233
Khusrau Parwíz warned against, viii, 255, 256
deceived by Cæsar's talisman, viii, 272
praised by Cæsar, viii, 279
Bahrám Chúbína writes to, vii, 285
chooses comrades for Khusrau Parwíz in battle, viii, 296
receives Khurásán viii, 313
summoned to court, vii, 355
hears of execution of Bandví, vii, 355
hears of Gurdyá's doings, vii, 356
goes to meet Gurdyá, vii, 356
asks Gurdyá in marriage, vii, 357
Gurdyá plots murder of, vii, 360
intimates of, beheaded, vii, 370
assassination of, referred to, ix, 16, 104
Gutschmid, Alfred von, on the Cyrus legend in Ctesias, vi, 195
Gúzihr, Tribal King, vi, 198, 199
Haitál Haitálians, Núshírwán’s alliance with the Khán against, vii, 317
Khán’s war with, vii, 328 seq.
Khán’s embassy to Núshírwán destroyed by, vii, 330
host of, levied to oppose the Khán, vii, 331
defeated, vii, 332
Núshírwán’s help sought by, vii, 332
Faghánish made king by, vii, 333
Núshírwán takes counsel concerning, vii, 333 seq.
make submission to Núshírwán, vii, 360
Ha'íy, son of Kutiba, governor of Tüs and a patron of Firdausí, i, 35, 39
Hajír, Íránian hero, 144, 151, ii, 134, 136, 140, 349; iv, 103, 147, 191
taken prisoner by Suhráb, ii, 131
misleads Suhráb, ii, 152 seq.
life of, attempted by Rustam, ii, 176
attacks Bidad, iii, 244
put in charge of the baggage, iv, 24
bears letters from Gúdarz to Kai Khusrau, iv, 57
rewarded by Kai Khusrau, iv, 58
bears Kai Khusrau’s reply to Gúdarz, iv, 61, 62
goes with orders to Gív, iv, 82, 83
slays Andarímán’s horse, iv, 87
chosen to fight with Sipahram, iv, 97
slays Sipahram, iv, 104
Halab (Chalybon - Beroea, Aleppo), city in northern Syria, iv, 359, 360; viii, 41, 46, 47
Halai (Olympia (?), Náhíd), daughter, in legend, of Philip II of Macedon, vi, 19
Halai, reason for her repudiation by Dáráb and her naming her son Iskandar (Skandar), vi, 19
Halai-Sandarús. See Halai.
Hamadán (Ekbatana), city in 'Irak-i-'Ajam, vi, 31; vii, 6; viii, 178, 189; ix, 68
Hámávarán (Yaman), southwestern Arabia, 143, ii, 25, 78 seq., 94, 96 seq., 139, 143 seq., 213, 215, 218, 250; iv, 296, 299; v, 174, 207, 208, 220; viii, 104, 168
king of, 143, i, 338; ii, 85 seq., 93, 207 and note; v, 176
asks quarter of Rustam, ii, 97
releases Káí Káús, ii, 97
Hamáwan, mountain, 148, iii, 135, 137, 138, 142, 144, 153, 154, 158, 161, 164, 167, 169, 172, 177; iv, 299; v, 116
occupied by the Íránians, iii, 132
Hamdán Gashasp, Íránian chief, viii, 122, 163, 204
speech of, viii, 166
Hamza, of Ispahán, tenth-century Arabic historian, vi, 257
Handgrip, as test of strength, ii, 64, 66, 67; v, 208
 Háni bin Mas'úd, Arab chief, viii, 190
Haoma. See Homa.
=Húm, q.v.
Haraiti Bareza (Alburz, q.v.), mountain, iv, 137
Harám, the environs of Mecca, vi, 65, 120 and note, 121
Haram, of Khusrau Parwiz, ix, 4, 5
Harát, city in north-western Afghánistán, ii, 101; iii, 222; viii, 71, 92, 110, 116, 117, 139, 173
Harát, early seat of Aryan civilization, i, 7
battle of, i, 21
Firdausí flees to, from Mahmur, i, 39
desert of, ii, 228; viii, 114
marchlord of. See Mákhar.
bestowed by Máhwí on his son, ix, 115
Háris, father of Kais, viii, 250
Hárit, father of Nadr, q.v., v, 166
Hárit bin Jabala, prince of the Ghassánians, vii, 217
protected by Justinian, vii, 217
war of, with Munzir, vii, 217
Harpagus, Persian noble, temp. Astyages, ii, 190
= Pirán in legend, ii, 191
Harúm (City of Women), 160, vi, 73, 153 seq.
visited by Sikandar, vi, 153 seq.
Sikandar’s correspondence with the ruler of, vi, 153 seq.
Hárunu’r-Rashíd, Khalífa (A.D. 786-809), i, 14
Hárút, angel, iii, 286, 288
‘Harvest of Bahram,’ viii, 292
Hasan Sábbáh (The Old Man of the Mountain), v, 30
Háshim, Arab general, ix, 68
sent by ’Umar in pursuit of Yazdagird, ix, 68
wins battle of Jalúlá, ix, 68
takes Hulwán, ix, 68
Háshimi, a descendant of Háshim the great grandfather of Muhammad, i, 25; vi, 362
and note
Háshimite = Muhammad, ix, 81
and note
Háshish, murderer of Darius Codománus, vi, 32
Hatra (Al Hadır), city, vi, 321 seq.
account of, vi, 322
besieged, vi, 322
fall of, legend of, vi, 322
Hatra, king of, vi, 323
Haug, his theory of the origin of Zoroastrianism, ii, 8
Hauz, tank or pool, i, 203 and note, vii, 50 and note
Hawk, hawks, domestication of, by Tahmúras, i, 126
two white, Kair Kúbad’s dream of, i, 385
Hawking. See Falconry.
Hay, sack of, Bahram Chúbína and the, viii, 109
Hazár, Hazárán, Túránian hero, v, 24, 50, 59
Hazára, father of Kút, viii, 291
Hecataeus, Greek historian (6th-5th centuries B.C.), vi, 13
Helenopolis, city in Bithynia, vi, 61
Heraclius, Eastern Roman Emperor (A.D. 610-642), v, 306 note; viii, 187, 191; ix, 5, 7
attempts of, for peace with Khusraw Parwiz, viii, 194, 195
takes Dastagird, viii, 194
retreat of, viii, 195, 196
Shírwi’s letter to, ix, 7
alliance of, with Shahrbaráz, ix, 43, 44
Hermit, Khusraw Parwiz and the
172, viii, 254
Herodotus, Greek historian (B.C. 484-425), ii, 9; iii, 191; vi, 13, 16, 68, 72, 73; viii, 193
legend of Cyrus the Great in, ii, 190; vi, 195
Heroes, chief, of mixed descent, i, 55
Vale of, vii, 6
Hesperides, Garden of the, vi, 74
Hierapolis. See Árayish-i-Rúm.
High priest, temp. Sháhpúr son of Urmuzd, vi, 343 seq.
hears of Sháhpúr’s return, vi, 344
informs the captain of the host, vi, 345
GENERAL INDEX

Hijáz, north-westera Arabia, viii, 24 and note, 66, 67
Hilál, Arab, ix, 69
 slayer of Rustam son of Farrukh-Hurmuzd, ix, 70
Himálaya (Himavat), mountain-range dividing India from Thibet, vi, 74, 81
Himavat. See above.
Himyar—Hámávarán (Yaman), ii, 79
Hind, Hindústán, 147, 159, 161, 165, 169, i, 231, 261; ii, 92, 228, 287, 289; iii, 30, 152, 164, 165, 177, 204, 221, 222, 235, 237, 238, 242; iv, 14, 60, 65, 133, 196, 208, 272, 317, 320; v, 76, 188, 257, 262, 265, 277; vi, 80, 81, 91, 98 and passim
land of sorcerers, i, 163
Mai of, i, 252
king of (Shangul) temp. Kai Khusrau, iii, 162, 210, 218, 251
temp. Bahram Gür, vii, 113, 119, 126, 128
temp. Núshirwán, viii, 52
lord of = Shangul, iii, 187
man of = Shangul, ii, 216
prince of, iv, 71
lord of = Mahmúd, iv, 142
monarch of, iv, 319, 321
kings of, send tribute to Gushásp, iv, 75
ambassadors from, come to Dáráb, vi, 21
Dárá, vi, 33
ruler of = Fúr, vi, 51
Sikandar invades, vi, 98
silk of, vi, 99
king of = Kaid, vi, 103
Sikandar becomes king of, vi, 118
people of, help the Sindians against Sikandar, vi, 175
Rája of, 169. See Rájá.
Bahram Gür’s visit to, vii, 5, 110 seq.
motive of, vii, 5

Hind, Bahram Gür’s visit to, fabulous, vii, 6
 king of, entertained by Bahram Gür, vii, 140 seq.
 Núshirwán goes to, vii, 241
Hindiyá (Amida?), city in Roman Armenia, vii, 200
taken by Kubâd, vii, 200
Hindu Kush, mountain-range in Áfghanistán, ii, 80
Hindústani, vii, 6
Gipsy language a debased form of, vii, 6
Hiong-Nu, probably the Huns, v, 13
Híra, city west of the Euphrates near Mashad ‘Ali (Nedjef), vi, 372; vii, 217; viii, 188, 191; ix, 5, 66
seat of the dynasty of Al Munzir, i, 55
kingdom of, ix, 65
abolished by Khusrau Parwiz, ix, 66
attacked by Persians, ix, 67
Hírâ (Jebel Nûr), mountain north of Mecca, viii, 42
Hírbád, keeper of the women’s house of Kai Kâûs, ii, 202, 206
Hírmund (Helmund), river in Sístán in eastern Írán, i, 358, 359; iii, 321; v, 178, 182, 186, 191, 196, 219, 285
referred to, v, 198, 231
Hishám ibn Muhammad ibn Al-Kalbí, Arabic historian (8th–9th centuries A.D.), vi, 30; viii, 73
Híshwí, Rúman toll-collector, iv, 334 seq.
interview of, with Gushásp, iv, 324
becomes friends with Gushásp, iv, 332
asks Gushásp, on behalf of Mirín, to undertake the adventure of the wolf of Fáskún, iv, 335
| Hishwi, goes with Gushtasp and Mirin to the forest of Faskun, iv, 337 |
| Mirin and, welcome Gushtasp on his return, iv, 339 |
| asks Gushtasp, on behalf of Ahran, to undertake the adventure of the dragon of Mount Sakila, iv, 344 |
| goes with Gushtasp and Ahran to Mount Sakila, iv, 346 |
| Ahran and, welcome Gushtasp on his return, iv, 347 |
| receives gifts from Gushtasp, iv, 348 |
| confirms Gushtasp's claim to have slain the wolf and dragon, and produces their teeth to Caesar, iv, 351 |
| Hittite, Hittites, vi, 71 |
| empire, vi, 71 |
| HIuen Tsiang, Chinese traveller (A.D. 603–668), vi, 63 |
| quoted, vi, 63, 73 |
| Hoibaras, Persian slave, temp. Astyages, vi, 195 |
| Hold, The Brazen. See Brazen Hold. |
| Holy Ghost, the, vi, 138 and note |
| Holy Questions, Mountain of the, i, 62 |
| Homa (Soma), a plant held sacred by the Zoroastrians, i, 8 and note, ii, 8 |
| juice of, ii, 8 |
| referred to, iv, 138 |
| Homer, vi, 13, 72 |
| epic method of. contrasted with Firdausi's, i, 47 |
| quoted, vi, 68, 73 |
| Hormisdas I. See Urmuzd son of Shapur. |
| Hormisdas II. See Urmuzd son of Narsil. |
| Hormisdas (Urmuzd son of Urmuzd son of Narsil), Persian prince, takes refuge with the Romans, vi, 318, 325 |
| Hormisdas, goes with Julian to the East, vi, 325 |
| Horoscope, i, 152 |
| of the sons of Faridun, i, 188 |
| Zal, i, 251, 278 |
| Rustam, i, 278, 307 |
| Siyawush, ii, 196, 205, 234 |
| Mirin, iv, 334 |
| Shaghad, v, 264 |
| Ardawan, vi, 218 |
| Bahrám Gur, vi, 376 |
| Yazdagird son of Shapur, vi, 390 |
| Shirwi, vii, 372; ix, 16, 17 |
| Horse, of Persian royalty, how distinguished, ii, 410 note |
| Gushtasp's black. See Black horse. |
| (steed, knight), piece in chess, vii, 285, 423 |
| position of, vii, 388, 422 |
| move of, vii, 422 |
| Hour, maid of Paradise, i, 272; ix, 81 |
| House of Darkness, ix, 7 |
| Crystal, ix, 25 and note |
| Houses, the Twelve, of the sky, i, 103, 188 |
| good influence of, i, 52 |
| Hrazdan, river in Armenia, v, 13 |
| Hulwan (Arash), town, vii, 187, 201 |
| situation of, vii, 187 |
| Yazdagird retires to, ix, 67 |
| taken by Hāshim, ix, 68 |
| Hūm (Haoma, g.s.), hermit, i, 153, iv, 135 seq., 259 seq. |
| hears Afrasiyāb lamenting in the cave, iv, 260 |
| capture of Afrasiyāb by, iv, 261 |
| Darmesteter on, iv, 136 |
| pities and unbinds Afrasiyāb, iv, 262 |
| tells his adventure with Afrasiyāb to Gūdarz and Gīv, iv, 363 |
| Kai Kādus and Kai Khusrav, iv, 264 |
| suggests how Afrasiyāb may be recaptured, iv, 265 |
Húm, recaptures Afrásiyáb, iv, 266
Humá. See below.
Humái (Humá), daughter of Gushtásp, ii, 3; v, 12, 25
marriage of, with Asfandiyár, v, 22, 74
ignored by Firdausí, v, 22
offered in marriage to the avenger of Zarír, v, 64
taken captive by the Turk-mans, v, 93, 100
goes with Bih Áfríd to draw water and meets Asfandiyár, v, 147
escapes from Arjásp’s palace, v, 153
bewails Asfandiyár, v, 252
reproaches Gushtásp, v, 254
Humái (Chihzád, q.v.), daughter and wife of Bahman, and mother of Dáráb, Sháh,
157, 158, ii, 3, 9, 10; v, 281, 290 seq.; vi, 20, 22, 199
married to Bahman, v, 290
Bahman appoints, and her issue, to succeed him, v, 291
Semiramis (?), v, 293
genealogies of, v, 293
Reign of, 158, v, 292 seq.
Note on, v, 292 seq.
accession of, v, 294
Dáráb born of, v, 294
referred to, v, 296
hears of Rúman invasion and bids Rashnawád lead forth the host, v, 301
reviews the host, v, 302
affected on seeing Dáráb, v, 302
hears from Rashnawád about Dáráb, v, 308
recognises that Dáráb is her son, v, 308
thanksgiving largess of, v, 309
Rashnawád and Dáráb appear before, v, 309 seq.

Humái, crowns, and excuses herself to, Dáráb, v, 310
proclaims Dáráb, v, 311
Humái, Íránian chief, temp. Bahram Gúr, vii, 88
goes as envoy to the Khán, vii, 87
Húmán, son of Wisa and brother of Pirán, Íránian hero,
144, 148, 149, 151, i, 92; ii, 129, 130, 132, 148, 150, 264, 390; iii, 90, 91, 93, 108, 120 seq., 133 seq., 142, 149, 152, 153, 158, 166, 169, 177, 182, 192, 202, 205, 210, 217, 227, 232, 234, 252, 259, 350; iv, 7, 8, 10, 29 seq., 44, 55, 56, 61, 75, 76, 91, 118, 152
Bármán and, join Suhráb with troops, ii, 129
Afrásiyáb’s instructions to, ii, 129
misleads Suhráb as to Rustam, ii, 165, 169
reproaches Suhráb for sparing Rustam, ii, 171
throws the blame for Suhráb’s death on Hajír, ii, 176
withdraws from Írán under safe conduct, ii, 176, 181, 182, 184
rescues Afrásiyáb from Rustam, ii, 354, 355
persuades Afrásiyáb to abandon the pursuit of Kai Khusraw, ii, 394
parleys with Tús, iii, 121
leads the host against Tús, iii, 127
counsels Pirán, iii, 134
pursues the Íránians to Mount Hamáwan, iii, 135
rallies the Íránians, iii, 139
reconnoitres the Íránians, iii, 174
informs Pirán of the arrival of Rustam, iii, 174
Húmán, parleys disguised with Rustam, iii, 196
commands the centre, iv, 25
dissuaded from fighting by Pirán, iv, 30
parleys with Bızhan, iv, 45
armour of, donned by Bızhan, iv, 51
Túráńians' grief at death of, iv, 51
Huns, the, i, 10; v, 13; vi, 15;
vii, 153
settlement of, at Samarkand, i, 19
White. See Haitál.
Húr, father of Bihruz, vii, 72
Hurmuζ (Urmuzd), Ashkánian king, vi, 197
Hurmuζ (Ormus), city and island on the south-eastern shore of the Persian Gulf, vi, 204
Hurmuζ (Hormisdas III), Sháh, 166, vii, 153, 186
appointed by Yazdagird to succeed him, vii, 155
Reign of, vii, 156
Note on, vii, 156
defeated by Pirúz, vii, 157
pardoned by Pirúz, vii, 156, 158
leads the van in the war with the Turkmans (Haitálians), vii, 164
perishes in battle, vii, 168
Hurmuζ, minister of Bahram Gúr, vii, 26
Hurmuζ (Hormisdas IV), son of Núshírwán, Sháh, 169-172, vii, 279; viii, 56
seq., 69 seq., 74 seq., 78, 87, 147, 169, 170, 174, 198, 209, 212, 213, 222, 232, 265, 270, 304, 312, 333, 355, 370, 376; ix, 4, 15, 104
son of the Khán's daughter, vii, 317
sent against the Turks, vii 317
examination of, viii, 3, 57

Hurmuζ (Sháh), counselled by Núshírwán, viii, 25 seq.
Núshírwán's testament in favour of, and last counsels to, viii, 61 seq.
Reign of, 170, viii, 70
Note on, viii, 70
character of, viii, 70
system of administration of, viii, 71
justice of, viii, 71
instances of, viii, 90 seq.
scribes executed by, viii, 71
insult of, to Bahram Chúbína, viii, 76
Lazíć war renewed by, viii, 76
Bahram Chúbína's gift of swords to, viii, 76
accession of, viii, 78
turns to evil courses, viii, 81
puts to death Ízid Gasasp, viii, 83
poisons Zarðuhsht, viii, 83 seq.
schemes against and puts to death Simáh Parzin, viii, 85 seq.
attends to suborn Bahram Ázarmián, viii, 85 seq.,
gives audience, viii, 86
hears state-secret from Bahram Ázarmián, viii, 88
puts to death Bahram Ázarmián, viii, 89
repentance of, viii, 90, 93
places of residence of, viii, 90
wars of, viii, 92
attacked by Sáwa, viii, 92
Sáwa's letter to, viii, 93
attacked by Cæsar, viii, 93
Khazars, viii, 93
Arabs, viii, 93
consults the Fránians, viii, 94
counsellor by his wazír, viii, 94
makes peace with Cæsar, viii, 95
Hurmu zd (Sháh), attacks and defeats the Khazars, viii, 95 sends for Mihrán Sitád, viii, 97 hears prophecy about Bahram Chúbína, viii, 98 orders search to be made for Bahram Chúbína, viii, 99 discovers and sends for Bahram Chúbína, viii, 100 consults Bahram Chúbína, viii, 100 gives chief command to Bahram Chúbína, viii, 102 questions Bahram Chúbína, viii, 103 gives Rustam’s banner to Bahram Chúbína, viii, 105 sends Mihrán with Bahram Chúbína, viii, 106 intelligencer after Bahram Chúbína, viii, 107 to recall Bahram Chúbína, viii, 108 Kharrád, son of Barzín, as envoy to Sáwa, viii, 110 hears of Bahram Chúbína’s victory, viii, 132 makes thanksgiving, viii, 132 rewards Bahram Chúbína and the troops, viii, 133 surveys spoils sent by Bahram Chúbína, viii, 150 grows suspicious of Bahram Chúbína, viii, 151 dismisses the Khán with gifts, viii, 152 hears from Kharrád of Bahram Chúbína’s disaffection, viii, 160 consults with high priest, viii, 161 Ayín Ghashasp, viii, 174. 177 plans to make away with Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 174 hears of Khusrau Parwiz’ flight, viii, 176 imprisons Bandwi and Gustaham, viii, 176 Hurmu zd (Sháh), hears of the murder of Ayín Ghashasp, viii, 182 dethroned and blinded, viii, 183, 200 visited in prison by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 185, 198, 230 requests of, to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 199 referred to, viii, 211 counsels Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 230 murdered, viii, 232 Hurmu zd Garábzin or Galábzin (Kharrád son of Barzín q.v.), viii, 190 Hurmu zd, priest, vii, 188 assists Núshírwan in his dispute with Mazdak, vii, 188, 206 Hurmu zd, Iránian general, vii, 251 commands the outposts in Núshírwan’s army, vii, 251 Hurmu zd (Hurmu zdsháh, Farrakh-Hurmu zd q.v.), father of Rustam, ix, 72, 78, 85, 89, 96 Hurmu zd Shahranguráz (Shahránguráz q.v.), ix, 54 Hurmu zd, devotee, ix, 102 pleads with Máhwi for yazdagird, ix, 102 Hurmu zdağán, vi, 193, 199 battle of, vi, 193, 199, 202, 204, 239 Husain, friend of Firdausí, ix, 121 Húshang, son of Siyámak, minister of Gáúmart, and Sháh, 139, 140, i, 42, 90, 91, 126; ii, 204; iv, 133, 286, 292, 302; v, 180, 243; vii, 37, 273; viii, 376; ix, 25, 41 Firdausí’s etymology of, i, 121 goes with Gáúmart to fight the Black Dív, i, 121 slays the Black Dív, i, 121 Reign of, 140, i, 122
GENERAL INDEX

Húshang, Reign of, Note on, i, 122
succeeds Gaiúmart, i, 122
culture-hero, i, 123
discovers fire, i, 123
institutes Fire-worship, i, 123
founds the Feast of Sáda, i,
124
domesticates animals, i, 124
dies, i, 124
Firdausí’s reflections on, i,
124
rites of, vii, 53
Faith of, viii, 380
Húshdív, Túránian hero, v, 46
put in charge of the rear, v,
46
Húshyár, astrologer, vi 372, 375
takes Bahrám Gúr’s horosco-
pe, vi, 176
Hushrawah (Kai Khúsrau, q.v.),
iv, 137, 138
Hutaosa, wife of Gushtásp, v, 11
=Atossa (?), v, 11
Hvyaonas (Khyons, Chionitae ?),
people, v, 13
Hyapatès, son of Semiramis, v,
292
Hydaspes, id.
Hydaspes (Jhílam), river in the
Punjáb, vi, 18, 31, 62, 63
Hydraotes (Rávi), river in the
Punjáb, vi, 64
Hyperboreans, the, vi, 74
Elysium of, vi, 74
Hyphasis (Beas), river in the
Punjáb, vi, 64
Hyrkania (Gurgán, q.v.), ii, 27 ;
iii, 10 ; vi, 373
Glv, prince of, iii, 9
Hystaspes (Gushtásp, q.v.), iv,
314 seq.
Hystaspes, father of Darius I, v,
10
governor of Parthia, v, 10

Ibálís, occasional substitution of-
for Ahýram in the Sháh-
náma, i, 50, 70 ; ii, 82, 110
tempts Zahhák, i, 136 seq.
turns cook, i, 137 seq.
causes serpents to grow out of
Zahhák’s shoulders, i, 139
counsels, garbed as a leech,
Zahhák, i, 139
Ibn Mukaffa’, Persian scholar
and Arabic writer, vi, 373 ;
vii, 161
account of, vi, 17
translator of the Báštán-
náma into Arabic, vi, 17
Fables of Bídpaí (the
Book of Káliba and
Dimna) into Arabic,
vii, 383
Ibráhím, Abraham the patri-
arch, vi, 119, 120
house of =the Kaaba, vi, 119
Ichthyophagi, vi, 81
Sikandar and, vi, 69, 147
Arrian on, vi, 69
modern accounts of, vi, 70
city of, described, vi, 177
go to meet, and are visited
by, Sikandar, vi, 178
hand over the treasures of
Kai Khúsrau to Sikandar,
vi, 178
Id-i-Kurdí, Feast of, i, 143
Ighhrás (Aghrárátha, Aghré-
rad, Aghhrás), brother of
Afrásiyáb and Túránian
hero, I42, i, 92, 337, 342
seq. ; ii, 18, 20, 303, 304 ;
iii, 8 ; iv, 136, 206, 262
characterised, i, 55, 338
opposes war with Irán, i,
343
Bármán’s single combat,
i, 347
over-ruled by Pashang, i,
344
Afrásiyáb, i, 347
Iránian captives saved by,
i, 363
released by, i, 365 seq.
Ighriras, upbraided and slain by Atrashiyab, i, 367
Pashang's grief for, i, 374
revival of, in legend, iv, 135
given a command, iv 156
head of, sent by Khusrav to Kai Kaous, iv, 185
referred to, iv, 267
Ijas bin Kabisa, viii, 188
governor of Hira, viii, 190
Ilia, Turanian king, iv, 182
fights with Khusrau, iv, 182
Ilyas, ruler of Khazar q.v., 154, iv, 361
tribute demanded of, by Caesar, iv, 352
refuses tribute and declares war, iv, 352
makes overtures to Gush-tasp, iv, 354
corpse of, brought by Gush-tasp to Caesar, iv, 355
Imagery, of Shahnama. See Shahnama.
Imaus, Greek form of Himayala q.v., vi, 12
'Inanian, Inanians, Arab tribe, vi, 324, 330, 331, 333
Ind. See Hind.
India, iv, 316; vi, 17, 64, 81, 83, 204
Iranians and Aryans of, i, 15
Palladius on, vi, 61
Ancient, M'Crinle's quoted, vi, 68
=Ethiopia, vi, 68
Indian, Indians, 172, vi, 81, 375, 397; vii, 135, 146; viii, 377
=Ethiopians, vi, 13, 68
sages, vi, 61, 83, 91 seq., 143
seq., 266
bells and gongs, vi, 175; viii, 46, 120
bane, vi, 259
king of=Shangul, vii, 118
tongue, vii, 117, 143
sword, falchion, scimitar, vii, 127, 145, 417; ix, 17
Garden of the, viii, 196
Indian, Indians, Faith of, 172, vii, 275
script, ix, 17
scribe, ix, 17
Indies, Greek idea of two, vi, 13
duplicate races in, vi, 68
Indo-European race, i, 7
Asiatic branch of, i, 7
Aryans, i, 7
earliest seats of, i, 7
religion of, i, 7
Indra, Indian god, ii, 25; vi, 203
Vritra and, ii, 25; vi, 203
Indus, river, i, 71, 252; ii, 21;
iii, 177, 204, 237, 251; v,
293; vi, 62, 67, 70; vii,
241
mistaken for the Nile, vi, 68
Introduction, to Shahnama, i, 3 seq.
Iollas, Alexander the Great's cupbearer, vi, 82
Iraj, youngest son of Faridun q.v. and the protagonist of the Irani race, 140, i,
54, 90, 91, 211; ii, 8, 16, 19, 20, 237, 297, 302; iii, 8;
iv, 146; v, 42, 44, 261;
vi, 353; vii, 73; viii, 266,
376 and note, 392; ix, 103
etymology of, i, 174
namings of, i, 188
horoscope of, i, 188
receives Iran and Arabia as his portion, i, 189
abdication of, demanded by Salm and Tur, i, 192
offers to go to his brothers, i, 196
visits Salm and Tur, i, 198
reception of, by Salm and Tur, i, 198
offers to resign his kingship to his brothers, i, 200
slain by Tur and Salm, i, 201
head of, sent to Faridun, i, 202
mourning for, i, 203 seq.
daughter of, 140, i, 205
married to Pashang, i, 205
Íraj, daughter of, gives birth to Minúchihr, i, 206
vengeance for, i, 215 seq.
referred to, i, 335, 349
Íraj, king of Kábul, iv, 146
‘Írák, ix, 66
= ‘Írák ‘Arabí (Babylonia),
vii, 214, 224
Iram, gardens of, i, 100, 113;
ii, 78; vii, 233 and note
Írán, 142-144, 146, 148, 150, 152,
155, 157, 158, 162, 163,
165, 167, 172, 173, 175,
176, i, 3, 113, 152, 153
and passim
boundaries of, i, 3
physical features of, i, 3
gradual desiccation of, i, 3
and see Drought.
climate of, i, 4
flora of, i, 4
fauna of, i, 5
land of contrasts, i, 5, 58, 60
cosmogony of, i, 5
people of, i, 6
-vej, region, i, 9
situation of, i, 9
Zoroaster’s (Zarduhsht’s)
birth-place, i, 62
Arab conquest of, i, 12
Arabia and, Íraj’s portion, i, 189
-Shahr, ii, 81
fought for by Afrásiyáb and the Arabs, ii, 92
invaded by Suhráb, ii, 130
lord of = Mahmúd, iv, 142
monarch of = Dáráb, vi, 21, 26
and Sháhnáma compared, vi, 193
invaded by Munzir and Nu‘mán, vi, 397
Rúm’s tribute to explained, vii, 187
Íránian, Íránians, 144, 147-151,
153, 155, 163-167, 171,
176, i, 9 and passim
neighbours of, i, 9
Íránians, historical relations of,
with Semites, i, 10
Assyrians, i, 10
Arabs, i, 11; vi, 17; ix, 65 seq.
Greeks and Romans, i, 14
Aryans of India, i, 15
Túránians, i, 16 seq.
Kimmerians, i, 17
Scythians, i, 17
Parthians, i, 18
Alani, i, 19
Huns, i, 19
Turks, i, 20
traditional relations of, with
other Indo - Europeans,
Semitic, and Túránians, i,
54, 55, 56
revolt against Jamshíd and
summon Záhhák to Írán,
i, 139
chiefs of, imprisoned at
Sarl, i, 363
plot for release with Igh-
riras, i, 363
inform Zál, i, 366
released by Kishwád, i,
367
provided for by Zál, i,
367
beware Naudar, i, 364
wish to withdraw from the
Seven Stages, v, 135
encouraged to persevere by
Asfandiyár, v, 136
provoked to combat by
Zawára, v, 225
Síkándar’s proclamation to,
vi, 44
beware themselves, vi, 48
counsel Dárá to come to
terms with Síkándar, vi,
48
ask quarter of Síkándar, vi,
51
hail Síkándar as ruler, vi, 56
after Yázdagírd son of
Sháhpúr’s death meet for
counsel in Párs, vi, 394
Jawanwi sent by, to Mun-
zír, vi, 397
Iránians, offer prayer at the Fire-
fane of Barzín, vi, 400
loyal, support Bahrám Gúr,
vi, 402
procedure of, to elect a
Sháh, vi, 403
decide to reject Bahrám
Gúr, vi, 403
remonstrated with by Mun-
zir, vi, 403
object-lesson of, to Munzir,
vi, 404
accept Bahrám Gúr’s pro-
posal for settling the
question of kingship by
ordeal, vi, 406
ask Munzir to intercede
with Bahrám Gúr for
them, vii, 9
arrears of taxes of, can-
celled, vii, 11
levied by Bahrám Gúr, vii,
86
resolve to submit to the
Khán, vii, 87
send Humái as envoy to the
Khán, vii, 87
letter of, to the Khán, vii, 87
ask for Narsi’s good offices
with Bahrám Gúr, vii, 93
lament for the death of
Pírúz, vii, 169
revolt against Kubád, vii,
195
put Kubád in fetters, vii,
195
ask pardon of Kubád, vii,
200
pardoned by Kubád, vii, 200
take Sákila, viii, 47
chiefs received in audience
by Hurmuzd, viii, 86
consulted by Hurmuzd, vii,
94
defeat the Khazars, viii, 96
advise Bahrám Chúbína,
viii, 102, 121, 239 seq., 287
Sáwa employs sorcery
against, viii, 123
encouraged by Bahrám
Chúbína, viii, 124

Iránian, Iránians, defeat the
Turks, vii, 126
revolt against Hurmuzd,
vii, 156
elect Bahrám Chúbína
Sháh, viii, 243
homage Shírwí, ix, 8
choose two chiefs to visit
Khusrau Parvíz in prison,
ix, 9
plot against Gúráz, ix, 54
go hunting with Gúráz, ix,
55
race, ix, 65
enmity of, with Semite,
i, 54; ix, 65
announces arrival of Shu’ba
Mughíra to Rustam, ix, 82
defeat of, at Kádisíya, ix, 84
retreat to Yazdagírd, ix, 85
-born, ix, 99
defeat of, at Marv, ix, 116
ambushed, ix, 118
Irámííl and Karmáíl, Zahhák’s
cooks, l40, i, 146
Irámán, (Arman q.v.), i, 345, 358;
iii, 12, 285, 292, 296, 311
devastated by wild boars,
iii, 290
Iráníans (Armenians q.v.), 150,
iii, 286
complain to Kai Khúsrau
of the wild boars, iii, 290
Iron steeds, Sikandar’s, vi, 115
Ísá (Jesus), viii, 276 note
Isdígírd I (Yazdagírd son of
Shápúr), Sásánian king,
vi, 371
Isdígírd II (Yazdagírd son of
Bahrám Gúr), Sásánian
king, vii, 153
Ishmael, vi, 65, 120, 121
Iskandar. See Sikandar.
Iskandar, herb, vi, 26
Iskandaríya (Alexandria), 160,
vi, 185
Sikandar buried at, vi, 185
Island, the=Meroe, vi, 65
Islands, Male and Female, vi, 72
origin of legend of, vi, 72
Ismá‘íl. See Ishmael.
Ismá‘íl, brother of Sultán Mahmúd, i, 21
Ispanwí. See Ispanwí.
Ispáhán, city in 'Irak-i-'Ajami, 146, i, 351; ii, 394, 399; iii, 109; vi, 57, 86, 87, 199, 201, 202, 210; vii, 6, 84, 214, 224; viii, 90; given to Gúdarz, ii, 78; iv, 129; arrival of Kái Khusrau at, ii, 396; bestowed on Gíy by Kái Khusrau, iv, 298
Ispanwí, slave-girl of Tazháv, iii, 14, 27, 77; taken captive by Bízhán, iii, 78
Ispúrúz, mountain in the neighbourhood of Mázandarán, ii, 38, 56, 57, iv, 136, 230
Israfil, archangel, 160, vi, 78; Sikandar's interview with, vi, 83, 161
Issedones, tribe situated on the Tarím basin in eastern Turkistán, iii, 192
Issus, town, plain, and gulf in Cilicia, vi, 30; battle of, vi, 30, 31; Dáriús' family taken prisoners at, vi, 31
Istakhr (Persepolis), city in Párs, 142, 165, ii, 11, 22, 28, 339; vi, 57, 198, 199, 202, 211, 223, 225, 231, 326, 356, 386; vii, 83, 95, 188; viii, 90, 313; ix, 50, 54; buildings at, attributed to Humáí, vi, 293
Dará marches from, to encounter Sikandar, vi, 37, 46; returns to, vi, 44; Sikandar crowned Sháh at, vi, 59; taken by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 227
Istakhr, Ardshír Pápakán marches from, against the Kurds, vi, 230; returns victorious to, vi, 232; Yazdagird taken to, ix, 64; made Sháh at, ix, 65; Istuvegu. See Astyages.
Italy, vii, 218
Alexander of Epirus' expedition to, vi, 12; Alexander the Great's legendary expedition to, vi, 12, 30
Íwán-i-Kerkh, vi, 327
Izads (Yazatas), the, iii, 286
Ízid, viii, 75
Ízid Gashasp, archscribe, 170, viii, 74; confusion in name of, viii, 75, 76; put to death by Hurmuzd, viii, 75, 83; malicious speech of, viii, 77 and note, 150 and note; imprisoned, viii, 81; sends for high priest, viii, 81
Ízid Gashasp, Íránian warrior, viii, 103, 122, 136, 138, 149, 350, 353, 356; conducts spoil to Írán, viii, 148; goes hunting with Bahram Chúbina, viii, 156; speech of, viii, 165

J

Jabala bin Sálím, viii, 73
Jacob of Sarúg, Syriac poet. Syriac Christian Legend of Alexander the Great versified by, vi, 15, 74, 78, 84
Jádústán, vi, 109 and note
Jagatai, mountain-range in Khurásán, v, 29
Jahn, son of Afrásiyáb, Túránian hero, 152, i, 92; ii, 264, 268; iv, 156, 162, 200 seq., 214
Jahn, son of Afrasiyāb, sent to guard Shída's rear, iv, 155
advances to the attack and is defeated by Kárán, iv, 178
stationed at the centre with Afrasiyāb, iv, 179
sent to the left with troops, iv, 180
Garsiwaz and, compel Afrasiyāb to quit the field, iv, 182
commands the right, iv, 190
helps to defend Gangbihisht, iv, 209
taken prisoner by Rustam, iv, 210
sent to Kai Kâús, iv, 233
interned by Kai Kâús, iv, 235
spurious passage about, iv, 272 note
Jahn, architect of throne of Tákhdís, viii, 391
Jahram (Chahram), 161, 163,
city in Pars, vi, 44, 119,
202, 225, 237, 241, 268,
400; vii, 185; ix, 29, 61
Dará goes to, vi, 44
desert of, vi, 401
Jáí (?) Chách q.v.), iv, 150
Jalálpūr, city in the northern Punjab, vi, 18
Jalalá, town north-east of Baghdad, i, 12, ix, 68
battle of, i, 12, ix, 68
Jam, son of Kubád and brother of Núshírwán, vii, 316
conspires against Núshírwán, vii, 316
Jámsp, chief minister of Sháh
Gushtásp, 155, i, 42; ii, 9; v,
12, 22, 24 seq., 58, 206,
216, 248; vii, 171, 393; ix,
26
omniscience of, v, 19, 48
answers, in conjunction with Zarír and Asfándiyár, Arjásp's letter, v, 42
Jámsp, foretells the death in battle of Ardashir, v, 49
Shídsp, v, 50
Girámi, v, 50
exploits of Nástúr, v, 50
death of Nírzáír, v, 51
Zarír, v, 52, 70 note
triumph of Asfándiyár, v, 52
defeat of Arjásp, v, 52
encourages Gushtásp to fight, v, 54
referred to, v, 59, 102
dissuades Gushtásp from avenging Zarír, v, 64, 68
made archmage of Fire
Temple built by Gushtásp, v, 75
sent to recall Asfándiyár to court, v, 80 seq.
advises Gushtásp, when beleaguered by Arjásp, to release Asfándiyár, v, 97
volunteers to go to Asfándiyár, v, 97
reaches Gumbadán in disguise, v, 98
interview of, with Asfándiyár, v, 99 seq.
sends for blacksmiths to unchain Asfándiyár, v, 101
sets off with Asfándiyár, Bahman, and Núsh Azár, v, 103
foretells Asfándiyár's fate, v, 169
reproached by Bishútan, v, 254
advises Gushtásp to write to Bahman, v, 257
writes by Gushtásp's orders to recall Bahman, v, 258
Gushtásp tells his intention as to the succession to, v, 279
prophecy of, viii, 68
additions of, to throne of Tákhdís, viii, 392
Jámsp, son of Pírúz, 166, vi, 3
supersedes Kubád temporarily, vii, 184, 195
Jamasp, son of Piruz, title of, vii, 186
fate of, vii, 186, 200
James, St., bishop of Edessa, i, 374
James V of Scotland, vii, 3
Bahram Gür’s resemblance to, vii, 3
Jamhur, king of Hind, vii, 395, 396, 398, 399, 401, 403
Jamshid, son of Tahmuras, Shäh
and culture-hero, t40, t64, i, 42, 90, 91; ii, 4, 33, 37, 168, 204, 358, 399; iii, 7, 57, 257, 273; iv, 63, 133, 149, 203, 206, 272, 274, 290; v, 32, 34, 38, 47, 180, 202, 215, 216, 245, 271, 284; vi, 45 and note, 172, 209; vii, 36 seq., 107, 162, 173, 211; viii, 22, 242, 269, 310, 332, 341, 387; ix, 25, 39, 103
Reign of, 140, i, 129 seq.
Note on, i, 129 seq.
the Iranian Noah, i, 129
meaning of, i, 130
ascends the throne, i, 131
greatness of, i, 131
culture-hero, i, 132
makes armour, i, 132
raiment, i, 132
institutes castes, i, 132
great builder, i, 133
introduces jewelry and perfumes, i, 133
leechcraft, i, 133
ship-building, i, 133
 carried by the divs into the air, i, 133
feast held in memorial of, i, 134
fall of, i, 130, 134, 139
Iranians revolt against, i, 139
flight and death of, i, 139
sisters of, married to Zahhak, i, 146
found by Faridun, t40, i, 162
referred to, iv, 304

Jamshid, treasure of, found by
Bahram Gur, t43, vii, 36
described, vii, 36
Jandal, envoy of Faridun, t40, i, 177
asks Sarv’s daughters in marriage for Faridun’s sons, i, 178
informs Faridun of the outcome of his mission, i, 182
Jandal, city in Hind, vii, 140
monarch of, entertained by Bahram Gur, viii, 140 seq.
Jafuruz, Iranian general, viii, 297
Janusiyar, minister of Darâ, vi, 52, 88
murders Darâ, vi, 52
informs Sikandar of Darâ’s murder, vi, 52
arrested by Sikandar, vi, 53
executed, vi, 56, 88
Jaranjas, Turanian hero, iv, 156
Jarfra, daughter of Piran, wife of Siyawush, and mother of Farud, t47, i, 92; ii, 3; iii, 43
married to Siyawush, ii, 268 seq.
birth of her son Farud, ii, 291
referred to, iii, 39
advises Farud, iii, 42
dream of, iii, 63
kills herself, iii, 66
Jarmana, place, ix, 93
Jasha, king, i, 67, 68
Jatkas, vii, 383
Jats, people of north-western India, vii, 6
fabulous origin of, vii, 6
Jawanwi, Iranian magnate, vi, 373; vii, 8, 10
goes as ambassador to Munzir, vi, 398
interview of, with Munzir, vi, 398 seq.
recognises the divine Grace in Bahram Gur, vi, 398 seq.
Jawánwí, suggests a course of action to Munzír, vi, 400 returns to Irán, vi, 400 bidden by Bahram Gúr to remit the arrears of taxes, vii, 11
Jaz (Gaz), town north-west of Ispahán, vi, 337; vii, 76, 79, 80 tribute of, remitted, vii, 82
Jerusalem, v, 306 note, vi, 81; viii, 191, 196
Elevation of the True Cross at, ix, 43
Jesus, i, 42; vii, 191; ix, 10 sayings of, vii, 276 and note Cross of, viii, 380 laughter of, viii, 191, 380
Jew, Jews, 168, vi, 356; vii, 13, 273; viii, 21, 67, 276 Faith of, vi, 95 Bahram Gúr’s adventure with a, vii, 16 seq.
persecution of, viii, 153 Zúrán’s plot with a, against Mahbúd, vii, 320 seq.
bewitches Núshirwán’s food, vii, 321 makes confession to Núshirwán, vii, 325 Fables of Íbídái, vogue of largely due to, vii, 383
Jewelled tree, Ká Khusrau’s, iii, 329
Jeweller, a, 164. See Máhiyá. daughter of, 164
Jewels, discovery of, i, 133 Palace of, 160
Jhílam (Hydaspes), river in the Punjáb, vi, 18, 31, 63
Jhún (Oxus q.v.) river, 146, 152, i, 215, 219, 345, 375; ii, 15,19 seq., 99, 229, 237, 248, 258, 311, 340, 390, 394, 399, 404; iii, 58, 159; iv, 10, 12, 20, 33, 60, 79, 153, 154, 157, 181, 184, 187, 194, 255, 304; v, 12, 29, 40, 45, 48, 203; vii, 92, 165, 166, 180, 329, 338, 340; viii, 94, 99
Jhún—cont.
134, 174, 332; ix, 77, 115, 118 boundary between Irán and Túrán i, 71, 370, 371 confused with the Aras, i, 370 fords of, viii, 331
Jins, ix, 81
Johari Das, Babu, quoted, vi, 81
Joktan, vi, 65 =Kahtán, vi, 65
Joshua, vi, 77 Moses and, Muhammadan legend of, vi, 77
Jovian (Bazánúsh), Roman Emperor (A.D. 363-4), vi, 324 seq.; viii, 41 confused with Valerian, vi, 324
Judaism, vi, 327
Judda, the port of Mecca, 159, vi, 121
Sikandar arrives at, vi, 121
Julian (Yánúš), Roman Emperor (A.D. 361-363), i, 12; vi, 325 confused with Valerian, vi, 324 not an emperor in the Sháhnáma, vi, 324, 326 expedition of, against Persia, vi, 324 seq.
Julius Valerius, early Latin translator of the Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi, 14, 61, 66 seq., 71, 74, 78, 79, 81
Jund-i-Shápúr (Gund-i-Shápúr q.v.), city, vi, 256 =Ráš-Shápúr, vi, 256 foundation of attributed to Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 266
Jupiter, planet, i, 72, 161, 188, 281; ii, 115; iii, 318; iv, 143, 295; v, 256; vi, 138, 172, 292; vii, 49, 248, 357; viii, 28, 152, 157, 395
Justin I, Eastern Roman Emperor, vii, 316
GENERAL INDEX

Justin II, Eastern Roman Emperor, vii, 212; viii, 41
Justinian, Eastern Roman Emperor, i, 16; vii, 212, 219, 317; viii, 41
silkworm introduced into the West during reign of, vi, 204
bargains of, with Nushirwán, vii, 214, 216 seq.
protection of Hářith bin Jabala by, leads to war with Nushirwán, vii, 217
successes of, in the West, vii, 217
closes the schools of Athens, vii, 280
Juyá, a div, ii, 71
slain by Rustam, ii, 72

K

KAABA, the, 159, vi, 65
account of, vi, 65
Sikandar’s expedition to, vi, 67, 83, 119
Kabáb, small pieces of meat skewered together for roasting, ii, 103; iii, 69; iv, 121; v, 152; viii, 250
Kabísa, viii, 188
Kabțún, king of Misr and the progenitor of the Copts, vi, 121
welcomes Sikandar, vi, 121
praises Kaidáfa to Sikandar, vi, 122
Kabúda, 147, one of Afrásiyáb’s herdsmen, iii, 73
slain by Bahrám, iii, 74
Kábül, Kábulistán (Afghánistán), city and country, 141, 157, i, 57, 252, 264, 268, 277, 282, 283, 286, 294, 298, 299 note, 300, 302 seq., 316, 357, 378; ii, 12, 18, 21, 92, 228, 260, 271, 341; iii, 17, 35, 145, 153, 165, 174, 186, 190, 202, 206, 321; iv, 14, 65, 293
Kábúl—cont.
146, 278, 283, 292; v, 126, 170, 173, 224, 242, 251, 260, 263 seq., 271, 273 seq., 284, 287; vi, 207; vii, 173
Buddhism in, i, 15
superseded by Brahmanism, i, 16
dagger of, i, 219; vi, 320
Zál visits, i, 256
Beauty of = Rúdába, i, 262, 316
monarch of = Mihráb, i, 294, 365
rejoicings at, over Zál’s successful embassy to Minúchíhr, i, 314
preparations at, to welcome Sám and Zál, i, 315
falchion of, i, 376; ix, 98
Shaghád sent to be brought up at, v, 264
king of, 157, v, 264, 271
daughter of, marries Shaghád, v, 264
Shaghád and, plot against Rustam, v, 265 seq.
gives a feast, v, 266
pretends to quarrel with Shaghád, v, 266
treachery of, v, 268 seq.
abases himself before Rustam, v, 269
entertains Rustam and invites him to hunt, v, 269
hypocrisy of, v, 271
Farámarz sent against, v, 274, 276
defeated and put to death with all his kin, v, 277
tribute of, question about, v, 265
Farámarz makes a Zábuli king of, v, 277
monarch of, entertained by Bahrám Gür, vii, 140 seq.
Káchár Básht, city in Túrán, ii, 258, 360, 361; vii, 330, 358; ix, 117
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kádisí, Kádisíya, town on one of the canals west of the Euphrates and south of Mashad 'Ali (Nedjef), vi, 119, 330; ix, 5, 73, 74, 77, 78</th>
<th>Kaian, throne, viii, 214</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>battle of, i, 12, 143; ix, 5, 67, 69</td>
<td>race, viii, 217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date of, ix, 67</td>
<td>crown, ix, 11, 105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>canal of, ix, 69</td>
<td>Káíanúsh (Katáiún), brother of Farídún, i, 90, 91, 158 v, 261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rustam advances to, ix, 73</td>
<td>referred to, i, 147, 163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaékasta (Urumiah q.v.), lake, iv, 137</td>
<td>Purmáya and, summon the smiths to Farídún, i, 158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Káf, mythical Mount Alburz q.v., ii, 83, 404; iv, 65, 149; viii, 66 and note</td>
<td>go with Farídún against Zahhák, i, 159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Káfúr, king of Bídád, 149, iii, 191</td>
<td>attempt to kill Farídún, i, 160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worsts the Iránians, iii, 244</td>
<td>Kai Árash, son of Kai Kubád, ii, 3, 23, 204, 205; vi, 197, 210, 228; viii, 216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slain by Rustam, iii, 245</td>
<td>Kai Armín, son of Kai Kubád, ii, 3, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kahtán, desert of, i, 287</td>
<td>Kaid, Indian king, 159, 161, i, 55; vi, 61, 83, 91 seq., 112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kahtán, the Arabic form of Joktan, the progenitor of the southern Arabs, vi, 65, 120</td>
<td>identical with Mandanes (Dandames), vi, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kai, meaning of, ii, 8</td>
<td>consults Mihrán about his dreams, vi, 92 seq.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dynasty, i, 49, 373; ii, 7 seq.; iii, 5 seq.; iv, 5 seq.; v, 7 seq.; vi, 9 seq.</td>
<td>Four Wonders of, 159, vi, 94, 97 and note, 99 seq.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genealogical table, ii, 3</td>
<td>daughter, 159, vi, 94, 100, 102, 104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>birth-mark, ii, 372</td>
<td>described, vi, 100, 102, 104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stature, ii, 375</td>
<td>married to Sikandar, vi, 104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saying, iv, 33</td>
<td>reference in Sikandar’s Will to, vi, 182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cup, described, vi, 94, 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>principle of, explained, vi, 109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>leech, vi, 94, 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>prescribes for Sikandar, vi, 107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sage, vi, 94, 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>=Calanus, vi, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sikandar’s encounter of wits with, vi, 62, 104 seq.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>explains the principle of the cup, vi, 109</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Kaid, sends his Four Wonders and other gifts to Sikandar, vi, 103
revival of, in legend, vi, 256, 266
prophecy of, vi, 256, 257, 267 consulted by Ardashir Pâpa-kân, vi, 266
advice of, to Ardashir Pâpa-kân, vi, 267, 273
Kaidâfa (Cilicia), vi, 294, 297
Kaidâfa (Kandake, Candace q.v.), 159, vi, 83, 121 seq., 325 obtains Sikandar’s portrait, vi, 122
praised by Kabtân to Sikandar, vi, 122
receives a letter from Sikandar, vi, 123
answers Sikandar's letter, vi, 123
welcomes Kaidrukh on his return from captivity, vi, 127
receives Naitkûn (Sikandar) graciously, vi, 128
state of, described, vi, 128, 130, 133
gives audiences to Naitkûn (Sikandar), vi, 128 seq.
recognises Sikandar, vi, 129 seq.
hears Sikandar’s embassage, vi, 129
covenants of, with Sikandar, vi, 132, 138
warns Sikandar against Tainúsh, vi, 133
chides Tainúsh, vi, 135
takes counsel with Sikandar about Tainúsh, vi, 135
approves of Sikandar’s scheme, vi, 137
takes counsel with her nobles, vi, 139
gifts of, to Sikandar, vi, 140
Sikandar’s final message to, vi, 143
Kaidrukh (Kandaros, Candaules), son of Kaidâfa (Candace), vi, 134, 135
Kaidrukh, wife of, vi, 66
taken with his wife, by Sikandar, vi, 125
brought with his wife before Naitkûn, vi, 126
sentenced with his wife to death, vi, 126
pardoned with his wife, vi, 126
gratitude of, vi, 127
returns to Kaidâfa, vi, 127
presents Naitkûn (Sikandar) to Kaidâfa, vi, 127
Kaihan. See Kaid.
Kai Kâús, son of Kai Kubâd and Shâh, 143-147, 152, 153, i, 42, 338; ii, 3, 8 seq., 23
seq., 33 seq., 54 seq., 61
seq., 109, 110, 127, 130,
233, 243 seq., 264, 269
seq., 273, 284, 286, 290,
296, 301, 316, 318, 319,
335, 347, 361, 364, 371,
372, 383, 401; iii, 7, 9,
13, 14, 20 seq., 24, 30, 45,
51, 84, 85, 88, 90, 93, 96,
113, 145, 147, 166, 174, 236,
238, 239, 289, 397, 327;
iv, 13, 61, 129, 135, 136,
162, 167 seq., 185, 191,
199, 201, 203, 217, 218,
232 seq., 254, 256 seq., 269
seq., 278, 287, 289, 290,
292, 295 seq., 306, 310,
314, 321 seq.; v, 29, 30,
116, 173, 174, 190, 203,
207, 208, 210, 215, 216;
vii, 74, 107, 115; viii,
22, 104, 168, 270, 341; ix,
25
Reign of, 143, ii, 25 seq.
Notes on, ii, 25 seq., 79
seq., 118, 188 seq., 335
visits Rustam, ii, 83
tempted by divs, ii, 30 seq.,
82, 102 seq.
goest to Mount Kâf, ii, 83
defeats Afrâsiyâb and regains Iran, ii, 100
makes Rustam paladin of paladins, ii, 101
Kai Káúš, buildings of, on Mount Alburz, ii, 81, 101
flying-machine of, ii, 103
fall of, from the sky, ii, 104:
v, 174
repentance of, ii, 105
hears of Suhráb and summons his chiefs, ii, 136
seq.
bids Tús hang Rustam and Gív, ii, 143
apology of, to Rustam, ii,
147
campment of, described, ii, 153
overthrown by Suhráb, ii, 160
refuses to cure Suhráb, ii, 178
attempts to console Rustam, ii, 181
marries the future mother of Siyáwush, ii, 194
receives Siyáwush at court, ii, 198
bestows Kuhistán upon Siyáwush, ii, 199
conduct of, in the case of Siyáwush and Súdába, ii, 200 seq.
sends Siyáwush to fight Afrásiyáb, ii, 225
rejects terms of peace and quarrels with Rustam, ii, 244 seq.
hears of the defection of Siyáwush, ii, 258
grief of, at the death of Siyáwush, ii, 337
hears of Kai Khusrau's arrival in Irán, ii, 395
receives Kai Khusrau, ii, 397
rewards Gív, ii, 399
provides for Farangís, ii, 399
arbitrates between Tús and Gúdarz, ii, 403 seq.
welcomes Kai Khusrau on his return from the castle of Bahman, ii, 410
Kai Káúš, requires Kai Khusrau to swear vengeance on Afrásiyáb, iii, 21
welcomes Gív and hears his tidings of Kai Khusrau, iv, 234
gives a feast, iv, 234
deals with the captives, iv, 235
proclaims the conquest of Tárán and Chín, iv, 236
rewards Gív, iv, 236
sends Gív back with letter to Kai Khusrau, iv, 238
hears that Kai Khusrau is returning and goes with the nobles to welcome him, iv, 256
receives gifts from, and hears the adventures of, Kai Khusrau, iv, 257
gives a feast in honour of Kai Khusrau, iv, 257
counsels a pilgrimage to the temple of Ázargashasp, iv, 258
Kai Khusrau and, hear from Gúdarz of Húm's adventure with Afrásiyáb, iv, 264
send for Garsíwaz and put him to the torture, iv, 265
make thanksgiving before Ázargashasp, iv, 269
go in state to the temple of Ázargashasp, iv, 270
prays that he may die, iv, 270
obsequies of, iv, 271
treasure of, called "The Bride" bestowed by Kai Khusrau on Gív, Zál, and Rustam, iv, 295
favour shown by Luhrásp to the grandsons of, iv, 318, 321 seq.
grandsons of, go with Zarír to Rúm, iv, 360
hail Gushtásp as Sháh, iv, 362
Kai Káús, Rustam's patent from v, 203


Kai Khusrav, tells his story to Kai Káús, ii, 397 praises Gív to Kai Káús, ii, 398 goes to Istakhr, ii, 399 enthroned as Sháh, ii, 400, 411 supported by Gúdarz and opposed by Tús, ii, 400 seq. letter of, to the defenders of the castle of Bahman, ii, 407 establishes Fire-worship at the castle of Bahman, ii, 409 pardons Tús, ii, 410 Reign of, 147, iii, 7 seq. Notes on, iii, 7 seq., 108, 191, 271, 285 seq.; iv, 7, 135 seq. last link with the Vedas, iii, 7 longest in respect of subject-matter in the poem, iii, 7 divisions of, iii, 7 episodes of, iii, 7 warlike character of, iii, 8 subject-matter of, iii, 8 accession of, iii, 17 goes on a hunting expedition, iii, 19 to the temple of Azargarhadshap, iii, 20 swears to take vengeance on Afrásiyáb, iii, 21 prepares for war, iii, 23 seq. offers reward for the head of Paláshán, iii, 26 crown of Tazháv, iii, 27 slave of Tazháv, iii, 27 head of Tazháv, iii, 28 burning the barricade at the Kása rúd, iii, 28 going on an embassage to Afrásiyáb, iii, 29 warns Tús to avoid Kalát, iii, 39
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kai Khusrau sends Giv to summon Rustam, iii, 319</th>
<th>Kai Khusrau, hears of the death of Farûd and of the defeat of the Irânians, iii, 84</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sends the host to meet Rustam, iii, 327</td>
<td>wrath of, with Tûs, iii, 84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>welcomes Rustam, iii, 328</td>
<td>seq., III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jewelled tree of, iii, 329</td>
<td>writes to Farîburz, iii, 84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>requests Rustam to rescue Bizhan, iii, 330</td>
<td>disgrace Tûs, iii, 86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equips Rustam for his quest of Bizhan, iii, 333</td>
<td>imprisons Tûs, iii, 87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>welcomes Rustam on his return, iii, 354</td>
<td>pardons Tûs and the Irânians, iii, 114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rewards Rustam and his comrades, iii, 356</td>
<td>hears of the peril of the Irânians on Mount Hamâwan and summons Rustam, iii, 142 seq.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>holds converse with Bizhan, iii, 356</td>
<td>sends Rustam to succour the Irânians, iii, 145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gives gifts to Manîzha, iii, 356</td>
<td>furthers the suit of Farîburz to Farangîs, iii, 147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hears that the Tûrânians are invading Irân, iv, 12</td>
<td>disposes of the captives and spoil, iii, 240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>summons his paladins, iv, 13</td>
<td>sends gifts to Rustam and the host, iii, 241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host, iv, 14</td>
<td>goes to meet Rustam on his return in triumph, iii, 267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sends Rustam to Hindûstân, iv, 14</td>
<td>gives a feast to the chiefs, iii, 268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luhrâsp to the Alâns, iv, 14</td>
<td>rewards Rustam, iii, 269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ashkash to Khârazm, iv, 15</td>
<td>holds a court and hears of the doings of the div Akwân, iii, 273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gûdarz to Tûrân, iv, 15</td>
<td>writes to summon Rustam, iii, 274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orders Gûdarz to negotiate with Pirân, iv, 15</td>
<td>goes to welcome Rustam on his return from slaying the div Akwân, iii, 282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>receives letter from Gûdarz, iv, 58</td>
<td>rewards Rustam, iii, 283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rewards Hajîr, the bearer, iv, 58</td>
<td>hears at a feast of the case of the Irânians, iii, 289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prays for victory, iv, 58</td>
<td>calls for volunteers, iii, 291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sends Hajîr with answer, iv, 61</td>
<td>sends Bizhan and Gurgîn to Irân, iii, 292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leads a host to aid Gûdarz, iv, 62</td>
<td>comforts Giv for the loss of Bizhan, iii, 315, 318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>referred to, iv, 85</td>
<td>imprisons Gurgîn, iii, 317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>presage of, that Pirân would be slain by Gûdarz, iv, 85, 88</td>
<td>promises Giv to consult the divining-cup about Bizhan, iii, 317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reaches Gûdarz, iv, 111, 126</td>
<td>receives Gûdarz and the other champions, iv, 126</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Kai Khusrau, laments over Pirán, iv, 127
buries Pirán and the Túránían champions, iv, 128
puts Gurwi to death, iv, 129
rewards the host, iv, 129
gives Ispahán to Gúdarz, iv, 129
pardons the Túránían host, iv, 131
amulet of, iv, 133
heals Gustaham, iv, 133
summons reinforcements, iv, 134, 145
Great War of, with Afrásiyáb, 152, iv, 135 seq.
exemption of, from death, iv, 138
recalls the troops under Luhrásp, Rustam, and Ashkash, iv, 145
stations Tús on his right with Káwa’s standard, iv, 146
gives the right wing to Rustam, iv, 147
left wing to Gúdarz, iv, 147
commands to various chiefs, iv, 148, 149
hears of Afrásiyáb’s passage of the Jihún, iv, 157
sends troops to the aid of Gustaham, son of Naudar, at Bálkh, iv, 157
Ashkash with a host to Zam, iv, 157
marches to Khárazm, iv, 157
surveys the seat of war and entrances the host, iv, 157
Shída’s embassage to, iv, 161
sends Káran to welcome Shída, iv, 165
proposes to fight in single combat, iv, 166
rejects the Írániáns’ suggestions of a peace, iv, 167
accepts Shída’s challenge, iv, 168, 169
Kai Khusrau, sends Káran with a reply to Shída, iv, 168
arms to fight with Shída, iv, 171
makes Ruhhám his standard-bearer, iv, 171
sends instructions to the host, iv, 171
parley of, with Shída, iv, 172
accepts Shída’s challenge to a wrestling-bout, iv, 175
gives Ruhhám charge of his steed, iv, 175
wrestles and overthrows Shída, iv, 175
instructs Ruhhám to bury Shída, iv, 176
spares the life of Shída’s interpreter and bids him return to Afrásiyáb with tidings, iv, 176
prays for vengeance on, and attacks, Afrásiyáb, iv, 178
bids Shammákh attack, iv, 180
attacks with Rustam from the centre, iv, 180
fights with Ustukílá, Ílá and Burzúyalá, iv, 182
returns to camp, iv, 183
hears of Afrásiyáb’s retreat, iv, 184
offers praise to God, iv, 184
pursues Afrásiyáb, iv, 185 seq.
marches to Sughd, iv, 188
hears tidings of Afrásiyáb, iv, 188
sends Gustaham, son of Naudar, to Chách, iv, 188
Rustam to encounter Tawurg, iv, 188
marches from Sughd and reduces the Turkman strongholds, iv, 189
to the Gulzaryún, iv, 189
commands the centre, iv, 191
prays for victory, iv, 191
Kai Khusrau, hears of the defeat of Kurákhan by Gustaham, son of Naudar, iv, 193
hears of Rustam’s defeat of Tawurg, iv, 193
warns Rustam to beware of Afrásiyáb, iv, 194
plunders the camp of, and pursues, Afrásiyáb, iv, 195
besieges Gang-bihisht, iv, 198, 208 seq.
converses with Rustam, iv, 198, 199, 222
receives Jahn in audience, iv, 200
declines Afrásiyáb’s proposals for peace, iv, 207
with Rustam, Gustaham son of Naudar, and Gúdarz, assails Gang-bihisht on all sides, iv, 208 seq.
prays for victory, iv, 208
takes Gang-bihisht by storm, iv, 209 seq.
searches vainly for Afrásiyáb, iv, 212
gives the spoil of Gang-bihisht to the troops, iv, 217
grants quarter to the Turks and assumes the government of Túrán, iv, 217
dwells for a while at Gang-bihisht, iv, 218
leaves Gúdarz and Farhád at Gang-bihisht, iv, 219
marches against Afrásiyáb, iv, 220
rejects Afrásiyáb’s overtures, iv, 223
fight a general engagement against Afrásiyáb, iv, 223, 226
entrenches his troops and prepares with Tús and Rustam for a night-attack from Afrásiyáb, iv, 224
Kai Khusrau, repulses Afrásiyáb’s night-attack, iv, 225
defeats Afrásiyáb, iv, 227
receives the submission of Afrásiyáb’s army, iv, 228
gives a feast, iv, 228
offers praise to God, iv, 228
returns to Gang-bihisht, iv, 228
accepts the submission of the Khán and Faghfúr, iv, 229
resolves to pursue Afrásiyáb to Gang-dízh, iv, 231
plan of, opposed by the host, iv, 231
supported by Rustam, iv, 231
agreed to by the host, iv, 232
sends Gív with Afrásiyáb’s captive kindred to Kai Káús, iv, 232 seq.
leaves Gustaham, son of Naudar, in command at Gang-bihisht and marches to Chín, iv, 238
demands facilities from the Khán, the Faghfúr, and the king of Makrán, iv, 238
marches through Khutan, iv, 240
welcomed by the Faghfúr and the Khán of Chín, iv, 240
stays three months in Chín, iv, 241
leaves Rustam in Chín and marches to Makrán, iv, 241
sends an embassy to the king of Makrán, iv, 241
gives honourable burial to the king of Makrán, iv, 243
stops the pillage of Makrán, iv, 243
stays a year in Makrán, iv, 244
makes ready a fleet, iv, 244
Kai Khusrau, leaves Ashkash as governor and marches to the desert, iv, 244
voyage of, iv, 245
wonders of, iv, 245
lands, iv, 246
appoints Gīv governor, iv, 246
receives the submission of the chiefs, iv, 247
seeks for tidings of Gang-dizh and of Afrāsiyāb, iv, 247
marches to Gang-dizh, iv, 247
forbids his troops to injure Gang-dizh, iv, 247
enters Gang-dizh, iv, 248
searches for Afrāsiyāb, iv, 248
remains a year at Gang-dizh, iv, 249
urged by his paladins to return to Irān, iv, 249
appoints a governor for Gang-dizh, iv, 249
distributes treasures at Gang-dizh, iv, 250
marches seaward from Gang-dizh, iv, 250
welcomed by Gīv, iv, 250
crosses the sea to Makrān, iv, 251
welcomed in Makrān by Ashkash and the chiefs, iv, 251
appoints a governor for Makrān, iv, 251
marches to Chīn, iv, 251
welcomed by Rustam, iv, 251
confirms the Faghfūr and Khān in the possession of Māchīn and Chīn, iv, 252
goes with Rustam to Siyāwushgird, iv, 252
rewards Rustam and Gīv, iv, 252
welcomed by Gustaham, son of Naudar, iv, 252
goes to Gang-bihisht, iv, 253
Kai Khusrau, prays for satisfaction on Afrāsiyāb, iv, 253
dwells for a year in Gang-bihisht, iv, 254
desires to return to Kai Kāūs, iv, 254
leaves Gustaham, son of Naudar, as viceroy, iv, 254
carries off treasure from Chīn and Makrān, iv, 254
arrives at Chāch, iv, 255
Sughd, iv, 255
met by Khūzan and Talāmān, iv, 255
makes offerings to the Fire-temple at Bukhārā, iv, 255
crosses the Jīhūn, iv, 255
arrives at Balkh, iv, 255
welcomed everywhere by the people, iv, 255
goes by Tālikān, the Mardv rūd, Nishāpūr, and Dāmāghān to Rai, iv, 255
stays two weeks at Rai, iv, 256
announces his approach to Kai Kāūs, iv, 256
goes to Baghdād and thence to Pārās, iv, 256
reception of, by Kai Kāūs, iv, 256
presents gifts, and tells his adventures, to Kai Kāūs, iv, 257
has a feast given in his honour by Kai Kāūs, iv, 257
rewards the troops, iv, 258
takes counsel with Kai Kāūs concerning Afrāsiyāb, iv, 258
goes with Kai Kāūs on a pilgrimage to the temple of Āzargashasp, iv, 258
Kai Kāūs and, hear from Gūdarz of Hūm's adventure with Afrāsiyāb, iv, 264
| Kai Khusrau, and Kai Kâús, send for Garsîwaz, and put him to the torture, iv, 265 | Kai Khusrau, treasure of, disposal of, iv, 294 |
| slays Afrasiyâb, iv, 268 | found by Sikandar, 160, vi, 170 |
| Garsîwaz, iv, 269 | charge of, to Gûdarz, iv, 294 |
| Kai Káús and, make thanksgiving before Ázargashasp, iv, 269 | gifts of, to Giv, Zál, and Rustam, iv, 295 |
| treasurer of, makes gifts to Ázargashasp, iv, 269 | Gustaham, iv, 295 |
| sends letters announcing his triumph to all the chiefs, iv, 270 | Gûdarz, iv, 295 |
| holds festival and bestows treasure, iv, 270 | Farîburz, iv, 295 |
| goes with Kai Káús in state to the temple of Ázargashasp, iv, 270 | Bîzhan, iv, 295 |
| performs the obsequies of Kai Káús, iv, 271 | Zál’s companions, iv, 297 |
| assumes the crown as sole Shâh, iv, 272 | confirms Rustam in possession of Nimrûz, iv, 297 |
| becomes world-weary, iv, 272 | v, 203 |
| closes his court and withdraws to his oratory, iv | bestows Kum and Ispahán on Giv, iv, 298 |
| prays that he may be taken from the world, iv, 274 | confirms the charge of Káwa’s flag, and gives Khurásan, to Tûs, iv, 300 |
| passes a week in prayer, iv, 274, 279 | summons and crowns Luhrásp, iv, 300 |
| remonstrated with by the nobles, iv, 275, 279 | Zál’s protest to, against Luhrásp’s succession to, iv, 301 |
| replies to the nobles, iv, 276 | justifies his choice of Luhrásp, iv, 301 |
| passes five weeks in prayer, iv, 280 | takes leave of the Irânians, iv, 303 |
| hears from Surûsh that his prayer is granted, iv, 280 | women of, lament for him, iv, 304 |
| bidden to appoint Luhrásp as his successor, iv, 281 | commends his women to the honour of Luhrásp, iv, 305 |
| puts off his royal robes, iv, 281 | dismisses the Irânians, iv, 305 |
| receives Zál, Rustam, and others in audience, iv, 283 seq. | counsels Luhrásp, iv, 305 |
| pardons Zál, iv, 291 | bids Luhrásp farewell, iv, 306 |
| orders an assembly to be held on the plain, iv, 291 | sets forth on his pilgrimage with some of his chiefs, iv, 306 |

Indian parallel, iv, 138 again appealed to by the Irânians, iv, 306
reply of, iv, 307 bids his chiefs return, iv, 307
rests with his remaining chiefs by a spring, iv, 307
prepares for his passing, iv, 308
farewells his chiefs, iv, 308
Kai Khusrau, warns his chiefs of the coming of the snow, iv, 308
disappears, iv, 308
Kai Kubád, Sháh and founder of the Kaianí dynasty, 142, i, 42, 373, 374; ii, 3, 8, 12, 14, 16, 18 seq., 26, 33, 34, 36, 37, 87, 143, 144, 249, 260, 270, 274, 327, 336, 373, 390, 394; iii, 34, 49, 51, 57, 144; iv, 35, 70, 149, 168, 201, 283, 298, 302; v, 174, 180, 188, 189, 202, 205, 210, 221, 272; vi, 197, 210; vii, 37, 74, 115, 120, 173; viii, 89, 170, 260, 270, 310, 332; ix, 25
brought by Rustam from Mount Alburz, i, 382 seq.
tells his dream to Rustam, i, 385
accepted by Zál and the other chiefs as Sháh, i, 387
Reign of, 142, ii, 11
Note on, ii, 11
origin of, ii, 11 and note
makes peace with Afrásiyáb, ii, 20
gifts of, to Zál and Rustam, ii, 21
descendants of, commanded by Diláfrúz, stationed on Kai Khusrau’s left hand, iv, 147
Kai Manush, vi, 200
Kai Pashín, son of Kai Kubád, ii, 23, 204, 205; iv, 302
Kais, Arab chief, entertains Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 250
Kaiser Friedrich Museum, viii, 192
Kait. See Kaid.
Kai Ugi, vi, 200
Kaiwán, Fránian statistician, vii, 11
Kaiwán, calculates the arrears of taxes, vii, 11
Kákula, Túránian hero, iv, 188
reinforces Afrásiyáb, iv, 188
Kákvi (cf. Karkví), grandson of Zahhák, 141, i, 226
attacks the Fránians, i, 225
defeated and slain by Minúchíhdr, i, 227
Kaláhúr, warrior of Mázandarán, ii, 67
tries a handgrip with Rustam, ii, 67
Kalát, stronghold, iii, 39; ix, 91
home of Farúd, iii, 39
Kai Khusrau bids Tús to avoid, iii, 39
Tús marches to, iii, 40
captured by the Fránians, iii, 66
Kaláti-Nádirí, stronghold, ii, 189; iii, 14
described, iii, 14
Kalé (Néreis), daughter of Alexander in the Pseudo-Cal- listhenes, vi, 77
Andreas, the cook, and, legend of, vi, 77
Kalifa and Dimna, Book of, 169.
See Fables of Bidpai.
Káláníyús (Nicephorium, Callini- cus, Warigh q.v., Rakka),
city situated at the junction of the Belikh and the Euphrates, 167, viii, 188
taken by Núshírwán, vii, 218, 257
Kalúd, mountain in Túrán, ii, 328
Pírán sends Kai Khusrau to be brought up on, ii, 328
goes to see Kai Khusrau at, ii, 329
Kálús, Rúman chief, iv, 356
sent as envoy to Ilyás, iv, 352, 358
Luhrásp, iv, 357
entertained by Luhrásp, iv, 357

1 Misprinted "Kalár"
Káloš, describes Gushtásp to Luhirásp, iv, 358 dismissed with honour, iv, 359

Kámás, Túránian hero, i, 48, 49, iii, 107, 151, 152, 161, 162, 164 seq., 168 seq., 172, 176, 178, 181 seq., 200, 207, 209, 213, 216, 224, 229, 232, 235, 241, 242, 251, 252, 256, 268, 269; iv, 297; v, 167, 199, 220

Story of, of Kashán, i, 48, iii, 108 seq.
Firdaus'D on, iii, 269 comes to the aid of Pírán, iii, 151
plan of campaign of, adopted, iii, 162 leads the attack, iii, 168 hears of the coming of Rustam, iii, 175
Rustam described by Pírán to, iii, 183
challenges Rustam, iii, 187 parleys with Rustam, iii, 188 fights, and is taken prisoner by, Rustam, iii, 189 end of, iii, 190

Kánábád, mountain, part of the Binaúd range north of Nishápúr in Khurásán.
The name may be preserved in the modern Gunabád, a village to the north of that range, iv, 23, 37, 47, 48, 51, 55, 56, 76, 88, 112 occupied by Pírán, iv, 22

Kand. See Káid.
Kándá Gáshasp, Íránian warrior, vii, 103, 122, 163 speech of, vii, 166
Kandaháár, city in southern Afgánistán, i, 286; iv, 65; v, 233 note
Kandake (Candace q.v., Kaidáfa q.v.), vi, 66

Kandaros. See Kaidrúsh.
Kandaules. See Kaidrúsh.
Kand-i-Shápúr. See Gund-i-Shápúr.

Kangha (Khárazm q.v.), country, ii, 189, 190
Kangdeí (Gang-dízíh q.v.), stronghold, ii, 189, 190
Kanír. See Tainúsh.
Kannúj (Kanaúj), city near the west bank of the Ganges in the division of Agra in the United Provinces of British India, i, 261, 357; iii, 35; iv, 278, 283, 284; v, 257; vi, 64, 207, 352; vii, 115, 119, 123, 128, 129, 134, 137, 385, 386, 390, 393, 425
conquest of, by Mahmúd, i, 99, 100 and note, 113
Sikandar reaches, vi, 110 river of, vii, 112 and note, 390 monarch of=Shangul, vii, 140
Bahram Gúr appointed heir to, vii, 143
Karabagíh (Arrán), district north of the Aras, i, 9 seat of primitive Fire-worship, i, 56
Karakh-Maíshán, town built on the lower Tigris by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 199, 291 note
Káran, son of Káwa, Íránian hero and the mythical progenitor of a family famous in Ashkánian times, i, 41, i, 207, 211, 214 seq., 344, 345, 365; ii, 11 seq., 18, 22, 119; iii, 9; iv, 146; vi, 194; viii, 168; ix, 85
takes the Castle of the Aláns, i, 223 seq.
reports his success to Minúchihír, i, 225
commands Naudar's host, i, 345
tells of his encounter with Afrásíyáb, i, 350
counsels Naudar, i, 353
GENERAL INDEX

Káran, son of Káwa, with Shídšt and Kishwád, pursues Kurákhán, i, 354
defeats and slays Bármán, i, 354
defeats Wísa, i, 357
meets and defeats Shamáśás, i, 361
bears to Zav the news of his election as Sháh, i, 370
re-appearance of, in legend, iv, 135, 146
made champion of the host, iv 149
sent by Kai Khusrau to welcome Shída, iv, 165
bears Kai Khusrau's answer to Shída, iv, 168
opposes and defeats Jahn, iv, 178
family of, vii, 171
glorification of, vii, 170
origin of, vii, 185
rivalry of, with Mihrán, vii, 185
Káran, mountain, the name given from the above hero to part of the Alburz range which lies between Mount Damíwand and Amul and formed his principality, and that of his descendants as late as and after the Muhammadan conquest, v, 112
Káran, Íránian chief, temp. Yazdagírd, son of Shápúr and Bahrám Gúr, vi, 394; vii, 86, 90
Káran, mountain-chief, viii, 189
Karap (Karpan), v, 17
meaning of, v, 14
Kara su, river, v, 14
Káraz, viii, 252 and note.
Kargasárs, a wild tribe, i, 253
and note, 277, 279, 286, 290, 294, 298, 319, 340; ii, 98; iii, 318
Karímán, Íránian hero and great-grandfather of Rustam, ii, 4, 125 and note, v, 202
Káristán, viii, 188
Karkh, suburb of Baghdad, iv, 147; ix, 85
Arab defeat at, ix, 85
Karkh=Khurram Ábád (?), vi, 327
Karkví (cf. Khákwí), a descendant of Zahhák, i, 290
attacks Sám, i, 290
slain by Sám, i, 291
Karmáll and Irmáll, Zahhák's cooks, 140
device of, i, 146
Kárnámak - i - Ardshír - i - Pápakán, Pahlaví text, vi, 14 note, 61, 198, 301, 325; vii, 380
account of, vi, 195
resembles Yátka-rí-Zarírán, vi, 196
purport of, vi, 196
portion of Sháhnáma corresponding with, vi, 196
compared with, vi, 200 seq., 205 seq., 255 seq.
Firdausí and, vi, 196
polo episode in, vi, 196
Karna právaram is, vi, 80
Karpan (Karap q.v.), v, 14
Kársán, viii, 188, 252
gates of, shut against Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 252
walls of, fall down, vii, 253
Khusrau Parwíz stays at, viii, 253
Karshipta, mythical bird, i, 235
Karsiyn, Túránian hero, iv, 10
Kárun, mountain. See Káran.
Kárún, river joining the Shat al Arab at its delta, vi, 199
note
dam on, vi, 295
Kása rúd (Kashaf q.v.), river, 147, iii, 28, 68, 69, 71, 72, 82, 105; iv, 90
barricade at the, iii, 29
burnt by Giv, iii, 73
Kashaf (Kása rád q.v.), river in north-eastern Khurásán, i, 235, 296
story of the dragon of, i, 296 seq.

Kashán (Kásán, town in Farghâna, north of the Jaxartes ?), iii, 108, 151, 170, 177, 180, 181, 188, 192, 204, 207, 224, 237, 242;
iv, 189; v, 39; vii, 331, 334
Kâmûs of, Story of, i 48, iii 108 seq.
in Túrán, iii, 108
in Irán, iii, 109
man of = Kâmûs, iii, 189
Kashán, city between Isphahân and Kum, iii, 109
Kashmar. See Kishmar.
Kashmîgân, son of Farrûkhdâd, ix, 92

Kashmîhan, place north-east of Marv, vii, 89
Bahram Gür’s victory at, vii, 90
Sûfarai’s victory at, vii, 170 note, 176

Kashmir, country, i, 113; ii, 271, 338; iii, 35, 152, 237, 251; iv, 14, 60, 65; v, 263; vii, 395, 396, 421
king of, vi, 31
monarch of, entertained by Bahram Gür, vii, 140 seq.

Kastantaniya (Constantinople), viii, 265

Kastarit. See Kyaxares.
Kaswín. See Kazwín.

Kát (Káth), one of the two capitals of Khárazm (Gurganj being the other) situated on the right bank of the Oxus, iii, 152

Katâyün (Náhid), daughter of Caesar, wife of Gushtâsp, and mother of Asfandiyár, 154, 156, ii, 3; iv, 348; v, 11, 253
referred to, i, 55; v, 205, 249, 252

Katâyún, eldest daughter of Caesar, iv, 348
Story of, 154, iv, 329 seq.
marrige of, iv, 329 seq.
dreams of Gushtâsp, iv, 329
sees and chooses Gushtâsp for her husband, iv, 330
marries Gushtâsp, iv, 331
sells a jewel, iv, 332
discovers that Gushtâsp is of royal race, iv, 340
persuades Gushtâsp to go to the Sports on Caesar’s riding-ground, iv, 349
Cæsar reproached by Gushtâsp for his unkindness to,
iv, 350
reconciled to Caesar, iv, 351
referred to, iv, 358
receives gifts from Caesar, iv, 363
goesto Irán with Gushtâsp, iv, 364
sons of, v, 32
counsels Asfandiyár, v, 168, 175
ancestry of, v, 205
Asfandiyár’s last message to, v, 249
laments over Asfandiyár, v, 252

Kâús, Sháh. See Kai Kâús.

Kâús, son of Sháh Kubád, vii, 316
Kavárazem (Gurazm q.v.), v, 12
Kavi (Kai), ii, 8
Usa, ii, 25
Kavi (Kavîg), v, 14
Kavîg (Kavî), v, 17
meaning of, v, 14

Kavi Husrawah (Kai Khusrau q.v.), iv, 137, 138
Kâvya Ushánâ (Kai Kâús, q.v.), ii, 25

Kâvyan (Kaiyân), ii, 8
Káwa, the smith, 140, i, 155 seq., 207, 214; iv, 165, 178; vii, 185; viii, 72; ix, 30
Zahhák and, Story of, 140, i, 154 seq.
revolts and goes to Farídún, i, 157
leads Farídún’s van, i, 160
flag of, i, 143, 160, 211, 217, 218, 237, 332; ii, 12, 227, 341, 349, 354, 400, 402, 405, 406, 410; iii, 25, 38, 39, 48, 84, 85, 116, 121, 126, 129, 135 seq., 149, 161; iv, 24, 25, 34, 55, 59, 92, 112, 140, 180, 226, 243, 282, 292, 359; vi, 347; vii, 250; viii, 385; ix, 30, 67
origin of, i, 157
Bízhan’s prowess with, iii, 93
half of, taken by Pírán, iii, 94
staff of, cloven by Páláswand, iii, 258
Tús confirmed in charge of, by Kai Khusráu, iv, 300
rescued by Girámí,v, 59, 69
Káwian, standard, i, 211
Kázirún, town west of Shíráz, vi, 199
Kazów, city north-west of Tíhrán, v, 30
Keratór. See Tainúsh.
Keresás, Keresásp, Iránian hero, i, 234, 235, 373; ii, 4
account of, in the Zandavasta, i, 172
later development of, i, 174
Keresavanaída (Garsíwaz q.v.), ii, 189; iv, 137
Khalaj (Khárlíkh), a Turkish tribe dwelling north of the Jaxartes and east of Táshkand, vii, 92
Khálid, famous Arab general
temp. Muhammad, v, 12
begins hostilities against Persian Empire, ix, 66
Khálid, recalled to lead Syrian campaign, iv, 66
Khallukh (cf. Khalaj), iv, 10, 156; v, 42, 58, 55, 61, 74, 90, 107, 112, 157, 242, 255
Khán of Chín, the, temp. Kai Káuš, ii, 383
Khán of Chín =Arjásp, v, 47, 51, 72
temp. Sikandar, ambassadors from, come to Dára, vi, 35
temp. Bahram Gúr, 165, vii, 49, 91, 93, 97, 101, 111
invades Irán, vii, 84
responds graciously to the Iránians’ embassage, vii, 88
gives himself up to pleasure at Marv, vii, 88
fate of, in war with Bahram Gúr, vii, 5, 90
crown of, placed in a Fire-temple, vii, 95
Khúshnawáz, son of, vii, 165
temp. Núshírwán, 168, vii, 186, 328 seq.; viii, 43, 52, 87, 89, 97 seq.
daughter of, married to Núshírwán, 168, vii, 213, 357
historically ruler of the Turks, vii, 317
relations of, with Núshírwán, vii, 88
the Haitáliános, vii, 317, 328 seq.
enbassy of, to Núshírwán, vii, 329
hears of the destruction of his embassy by the Haitáliános, vii, 330
Khán of Chín, leads forth his troops, vii, 330
defeats the Haitálians, vii, 332
Núshírwán takes counsel about, vii, 333, 334
descent of, from Afrásiyáb and Arjásp, vii, 334.
Núshírwán writes to, vii, 337
purposes to invade Írán, vii, 337
hears of Núshírwán’s advance, vii, 338
takes counsel, vii, 338
sends embassy to Núshírwán, vii, 339
hears his envoy’s account of Núshírwán, vii, 344
offers to make affinity with Núshírwán, vii, 345
attempts to outwit Núshírwán, vii, 351
gives audience to Míhrán Sitád, vii, 351
invites Míhrán Sitád to choose a wife for Núshírwán, vii, 352
consults the astrologers, vii, 354
entrusts his daughter to Míhrán Sitád, vii, 354
gives presents to Míhrán Sitád, vii, 356
parts with his daughter at the Jihún, vii, 356
daughter of, 168
described, vii, 352, 357
vacuates territory, vii, 358
Khán of Chín (see too Parmúda),
temp., Hurmuzd, Khusraw Parwiz, and Yazdagírd,
171, 173, viii, 141 seq., 190, 191, 204, 215, 220,
263 seq., 306, 316 seq., 342 seq., 346 seq., 351,
352, 356, 357, 393; ix, 87, 102
supposed war of, with Hurmuzd, viii, 72

Khán of Chín, marriage of daughter of, with Núshírwán referred to, viii, 72
letter of, viii, 77
dismissed by Hurmuzd with gifts, viii, 152
refuses advances of Bahram Chúbína, viii, 153
becomes friends with Bahram Chúbína, viii, 172
brother of, 173, viii, 190, 191
reports flight of Gurýda, viii, 351
ordered to go in pursuit, viii, 351
parley of, with Gurýda, viii, 352
daughter of, viii, 190
killed by lion-ape, 173, viii, 322, 324
queen of, viii, 190
asks Bahram Chúbína to avenge her daughter, viii,
324
disgraced, viii, 344
welcomes Bahram Chúbína, viii, 316
swears friendship with Bahram Chúbína, viii, 317
dominated by Makátúra, viii, 317
advised by Bahram Chúbína to slight Makátúra, viii, 318
views fight between Bahram Chúbína and Makátúra, viii, 320
sends gifts to Bahram Chúbína, viii, 321
refuses to give up Bahram Chúbína, viii, 329
distrust Bahram Chúbína, viii, 334
impress of seal of, obtained by Kharrád, viii, 338
burns Kulún’s kindred, viii, 334
seeks in vain for Kharrád, viii, 344
mourns for Bahram Chúbína, viii, 344
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Khán of Chín, brother of</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=Bízhan, ix, 97</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khánagí, Rúman noble</td>
<td>vii, 375, 378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leads Caesar's embassy to</td>
<td>Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khusrau Parwíz' gifts to</td>
<td>viii, 382</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>returns to Rám</td>
<td>viii, 382</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khán-i-Irmán (Arman q.v.)</td>
<td>iii, 290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khánjest (Chij ast, Urumiah), lake in Ázarbaiján</td>
<td>iv, 136, 264; vii, 282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khár (Khuvár) of Rai, district and town</td>
<td>(now Aradún), so called to distinguish it from a town of the same name in Párs, situated south-east of Tihrán</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khárazm (Khiva), country</td>
<td>ii, 189, 190; iv, 11, 12, 13, 60, 61, 72, 157, 173, 186, 287; vii, 72; vii, 238, 359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khárazmians, people</td>
<td>vii, 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kharijites, Muhammadan sect</td>
<td>i, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kharrád, Iránian hero</td>
<td>i, 365; ii, 11, 22, 33, 73, 340; iii, 115, 127, 139, 211, 273, 289; iv, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kharrád, nonce name assumed by Asfandiyár</td>
<td>v, 146, 149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kharrád, <em>temp.</em> Ardshír Pápakán, Iránian warrior</td>
<td>161, vi, 284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>takes Ardawán prisoner</td>
<td>vi, 228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>temp.</em> Bahram Gúr, Iránian chief</td>
<td>vii, 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>temp.</em> Kuháb son of Píruz, archimage</td>
<td>vii, 207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>temp.</em> Núshirwán = (?) the above</td>
<td>vii, 251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kharrád, sacred Fire</td>
<td>vi, 212 and note, 226, 391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kharrád, bower of</td>
<td>vii, 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kharrád, son of Barzín (Hurmuzd Garábzin or Galábzin), 171-173, viii, 74, 70, 158 seq., 205, 225, 257 seq., 269, 270, 331 seq., 381; ix, 4, 11, 12, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sent by Hurmuzd as envoy to Sáwa, viii, 110</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beguiles Sáwa and flees</td>
<td>vii, 111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flight of, reported to Sáwa</td>
<td>viii, 112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>counsels Bahram Chúbína</td>
<td>viii, 121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seeks, refuge</td>
<td>vii, 123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>counts Iránian slain</td>
<td>vii, 127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blames and counsels Bahram Chúbína for his behaviour to Parmáda</td>
<td>viii, 144, 146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>questions Bahram Chúbína on his adventure with the onager</td>
<td>viii, 158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flees from Balkh with archscribe</td>
<td>viii, 159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makes report of Bahram Chúbína to Hurmuzd</td>
<td>viii, 160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>real name of</td>
<td>viii, 190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waits on Khusrau Parwíz</td>
<td>viii, 252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speech of, to Caesar</td>
<td>vii, 259, 275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masters Caesar's talismans</td>
<td>viii, 274, 275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caesar's gift to</td>
<td>viii, 278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praised by Caesar</td>
<td>vii, 279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>made chief minister</td>
<td>viii, 314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speech of, to Khán</td>
<td>viii, 332</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attempts to prejudice Bahram Chúbína to the Khán</td>
<td>viii, 333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intrigues against Bahram Chúbína</td>
<td>viii, 334 seq.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cures daughter of queen of Chín</td>
<td>viii, 336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incites Kulán to kill Bahram Chúbína</td>
<td>viii, 337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asks boon of queen of Chín</td>
<td>viii, 338</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Kharrad, returns to Írán and is rewarded, viii, 345
reads out Caesar's letter to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 376
end of, ix, 4
chosen to visit Khusrau Parwíz at Taisafún, ix, 9
Ashtád and, parley with Galínúsh, ix, 11
visit Khusrau Parwíz, ix, 12
report to Shírwi, ix, 27
Kharrád, Íránian general, defeats Khazars, viii, 96
Kharrád, father of Hurmuza, ix, 102
Khashásh, Túránian hero, v, 47
made leader of the van, v, 46
Khatá (Cathay), northern China, ii, 357
Khatlán (Khuttal), a general name for the non-Muham-
madan regions to the north and east of Khurás-
án (=Haitál), more specifically a district on
the right bank of the upper Oxus west of, or
forming part of, Badakh-
shán, iii, 218, 228; iv,
65; vii, 94, 331, 339
Khátán, consort of the Khán of
Chin, vii, 5
fate of, in war with Bahram
Gúr, vii, 5
Kháwar, the West or Khurá-
sán (?), perhaps=Khár
q.v., iv, 147, 148. Cf.
Káran (mountain).
Khazar, Khazars, region and
people north of the Cau-
casus, i, 17; ii, 285; iv,
71, 316, 352 seq., 358, 361;
vi, 83, 214, 224; vii,
94, 377, 379
invasion of, vii, 72, 93
defeated, vii, 96
Khazarwán, Túránian hero, 142
Shamásás and, invade Zábu-
listán, i, 345, 358
Khazarwán parleyed with by
Mihráb to gain time, i,
358
slain by Zál, i, 360; ii, 18
Khazarwán, temp. Bahram Gúr,
king of Gilán, vii, 85
takes the Khán prisoner,
vii, 90
Khazarwán, Íránian noble, temp.
Khusrau Parwíz, speech
of, viii, 241
Khazrá, treasure, viii, 406 and
note
Khiláfat, the, i, 12 seq.
Khil'at, robe of honour, i, 82
Khír, place on the south-western
shore of Lake Nirís in
Párs, vi, 198
Khisr (Al Khídhr, q.v.), chief and
prophet, vi, 159
goes with Sikandar to the
Gloom, vi, 159
parts company with Sikand-
ar, vi, 160
finds the Fount of Life, vi,
160
Khíva (Kharazm), country, ii,
190
Khorásan. See Khurásán.
Khshowtór-saoka (Gang-dízh ?),
stronghold, ii, 189, 190
Khudai-náma (Bástán-Náma), i,
66; v, 24
Khurásán, province in north-
eastern Irán, 176, ii, 399;
iv, 148, 203; v, 28, 77;
vi, 242, 301; vii, 100,
214, 224, 237, 335; viii,
78, 94, 241, 313, 355, 369;
i, 59, 69, 87, 88, 92
Narsi made ruler of, vii,
99
governor of, viii, 75
prince of, viii, 173
Máhwi becomes master of,
ix, 114
Khurásán, chieftain, viii, 241
speech of, viii, 240
Khurásání. See Mákh.
Khurdád, ameshaspenta, i, 88;
iii, 287, 328
Khurram Ábád (Karkh?), city, vi, 327, 357 and note
Khurshid, genius and day, i, 88; v, 92 note
Khurshid, Iránian chief, vii, 270, 296
Khúshnawáz, ruler of the Haitálians, 166, vii, 194, 198, 359; viii, 75, 168, 242, 245, 267
Pírúz advances against, vii, 164
writes to Pírúz, vii, 165
appeals to Bahrám Gúr's treaty, vii, 166
prayer of, to God, vii, 167
digs a trench, vii, 67
defeats Pírúz by a feint, vii, 168
correspondence of, with Súfarai, vii, 174 seq.
defeated by Súfarai, vii, 177
takes refuge in Kuhandizh, vii, 177
sues for peace, vii, 178
releases Kubád, Arshir, and other captives, and gives up the spoil, vii, 180
Khusrau, Sháh. See Kai Khusrau.
Khusrau, Iránian noble, 163, 164, vi, 408
elected Sháh in succession to Yazdagird son of Shápúr, vi, 395; vii, 11
proposes that Bahrám Gúr shall begin the ordeal, vi, 409
does homage to Bahrám Gúr, vi, 410
honoured by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 10
Khusrau, father of Khazarwán, viii, 241, 296 (?)
horse of, story of, viii, 91
Hurrumz plots to kill, viii, 174
flees, viii, 175
adherents gather round, viii, 175
swear fealty to, viii, 176
goes to Baghádád, viii, 184
visits Hurrumz in prison, viii, 185, 198, 230
extensive historical conquests of, viii, 187
materials for reign of, in Sháhnáma, viii, 187
flight of, historical, from Ctesiphon, viii, 188
affects Christianity in exile, viii, 188
helped on terms by Emperor Maurice, viii, 188
historical campaign of, against Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 189
visits of, to Fire-temple at Shíz, viii, 190, 283, 307, 312
Nu'man bin Munzir executed by, viii, 190
triumphal arch of, viii, 192
Assurbanipal and, reigns of, compared, viii, 193
fall of, historical account of, viii, 193 seq.
atttempts of Heraclius to make peace with, viii, 194, 195
treatment of defeated generals by, viii, 194
Khusrau Parviz, prediction concerning, viii, 194
Reign of, 196, viii, 186 seq.
Note on, viii, 186 seq.
Hurmuzd's requests to, viii, 199
spies' report of Bahram Chubina to, viii, 201
takes counsel, viii, 202
marches to meet Bahram Chubina, viii, 203
interview of, with Bahram Chubina, viii, 204 seq.
attacked by Turk and saved by Gustaham, viii, 220
dissuaded from making a night-attack, viii, 224
troops of, tampered with by Bahram Chubina, viii, 226
sends away his baggage, viii, 228
combat of, with Bahram Chubina, viii, 228, 229
retreats to, and holds, the bridge of Nahrawan, viii, 228
worst Yalan-sina, viii, 229
flees to Taisafun, viii, 229
counselled by Hurmuzd, viii, 230
prepares to flee, viii, 231
takes refuge in a shrine, viii, 233
arrives at Babil, viii, 249
entertained by Kais, viii, 250
Mihran Sitad, viii, 251
town of Karsan and, viii, 252
interview of, with Hermit, viii, 254
warned against Gustaham, viii, 255, 256
welcomed by Caesar, viii, 257
takes up his abode at Warigh, viii, 257
instructs his embassy to Caesar, viii, 257
Caesar offers daughter to, viii, 266

Khusrau Parwiz, accepts Caesar's offer, viii, 269, 270
welcomes Niyahtus and Maryam, viii, 280
marches to Duk, viii, 282
Mausil and, viii, 283
returns to Duk, viii, 284
Dara Panah goes over to, viii, 286
forges letter to Bahram Chubina, viii, 286
sends corpse of Kut to Caesar, viii, 291
decides to fight without Ruman help, viii, 292, 293
arrays his host, viii, 293
resolves to fight in person, viii, 295
bodyguard of, viii, 296
leaves Bahram in charge of host, viii, 296
flees from Bahram Chubina, viii, 298
saved by Surush, viii, 299
returns to Niyahtus and Maryam, viii, 299
suspected of Christian tendencies, viii, 308
gives banquet to Niyahtus and Rumans, viii, 309
restores captured cities to Rum, viii, 312
makes Kharrad, son of Barzin, chief minister, viii, 314
proclamation of, viii, 314
demands extradition of Bahram Chubina, viii, 328
advised to send envoy to Khahn, viii, 329
resolves to put Bandwi to death, viii, 354
summons Gustaham, viii, 355
hears of Gurdya's doings, viii, 356, 358
writes to Gurdya viii, 359
hears of the death of Gustaham, viii, 362
welcomes Gurdya to court, viii, 362
GENERAL INDEX

Khusrau Parwiz, Gurdyya dresses up to please, viii, 363
warned by Shirin against Gurdyya, viii, 364
makes Gurdya overseer of royal bower, viii, 364
oppresses Rai, viii, 365
relieves Rai, viii, 368
organizes the realm, viii, 369 seq.
puts to death adherents of Bandwi and Gustaham, viii, 370
consults astrologers on birth of Shirwi, viii, 372
grieved at Shirwi's horoscope, viii, 372
consults the high priest, viii, 372
writes to Caesar, viii, 373
Caesar's embassy to, viii, 374
gives Caesar's gifts to Shirwi, viii, 381
presents to Khanagi, viii, 382
and Shirin, ix, 7
Story of, 174, viii, 382 seq.
equipage of, for the chase, viii, 384
married to Shrin, viii, 386
justifies his marriage, viii, 388
gives gilded chamber to Shirin, viii, 389
unpleased with Shirwi, viii, 390
and throne of Takedis, viii, 391 seq.
palace of, story of, viii, 400 seq.
Farghan and, viii, 401 seq.
imprisons Ruman artificers, viii, 402
releases Ruman artificers, viii, 403
treasures of, viii, 406
Guraz intrigues against, viii, 408
device of, against Guraz and Caesar, viii, 409

Khusrau Parwiz, sends Farrukhzad to the host, viii, 412
hears Kubad proclaimed Shadh, viii, 416
arms and hides in garden, viii, 417
palace of, plundered viii, 418
discovered, viii, 419
holds talk with Farrukhzad, viii, 420
recalls former presage, viii, 420
imprisoned, viii, 421
duration of reign of, viii, 421
charges against, ix, 4, 5, 9, 10
reply of, to charges, ix, 5, 14 seq.
Haram of, ix, 4, 5
last days of, Theophranes' account of, ix, 6
Shirwi's treatment of, ix, 7
sons of, executed, ix, 7, 35
imprisoned at Taisafun, ix, 9
companioned by Shirin, ix, 29
Barbad visits, ix, 29
laments over, ix, 30
steed of, ix, 30
son of, ix, 31
referred to, ix, 33 and note
kingdom of Hira abolished by, ix, 66
Muhammad's letter to, ix, 66

Khusrau and Shirin, Persian poem, viii, 192
Khusrau, father of Piruz, 175, vii, 44, 46, 48, 49, 51, 57
Khusrau, a miller, 176, ix, 99.
See Miller.

Khutan, town and district in eastern Turkistan, 146, 150, ii, 277, 288, 325, 357, 383; iii, 107, 242, 247; iv, 26, 219; viii, 84, 115, 330, 334, 359
Khutan, raided by Giv, iii, 247
monarch of, iv, 11
Afrasiyáb, iv, 230
Kai Khusrau marches
through, iv, 240
people of, make submission to Nūshirwán, vii, 360
Khuzá’ Arab tribe, vi, 65
rule of, ended by Sikandar, vi, 120
Khúzán, a king of Párs, iv, 146, 191
meets Kai Khusrau in
Sughd, iv, 255
Khúzians, people of Khúzistán, q.v., iv, 146
Khúzistán (Susiana, ’Arabistán), province at the head of the Persian Gulf, vi, 290
and note, 298, 327, 357; viii, 109 and note, 193
annexed by Arabs, ix, 68
Khuzrá, treasure, ix, 20
Khvaitük-das, i, 60
Catullus on, i, 60
Khyóns (Hvyaonas), v, 13, 25
Kibchák, region east of the Jaxátes and north of Tásh-kand, iv, 254; ix, 93
Kibtís, vi, 397 and note
Kímká, a river in Kibchák, iv, 203, 231
Kimmerians, the, i, 17
Kínam-i-Asírán, near to, or identical with, the ruins of Shús (Sús, Susa), vi, 327, 357 and note
King, the ideal, iii, 16
of kings, title of, vii, 193, 197
meaning of, in Achaemenian and Parthian times, vi, 198
assumed by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 193, 199, 254, 258, 273
of the Commons, vii, 3
piece in chess, vii, 382, 385
position of, vii, 388, 422
check to, vii, 422
mate to, vii, 423
piece in nard, vii, 382, 389
Kings, Book of, Firdausí’s, i, 43
Persian, viii, 73
Tribal. See Tribal.
Kírmán, region in southern Írán, 158, iv, 146; vi, 31, 47, 57, 59, 199, 202, 205, 245, 252; vii, 214; viii, 313
Dárá retires to, vi, 46
etymology of, vi, 204, 236
Ardshír Pápakán’s invasion of, vi, 205, 245
Kírmánsáh, title, vi, 313, 368
Kírmánsáh, city between Baghdád and Hamadán, vii, 187; viii, 192
Kírmánsáhán, city in Kírmán, south of Yazd, vi, 368
Kírwán (Karwán, district north of Jaxartes ?), ix, 93
Kírwí, Íránian noble, vii, 23
story of, vii, 22
Kishmar, place south of Nishápúr in the Kuhistán district of Khurásán, v, 35
Cypress of, v, 27
account of, v, 28, 34
Gushtasp and, v, 34
Kíshwád, Íránian hero, father of Gúdarz, 151, i, 207, 344, 355; ii, 4, 11, 12, 18, 22, 33, 70, 73, 107, 112, 138, 318, 384, 399, 404, 409; iii, 19, 24, 33, 45, 100, 121, 123, 126, 143, 154, 187, 215, 289, 302, 305, 308, 311, 327, 339; iv, 20, 32, 35, 63, 147, 174, 180, 203, 294, 310, 360, vii, 104
Káran, Shídúsh, and, pursue Kurúkhán, i, 354
sent by Zál to release the Íránian captives, i, 367
Kíshvaristán, Íránian hero, iv, 148
commands the troops from Barbaristán and Rúm, iv, 148
Kísrá, Sháh, 166. See Núshírwán.
Kitradád, Nask, i, 373
Knathaiti, Pairika, female personification of idolatry, i, 172
Kobad, Sháh. See Kubád.
Ktesias, Greek historian (5th century B.C.), vi, 13, 68 legend of Cyrus in, ii, 9; vi, 195
Gutschmid on, vi, 195 account of Semiraminis in, v, 293
Persica of, v, 293
Kubád, Iránian hero, brother of Káran, 142, i, 207 acts as Minúchihr’s scout, i, 217 parleys with Túr, i, 217 accepts Bármán’s challenge to single combat, i, 347 dissuaded by Káran, i, 347 reply of, i, 347 fights and is slain, i, 348
Kubád, Sháh. See Kái Kubád.
Kubád, son of Pírúz and father of Núshírwán, Sháh (Kobád), 166, vi, 3, 208; vii, 179 seq. and note, 226, 247; viii, 25, 46, 72, 168, 169, 245, 265, 285, 312, 369; ix, 22, 25 captivity of, among the Haitálians, vii, 160 leads the rearguard in the war with the Turkmans (Haitálians), vii, 164 taken prisoner, vii, 168 released, vii, 180 made Sháh instead of Balásh, vii, 182, 188 Reign of, 166, vii, 183 seq. Note on, vii, 183 seq. historical sketch of, vii, 183 title of, viii, 183 and note reform of taxation by, vii, 183 note, 215 with the help of Shápúr of Rai overthrows and puts Sáfárá to death, vii, 191 seq. dethroned, vii, 184, 195
Kubád, imprisoned, vii, 184 escapes, vii, 184, 197 marriage of, vii, 184, 186, 198 gives his wife a signet-ring, vii, 198 cedes Chaghán to the Haitálians in return for their help, vii, 198 goes to Ahwáz, vii, 198 hears of the birth of Núshírwán, vii, 199 marches on Taisafún, vii, 199 pardons the Iránians and Jámásp, vii, 200 makes Rizmihr chief minister, vii, 200 wars of, with Rúm, vii, 187, 200 takes cities from Rúm, vii, 200 makes his capital at Madá’in, vii, 201 builds a city and hospital, vii, 201 drought in reign of, vii, 201 Mazdak and, vii, 184, 201 seq. Mazdak’s parable to, vii, 201 converted by Mazdak, vii, 184, 204 presides over the disputation between Núshírwán and Mazdak, vii, 207 gives judgment against Mazdak, vii, 208 hands over Mazdak and his followers to Núshírwán, vii, 208 repentance of, vii, 209 testament of, vii, 210, 316 age of, vii, 210 death of, vii, 210 sons of, vii, 316
Kubád (Shírwíq.v.), son of Kuhsrau Parwiz and Maryam, Sháh, 175, viii, 190, 196; ix, 3 seq., 9, 11, 12, 14, 24, 32, 47, 64
Kubád (Shírwí), secret and public names of, viii, 371, 416
proclaimed Sháh, viii, 416
imprisons Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 421
accedes to throne, viii, 421
Reign of, 175, ix, 3
Note on, ix, 3
tragic, ix, 3
pestilence during, ix, 3
boorishness of, ix, 3
difficult situation of, ix, 3
reproached by his sisters, ix, 7
Kubád, son of Jam son of Kubád, vii, 316
plot to make, Sháh, vii, 316
Kubard, Túránian hero, iv, 190
commands the left, iv, 190
Kúch, tribe or town (Kúk ?) in Kírmán, ii, 226
Kúfa, city west of the Euphrates and in the neighbourhood of Mashád 'Ali (Nedjef), viii, 190; ix, 68, 69
wood of, vi, 381
founded by Sa’ad, ix, 67
Kúh, nonce name assumed by Húmán, iii, 198
Kuhandízh (Baigand q.v.), vii, 177
Khúshnawá茲 takes refuge in, vii, 177
Kuhilla, Túránian hero, iv, 181
slain by Minúchíhr, iv, 181
Kuhistán, generally a mountainous region, particularly that of northern Iran, Parthia, or of the high ranges further south, but in the Sháhnáma=Má wara’un-Nahr (Transoxania), ii, 199
Kuhrám, Túránian hero, 151, ii, 349
chosen to fight with Barta, iv, 97; v, 29
slain by Barta, iv, 105
Kuhrám, brother or son of Arjásp, 156, v, 29, 58, 89 seq., 106 seq., 112, 141, 159
Kuhrám, commands one wing of the host, v, 46
in chief, v, 36
sent by Arjásp to attack Balkh, v, 90
troops of, storm Balkh, burn the Fire-temple, and slay Zardušht and the priests, v, 92
stationed on the left, v, 95
mortally wounds Farshídward, v, 95
appointed by Arjásp to send away the spoil of Balkh in the charge of his younger brothers, v, 108
commands the right, v, 110
defeated by Asfandiýár, v, 110
bidden to prepare for war, v, 151
retreats to the Brazen Hold, v, 152
mistakes Bishútan for Asfandiýár, v, 152
hears the cries of the Iranían watch from the Brazen Hold and takes counsel with Andarímán, v, 155
makes for the Brazen Hold with his troops, v, 156
pursued by Asfandiýár, v, 156
encountered and taken prisoner by Asfandiýár, v, 157
executed, v, 158 and note
Kujárá, city and province on the Persian Gulf, vi, 205, 206, 232
Haftwád migrates from, to stronghold, vi, 235
Kuhbád, Túránian hero, brother of Pirán, 146, 151, i, 92, 342; ii, 18, 204, 388; iii, 166, 177, 198, 199, 205, 210, 222, 231, 234, 252; iv, 10, 26
wounded by Zál, i, 361
death and revival of, in legend, ii, 119
GENERAL INDEX

Kulbád, pursues Kai Khusrau, ii, 377 seq.
chosen to fight with Faríburz, iv, 97
slain by Faríburz, iv, 99
Kulún, Túránian hero, i, 382, 387
sent by Afrásiyáb to intercept Rustam, i, 383
slain by Rustam, i, 386
Kulún, Turk in league with Khrrád against Bahrm Chúbína, 173, viii, 335
incited by Khrrád to kill Bahrm Chúbína, viii, 337
arrives at Marv by help of Khán’s seal, viii, 339
seeks interview with Bahrrm Chúbína, viii, 339
stabs Bahrm Chúbína, viii, 340
maltreated, viii, 340
kindred of, burnt, viii, 344
Kum, city in Irák ‘Ájami, between Tíhrán and Kasán, ii, 399
bestowed on Gív by Kai Káús, ii, 399
Kai Khusrau, iv, 298
Kumár, city or cape in India, ii, 103 and note
Kundrav, minister of Zahhák, 140
mythological origin of, i, 143
Fáridún and, Story of, 140, i, 164
goes to Zahhák with tidings of Fáridún, i, 165
Kundur, Túránian hero, iii, 152, 185, 210, 215, 251; v, 112,
worsted by Rustam, iii, 224
stationed on the right, v, 94
Kunduz (Kuhändizh, Baigand q.v.), iv, 151
Afrásiyáb encamps at, iv, 151
marches from, iv, 154
Kur (Cyrus), river in Transcaucasia flowing into the Caspian sea, v, 13
Kuraish, Arab tribe, vi, 65
Kurákhán, son of Afrásiyáb, i, 92; iv, 10
counsels Afrásiyáb, iii, 301
summoned and sent with troops to Bukhárá by Afrásiyáb, iv, 154
joined by Afrásiyáb, iv, 186
defeated by Gustaham son of Naudar, iv, 193
defeat of, announced to Afrásiyáb, iv, 194
Kurákhán, governor of Balkh, viii, 22
Kurán, vi, 65; vii, 277 note; ix, 81 and note
quoted, i, 99; v, 166; vii, 42, 192; ix, 81 and note
references to Alexander the Great in, vi, 15, 78, 84
legend of Moses and the salt fish in, vi, 77
Gog and Magog in, vi, 78
Kurd, Kurds, the people of Kurdistán q.v., 161, i, 9; vi, 193, 203, 257
language, i, 64
legend of the origin of the, i, 146
Ardshir Pápakán’s war with, in Kárnámk, vi, 196, 206, 256
Sháhnáma, vi, 230 seq.
Kurdistán, mountainous region north of Mesopotamia, vi, 330
Kurdzád, daughter of Míhrak q.v.
Kuria Muria Islands, off the southern coast of Arabia, vi, 72
Kurákhán, Túránian warrior, i, 353
sent by Afrásiyáb to attack Párs, i, 353
Kurus, Indian tribal race, iv, 388
Kús, i, 177. See Tammísha.
Kút, Rúman warrior, 172, viii, 281, 289, 291
slain by Bahrm Chúbína viii, 290
Kút, corpse of, sent back to Rúmáns, viii, 291
Kutch (read Kúch g.v.), iii, 34
Kutíb, father of Husain (or Hā'īy) one of Firdausí’s patrons, i, 35; ix, 121
Kyaxares (Kasterit), king or chief and leader in the confederacy that overthrew Nineveh, i, 18

L

Labarum, the, v, 306 note
Ládan (Pashan), battle of, iii, 13 seq., 80 seq., 89 seq., 123; iv, 27, 37, 90, 120, 299
LAGOS, Ptolemy son of. See Ptolemy.
Lahhák, Táranían hero, brother of Pírán, 152, i, 92; ii, 323 note; iii, 90, 166, 198; iv, 7, 71, 122, 125, 133, 160, 162
summons Pírán to save Farangís, ii, 322
pursues the Iránians to Mount Hamáwan, iii, 135
commands with Farshídward the right wing, iv, 26
attacks the Iránians in flank, iv, 82
opposed by Gurgín, iv, 83
goes to help Pírán and attacks Gív, iv, 85
prowess of, iv, 86
put in chief command with Farshídward, iv, 94
Pírán’s instructions to, iv, 95
Farshídward and, hear of the death of Pírán and the coming of Kái Khusráu, iv, 112
lament for Pírán, iv, 112
take counsel with the host, iv, 113
fight, and escape from, Iránian outpost, iv, 116

Lahhák, Farshídward and, referred to, iv, 118, 120, 126
repose themselves, iv, 121
corpses of, brought back by Bízhan, iv, 120, 132
deaths of, announced to Afrásiyáb, iv, 152
Lambak, a water-carrier, 164
entertains Bahrám Gúr, vii, 13 seq.
rewarded by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 20
Land of Darkness. See Gloom.
Land-tax, Mahmúd’s remission of, vi, 196, 208
Núshirwán’s reform of, vii, 215, 225
Latin version, early, of Pseudo-Callisthenes. See Julius Valerius.
Launderer, a, foster-father of Dáráb, 158, v, 292
finds Dáráb in the Farášt, v, 296
Dáráb adopted by, and his wife, v, 297
quilts his home with wife and Dáráb and settles elsewhere, v, 298
becomes wealthy but sticks to trade, v, 298
perturbed at Dáráb’s youthful escapades, v, 298
brings up Dáráb to be a cavalier, v, 299
Dáráb’s lack of natural affection for, v, 300
wife of, informs Dáráb of his case, v, 300
Rashnawád sends for, and his wife, v, 304
informed by, of the case of Dáráb, v, 308
visits, with his wife, Dáráb at his accession, v, 311
dismissed with gifts, v, 312
Lázhawardí, fort, ix, 93
Lazica, region on the eastern shore of the Black Sea, vii, 215; viii, 194
Lazic war, renewed by Hur-muzd, viii, 76
Bahram Chubina defeated in, vii, 76
Leech of Kaid, 159. See Kaid.
Legend, Syriac Christian, of Alexander. See Syriac.
Leo, constellation, ii, 405; iii, 81, 318; vi, 172, 180; vii, 410; viii, 122, 394
Libra, constellation, i, 310; vi, 97
Life, Fount of. See Fount.
Water of, 160. Id.
Plutarch's, of Alexander the Great, vi, 67
Lion, lions, slain by Rakhs, I43, ii, 45
Asfandiyar, 156, v, 125
Bahram Gur, 163-165, vii, 55, 77
-Ape, 173, vii, 322 seq.
Lion's House, constellation of Leo, i, 188
Lion's Mouth, the, place, iv, 245
Loadstone, chamber of, viii, 275
suspended cavalier in, viii, 275
Longimanus (Dirazdast), title of Artaxerxes I, son of Xerxes, v, 281
Lucerne (Medicago sativa), tax on, vii, 215
Luch, perhaps = Kuch q.v., vii, 362
captives from, settled at Sursan, vii, 328
Luhrasp, Shah, 154, I55, i, 42; ii, 3, 9; iv, 57, 65, 135, 337, 347, 350 seq.; v, 10, 20, 21 and note, 26, 29, 36, 38, 64, 68, 80, 86, 87, 90 seq., 98 seq., 104, 114, 141, 154, 155, 157, 159, 160, 167, 171, 180, 183, 203, 208, 243, 255, 281, 284; vi, 55, 200; viii, 95, 148, 213, 270, 392; ix, 104
sent to the Alan by Kai Khusrau, iv, 14
Luhrasp, successes of, iv, 60, 71
troops of, recalled, iv, 145
ominated by Surush to be Kai Khusrau's successor, iv, 281
crowned by Kai Khusrau, iv, 300
Zal's protest against the succession of, iv, 301
succession of, justified by Kai Khusrau, iv, 301
acknowledged by Zal, iv, 302
the chiefs, iv, 303
undertakes to respect Kai Khusrau's wives, iv, 305
counseled and farewelled by Kai Khusrau, iv, 306
addresses the chiefs, iv, 311
receives the fealty of Zal and other chiefs, iv, 312
praises and rewards Zal, iv, 312
coronation of, iv, 312
Reign of, 154, iv, 314 seq.
Note on, iv, 314 seq.
harangues the chiefs, iv, 316
makes Balkh his capital, iv, 317
builds the Fire-temple of Barzin, iv, 318
shows favour to the grandsons of Kai Kalus, iv, 318, 321 seq.
refuses to appoint Gush tasp his heir, iv, 319
sends Zarir in pursuit of Gush tasp, iv, 320
pardons Gush tasp, iv, 322
hears of Gush tasp's flight, iv, 323
consults Zarir and the sages, iv, 323
searches in vain for Gush tasp, iv, 324
receives Kalus, Caesar's envoy, in audience, iv, 357
entertains Kalus, iv, 357
consults Zarir, iv, 358
questions Kalus, iv, 358
Luhrasp, dismisses Kâlús with honour, iv, 359
sends Zarir with other chiefs on a mission to Rûm, iv, 359.
message of, to Caesar, iv, 361, welcomes and crowns Gush-
tâsp on his return to Irân, iv, 364
resigns the throne to Gush-
tâsp and becomes a devotee, v, 31
converted by Zarduhsht, v, 33
advises Gushtâsp to resign the kingship to Asfan-
diyâr, v, 66
opposes Kuhrâm, v, 91
slain, v, 91, 93, 99
Asfandiyâr's vow to avenge, v, 103
Lumsden, his edition of the Shâhnâmâ, i, 76
Luna. *See* Moon.

**M**

Ma, Hittite goddess, vi, 71
=Cybele, vi, 71
priestesses of =Amazon, vi, 71
Macan, his edition of the Shâhnâmâ, i, 76; vi, 60
Mace, Faridûn's, i, 161, 163, 165, 168
the making of, i, 158
Macedonia, vi, 81, 82
Macedonian invasion of the East, vi, 68, 69
Máchín (China), ii, 337 note, 370, 394; iii, 46, 253, 265; iv, 151, 203, 229, 231, 234, 252; v, 142, 145; viii, 417; ix, 107
Machine, flying, of Kai Kâûs, ii, 103
Macrianus, Praetorian prefect, vi, 294
treachery of, to Valerian, vi, 294

M'Crinlde, *Ancient India* of, quoted, vi, 68, 80
Mâdâ. *See* Medes.
Mâdâ'ın, Ctesiphon (Taisafân), and the neighbouring cities, 167, 174, vii, 201, 244; 266, 272, 337, 363; viii, 4, 46, 192, 193
Nûshîrwân sends his Rûman captives to, vii, 259
palace of Khusrau Parwiz at, story of, viii, 400
Mâdik, king of the Kurds, meaning of, vi, 203, 256
Mâdîfryaâl, mountain, part of the Alburz range, south-east of the Caspian, v, 30
Magi, priests of the Medes (Mâdâ), i, 9; ii, 190; vi, 372, 373; vii, 171, 184
preservers of tradition, i, 56, 60
meaning of name, i, 56 and note
rise to power of, i, 58
influence of, declines after the Greek conquest, i, 59
principal seats of, i, 60
literature of, i, 61
language of, i, 64
compile the prose Shâh-
nâmâ for Âbû Mansûr, i, 69
advocates of next-of-kind marriage, ii, 189
Magian, Magians, vii, 60
chant, vii, 60
fire, vii, 409
Magic, i, 51
derivation of, i, 56
sympathetic, i, 8
Magism, v, 11
Magog. *See* Gog.
Magphony, import of, i, 59
Magus. *See* Magi.
Mahabhârata, Indian Epic, iii, 8; iv, 316; vi, 31, 80
the passing of the five Pandavas in, compared with that of Kai Khusrau, iv, 138
Máh Áfríd, grandmother of Minúchîhr, i, 205
Máh Áfríd, daughter of Tûr, iv, 304
Máh Áfríd, daughter of Barzín, vii, 53
  married to Bahram Gûr, vii, 53
Máh Ázar, scribe, viii, 81
Máhán, Irâniân noble, v, 260, 263
Mahbûd (Mebohes), minister of Kubad and Nûshîrwan, 168; viii, 213
  instrumental in making Nûshîrwan Shâh, vii, 316
  Nûshîrwan’s treasurer, vii, 319
  sons of, vii, 319
  serve Nûshîrwan’s meals, vii, 319, 321
  wife of, prepares Nûshîrwan’s food, vii, 321, 322
  envied by Zûrân, vii, 319
  fall of, vii, 317, 322
  Nûshîrwan’s repentance with regard to, vii, 317, 325
Máh-i-Ázâda Khú, wife of Tûr, i, 188
  meaning of, i, 188 note
Máhiyár, minister of Dárá, vi, 52
  murders Dárá, vi, 52
  tells Sikandar of the murder, vi, 52
  arrested by Sikandar, vi, 53
  executed, vi, 56, 88
Máhiyár, Irâniân noble, vii, 38
  praises Bahram Gûr, vii, 38
Máhiyár, a jeweller, 164, vii, 55
  daughter of. See Árzû.
  entertains Bahram Gûr, vii, 59 seq.
Mahmûd, Sultân (A.D. 999-1030), i, 100; iii, 15:
  viii, 24
  account of, i, 21
  brothers of, i, 21, 114
  Firdausi’s praise of, 139, 152, 155, 156, 160, 161:
  i, 29 seq., 112 seq.; iv, 135 seq., 139; v, 30, 89,
  118, 262; vi, 20, 107, 279, 292, 370; vii, 277; ix, 122
  Firdausi’s feeling against, i, 33; vi, 62, 92 seq. and note
  Satire on, i, 23, 40 seq.
  alleged ill treatment by, i, 33, 36 seq.; vii, 431
  alleged repentance of, i, 45;
  iv, 8
  occasion of, iv, 8
  approves of Firdausi’s version of the fight between Rustam and Ashkabûs, iii, 109
  remission of the land-tax by, vi, 186, 208
Mahraspand, father of Ádârbâd, v, 16 note
Mahrwî, viii, 248
Máhwî (=Shâhwî ?), one of Firdausi’s authorities, i, 67; vii, 382
Máhwî, Persian chief, 176, ix, 70, 74, 89, 95, 97, 100 seq., 118
  described, ix, 87
Farrukhzad entrusts Yazdagird to, ix, 95
accepts charge of Yazdagird, ix, 96
becomes disaffected to Yazdagird, ix, 96
writes to Bûzhan, ix, 96, 116
betrays Yazdagird, ix, 97, 98, 116, 117
quest of, for Yazdagird, ix, 100
has tidings of Yazdagird, ix, 101
consults his warriors, ix, 106
son of, counsels, ix, 107
receives Balkh and Harât, ix, 115
governor of Marv, ix, 120
put to death with his sons, ix, 120
sends miller to slay Yazdagird, ix, 107, 116
Máhwí, sends troops after miller with instructions, ix, 107
troops of, strip corpse of Yazdagird, ix, 108
hears of death of Yazdagird, ix, 108
bids miller throw corpse of Yazdagird into stream, ix, 108
slays monks, ix, 113
consults his intimates and minister, ix, 113
advised by his minister, ix, 113
claims the throne on false pretences, ix, 114
becomes master of Khurásán, ix, 114
evil rule of, ix, 114
makes war on Bízhan, ix, 115
conduct of, to Barsám, ix, 117
crosses Oxus and camps at Baigand, ix, 118
flees, ix, 118
overtaken by Barsám, ix, 118
captured by Barsám, ix, 119
put to death by Bízhan, ix, 120
Mai, city in Turkistán, i, 252, 256, 261; iv, 278, 284; vii, 91, 331, 385, 421
Mai, king of Hind, vii, 395, 396, 399, 401, 403, 404
Maidán, riding-ground, i, 83
Maidhyó-maungha, cousin and first convert to Zardulsht, v, 17
Mail of Siyáwush, iii, 58, 60, 61, 69, 81; iv, 40, 41, 44, 45, 51
referred to, iv, 42, 43
Maishán (Mesene), a small state on the lower Tigris, vi, 199
Májú (Magog), 160. See Yájúj.
Makátúra, Turkman chief, 173.
Makátúra, slighted by the Khán, viii, 318
challenges Bahram Chúbína, viii, 319
fight of, with Bahram Chúbína, viii, 320
Mákh, viii, 71, 78
Makhzúm, place, 93
Makná Bád, city, iii, 109
Makrán (Gedrosia, Balúchistán), country on the shore of the Arabian Sea, ii, 80, 82; iv, 136, 203, 231, 234, 237 seq., 254; vi, 182, 202, 397; vii, 390; viii, 393, 417
king of, 153, iv, 238 seq.
refuses facilities to Kai Khusrau, iv, 239, 242
buried by Kai Khusrau, iv, 243
Kai Khusrau marches upon, iv, 241
stops pillage of, iv, 243, 244
prepares a fleet in, iv, 244
sails for Gang-dízh from, iv, 245
returns to, iv, 251
goes to Chín from, iv, 251
Alexander the Great's return by, productive of marvels, vi, 69
etymology of, vi, 69
Malcolm, Sir John, identification and description of Mount Sipand by, i, 236; v, 30
version of Suhráb by, ii, 118
on the scene of the death of Bahram Gúr, vii, 6
Málika, daughter of Táír, vi, 3, 324
legend of, vi, 323, 330 seq.
offers to betray her father's stronghold to Shápúr, vi, 331
makes the garrison drunk, vi, 333
opens the gate to Shápúr, vi, 333
Málka, goes to Shápúr's camp, vi, 333
Mamigonian, Armenian family, viii, 188
Mámún, Khalífá, i, 14; vii, 382, 430
Man, the First (Gáyúmárt q.v.), i, 5
on the nature of, i39, i, 104
of Sigz (Rustam), ii, 100 and note
Man, weight, i, 290 and note; vii, 148 and note, 314, 399
Manáchíhr, i, 206 note
Manda, nomads, i, 18
confused with the Madá (Medes), i, 18; vi, 194
empire of the—empire of the Medes, ii, 191
Mandane, daughter of Astyages, ii, 190
—Farangís in legend, ii, 191
Mandanes (Dandamis, Kait, Kai-
han, Kand, Kaid q.v.), vi, 61
Onésícritus and, vi, 61
identical with Kaid, vi, 62
Mání, heresiarch, i63, ii, 19 note;
v, 118 and note; vi, 307; vii, 188
account of, vi, 327
-gate, vi, 327, 359
teaching of, vi, 328
disputation of, with the high
priest, vi, 358
executed, vi, 359
Manicheism, ii, 19 note
Manfíza, daughter of Afrásiyáb,
150, iii, 285, 295 seq., 304,
308 seq., 348, 349
Bízhan and, Story of, 150,
iii, 7, 12
historical basis of, iii, 11
Mohl on, iii, 285
Firdausí on, iii, 287
referred to, viii, 72
sends her nurse to Bízhan,
iii, 297
invites Bízhan to visit her,
iii, 298
drugs Bízhan, iii, 299

Manízá, wakes Bízhan in Afrási-
yáb's palace, iii, 300
holds revel with Bízhan, iii,
300
disgraced, iii, 309
made Bízhan's attendant,
iii, 310
referred to, iii, 318, 319
hears of the arrival of Rus-
tam's caravan, iii, 337
interviews of, with Rustam,
iii, 337, 342
bears Rustam's ring to
Bízhan, iii, 340
kindles signal fire for Rus-
tam, iii, 344
receives gifts from Kai
Khusrau, iii, 356
Máshúr, Túránian hero, iii, 161,
165, 172, 182, 185, 199,
205, 210, 213, 226, 231,
241, 251, 256
comes to the aid of Pirán,
iii, 151
hears of the coming of Rus-
tam, iii, 175
Mansion of Gushtásp, Fire-tem-
ple, v, 75
Mánsur bin Núh, Sámanid prince
(A.D. 961—976), i, 20, 21
v, 21; vii, 5
Manúshán, a king in Párs, iv,
146, 180, 191
Manúshíhr (Minúchíhr), i, 338
Mánwári, viii, 253
Marathi, Scythian people, iv, 315
Marchlord, ill-disposed, oppre-
resses Rai, 174, viii, 366
destroy gutters and cats,
viii, 366
recalled, viii, 368
Marcian (Bátárún q.v.), vii, 41
Marco Polo, Venetian traveller
(A.D. 1254—1324), vi, 74
Mardánsháh, (Yalán-síná q.v.),
vii, 74, 76; ix, 5, 6
son of, ix, 5, 6
conspires against Khosrau
Parviz, ix, 6
mutilation and execution of,
ix, 6

VOL. IX.
Mardánsháh (Mardásas), son of Shírín, viii, 189, 191, 193, 196; ix, 39
execution of, ix, 7
Mardás, father of Zahhák, Story of, 140, i, 135 seq.
murdered by Zahhák, i, 137
Mardásas. See Mardánsháh.
Mardwí, Túránian hero, iii, 77
Mardwí, Persian official, viii, 21
Mardwí, gardener, viii, 397
Margh, city in Turkistán, i, 256; iv, 278, 284; vii, 91, 331, 412, 421
Mark, birth. See Birthmark.
Marriage, next of kin (Khvaitúk-das), i, 60; ii, 189; v, 17
Mars, planet, i, 72, 276, 332, 339; ii, 247, 407; iii, 110, 159, 178, 318, 332; vii, 92, 252, 418; viii, 395; ix, 73, 89
Martyropolis, ceded by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 188
Márusípand, palace, ix, 11
Máruát, angel, iii, 286
Marv, oasis and city in ancient northern Khurásán, now in Turkistán, 173, i, 45; ii, 101; v, 29, 290, 261, 263; vii, 174, 357; viii, 20, 93, 173, 336, 337, 346 seq., 352, 356; ix, 70, 89, 116, 117
eyearly seat of Aryan civilization, i, 7
as rhyme-word, vii, 88 note
Khán reaches, vii, 88
Bahram Gúr marches on, vii, 89
Ázád Sarv finds Búzurjmihr at, vii, 283
traditional scene of Yazdagird's death, ix, 70
Yazdagird at, ix, 97, 116
sage of, ix, 110
apothegm of, ix, 110
conduct of Máhí to Barsám at, ix 117
Guráz, son of Máhí, governor of, ix, 120
Marvell, quoted, viii, 399 note
Marvrúd (Murgháb), river in Khurásán flowing into and forming the Marv oasis, ii, 228; iv, 255; viii, 92
Mary, Maryam, mother of Jesus, viii, 276 note, 277 note
Maryam, daughter of César, 173, 174, viii, 188, 192, 276 note, 278, 279, 373, 374, 380, murder of, viii, 193, 389
referred to, viii, 255, 266, 269, 270, 371, 381, 389
counseled by César, viii, 279, 280
Niyátús put in charge of, viii, 280
as peace-maker, viii, 310
Mashad, city in Khurásán, ii, 189
Máshya and Máshyóí, the offspring of Gáiumart, the first man, i, 117, 131
Masius, Mount, viii, 41
Massagetae, tribe, iii, 192
Masúdí, Arabic historian (died A.D. 956), v, 293; vi, 62, 63, 82, 193, 257, 313, 315; vii, 3, 4, 6, 153, 280
version of the death of Rustam by, v, 261
genealogies of Pápak according to, vi, 200
'Book of Indication and Revision' by, vi, 252
apologue of the owls by, vi, 310
parentage of Yazdagird son of Shápur according to, vi, 371
account of the fortifications at Darband by, vii, 215
origin of the game of nárd according to, vii, 382
origin of the game of chess according to, vii, 382
on Búzurjmihr, viii, 71
Maundeville, Sir John, vi, 13, 72
Maurice, Eastern Roman Emperor, viii, 187, 188
Maurice, helps Khusrav Parwiz on terms, viii, 188
murder of, viii, 193
Mausil, Armenian prince, viii, 188, 189, 248, 282, 295
entertains Bandiw, viii, 249
Khusrav Parwiz and, viii, 283
referred to, viii, 293 and note
Má wara 'u'n-Nahr (Kustán q.v., Transoxania), ii, 19, 199; iii, 151
Maximian, Roman Emperor, viii, 188
Mayam, place, iii, 40, 41, 53, 111
Mayors of the palace, Oriental, i, 14
Mazaga, Indian city, vi, 65
taken by Alexander the Great, vi, 65
Mázaná (Mázaná, q.v.), ii, 28
Mázaná, region lying between the Alburz range and the Caspian, i, 143, i, 4, 5, 12, 253, 279, 290, 294, 296, 298, 319, 323, 339, 378; ii, 25 seq., 33, 34, 36 seq., 45, 55, 60 seq., 60 seq., 75, 76, 78, 81, 93, 105, 139, 143 seq., 293, iii, 144, 167, 207, 215; 232, 243, 256, 260, 324, 330; iv, 86, 136, 296, 299; v, 116, 117, 203, 207, 220; vi, 373; vii, 215; viii, 48; ix, 74
approach to, from Irán, ii, 28
description of, ii, 27
king of, i, 143, ii, 39, 43, 54, 62 seq.
interview of, with Rustam, ii, 67
fight of, with Rustam, ii, 73
transforms himself into a rock, ii, 74
death of, ii, 75
Mázaná, a native of, or pertaining to, Mázaná, iii, 320
Mazda, Ahura. See Ahura.
Mazdak, heresiarch, 166, i, 63; vii, 184, 185
disputation of, with Núshírwan, vii, 188, 206 seq.
account of, vii, 188, 201
becomes chief minister to Kubad, vii, 201
influence of, over Kubad, vii, 201
parable of, to Kubad in time of drought, vii, 201
practical application of Kubad's reply by, vii, 202
converts Kubad, vii, 204
preaching and practice of, vii, 204
attempt of, to convert Núshírwan, vii, 205
Kubad decides against, vii, 208
executed with his followers by Núshírwan, vii, 208
Mazdakism, vii, 184
Mazdakites, vii, 184
great assembly of, vii, 205
massacre of, vii, 185, 208
Mebodes. See Mahbúd.
Mecca, city, v, 31, 166; vi, 120; ix, 69
Sikandar's visit to, vi, 64, 119 seq.
account of, vi, 64
Medea, land of, i, 57
Mede, Medes (Madá), Aryan people, i, 7, 10, 17, 56, 58, 72; vi, 194, 203
account of, i, 9
confused with the Manda (nomads), i, 18; vi, 194
empire of the = empire of the Manda, i, 17; ii, 191
Media, iv, 315; vi, 31; vii, 6; Magna, vi, 201, 203, 256
vii, 214
Median, vi, 195
Median, language (Zend), i, 64 seq.
empire, ii, 9; vi, 194
Mediterranean, the, vi, 294
Megara, city in Greece, vi, 323
legend concerning, vi, 323

Megasthenes, Greek writer, temp. Alexander the Great, vi, 68

Meherdates (Milád), Parthian prince, iii, 10 seg.

Memphis, Egyptian city, vi, 82
corpse of Alexander the Great taken to, vi, 82

Merchant, a, 164
entertains and displeases Bahrám Gūr, vii, 39
made the slave of his own apprentice, vii, 42

Merchants, Iránian, made accessories to Bahrám Gūr's flight from Hind, vii, 133, 134
Mercury, planet, i, 72; iii, 159, 318; vi, 243; vii, 171, 224; viii, 299, 395; ix, 73
Meroe, island and city of, vi, 13, 65

Meru, mythical mountain, iv, 139
Mesopotamia, vi, 30, 294, 321
Arab invasions of, iii, 14
annexed by Arabs, ix, 68
Mesopotamian desert, vi, 322
Messiah, the, viii, 267

Mih-Ázar-Gushnasp, minister of Ardshír, son of Shírúm, in Arabic Tabari, ix, 43
put to death, ix, 43

Mihr, month and day, i, 88, 89, 174, 175, 232; vi, 24, 33, 55
Mihr, feast, ix, 40

Mihr, sacred Fire. See Mihr Barzín.

Mihr Ázar, priest, vii, 188, 206
assists Núshírwán in his disputation with Mazdak, vii, 206

Mihr Barzín, sacred Fire and Fire-temple, vi, 201, 212
and note
established by Gushtásp, v, 34

Mihr Barzín, Iránian warrior, temp. Bahrám Gūr, vii, 85

Mihr Bídád, Iránian magnate, vii, 21
entertains Bahrám Gūr, vii, 22

Mihr 'Hasis, minister of Ardshír, son of Shírúm, in Persian Tabari, ix, 43
put to death, ix, 43

Mihr Hurmuzd, Iránian noble, 175, viii, 196; ix, 34
account of, ix, 5
referred to, ix, 6, 33
conspires against Khosrau Parwíz, ix, 6
put to death, ix, 7
described, ix, 33

Mihr-i-Núsh, second son of Asfandiyár, ii, 3; v, 80, 283
slain by Farámarz, v, 227
death of, reported to Asfandiyár by Bahan, v, 227
corpse of, sent to Gushtásp, v, 232

Mihr-i-Núsh, Persian sage, vii, 270
quoted, vii, 270

Mihr-i-Núsh, ix, 103
pleads with Māhwí for Yazdagird, ix, 103

Mihr Narsí, chief minister of Bahrám Gūr and of his son Yazdagird, vii, 4, 153
sons of, vii, 4

Mihr Pirúz, Iránian warrior, temp. Bahrám Gūr, vii, 85

Mihráb, king of Kábúl, 141, 142, i, 234, 361; ii, 12, 14, 18, 21
visited by Zál, i, 256
tributary to Sám, i, 256
daughter of (Rúdába), i, 257, v, 203
praises Zál to Síndukht, i, 260
hears from Síndukht of the loves of Zál and Rúdába, i, 284
reproaches Rúdába, i, 289
Sám sent against, i, 292
| Mihráb, hears of Sám's coming, i, 292, 299 |
| --- | --- |
| Minúchíhr's assent to Zál's marriage, i, 314 |
| felicitates Síndukht, i, 315 |
| Síndukht and, prepare to welcome Sám and Zál, i, 314 |
| entertain Sám and Zál, i, 317 |
| visit Sám, i, 319 |
| hears of the birth of Rustam, i, 323 |
| goes with Zál and Rustam to meet Sám, i, 324 |
| parleys with Shamásás and Khazarwán to gain time, i, 358 |
| writes to summon Zál, i, 359 |
| Mihrák, Tribal King, i61, vi, 3, 199, 237, 238, 257, 267, 268, 270, 272, 273; vi, 185, 192 |
| =Mithrák, vi, 206 |
| slain by Ardshír Pápákán, vi, 241 |
| daughter of, i61, vi, 3, 241, 256, 257, 268 seq., 272 |
| escapes, vi, 241, 256, 268 |
| referred to in Kaid's prophecy, vi, 267 |
| discovered by Shápúr, vi, 268 seq. |
| informs Shápúr of her birth, vi, 270 |
| marries Shápúr, vi, 270 |
| birth of her son Urmuzd, vi, 271 |
| =Mithrák=Mádik=Arda-wán (?), vi, 256 |
| importance of, in legend, vi, 257, 267; viii, 72, 73 |
| Mihrák, servant of Núshírwán, viii, 18 19 |
| Mihrán, Indian sage, i59, vi, 91, 97 |
| consulted by Kaid about his dreams, vi, 92 seq. |
| interprets Kaid's dreams, vi, 94 seq. |
| Mihrán, family, vii, 156 |
| importance of, viii, 72, 73 |
| proverb on, vii, 185 |
| account of, vii, 185 |
| rivalry of, with family of Káran, vii, 185 |
| men of mark among the, vii, 186, 187; viii, 74 |
| Mihrán, treasurer to Yazdagírd son of Shápúr, vi, 387 |
| Mihrán, Iránian general, vii, 251 |
| commands the centre of Núshírwán's host, vii, 251 |
| Mihrán, archsibyte, viii, 76 |
| sent with Bahrán Chúbína, viii, 106 |
| counsels Bahrán Chúbína, viii, 122 and note |
| seeks refuge, viii, 123 |
| congratulates Bahrán Chúbína, viii, 129 |
| takes counsel with Kharrád, viii, 159 |
| flees from Balkh and is retaken, viii, 159 |
| pardoned by Bahrán Chúbína, viii, 160 |
| referred to, viii, 163 |
| speech of, viii, 166 |
| Mihrán Sitád, Iránian high priest and envoy, temp. Núshírwán, 168, vii, 186, 350, 361, 363; viii, 96, 100 |
| attempt of the Khán to outwit, vii, 352 |
| takes charge of the Khán's daughter, vii, 354 |
| receives gifts from the Khán, vii, 356 |
| welcomed on his return, vii, 357 |
| embassage of, referred to, viii, 72, 97 |
| sent for by Hurmuzd, viii, 97 |
| tells of prophecy about Bahrán Chúbína, viii, 98, 216 |
| death of, viii, 99 |
| Mihrán Sitád, merchant, entertains Khúsrau Parwiz, viii, 251 |
Mihrás, father of Ilyás ruler of Khazar, iv, 352
Mihrás, Caesar’s envoy, vii, 261
negotiates peace with Núshírwán, vii, 261
Mihrdát, See Meherdates.
Mihrgán, feast, i, 175 and note, iv, 313; vi, 230 and note, 245
Mihrmas, vi, 200
Mill as rhyme word, i, 75
Míllád, Iránián hero, iii, 11, 12, 25, 29, 145, 274, 289, 293, 345; iv, 83, 147, 191; vi, 394; viii, 72, 211
import of word, viii, 73
customs of, viii, 216
Míllád (Taxila), Indian city, vi, 102, 109, 110
situation of, vi, 62
Sikandar approaches, vi, 98
Military obsequies, temp. Núshírwán, vii, 252
Milk, bane of, vii, 125 and note, 324
easily “turned,” vii, 317
poisoned by the Evil Eye, vii, 320 seq., 324, 325
Mill, 176, ix, 89, 116
Miller, a, daughters of, 164
becomes Báhrám Gúr’s father-in-law, vii, 34
dignified by Báhrám Gúr, vii, 34
Miller, a, 176, ix, 70
Yazdagird and, ix, 99
informs chief of Zark about Yazdagird, ix, 100
informs Mákhwí about Yazdagird, ix, 101
bidden to slay Yazdagird, ix, 107
fling corpse into stream, ix, 108
Mingrelia, province on the eastern shore of the Black Sea, vii, 215
Minister, piece in chess. See Wazír.
Minos, king of Crete, vi, 323 note
legend of, vi, 323 note
Mínú, viii, 253 and note
Minúchíhr, Sháh, 140–142, i, 42, 90, 91, 209 seq., 274, 275, 319, 337, 339 seq., 348, 363; ii, 19, 29, 33, 36, 37, 302, 318, 400; iii, 9, 30, 87, 115; iv, 10, 65, 69, 70, 76, 136, 206, 283, 285, 298; v, 12, 174, 252, 284; vi, 200, 353; viii, 219, 223, 392; ix, 103
birth of, i, 206
etymology of, i, 206 and note, 234 and note
Farídún’s gifts to, i, 207
goes to fight Salm and Túr, i, 216
makes proclamation to the host, i, 218
contends against Salm and Túr, i, 219
prepares for a night-surprise, i, 220
sends Túr’s head to Farídún, i, 222
sends Káran to take the Castle of the Aláns, i, 223 seq.
hears of Káran’s success, i, 225
defeats and slays Karkwí, i, 225 seq.
pursues and slays Salm, i, 227
pardons Salm’s troops, i, 229
sends Salm’s head and a letter to Farídún, i, 229
return of, in triumph, i, 230
welcomed by Farídún, i, 230
confided to Sám by Farídún, i, 231
enthroned by Farídún, i, 232
mourning of, for, and burial of, Farídún, i, 233
Reign of, 141, i, 234 seq.
Note on, i, 234 seq.
accession and inaugural address of, i, 237
Sám’s address to, i, 238
Minúchíhr, hears of Sám’s finding of Zál, i, 248
sons of, i, 248
sends Naudár to congratulate Sám, i, 248
summons Sám and Zál to court, i, 249
Sám tells the story of his quest to, i, 250
Zál’s horoscope taken by order of, i, 251
gifts of, to Sám, i, 251
hears of the case of Zál and Rúdába, i, 288
advises with the archimagés, i, 288
welcomes Sám, i, 289
hears of Sám’s campaign, i, 290
bids Sám destroy Mihráb and his belongings, i, 292
receives Zál well, i, 306
consults the astrologers as to Zál, i, 307
Zál proved by hard questions by order of, i, 308
Zál displays his accomplishment before, i, 311
gracious reply of, to Sám, i, 314
warned of his death by the astrologers, i, 335
counsels, and gives the throne to, Naudár, i, 335
dies, i, 336
Minúchíhr, son of Árash, iv, 149
commands the troops from Khurásán, iv, 148
slays Kuhilá, iv, 181
commands the left, iv, 191
Mírín, Rúman chief, 154
asks Caesar’s second daughter, Dílánjám, in marriage, iv, 333
bidden by Caesar to slay the wolf of Fáskún, iv, 333
casts a horoscope, iv, 334
asks Hishwí to interest Gushtásp in his behalf, iv, 334
Mírín, provides Gushtásp with a steed and arms, iv, 336
goes with Gushtásp and Hishwí to the forest of Fáskún, iv, 337
Hishwí and, welcome Gushtásp on his return, iv, 339
informs Caesar that he has slain the wolf, iv, 341
marries Caesar’s daughter, iv, 341
consulted by Ahrán, iv, 342
refers Ahrán to Hishwí, iv, 344
letter of, to Hishwí, iv, 344
Ahrán and, display their accomplishment on the riding-ground, iv, 349
Caesar’s wrath with, iv, 351
sends a scornful message to Caesar, iv, 353
set to guard the baggage, iv, 355
Mír Khánd (Mirkhond), Persian historian (A.D. 1433–1498), v, 30; vi, 62, 315; vii, 3, 4, 6, 156, 159, 171, 183, 186; viii, 192
distich of, quoted, ix, 56
Miskál, measure of weight, vi, 24 and note, viii, 394
Misr (Egypt), 159, ii, 79, 80, 84, 94, 96, 143, 286; vi, 114, 115, 122, 181; viii, 381
king of temp. Kai Káús, ii, 94, 95, 98
king of, defeated by Sikandar, vi, 37
welcomes Sikandar, vi, 121
invaded by Sikandar, vi, 37, 121
sea of, vi, 120
Sikandar stays a year in, vi, 121
Mithra, Mitra, god, i, 7
Mithradát. See Meherdates.
Míhrák, vi, 206
=Míhrák, vi, 206
=Míhrák=Mádik=Arda-wán (?), vi, 256
Mithrates. See Meherdates.
Mithradates I, Parthian king, ii, 80
Modes of speech, viii, 30
Mohl, Jules, his edition and translation of the Sháhnáma, i, 76, 77; vi, 60
on the Story of Bizhan and Manizha, iii, 285, 286
the Worm, vi, 203
Wisdom-literature, vii, 280
Mong, Indian city, vi, 18
Monks, ix, 109
find and recover corpse of Yazdagird, ix, 109
lament over and entomb Yazdagird, ix, 109 seq.
sentences of, over Yazdagird, ix, 109 seq.
slain by Máhwi, ix, 113
Monophysite, viii, 195
Moola Firuz, i, 201 note
Moon, one of the seven planets, i, 72, viii, 395
on the nature of the, 139, i, 205
=Tür, i, 223
divided by Muhammad, vii, 67
Moses, Hebrew law-giver, v, 294
Salt Fish and, legend of, vi, 77
Faith of, vi, 95
Moses of Chorene, Armenian historian (5th century A.D.), i, 72
account of Zahhák by, i, 144
Rustam by, i, 236
Mosul, city in Mesopotamia, vi, 322
Mountain, mountains, sanctity of, i, 118
of the Holy Questions, i, 62
—skirt (Dáman-i-Kuh), iii, 15, 91, 95
=Rakhsh, iii, 221, 251
Old man of the, v, 30
—sheep, personification of the divine Grace, vi, 201, 221. See Ram.

Mu'áwiya, Khalíffah (A.D. 661-679), i, 12, 13
Múbid, i, 83
Mughíra, son of Shu'ba. See Shu’ba Mughíra, ix, 69
Muhammad, the Prophet (about A.D. 571-632), i, 13, 40, 41; ii, 337 note; vi, 65, 190, 292; viii, 42, 191; ix, 69, 81 seq.
on 'Alif, i, 12, 106
praise of, i, 106
quoted, i, 106, v, 166
reference of, to Alexander the Great in the Kurán, vi, 15, 77
Muhammad, birth of, vii, 213
Núshírwán and, 170, viii, 68
divides the Moon, viii, 42, 67
letter of, to Khusrau Parwiz, ix, 66
Flight of, referred to, ix, 122
Muhammad Kásim, Arab general, vi, 325
Muhammad Laskari, friend of Firdausí, i, 99; iii, 286
Muhammad Mahdí, his edition of the Sháhnáma, i, 76
Muhammad, son of Abdúr-Razzak, i, 68, 99
Muhammadan, Muhammandans, vi, 78; viii, 73
elements in Sháhnáma, viii, 42
ethics respected, viii, 74
Mukaffa'. See Ibn Mukaffa'.
Múltán, city in the Punjab, vii, 140
monarch of, entertained by Bahram Gúr, vii, 140
Mumassenni, tribe, i, 237
Munzir, al, dynasty of, i, 55
Munzir, prince of Híra, temp. Yazdagird son of Shápúr and Bahram Gúr, 163, 164, vi, 372, 394, 406, 408; vii, 9
visits Yazdagird, vi, 377
monarch of Yaman, vi, 378
Munzir, returns to Yaman with Bahrám, vi, 378
chooses nurses for Bahrám, vi, 378
dismisses Bahrám’s tutors, vi, 380
provides Bahrám Gúr with steeds, vi, 380
provides Bahrám Gúr with slave-girls, vi, 381
goes to the chase with Bahrám Gúr, vi, 384
sends a picture of Bahrám Gúr shooting to Yazdagird, vi, 385
sends Bahrám Gúr with Nu’mán to Yazdagird, vi, 386
receives a letter from Yazdagird, vi, 387
counsels and sends Bahrám Gúr a slave-girl and presents, vi, 388
welcomes Bahrám Gúr on his return, vi, 390
supports Bahrám Gúr’s claim to the throne, vi, 396 seq.
invades Irán, vi, 397
interview of, with Jawánwí, vi, 398 seq.
refers Jawánwí to Bahrám Gúr, vi, 398
advises Bahrám Gúr to negotiate with the Iránians, vi, 401, 404
intercedes with Bahrám Gúr for the Iránians, vii, 10
rewarded by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 10
Munzir, son of Nu’mán, prince of Híra, temp. Núshírwán, 167, vii, 244 seq.
protected by Núshírwán, vii, 217
war of, with Háirth bin Jabala, vii, 217
sent by Núshírwán to invade Rúm, vii, 246
Murdád, ameshaspenta, i, 88; iii, 287, 328

Músh, town west of Lake Ván, viii, 188
Mushkináb, a miller’s daughter, vii, 32 and note
taken to wife by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 33
Mushkinak, a miller’s daughter, vii, 32 and note
taken to wife by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 33
Muslim, ix, 85
Mutawakkil, Khalífa (A.D. 847-861), i, 14
Cypress of Kishmar destroyed by, v, 28
Mutilation, instances of, vi, 261, 323, 334, 348, 357, 404
Mytilene, Chares of, Greek writer, temp. Alexander the Great, ii, 10; vi, 61
quoted, iv, 314

N

Nabarzanes, Persian general, vi, 32
pardon by Alexander the Great, vi, 32
Nádir, Sháh, iii, 14
Nadr son of Háirth, v, 166
recites the story of Rustam and Asfandiyár, v, 166
fate of, v, 166
Nahávand, city, south of Hamadán, i, 12; ix, 68, 69
Yazdagird concentrates his forces at, ix, 68
Battle of, i, 12; ix, 69
Náhíd (Katáyún, q.v.)
Náhíd (Halai, Olympias ?), daughter of Failakús and mother of Sikandar, 159, vi, 24 seq., and note
married to Dáráb, vi, 25
troubled by offensive breath, vi, 26
cured, but repudiated by Dáráb, vi, 26
returns to Failakús and gives birth to Sikandar, vi, 26
Náhid, visits Dilárái and Rúsha-
nak, vi, 89
referred to, vi, 187

Náhid, the planet Venus, vi, 214

Nahrawán, city near Baghdád, east of the Tigris; also a
canal on the eastern bank of that river, quitting it
about 100 miles above, and rejoining it about 100
miles below, Baghdád, vii, 141; viii, 187, 204,
206, 231
bridge of, viii, 223, 228 seq.
broken down by Khusrau
Parwiz, viii, 229

Naishapur. See Nishápúr.

Naitkán (Antigonus), minister
of Sikandar, name of,
assumed by Sikandar, vi,
66, 125 seq.
personates Sikandar, vi, 125
seq.

Kaidrásh and his wife
brought before, vi, 126
sentenced to death by, vi,
126
pardoned by, vi, 126
=Sikandar, vi, 131, 133,
134, 141

Nakula, one of the five Pán-
davas, iv, 138
referred to, iv, 139

Names, use of, in sympathetic
magic, i, 8, 177, 179
secret and public, viii, 372
and note

Námkháist, Túránian hero, v, 24,
26
goes as envoy to Gushtásp,
v, 37, 40
returns with Gushtásp’s
answer, v, 44
given command of the cen-
tre, v, 56
worsted by Girámí, v, 59

Napata, city in Nubia, vi, 65

Naphtha, 159, i, 56
black, iv, 208, 209
use of, in sieges, iv, 208,
209

Naphtha, Sikandar’s iron steeds
filled with, 159, vi, 115
Für’s elephants and troops
routed by the use of, vi,
116
used to yitrify Sikandar’s
barrier, vi, 165

Nard, game of, 169, viii, 371
invention of, vii, 280, 381,
382, 389
sent by Núshírwán to the
Rája of Hind, vii, 5, 381
meaning of, vii, 381
symbolism of, vii, 381
Mas’údí on, vii, 382
described, vii, 389

Naríman, Iránián hero, father of
Sám and great-grand-
father of Rustam, i, 42,
174, 207, 212, 239, 299,
333, 344; ii, 4, 49, 115,
119, 125, 126, 162, 354;
iii, 17, 35; v, 196, 199,
202, 242, 262, 264, 266,
289
death of, described, i, 329

Nariananau, epithet of Kere-
sáspa, i, 172, 174

Narmápái, name of a tribe, 160,
ii, 55 and note, 63, 64; vi,
71 and note

Sikandar and, vi, 150

Narses (Narsí, son of Bahrám,
q.v.), Sásáníán king

Narses, Exarch, treatment of, by
Empress Sophia, viii, 76

Narses, general, viii, 189

Narsí, Ashkánian king, vi, 197,
210

Narsí, son of Bahrám, Sháh
(Narses), 162, vi, 3, 313,
316, 325, 330, 331, 337;
vi, 359
Reign of, vi, 315 seq.
Note on, vi, 315
title of, vi, 315
inaugural address of, vi, 315
daughter of, 162. See
Núsha.

Narsí, brother of Bahrám Gúr,
165, vi, 3; vii, 4, 95, 100
Narsí, made captain of the host, vii, 11
regent, vii, 86
fails to persuade the Iránians to resist the Khán, vii, 87
Bahram Gúr’s letter to, vii, 92
writes to Bahram Gúr on behalf of the Iránians, vii, 94
goes with the chiefs to welcome Bahram Gúr, vii, 96
made ruler of Khurasán, vii, 99
welcomes his brother on his return from Hind, vii, 137
Nárwan, forest of, near Tamnásha
q.v., i, 217, 218; ii, 341; vii, 356, 356, 377; ix, 86
Nasibín (Nisibis, q.v.), vi, 326
cession of, vi, 355
inhabitants of, refuse to submit to Shápur, vi, 356
taken by Shápur, vi, 356
Násírud-Dín, title of Subuktígin, q.v., i, 21, 100, 114
Nasr, Amir, brother of Sultán Mahmud, i, 21; vi, 196
account of, i, 100
referred to, i, 114
praise of, i, 114; vi, 207
Nasr, Arab chief, vi, 65
appeals to Sikandar for help, vi, 120
made ruler of Mecca, vi, 121
Nasr, son of Ahmad, Sámánid, vii, 340
patron of Rádagi, vii, 383
Nastár, Caesar’s master of the herds, iv, 325
refuses to employ Gushtásp, iv, 326
Nastáhan, Túránian hero, son of Wisá and brother of Pirán, 149, 151, i, 92; ii, 264; iii, 79, 198, 210, 231, 252; iv, 53 seq., 61, 75, 77
pursues Kai Khusraw, ii, 377 seq.
Nastáhan, slain by Bizhán, iv, 54
Nastúh, Iránian hero, ii, 4; iii, 46; iv, 148
Nastúh, Túránian hero, iv, 156
Nastúh, son of Mihrán Sitád, 173, viii, 225, 303
advises Hurmużd, viii, 96
released by Bahram Chubina, viii, 306
Nastúr (Basta-vair, Bastvár), son of Zarír, 155, v, 12, 25, 26
exploits of, foretold by Jámasp, v, 50
given command of the rear, v, 55
fights victoriously, v, 60
goes in search of Zarír, v, 67
finds Zarír’s corpse and laments over it, v, 67
exhorts Gushtásp to avenge Zarír, v, 68
goes forth with Gushtásp’s steed and armour, v, 69
challenges Bídírafs, v, 69
fights with Bídírafs, v, 70
attacks, with Asfandiyár and Núsh Ázar, the Túránians, v, 71
leads the host home, is given a command, and invades Túrán, v, 74
stationed on the Iránian left, v, 94
commands the right, v, 109
Nastúr, son of Shírin and Khusrau Parviz, ix, 39
Nature-worship, of the Aryans, i, 7, 51
Nau-Ardshír = Nard, vii, 381
Naubahár, Fire-temple at Balkh, 31
Luhrásp retires to, v, 31
Naudár, Sháh, 142, i, 90, 91, 369; ii, 20, 36, 70, 153, 336, 400, 404; iii, 8, 24, 39, 59, 57, 67, 86, 112, 123, 132, 177, 187, 215, 257, 289, 294, 327; iv, 13, 61, 70, 157, 167, 178,
Naudar—cont.
191, 193, 206, 237, 254, 262, 267; vii, 37, 171; viii, 223, 242
embassies of, to Sám, i, 248, 288
returns with Sám to court, i, 289
counselled by Minúchíhr and appointed his successor, i, 335
laments for Minúchíhr, i, 336
Reign of, i, 42, i, 337 seq.
Note on, i, 337
accession of, i, 339
evil rule of, i, 339
revolts against, i, 339
appeals to Sám, i, 339
the chiefs reconciled to, by Sám, i, 341
rewards Sám, i, 342
marches against Afrásiyab to Dahistán, i, 345
battles of, with Afrásiyab, i, 348 seq.
takes counsel with Káran, i, 349
defeated, i, 350, 353
sends Tús and Gustaham to conduct the Persian women to Alburz, i, 351
besieged in Dahistán, i, 353
escapes from Dahistán, i, 355
pursued and taken by Afrásiyab, i, 355
slain, i, 363
the Iránians bewail, i, 364
Naurúz, Persian New-year’s day
when the sun enters Aries, vi, 33, 55, 273, 389; viii, 216
Nawand, place in Khurásán on the Binalúd Kuh (?), ii, 107
Náztáb, a miller’s daughter, vii, 32 and note
taken to wife by Bahram Gúr, vii, 33
Nearchus, admiral of Alexander the Great, vi, 12, 61, 70
Ichthyophagi, account of by, quoted by Arrian, vi, 69, 70
Nectanebus II (Nekht-nef-f), the last Pharaoh
personates Amen-Ra and becomes the legendary father of Alexander the Great, vi, 16
story of, vi, 18 and note
Need, personification of. See Greed.
Negroes, the, described, vi, 73, 157
cause frost and snow to harm Sikandar, vi, 156, 157
Nekht-nef. See Nectanebus.
Nereis. See Kalé.
Nero, Roman emperor (A.D. 54–68), vii, 279
Néryósang, ii, 82
Nestorian, Nestorians, viii, 195
Metropolitan, vii, 219
Patriarch, vii, 219
New Year, Persian, beginning of, i, 74, 88
Feast of (Naurúz, New Year’s Day), i, 74, 274; vii, 94, 200
origin of, i, 133
Nicaea, Indian city, vi, 18
Nicephorium (Callinicus, Kálñiñyú s.v., Warigh, Rakka), viii, 188
Nicolaus of Damascus, Greek historian temp. Augustus, vi, 195
Nif, as rhyme-word, i, 75
Nile, i, 40, 71, 114, 297; ii, 96, 153, 217, 310, 402; iii, 38, 41, 58, 208, 224, 225; iv, 145 seq., 180, 333; v, 176, 188, 191, 245; vi, 169, 171, 269; vii, 48, 250, 344, 416; viii, 126, 284, 293, 294; ix, 98
Blue, vi, 65
mistaken for Indus, vi, 68
Nimruz = Sístán = Zábulistán, i, 252, 264, 346, 357; ii, 21, 34, 69, 77, 80, 84, 338, 395; iii, 17, 35, 319; iv, 156, 188; v, 85, 248, 288; vii, 327; viii, 196, 284; ix, 5, 6
confirmed to Rustam by Kai Khusrau, iv, 297
Zál by Luhhrasp, iv, 312
Sikandar marches to, vi, 175
satrapy of, ix, 69

Nineveh, viii, 193
fall of, i, 10
kings of, that attacked Irán, i, 10
battle near, vii, 194

Ninus, mythical founder of Nineveh, v, 292, 293
Ninyas, son of Ninus, v, 293
Niris, salt lake in Pars, vi, 17
referred to, vi, 21

Nisá, city (Muhammadábád ?)
in Khurásán or town in Kirmán, vii, 89; viii, 19

Nishápúr, city in Khurásán, i, 36, 45; ii, 101; iv, 255; v, 28 seq., 291; vi, 298; vii, 173; ix, 95

Nisibis (Nasibín q.v.), city in northern Mesopotamia, i, 374
sieges of, i, 374, vii, 41
peace of, vi, 254
cession of, by Jovian, vi, 326 by Khusrau Parwiz (?), viii, 188

Nisus and Scylla, story of, vi, 323 note

Nitetis, vi, 16

Nívár, son of Gushtásp, 155, v, 26
death of, foretold by Jám-ásp, v, 50
slain, v, 60

Niyátus (Theodosius, son of Maurice), 173, viii, 189, 281, 289; ix, 23
brother of Caesar, viii, 280, 310
put in charge of Maryam, vii, 280
welcomed by Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 280
wroth with Khusrau Parwiz, vii, 290
watches fight between Khusrau Parwiz and Bahram Chúbina, viii, 297
entertained at banquet by Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 309
quarrel of, with Bandwi, viii, 309
threat of, to Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 310
reconciled to Bandwi, viii, 311
returns to Rúm, viii, 312

Nizámí, Persian poet, viii, 192
Nizámí-i-Árúdí, Persian writer (12th century A.D.), i, 23
account of Firdausi by, i, 38

Nöldke, Professor, v, 20, 21, 282; vi, 198 note, 199 and note, 253, 313, 372; viii, 71, 188
on the div Akwán, iii, 271
quoted, v, 118
treatise of, on the Alexander Romance, etc., vi, 14 and note

on the Story of the Worm, vi, 203, 205, 206
on Haftwád, vi, 206
on the Gipsies, vii, 6
on Súfáraí, vii, 171, 185
on Wisdom-literature, vii, 281

1 Properly speaking, Zábulistán is the name of the hilly country about the upper waters of the Helmund, while Nimruz and Sístán are synonymous names for the low lying lands into which his waters descend, but Firdausi does not seem to make any such distinction.

2 The city has suffered much in the past from the ravages of war and earthquake and has been rebuilt several times on slightly varying sites,
Nöldeke, on Romance of Bahram Chûbîna, viii, 73
North, Sir Thomas (A.D. 1535–1603 ?), vii, 383
version of the Fables of Bispai by, vii, 383
Northman, the, vi, 19
found the Russian empire, vi, 19
Note on Pronunciation, preceding text in each volume
Nubia, vi, 65
Nûh bin Nasr, Sâmânid prince (A.D. 942–954), vii, 5
Nûh II. bin Mansûr, Sâmânid prince (A.D. 976–997), i, 21, 36; v, 21
Nu’mân, prince of Hîra, 163, 164, vi, 372, 396, 404
visits Yazdaghird, vi, 377
goes to the chase with Bahram Gûr, vi, 384
go to the Persian court with Bahram Gûr, vi, 386
returns to Yaman with letters and presents, vi, 387
welcomes Bahram Gûr on his revisiting Yaman, vi, 390
invades Irán, vi, 397
rewarded by Bahram Gûr, vii, 10
Nu’mân bin Munzîr, prince of Hîra, viii, 188; ix, 5
put to death, vii, 190
Nu’mân, Arab general, ix, 68
sent by ‘Umar to fight Yazdaghird, ix, 68
defeats Pirûzân at Nahâvand, ix, 68
slain, ix, 69
Nurse, Manizha’s, iii, 297
interview of, with Bizhan, iii, 297
Nûsha (Dukhnûsh), daughter of Narsî, 162, vi, 3. 324, 331
carried off by the Arabs, vi, 323, 330
Nûsh Ázar, Fire-temple at Balkh, v, 92 note, 173, 241, 255
burnt by the Turkmans, v, 93
Nûsh Ázar, youngest son of Asfandiyâr, ii, 3, v, 166, 283, 285
attacks, with Nastûr and Asfandiyâr, the Tûrânian host, v, 71
builder of a Fire-temple, v, 81
with Asfandiyâr at Gumbadân, v, 98
informs Asfandiyâr of Jâmâsp’s arrival, v, 98, 99
accompanies Asfandiyâr from Gumbadân, v, 103
slays Turkhân, v, 151
wrangles with Zawâra, v, 226
slays Alwâ, v, 226
slain by Zawâra, v, 227
death of, reported to Asfandiyâr by Bahnman, v, 227
corpse of, sent to Gushtâsp, v, 232
Nûshîrwan (Kisrâ, Chosroes I), Shâh, 166–170, i, 27, 42; v, 260; vi, 3, 201; vii, 4, 199, 220, 273 seq., 279 seq., 320; viii, 3 seq., 71, 72, 86 seq., 98, 129, 169, 198, 200, 205, 209, 300, 312, 313, 377; ix, 22, 26, 71, 80, 92, 105, 109, 110, 119
collector of Irânian tradition, i, 67
quoted, vi, 208, 209 and note
origin of name, vii, 185, 211
and note
birth of, stories of, vii, 186, 197 seq.
assistants of, against Mazdak, vii, 188, 206
upbringing of, vii, 200
Mazdak’s attempt to convert, vii, 205
disputation of, with Mazdak, vii, 206 seq.
GENERAL INDEX

Nūshīrwān, Kubād decides in favour of, vii, 208
executes Mazdak and his followers, vii, 208
Kubād’s testament in favour of vii, 210, 316
Reign of, 167, vii, 212 seq.
Notes on, vii, 212 seq., 279
seq., 316 seq., 380 seq.,
viii, 3 seq., 41 seq.
Roman Emperors contemporary with, vii, 212
historical events of reign of,
in the Shāhnāma, vii, 213
marriage of, with the daugh-
ter of the Khān vii, 347, seq.
referred to, viii, 72, 97 seq.
wars of, with Rūm, vii, 213,
217
first campaign of, vii, 218,
249
conspiracy against, vii, 214,
316
division of empire by, vii,
214, 224; ix, 69
bargains of, with Justinian,
vii, 214, 216 seq.
taxation reformed by, vii,
215, 224
wall of, in the Caucasus, 167,
i, 16; vii, 215, 239
Mas’ūd’s account of, vii,
215
dealings of, with the Alāns,
vii, 216
Gīlān, vii, 216
Baluchia, vii, 217
Munzir supported by, vii,
217, 244
and consequent war with
Rūm, vii, 217, 244
jealous of Justinian’s suc-
cesses in the West, vii,
217
promises to rule justly, vii,
221 seq.
attends muster at the insistence of Bābāk, vii, 231
approves of Bābāk’s con-
duct, vii, 232

Nūshīrwān, method of, in levying
troops, vii, 233
writes to Caesar on Munzir’s
behalf, vii, 245
supplies Munzir with troops
for the invasion of Rūm,
vii, 246
goes to Aṣar Ābādagān, vii,
250
disposition of host by, vii,
251
addresses his troops, vii, 251
proclamations of, vii, 252,
365
burial of dead soldiers by,
vii, 252
policy of, with enemies, vii,
253
takes Shūrāb, vii, 254
Ārāyish-i-Rūm, vii, 255
Caesar’s treasures, vii,
255, 258
defeats Farfurius, vii, 256
takes Antākiya, vii, 258
disposes of the Rūman cap-
tives, vii, 259, 327
Rūman cordwainer and, vii,
260
envoy from Caesar comes
to, vii, 261
grants peace to Caesar, vii,
262
appoints Shīrwī to receive
the Rūman tribute, vii,
262
Christian wife of, vii, 263
mother of Nūshzād, vii,
263, 274 seq.
helps Nūshzād, vii, 266
laments for Nūshzād, vii,
276
imprisons Nūshzād, vii, 264
illness and reported death
of, vii, 264, 265
hears of Nūshzād’s revolt,
vii, 266
instructs Rām Barāzīn how
to act, vii, 267 seq.
Seven Banquets of 168, vii,
280, 287 seq.
possible origin of, vii, 289
Nūshirwān, Seven Banquets of, Būzurjmihr's discourses at, vii, 287 seq. dream of, vii, 282 consults the archmages, vii, 282 seeks for a dream-interpreter, vii, 282 dream of, interpreted by Būzurjmihr, vii, 284 rewards and honours Būzurjmihr, vii, 286, 289, 304, 311, 315 relations of, with Singibû, vii, 317 the Haitālians, vii, 317 with Mahbûd and his sons, vii, 319 seq. suspects Zūrān, vii, 324 greatness of, vii, 327 buildings of, vii, 327 embassy of Khān to, vii, 329 consults the chiefs as to Faghānīsh, the Khān, and the Haitālians, vii, 333 reply of chiefs to, vii, 334 rejoinder of, to chiefs, vii, 336 prepares for war with the Khān, vii, 337 writes to his chiefs, the Khān, and Faghānīsh, vii, 337 marches from Madāʿin, vii, 337 goes to Gurgān, vii, 337 receives embassy from the Khān, vii, 339 holds a court, vii, 340 displays his prowess before the assembly, vii, 341 dismisses the Khān's envoy with a letter, vii, 344 Khān's offer of affinity to, vii, 347 reply of, vii, 349 occupies territory evacuated by the Khān, vii, 358 Haitālians and others bring gifts to, vii, 360, 362 gives praise to God, vii, 361 Nūshirwān, receives the tribute from Rūm, vii, 362 goes to the temple of Azar-gashasp, vii, 363 greatness of, vii, 364 questions Būzurjmihr, vii, 367 seq. receives the game of chess from Hind, vii, 380, 385 Rāja of Hind's embassy to, vii, 384 rewards Būzurjmihr for discovering how to play chess, vii, 388 sends Būzurjmihr with presents and the game of nard to Hind, vii, 390 proposes wager with the Rāja, vii, 391 welcomes Būzurjmihr on his return from Hind, vii, 393 acquires the Book of Kalīla and Dimna, vii, 423 seq. sends gifts to the Rāja, vii, 425 rewards Barzwl, vii, 429 precautions of, as to successor, viii, 3 goes hunting with Būzurjmihr, viii, 4 suspects and disgraces Būzurjmihr, viii, 5 treats Būzurjmihr with increasing rigour, viii, 7, 8 reconciled to Būzurjmihr, viii, 9 questioned by archmages, viii, 14 seq., 28 seq. gives judgment against his own son, viii, 16 chief cook of, aggrieved, viii, 18 counsels Hurmuzd, viii, 25 seq. writes to console Caesar's son and successor, viii, 43 wroth at answer received, viii, 45 invades Rūm, viii, 46
GENERAL INDEX

Nūshirwān, success of, viii, 47
   checked, viii, 47
in want of money, viii, 47
takes counsel with Būzurjmihr, viii, 47
refuses advances from a shoemaker, viii, 50, 71
high esteem of, for scribes, viii, 50
grants peace to, and takes tribute from, the Rāmans,
viii, 52
returns to Taisafūn, viii, 53
sons of, viii, 56, 63
instructs Būzurjmihr to prove Hurmuzd, viii, 56
\textit{seg.}
testament of, in favour of, and last counsels to,
Hurmuzd, viii, 61 \textit{seg.}; ix, 22
directions of, as to interment, viii, 65
hall of, shattered, viii, 68
death of, viii, 69, 71
system of administration of,
viii, 71
ministers of, put to death by
Hurmuzd, viii, 81 \textit{seg.}
choice of Hurmuzd by, story of,
viii, 87
palace of, viii, 193
dream of, ix, 92
Nūsh Zād=Mīhr-i-Nūsh, \textit{q.v.},
v. 285 and note

Nūshzād, father of Mīhrak,
vi, 237, 241, 267, 270, 273

Nūshzād, son of Nūshirwān,
167, vii, 213, 265, \textit{seg.}
historical account of, vii, 219
Firdausi’s account of, vii,
263 \textit{seg.}
education of, vii, 263
imprisonment of, vii, 264
hears report of Nūshirwān’s death, vii, 265
revolts, vii, 266
helped by his mother, vii,
266
writes to Caesar, vii, 266

Nūshzād, goes to fight with Rām
Barzin, vii, 272
exhorted to yield by Pīrūz,
vii, 273
reply of, to Pīrūz, vii, 274
wounded, vii, 275
repents, vii, 275
sends message to his mother,
vii, 275
dies, vii, 275
lamentation for, vii, 276
Firdausi’s reflections on, vii,
276

O

OASIS OF AMMON, vi, 65
Alexander the Great’s visit
to, vi, 65
Oblivion, Castle of, vii, 184
Obsequies, military, in the time of Nūshirwān, vii, 252
Oceanus, Homeric and Oriental,
i, 71
Odatis, Scythian princess, iv, 315
legend of, iv, 315
Odenathus, Arab chief, vi, 222
Shāpūr son of Ardshīr and,
vi, 294, 325
confused with Valerian, vi,
324 \textit{seg.}
Odorico, Minorite Friar and travell
er (A.D. 1286-1331),
vi, 13
Old Man of the Mountain, the, v,
30
Olives, taxes on, vii, 215, 225
Olympias (Nāḥīd, Halai ?), wife
of Philip of Macedon and
mother of Alexander the Great
legendary relations of, with
Nectanebus, vi, 16, 18
choice by, of name for her son, vi, 19
intrigues of, vi, 82
Omartes, Scythian chief, iv, 315
legend of, iv, 315
Omen, ii, 192, v, 177
of the quince, ix, 13, 14
GENERAL INDEX

Omphis, Indian king, vi, 62
Onager, the div Akwán as, iii, 273 seq.
Bahrám Chúbína guided by, viii, 156, 158
Onesicritus, chief pilot of Alexander the Great and writer, vi, 67
untrustworthy, vi, 12, 61, 67
Fakír and, vi, 61
Calanus and, vi, 61
Mandanes and, vi, 61
Onnes, minister of Ninus, v, 292, 293
Ordeal by fire, ii, 218 seq.
Ormuz (Hurmuz), city on the Persian Gulf, vi, 204
Osrhoene, kingdom in northern Mesopotamia, vi, 198
Othello, play of, quoted, vi, 324
Owls, Mas’úd’s apologue of the, vi, 310
and Crows, story of, viii, 263 and note
Ox, the first, i, 5
legend of the, i, 117, 236
Ox of Kai Káds, ii, 26
Ox-hide, or skin, filled with gold as tribute, v, 265 and note; vii, 262, 363; viii, 46, 52, 53
Oxus (Fihún, q.v.), river, i, 57; ii, 190; v, 12, 29, ; viii, 156, 317; viii, 72
ancient trade-route, i, 57
confused with Aras, i, 71, 370
change in course of, i, 57
note, iii, 10
referred to, ix, 117 and note, 118
Oxyartes, father of Roxana (Rúshának), wife of Alexander the Great, vi, 32

Page, of Núshírwán, viii, 5 seq.
relative of Búzurjmíhr, viii, 5
instructed by Búzurjmíhr, viii, 6
takes messages between Núshírwán and Búzurjmíhr, viii, 6 seq.
Pahlav, region, ii, 77, 102; iii, 222
Pahláván, i, 83; vi, 194
Pahlavi, middle Persian language of Ashkánian (Parthian) and Sásánian times, vii, 6, 113, 188, 380 seq.; viii, 73, 74; ix, 50
meaning of, i, 64, 83
Firdausí’s use of the word, i, 69
Fables of Bidpai translated into, vii, 382
language (middle Persian), v, 24, 26, vi, 194
texts, ii, 27; v, 13, 14, 24, 30; vi, 195, 196, 257
version of the Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi, 14, 16, 84
writing and reading, confusion in, vi, 14, 62, 205, 206
Paidáwásí, Persian coin=five dinárs, vii, 95 and note, viii, 381 and note; ix, 19
Paighé=Túránian, v, 13, 21
note, 38 note, 41 note, 44
note; viii, 190
Paikár-i-Gurd, melody, viii, 398 and note
Pairíka. See Pairí.
Palace of Jewels, 160
Paladins, 154
Paláshán, Túránian hero, 147
iii, 26, 79
surveys the Iránian host, iii, 69
slain by Bizhan, iii, 70
Pálawína (Cappadocia), vi, 294, 297, 298
Palestine, vi, 30

P

Padashkvárvár, a mountain or section of the Alburz range, i, 338
Palladius, bishop, vi, 61, 62
   treatise of, on the Brahmins, vi, 61
   interpolated into the
   Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi, 61
Palmyra, city in Syrian desert, vi, 294, 322, 324; vii, 217
Palus Maeotis (Sea of Azoff), vi, 73
Pándavas, the five, iv, 138, 139
   pilgrimage of, compared with that of Kai Khusrau
   and his paladins, iv, 138
Pand Námah, of Moola Firooz, i, 201 note
Pandnámak-i Vadhshór-Mitró-i Bákhtakán, Pahlávi text,
   vii, 279
Pándo, Indian king, iv, 316
Pápak, Tribal King, 160, vi, 3, 194, 195, 198 seq., 211
   note and seq., 227, 252,
   254, 256; viii, 214, 219
   and note, 285
Sásán and, vi, 212
daughter of, marries Sásán,
   160, vi, 213
   mother of Ardshír Pápakán,
   viii, 214
   Ardawán’s letter to, vi, 214
dies, vi, 218
   kindred of, support Ardshír
   Pápakán, vi, 223 seq.
Pápakán Ardshír. See Ardshír
   Pápakán.
Parable, Mazdak’s, vii, 201
   Paradise Lost referred to, vi, 71
Pari, i, 83, 172
Paris, city, MSS. of the Pseudo-
   Callisthenes in National
   Library at, vi, 14
Parmúda (see also Khán of Chín),
   170, 171, viii, 75, 117, 130,
   136 seq., 146, 149 seq., 164,
   174
   hears of Bahrám Chúbíná’s
   victory and takes counsel,
   viii, 131
   marches toward Jihún, viii,
   131
Parmúda, approaches Balkh,
   viii, 134
   attacks and is defeated by
   Bahrám Chúbíná, viii, 134 seq.
   escapes to Áwáza, viii, 138
   besieged by Bahrám Chúbíná,
   viii, 138 seq.
   negotiates surrender of
   Áwáza with Bahrám Chúbíná,
   viii, 139 seq.
   surrenders Áwáza and sets
   out for Írán, viii, 143
   insulted by Bahrám Chúbíná,
   viii, 144
   Bahrám Chúbíná tries to
   placate, viii, 145
Párs (Persis, Pársistán), country
   on the eastern shores of
   the Persian Gulf, 142, 153,
   160, i, 351, 353 seq., 357,
   365, 371; ii, 23, 28, 76,
   101, 226, 275, 286, 362,
   410; iv, 146, 256, 269,
   270, 318; v, 293; vi, 17,
   25, 32 note, 37, 45, 115,
   119, 194 and passim; vii,
   86, 90, 95, 190, 194, 201,
   206, 214, 224; viii, 109
   note, 112, 216, 241, 393,
   395; ix, 68
corpse of Darius Codomanus
   sent to, vi, 33
   Ardshír Pápakán flees to, vi,
   220
   marches from, against Ar-
   dawán, vi, 227
   returns to, vi, 229
   Íránians, after the death of
   Yazdagird son of Shápúr,
   meet to consult in, vi, 394
Parsis, ix, 64
Part Kings. See Tribal Kings.
Parthia, kingdom, v, 10
   Hystaspes governor of, v, 10
Parthian, Parthians, i 10, 60, 64;
   vi, 203, 256, 322; vii, 156;
   vii, 73
   conquest of Írán by, i, 19
   Zoroastrianism under, i, 63
Parthian, dynasty, iii. 9, 11; v, 281; vi, 194, 201
uses the title of King of kings, vi, 197
Great King, vi, 198
history, events of, reproduced in distorted form in Sháhnáma, iii, 11
kingdom, ii, 80
Parwiz, Iránián chief, vi, 394
Parwiz, meaning of, viii, 187.
See also Khusrau Parvíz.

Pashan (Ládan), battle of, iii, 15, 80, 89; iv, 27, 36, 42, 90, 206; viii, 397 and note

Pashang, father of Minúchihr, i, 90; iii, 25 (?); iv, 136, marries daughter of Iraj; i, 205

Pashang, ruler of Túrán and father of Afrásiyáb, i, 42; i, 92, 336, 337; ii, 11, 13, 18, 20, 21, 297, 401; iii, 15; iv, 78, 130, 151, 174, 222, 266, 289
consults his chiefs as to war with Irán, i, 342
bids Afrásiyáb invade Irán, i, 343, 375
advised by Ighríras not to make war, i, 344
overrules Ighríras, i, 344
Afrásiyáb's letter to, i, 346
wrote with Afrásiyáb, i, 374

Pashang (Shída, q.v.), son of Afrásiyáb, i, 92; iii, 15

Pashín, son of Kai Kubád. See Kai Pashín.
Pashín, Iránián noble, vi, 408
Patashwárgar, region, vi, 202 and note
Pát-khusrau, brother of Gush-tasp, v, 26

Patrician, iv, 348

Patrons of Firdausí, i, 29
Pauravas, Indian race and dynasty, vi, 31
Paurúshasp. See Pourúshasp. Perfumes, invention of, i, 133

Periods, mythic and historic, of Sháhnáma, i, 49, 53
Perózes (Pirúz), Sásánian king, vii, 159
Persepolis (Istakhr), city in Párs, vi, 31, 32 note, 373; ix, 65
buildings at, attributed to Humáí, v, 293
Zoroastrian scriptures said to have been burnt at, i, 63

Persia, i, 308; ii, 191; iii, 109, 128; iv, 8; v, 306 note; vi, 61, 278; vii, 118, 129, 381; viii, 195; ix, 66
Chess brought to, vi, 201; vii, 280, 284 seq.
Fables of Bidpai brought to, vii, 213, 423 seq.

Persian, Persians, i, 6, 8 seq., 73, 74; ii, 190; v, 74; vi, 30
44, 45, 81, 143, 148, 157, 170, 201 and passim
bards, quoted, vii, 265
dispute with the Rúmans over Sikandar's burial, vi, 184

empire, ii, 9; vi, 197, ix, 65
war of, with Rúm, viii, 41
history and legend in relation to Greek history and legend, ii, 9
language, vi, 147, 205; vii, 134, 140, 143, 430; ix, 12, 65
monks introduce the silk-worm into Europe, vi, 204
mutilation of captives, vi, 323, 334, 348, 357, 404
sea or gulf, vi, 204, 205, ix, 66, 68

swords, vii, 135

wisdom-literature, vii, 278 seq., viii, 3
verse, vii, 383
Fables of Bidpai translated into, vii, 383
conquest of Yaman, viii, 24 note

raid Syria, viii, 41
Persian, Persians, defeat by Romans referred to, viii, 72
war with Turks, viii, 72
Book of Kings, viii, 73
Tabari. See Tabari.
=Bahrám Chúbíná, viii, 113
=Hurmuzd, viii, 116, 117
prince=Bahrám Chúbíná, viii, 319
ideas on marriage, ix, 7
=Ashtád and Kharrád, ix, 24
exonerate Shírín, ix, 38
win 'The Battle of the Bridge,' ix, 67
fail in attack on Híra, ix, 67
defeat of, at Kádísťa, ix, 67, 84
Jalúlá, ix, 68
Nahávand, ix, 69
Shu'ba Mughíra's embassy to, ix, 69
robes, ix, 94
transcribe Sháhnámá for Firdausí, ix, 121

Persica, of Ktesias, v, 293
Persis (Párs, Fársisťán), vi, 195
Peshó-tanu (Bishútan q.v.), v, 12

Pestilence, in reign of Kubád, ix, 3, 7

Petroleum, in ancient cult and modern industry, i, 56 seq.

Pharasmanes, King of Khárazm, vi, 72

Philip II of Macedon, (Failákús, B.C. 382-336), father of Alexander the Great, i, 55 note, vi, 16, 29
Nectanebus and, story of, vi, 18
names his son Alexander, vi, 19

Philon, Macedonian noble, vi, 76

Philosophers, Greek, entertained by Núshirwán, vii, 280

Phocas, Eastern Roman Emperor, viii, 187, 189, 193, 194

Phosphor, morning star, ii, 123
Photius, quoted, viii, 191
Phraates II, Parthian king, (B.C. 138-127), ii, 80, 81
Phraates=Farhád, iii, 11
Phrygians, the, vi, 71
Pfl, as rhyme-word, i, 75

Pillar, Bahrám Gú's, vii, 92, 160, 161, 164

Píšam, Túráníán hero, 145, 146, ii, 112 seq., 320, 323 note, 350 seq.; iii, 204
pleads for Siyáwush, ii, 315
summons Pírán to save Farangí, ii, 322

character of, i, 55
identical with Harpágs in legend, ii, 191
advises Afrásíyáb to receive Siyáwush, ii, 253 note and seq.
goes to welcome Siyáwush, ii, 258 seq.
daughter of, 145. See Jarfrá
arranges marriages for Siyáwush, 145, ii, 268 seq.
entertains Siyáwush, ii, 278
Pirán, offers to help Siyáwush to build Gang-dizh, ii, 278
prophecy of Siyáwush to, ii, 282 seq.
goes to collect tribute, ii, 285
visits Siyáwush, ii, 287
Afrásiyáb, ii, 288
summoned to save Farangís, ii, 322 seq.
pleads for Farangís, ii, 324
takes charge of Farangís, ii, 325
dreams of Siyáwush, ii, 325
protects the infant Kai Khusrau, ii, 326 seq.
advise Afrásiyáb respecting Kai Khusrau, ii, 356
sends Kulbád and Nástfán to pursue Kai Khusrau, ii, 377
overthrown with his host by Giv, ii, 385
appeals to Kai Khusrau, ii, 386
released, ii, 387
describes Giv’s prowess to Afrásiyáb, ii, 389
disgraced, ii, 390
retires to Khutan, ii, 390
appointed to oppose the Iránians, iii, 71, 79
marches on Giravgard to surprise the Iránians, iii, 80
captures the Iránians’ herds, iii, 81
defeats the Iránians, iii, 82, 94
Ruhmám’s embassy to, iii, 87
grants a month’s armistice to Fariburz, iii, 88
losses of, in battle, iii, 94
takes half of Kawa’s standard, iii, 94
sends Rúm to attack Bahrám, iii, 98
goes to see Bahrám, iii, 99
hears of the Iránians’ retreat, iii, 105
informs Afrásiyáb and returns in triumph, iii, 106

Pirán, goes to Khutan, iii, 107
goes to oppose Tús, iii, 117
informs Afrásiyáb of the Iránian invasion, iii, 118
reinforced, iii, 118
joins battle with Tús, iii, 118
sends a warlock to bring a snowstorm on the Iránians, iii, 128
defeats the Iránians, iii, 131
takes counsel with his chiefs, iii, 133
pursues the Iránians, iii, 134
sends Lahhák and Húmán on in advance, iii, 135
reaches Mount Hamáwan, iii, 137
beleaguer the Iránians, iii, 138
attacked by Tús, iii, 139
hears of the approach of reinforcements, iii, 151
harangues his host, iii, 151
goes to meet his allies, iii, 153
plan of campaign of, rejected, iii, 162
hears of the arrival of Iránian succour, iii, 164 seq.
Rustam, iii, 174
takes counsel with Kámús and the chiefs, iii, 175, 182
attacks the Iránians, iii, 176
describes Rustam to Kámús, iii, 183
parleys with Rustam, iii, 202
reports to his kindred his interview with Rustam, iii, 206
declines Rustam’s terms, iii, 217
retreats, iii, 231
counsels Afrásiyáb, iii, 253
urges Afrásiyáb to withdraw to Chin, iii, 265
city of, iii, 335
entertains Rustam in disguise, iii, 335
pursues Rustam, iii, 349
sent by Afrásiyáb to invade Irán, iv, 11
Pirán, holds parley with Giv, iv, 20
informs Afrásiyáb, iv, 20
receives reinforcements, iv, 20
rejects Giv’s overtures, iv, 21
occupies Kanábé, iv, 22
arrays his host, iv, 25
gives the centre to Húmán
iv, 25
left to Burjásp, iv, 26
right to Lakhák and Farshídward, iv, 26
sets scouts on the mountaintop, iv, 26
dissuades Húmán from fighting, iv, 30
hears of Húmán’s death, iv, 51
sends Nastíhan to make a night-attack, iv, 53
hears of Nastíhan’s death, iv, 55
attacks Gúdarz, iv, 55
proposes terms to Gúdarz, iv, 63
sends Ruín with letter to Gúdarz, iv, 67
receives Gúdarz’ reply, iv, 74
harangues his troops and prepares for battle, iv, 75
sends messenger to Afrásiyáb, iv, 75
receives Afrásiyáb’s reply, iv, 80
becomes despondent, iv, 81, 98
sends Lakhák and Farshídward to take the Iránians in flank, iv, 82
fights with Giv, iv, 84
appeals to Lakhák and Farshídward for help, iv, 85
announces the proposed Battle of Eleven Rukhs, iv, 94
gives the chief command to Lakhák and Farshídward, iv, 94

Pirán, instructs them, iv, 95
holds a parley with Gúdarz and arranges with him the Battle of the Eleven Rukhs, iv, 95 seq.
steed of, slain by Gúdarz, iv, 107
falls under his steed and is injured, iv, 107
flees from Gúdarz, iv, 107
refuses to surrender, iv, 108
wounds Gúdarz, iv, 108
slain by Gúdarz, iv, 109
lamented for by Lakhák and Farshídward, iv, 112
Kai Khusrau, iv, 127
buried with the Túranian champions by Kai Khusrau, iv, 128
death of, announced to Afrásiyáb, iv, 151
treasures of, taken possession of by Afrásiyáb, iv, 219

Pírúz (Perozes), Sháh, 166, vi, 3; vii, 4, 153, 178 seq., 335, 359; viii, 73, 75, 168, 242, 245, 267, 285
passed over in the succession by Yazdagird, vii, 155
helped by the Haitálíans, vii, 156, 157
defeats Hurmuz, vii, 157
Hurmuz pardoned by, vii, 156, 158
Reign of, 166, vii, 159 seq.
Note on, vii, 159 seq.
calamities of, vii, 159
title of, vii, 159
relic of, vii, 159
measures of, against drought vii, 159, 162
cities of, vii, 159, 163
expedition of, against the Haitálíans, vii, 159, 164 seq.
tradition of, vii, 160
in mythical story, vii, 161
GENERAL INDEX

Pírúz (Perozes), Bahram Gur’s pillar said to have been moved by, vii, 161
daughter of, taken prisoner, vii, 161
child of, the wife of Kubad, vii, 161, 184
accession of, vii, 161
advances against Khushnawaz, viii, 164
gives the van to Hurmuz, vii, 164
gives the rear to Kubad, vii, 164
gives the regency to Balash, vii, 164
makes Sufarai (Sarkhan) minister to Balash, vii, 164 and note
replies to the appeal of Khushnawaz, vii, 165, 167
defeated by Khushnawaz, vii, 168
death of, vii, 168
Iranian tradition of the revenge for, vii, 170
Sufarai determines to avenge, vii, 173
Pírúz, Iranian chief, vii, 85
Pírúz, Iranian general, vii, 187
Pírúz, Iranian warrior, vii, 219, 273 seq.
exhorts Nushzad to yield, vii, 273
Pírúz, father of Ustad, viii, 296
Pírúz, son of Khusrau, minister of Ardshir son of Shírui, 175
appointed general, ix, 44
letter of Guraz to, ix, 46
takes counsel, ix, 46
writes to Guraz, ix, 47
Guraz marches against, ix, 48
appeals to Tukhar, ix, 48
feasts with Ardshir, ix, 48
informs Guraz of the death of Ardshir, ix, 51
put to death, ix, 57
Pírúz, Iranian prince, ix, 59

Pírúz, son of Shápúr, Iranian noble, takes Rustam’s letter to Sa’ad, ix, 80, 81
Pírúzán, Persian general, commands Persian forces at Nahavand, ix, 68
slain, ix, 69
Pírúz-Rám (Rám-Pírúz), city built by Pírúz, 166, vii, 159, 163
Pírúz Shápúr (Ambar q.v.), vi, 327, 357
Pisces, constellation, i, 310 and note; ii, 407; iii, 26, 159, 318; iv, 364; vi, 395; vii, 245; viii, 51, 342; ix, 71
Pishdadian, Pishdadians, i, 116, 373; vi, 161, 171
Dynasty, i, 49, 115 seq., 122; ii, 9, 336; iii, 9, 13; vi, 194
Plague. See Pestilence.
Planets, the seven, vi, 206; vii, 408 created by Ahriman, i, 52
evil influence of, i, 52
symbolized in the game of nard, vii, 382
Plato (Falátún), Greek philosopher (B.C. 427-347), vii, 100 note
Planisphere, ii, 215, 216
Pleiads, Pleiades, i, 114, 205, 244, 245, 267, 332; ii, 148, 282, 394, 408; iv, 183, 245, 329; v, 110, 131; vi, 169, 401; vii, 365; viii, 53, 158
Plutarch, Greek writer (A.D. 46-120), vi, 67
Poll-tax, vii, 215, 225
Polo, game of, 145, ii, 263 seq., 292; iv, 349, 350; vi, 329, 379, 382; vii, 57, 118, 143, 235; viii, 246, 247, 258, 371; ix, 16
episode in Kánamak and Sháhnáma, vi, 196, 257, 263, 271
-stick, ii, 292; iv, 350; vi, 271, 272; vii, 118; viii, 247
GENERAL INDEX

Porus (Für q.v.), Indian king, vi, 17, 62 seq., 66, 76, 83
son of, vi, 18, 63
Darius' letter to, vi, 31
origin of name of, vi, 31
kingdom of, vi, 31
Alexander and, historical account of, vi, 63
in the Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi, 64, 67
statue of, vi, 64
nephew of, vi, 80
Pourushaspas, father of Zar- duhsht (Zoroaster), ii, 9;
v, 14, 15, 17
Prefatory Note, vii, v
Prelate, or bishop q.v., iv, 341, 348; vi, 184
as militarist, iv, 197; v, 306; vi, 124; viii, 47
and note
Prelude, to Shâhnâma, i, 99 seq.
Kai Kâus, ii, 29
Suhrâb, ii, 119
Siwâwush, ii, 191
Kai Khusrau, iii, 15
Farûd, iii, 37
Kâmûs, iii, 110
Akwân, iii, 272
Bîzhan and Manîzha, iii, 287
Battle of the Twelve Rukhs, iv, 9
Rustam and Shaghâd, v, 261
Nûshirvân, vii, 220
Humrud, vii, 77
Presbyter, iv, 348
Prithâ, Indian princess, iv, 316
Procopius, Byzantine historian (6th century A.D.), vii, 187
Prometheus, i, 57
Pronunciation, Note on, preceding text in each volume.
Property-tax, remission of, 165
Prophet, the, Praise of, 139
Proverb, i, 194, 195, 197; vii, 185; viii, 187
Pseudo - Callisthenes, Greek Romance of Alexander the Great, ii, 9; vi, 30 seq., 62 seq., 71, 72, 74 seq.
Pseudo-Calisthenes, account and versions of, vi, 13 seq., 17
vogue of, vi, 17
treatise of Palladius interpolated in, vi, 61
Alexander and Porus in, vi, 64
historic elements in, vi, 83
Egyptian elements in, vi, 83
Persian elements in, vi, 83
Arabic elements in, vi, 83
'diagram to illustrate, vi, 84
Ptolemy, son of Lagus, one of Alexander the Great's generals, king of Egypt (B.C. 323-283), and historian, vi, 12, 13, 66
Pulând, a div, ii, 44, 54, 55, 64, 93; iii, 256; iv, 296 and note; v, 204
Pulând, Irânian hero, ii, 22
Pulând, Tûranian hero, ii, 264; iii, 199, 234
Pulândwand, Tûranian hero or div, 149; iii, 191, 268, 270
summoned by Afrâsiyâb, iii, 254
goes to help Afrâsiyâb, iii, 255
takes counsel with Afrâsiyâb, iii, 256
worsts Tûs, iii, 257
Gîv, Ruhâm, and Bîzhan, iii, 258
cleaves in twain Kâwa's standard, iii, 258
challenged by Rustam, iii, 259
overthrown by Rustam, iii, 264
withdraws with his army from the field, iii, 265
Pun-t (Berbera q.v.), i, 79
Pûrândukht, Shâh, 175, v, 294; vi, 3; ix, 56
reproaches Kubâd, ix, 17
makes Shâhrânguráz prime minister, ix, 56
True Cross and, ix, 56
| Purmáya (Barmaiún), brother of Farídún, i, 90, 91; v, 261 referred to, i, 147, 165 Kaíanúsh and, summon the smiths to Farídún, i, 158 go with Farídún against Zahhák, i, 159 attempt to kill Farídún, i, 160 Pusfarrukh, ix, 50 Python, Apollo and the, vi, 203 |
|---|---|
| Queen of Cúfn (wife of the Khán), viii, 190 daughter of, slain by lion-ape, viii, 322 asks Bahram Chúbina to avenge her daughter, viii, 324 steward of, plots with Kharrád against Bahram Chúbina viii, 335 daughter of, cured by Kharrád, viii, 336 grants boon to Kharrád, viii, 338 disgraced, viii, 344 Questions, Mountain of the Holy, i, 62 hard, vii, 102 seq. Quince, omen of the, ix, 13, 14 Quintus Curtius, Roman writer (1st century A.D.), vi, 65 on the Amazons, vi, 72 |
| Rai, city and district near Tih-rán, i, 174, i, 363, 366 seq.; ii, 26, 399; iii, 242; iv, 147, 255, 256; v, 14, 18; vi, 32, 202, 219, 229; vii, 84, 160, 184; viii, 72, 155, 166, 171, 173, 174, 189, 214, 216, 240; ix, 68, 69, 89, 95, 96 seat of the Magi, i, 60 Khár of. See Khár. i, 368, 374, 381 Ardawán's capital, vi, 201 Shápür of, vii, 184, 185, 191, 192 seat of Arsacid power, viii, 72 Bahram Chúbina goes to, viii, 306 Khusrau Parwíz oppresses, viii, 365 misery of, viii, 367 Gurdyá delivers, viii, 368 Rái. See Rája. Raibad, town, about twenty miles west of Nishápúr, and district east of the Jagatai range, in Khurúsdán, iv, 17, 22, 23, 47, 55, 76, 88, 112, 134 occupied by Gúdarz, iv, 16 arrival of Kai Khusrau at, iv, 111, 126 Rája (Rái) of Hind, temp. Luhrás, iv, 321; ix, 17 temp. Núshírwán, 169, vii, 140 and note, 143, 424 proposes wager to Núshírwán, vii, 5, 385, 387 receives game of nard from Núshírwán, vii, 5, 381, 389 seq. fails to discover how to play the game, vii, 302 pays forfeit to Núshírwán, vii, 393 receives Núshírwán's gifts from Barzwí, vii, 425 |

*The village of Riwdad to the south of the range may perhaps indicate what was once the western boundary of the district.*
Rája, assists Barzwi in his mission to Hind, vii, 428
letter of, ix, 17
put in charge of Shirín, ix, 17
Rakhs, Rustam's steed, i, 42, i, 386; ii, 42, seq., 67, 74, 94, 97, 110, 116, 139, 143, 311, 354; iii, 146, 177, 186, 189, 194, 195, 223, 224, 226, 227, 229, 259, 264, 275, 276, 278, 279, 313, 324, 326, 335, 342, 344, 346 seq., 350, 352; iv, 295; v, 117, 184, 192, 198, 207, 208, 214, 219, 228 seq., 234 seq., 266, 275
caught by Rustam, i, 378 seq.
described, i, 379, 380
care taken of, i, 380
slays a lion, ii, 45
encounters a dragon, ii, 48
stolen by Turkmans, ii, 121 seq.
sire of Shuráb's charger, ii, 128
saddled by Gív, Ruhhám, and Tús for the fight with Shuráb, ii, 160
referred to, iii, 184, 228, 253; v, 199
wounded by Asfandiýár, v, 229
returns home without Rustam, v, 229
Rustam's thought of abandoning, v, 235
healed by the Simurgh, v, 237
tries to save Rustam, v, 270
falls into the pit, v, 270
body of, taken from pit by Farámarz, v, 275
tomb of, v, 276
lord of = Rustam, v, 306
Rakhshasas, vi, 13
Rakka (Callinicus, Kálíniyús q.v., Nicephorium, Warigh), city, viii, 188
Ram, personification of the Divine Grace, i, 374. See mountain-sheep.
Rustam's life saved by a, ii, 46
constellation, ii, 299; v, 129
Rám, Fire-temple, vi, 202, 226
Rám, Iránian warrior, viii, 291
Rám Ardshír, city, vi, 202, 290

and note
Rám Barzín, high priest and general, 167, vii, 275
Kubád's testament kept by, vii, 210
Núshírwán's instructions to, concerning Núshzád, vii, 267 seq.
goes to fight with Núshzád, vii, 272
hears of Núshzád's last wishes, vii, 276
Rám Barzín, Persian official, viii, 313
Rámbihsht, wife of Sásán, vi, 198
Rám Hurmuz, city in Khúzístán, east of Ahwáz, vi, 199
plain of, vi, 199
Rámishn - i - Ardshír, district, vi, 202
Rám Kubád (Aragán), city, vii, 188
Rám Píráz. See Píráz Rám.
Rangwí, Iránian warrior, viii, 296
Rasafa, viii, 188
Rashnawád, captain of the host to Humáí, 158
assembles troops, v, 301
Dáráb enlists under, v, 301
host of, reviewed by Humáí, v, 302
marches on Rám, v, 302
and the adventure of the ruined vault, v, 303
gives presents to Dáráb, v, 304
questions Dáráb, v, 304
sends for the launderer and his wife, v, 304
returns to Írán, v, 307
hears from the launderer and his wife about the case of Dârâb, v, 308
writes to Humâi about the case of Dârâb, v, 308
appears with Dârâb before Humâi, v, 309 seq.
Râs-Shâpûr (Gund-i-Shâpûr, q.v.), city, vi, 255, 256
Râtî, weight, vi, 156 and note
Raven, Raven-head, ix, 91 and note, 95 note, 96
Râvi (Hydraotes), river in the Punjáb, vi, 64
Rawalpindi, town and district in the Punjáb, vi, 62
Rawlinson, Sir Henry, his account of Gotarzes’ inscription at Bibistân, iii, 9
Rawlinson, Professor, vi, 253
Red Sea, ii, 364
Reeds (bamboos), vi, 71
useless, seen by Sikandar, vi, 148
used in house-building, vi, 71, 148
Religion, War of the, v, 19, 26
two campaigns of, v, 29
Remus, See Romulus.
Reseph, viii, 188
Responses, of Nûshîrwân, viii, 14 seq., 28 seq.
Revellers, Rosary of, ix, 38, 40
Rhyme-words, i, 74; ii, 228
not; v, 261; vi, 372; vii, 88 and note, 89 and note, 174 and note, 245 and note, 263 and note
Fire-davûl and, viii, 397 note
Rîd of Gushtâsp, v, 29
Rîv-Ardshîr, city east of the Jarâhî river near the head of the Persian Gulf, vi, 202
referred to, vi, 224
Rîvnîz, son-in-law of Tûs, xiv, 147; iii, 14, 25, 45, 57, 60, 71
prepares to attack Farûd, iii, 51
referred to, iii, 55
burial of, iii, 68
Rîvnîz, son of Kai Kháûs, ii, 3; iii, 14, 96, 113, 114, 232
slain, iii, 93
battle for crown of, iii, 94
Rîvnîz, son of Zarasp, iv, 360
Zarîr and, go to Rûm, iv, 360
hails Gushtâsp as Shâh, iv, 362
Rîzmîr (Zarmîr), son of Sûfårâî, xvi, 166; vii, 207; viii, 169
identical with Sûfårâî, vii, 185
Kubâd and, go to the Haitâlians, vii, 186
fate of, vii, 186
loyalty of, to Kubâd, vii, 196
helps Kubâd to escape from prison, vii, 197
negotiates a marriage for Kubâd, vii, 197
made chief minister, vii, 200
Rîzwân, angel, ii, 39 and note, 288
Roc, mythical bird, i, 51, 235
Roman, Romans, i, 10; iii, 286; vi, 254, 318, 325, 326; vii, 214; viii, 188, 189, 195; ix, 50, 66
relations of, with the Íránians, i, 14
empire, Eastern, i, 373; vi, 253
war of, with Persia, viii, 41, 193
Alexander’s legendary visit to, vi, 30
emperors, vi, 321, 371, 372
neglect the defences of the Caucasus, vii, 187
so-called tribute of, to Persia, vii, 187
seizure of Munzir by, vii, 217
leads to war with Nûshîrwân, vii, 217
Romans, defeat Bahram Chubina, viii, 76
Romance of Alexander the Great (Pseudo-Callisthenes, q.v.), vi, 11 seq., 88
incorporation of, in Shahnama, vi, 16
vogue of, vi, 17
sources of marvels in, vi, 12, 69
diagram to illustrate, vi, 84
Rome, vi, 194, 197, 203, 301, 324
Shapur son of Ardshir's wars with, vi, 294, 297
Bahram Gur's war with, vi, 373
Romulus and Remus, foundling legend of, v, 293
Rook, piece in chess. See Rukh.
Rosary of Revellers, ix, 38, 40
Roxana (Roushanak, q.v.), vi, 33
Alexander and, vi, 30
account of, vi, 32
Rudaba, daughter of Mihrab
ing of Kábul, wife of Zal, and mother of Rustam,
141, 157, i, 145, 299: ii, 44, 180; v, 182, 184, 190
note
Story of Zal and, i, 256 seq.
referred to, iii, 285
Zal hears of, i, 257
description of, i, 257, 259.
264, 266, 272
hears of Zal, i, 260
falls in love with Zal, i, 260
handmaids of, go in quest of Zal, i, 263
interview Zal, i, 266
invite Zal to visit Rudaba, i, 267
reproached by the porter, i, 267
describe Zal, i, 268
prepares to receive Zal, i, 269
entertains, and plights her troth to, Zal, i, 272
Zal consults the archimages on the matter of, i, 273
Rudaba, go-between of, with
Zal, i, 280
Zal sends Sám's letter to, i, 280
rewards her go-between, i, 281
go between of, discovered by Sindukht, i, 281
reproached by her parents, i, 282, 287
congratulated by Sindukht, i, 315
seen and admired by Sám, i, 318
married to Zal, i, 318
Zal and, go to Sistán, i, 319
grievous travail of, i, 320
saved by the Sirmurgh, i, 321
Caesarean operation performed upon, i, 322
give birth to Rustam, i, 322
fasts in sorrow for Rustam,
v, 278
frenzy of, v, 278
regains her wits, v, 279
referred to, v, 190, 289
lamentation of, v, 289
Rudagi, Persian poet, versifies the Fables of Bidpai, vii, 383, 431
Rudbar, district, v, 30
Rudyab, father of Papak (in Shahnama), vi, 200, 212
Rue, wild, as a prophylactic, i, 380
Ruhham, son of Gudarz, Íranian
heir, ii, 4, 62, 73, 144, 158, 340; iii, 19, 33, 48, 67, 115, 126 seq., 139 seq., 154, 157, 182, 187, 211, 248, 259, 264, 268, 273, 322, 350, 352; iv, 13, 15, 21, 31, 37, 147; vii, 156
helps to saddle Rakhsh for the fight with Suhrab, ii, 160
mortally wounds Farud, iii, 64
embassy of, to Pirán, iii, 87
attacks Bazúr, iii, 128
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ruḥḥām, worsted by Ashkabūs, iii, 179</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>goes to the help of Rustam, iii, 227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worsted by Pūlādwand, iii, 258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goes with Rustam to rescue Bizhan, iii, 334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commands the left wing, iv, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superseded <em>pro tem</em>, by Farhād, iv, 92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chosen to fight with Bármán iv, 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slays Bármán, iv, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sent by Gūdarz to fetch Pirān's corpse, iv, 110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acts as Kai Khusrāw's standard-bearer in his combat with Shīdā, iv, 171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>protests against Kai Khusrāw's fighting on foot with Shīdā, iv, 174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>holds Kai Khusrāw's steed, iv, 175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instructed by Kai Khusrāw to bury Shīdā, iv, 176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kai Khusrāw remonstrated with by, and other nobles for refusing audience, iv, 275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ruḥḥām, king of Rai, temp. Bahrām Gūr, vii, 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ruḥḥām, Irānian warrior, vii, 156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>helps Pirūz to gain the throne, vii, 156, 186; viii, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rūūn, son of Pirān, i51, i, 92; iii, 207, 234; iv, 10, 71, 90, 102, 152, 153, 162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>summons Pirān to save Farangīs, ii, 323 and note sent by Pirān to attack Bahrām, iii, 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wounded by Bahrām, iii, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put in command of ambush, iv, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bears letter from Pirān to Gūdarz, iv, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rūūn, entertained by Gūdarz, iv, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>returns to Pirān with Gūdarz' reply, iv, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goes to help Pirān against Gīv and is defeated, iv, 84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chosen to fight with Bizhan, iv, 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slain by Bizhan, iv, 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rūūna, place, ix, 91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rukh, piece in chess (castle), vii, 385, 423</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>position of, iv, 8; vii, 388, 422</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>move of, iv, 8; vii, 422</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rukhs, Battle of the Twelve, i51; iv, 7 seq.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meaning of, iv, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battle of the Eleven, i51, iv, 88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arranged by Gūdarz and Pirān, iv, 95 seq.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Firdausi's reflections on, iv, 7, 98, 106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>referred to, v, 29; vii, 156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rūūm, the Eastern Roman Empire; i54, i58, 162, 167, 172, 173, i, 15, 229; ii, 143, 297, 307, 360; iii, 106, 151, 164, 296; iv, 14, 133, 148, 196, 197, 208, 272, 312, 314, 316, 317, 323 seq., 330, 331, 333 seq., 339, 341 seq., 345, 348, 349, 352, 353, 355, 356, 359, 361, 364; v, 75, 76, 102, 180, 188, 262, 301, 305; vi, 40, 41, 45, 51, 53, 81, 94, 104, 113 seq., and <em>passim</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>king of=Mahmūd, i, 113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=Sikandar, vi, 172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West and, Salm's portion, i, 189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brocade of, i, 157, 183, 210, 252, 263, 316 and <em>passim</em>; iii, 26, 235, 291, 297, 355; iv, 128, 271, 364; v, 295; vi, 56, 89; vii, 64, 67, 276, 384; viii, 157, 173, 278, 337, 367, 374; ix, 99, 101</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Rûm, helm of, iii, 114
sea of, iii, 177
city in, founded by Salm, iv, 325
ravaged by Rashnawâd and Dârâb, v, 307
ambassadors from, come to Dârâb, vi, 21
Dârâb wars with, vi, 22
prince of, vi, 22
chiefs of, vi, 23, 153
withdrow on Dârâb’s approach, vi, 23
tribute of, to Írán, vi, 24
explained, vii, 187
ambassadors from, come to Dârâ, vi, 35
reed (pen) of, vi, 85
stuffs of, vi, 143
philosophers of, vi, 115, 154; viii, 279, 382
cavaliers of, vi, 167
Shâh of= Sikandar, vi, 170
Sikandar’s policy to safeguard, vi, 178
Arastâlîs’ advice to Sikandar concerning, vi, 179
invaded by Shápûr, vi, 350
slave-girls of, chosen by Bahram Gúr, vi, 382
Bahram Gûr’s war with, vii, 4, 5, 84
Nûshîrwân’s wars with, vii, 213
robes of, viii, 308
captured cities of, restored to, viii, 312
monks of, slain by Mâhwi, ix, 113
Rûman, Rûmans, 154, 158, 162, 167, 172, 173, iii, 309; iv, 357, 360, 363; v, 173, 205
292; vi, 44, 45, 101 seq., 113, 114, 127, 142, 148, 168, 170, 179 seq., and passim
slaves, i, 252; vi, 382; vii, 54, 259
invade Írán, v, 301
defeated by Rashnawâd and Dârâb, v, 305 seq.
Rûman, Rûmans, king of= Philip of Macedon, vi, 19
carry out works in Írán, vi, 21
= Sikandar, vi, 50, 52, 154
Írânians ask quarter of, vii, 51
tongue, vi, 160; vii, 256, 261
dispute with the Persians as to Sikandar’s burial, vi, 184
sages, vi, 185
their sentences over the coffin of Sikandar, vii, 1, 85, seq.
silk, vi, 280; vii, 424
defeated by Shápûr, son of Ardshîr, vi, 297
engineers build bridge at Shûshtar, vi, 299
astrologic tablets, vi, 376
eunuchs, vii, 67; viii, 279
pen, vii, 73
helmet, vii, 89, 272, 274
bishop, vii, 275, 276
envoy, viii, 8 seq.
surrender to Nûshîrwân, viii, 47
entrench themselves, viii, 47
sue for peace and pay tribute viii, 51 seq.
architect, viii, 193, 401
marches, viii, 252
robes, viii, 253
helms, viii, 105, 276, 417
worsted by Bahram Chûbînâ, viii, 292
artificers imprisoned by Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 402
released by Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 403
Rûmiya (New Antioch, Sûrsân q.v.), a suburb of Ctesiphon (Taisafún) on the east bank of the Tigris, vii, 218
Rûs (Russia), vi, 19; viii, 406
king of, vi, 22
Rúshanak (Roxana, q.v.), daughter of Dárá (in Sháhnáma) and wife of Sikandar, i58, i59, ii, 3; vi, 86 seq., 188 account of, vi, 32 derivation of, vi, 33 bestowed by Dárá on Sikandar, vi, 55 son of, vi, 81, 181 visited by Náhíd, vi, 89 married to Sikandar, vi, 90 reference in Sikandar’s Will, to, vi, 181

Rúshan Pirúz, city, vii, 160
Russia, vi, 19
Russian, Russians, vi, 19 empire, vi, 19 foundation of, vi, 19 cloth, ix, 110


Rustam, goes with Zál and Mihráb to meet Sám, i, 325 slays the white elephant, i, 327, 377 bidden by Zál to take Mount Sipand, i, 329 takes Mount Sipand, i, 331, 377 sends the Spoil to Zál, i, 333 sets fire to Mount Sipand, i, 333 bidden by Zál to prepare for war, i, 376 reply of, i, 376 Zál gives Sám’s mace to, i, 378 obtains Rakhsh, i, 378 goes in quest of Kai Kubád, i, 382 seq. slays Kulún, i, 386 first campaign of, ii, 11 seq. nearly takes Afrásiyáb prisoner, ii, 14, 116, 354 rewarded by Kai Kubád, ii, 21

Seven Courses of (Haft Khwán) 143, ii, 44 seq. life of, saved by a ram, ii, 46 song of, ii, 51 rescues Kai Káús in Mázan darán, ii, 58 handgrip of, ii, 66, 67 encounter of, with Kaláhúr, ii, 67 Juyá, ii, 71 audience of, with the king of Mázan darán, ii, 67 seq. encounter of, with the king of Mázan darán, ii, 73 rewarded by Kai Káús, ii, 77 entertains Kai Káús, ii, 83 takes the king of Shám prisoner, ii, 97 defeats Afrásiyáb, ii, 100 made paladin of paladins by Kai Káús, ii, 101 goes in search of Kai Káús, ii, 104 takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107 seq. slays Alkús, ii, 115
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index Term</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rustam, and Suhráb, Story of</td>
<td>ii, 118 seq.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loses Rakhsh, ii, 121</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Afrásiyáb’s plot against, ii, 129</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>holds a drinking-bout, ii, 141</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quarrels with Kai Káús, ii, 142</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reconciled by Gúdarz, ii, 144</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seq.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goes in disguise to see Suhráb, ii, 149</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adventure of, with Zhandá Razm, ii, 149 seq.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suhráb described by, ii, 151, 166</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>encampment of, described, ii, 154</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>armed by Tús, Gív, and Ruhhám for his fight with Suhráb, ii, 160</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>challenges Suhráb, ii, 161</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charge of, to Zawára, ii, 167</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>declines Suhráb’s advances, ii, 169</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saves his life by a ruse, ii, 170</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prays that his strength may be restored, ii, 171</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learns too late that Suhráb is his son, ii, 173</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grief of, ii, 173 seq.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makes a truce with Hümán, ii, 176</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tries to slay Hajír, ii, 176</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>himself, ii, 177</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brings up Siyáwush, ii, 196</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>matches with him against Afrásiyáb, ii, 225, seq.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>returns and quarrels with Kai Káús, ii, 242 seq.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grief and wrath of, at the death of Siyáwush, ii, 338 seq.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puts Surkha to death, ii, 346</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fights with the Túránians, ii, 349 seq.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appoints Tús ruler of Chách, ii, 358</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gúdarz ruler of Sughd and Sipanjáb, ii, 358</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index Term</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rustam, daughter of</td>
<td>i, 383 seq.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii, 384</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wife of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii, 384</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii, 323</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hears of Kai Khusrau’s arrival in Irán, ii, 395</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turkman occupation of Zábulistán, account of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by, iii, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goes to do homage to Kai Khusrau, iii, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>witnesses Kai Khusrau’s oath to avenge Siyáwush,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proposes to Kai Khusrau to expel Turkmans from</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zábulistán, iii, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asks Kai Khusrau to pardon Tús and the Iránians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in the matter of Farúd, iii, 113</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>summoned by Kai Khusrau, iii, 143</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advocates the marriage of Fariburz and Fatangís</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii, 146</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marches to succour Tús, iii, 148</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meets Gúdarz, iii, 171</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>takes counsel with Tús and the chiefs, iii, 172</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrays the host, iii, 177</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight of, with Ashkábús, legend about, iii, 109</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>referred to, viii, 75</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parleys with Ashkábús, iii, 180</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slays Ashkábús, iii, 181</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>described by Pirán, iii, 183</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>harangues the troops, iii, 186, 219, 223, 232, 235</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>challenged by Kámús, iii, 187</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spear-bearer of, slain by Kámús, iii, 188</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parleys with Kámús, iii, 188</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>takes Kámús prisoner, iii, 189</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and the Khán of Chín, Story of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of, i, 149, iii, 191 seq.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refe. red to, iii, 193</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slays Chingish, iii, 195</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Rustam, parleys with Húmán, iii, 196
conditions of peace offered by, iii, 197, 205
parleys with Pirán, iii, 202
proposes peace on terms to the Iránians, iii, 211
warned by Gúdarz not to trust Pirán, iii, 212
wrath of, with Pirán, iii, 218
unhorses Shangul, iii, 221
prowess of, in battle, iii, 222 seq.
overthrows Kundur, iii, 224
slays Sáwa, iii, 224
Gahár, iii, 225
attacks the Khán of Chín, iii, 225, seq.
victorious, iii, 231, seq.
wroth with Tús and the Iránians, iii, 234
sends Fariburz to Kai Khusrau with tidings of victory, iii, 236, seq.
leads on the host, iii, 238
reaches Sughd, iii, 244
sends troops to attack Bídád, iii, 244
slays Káfúr, iii, 245
besieges and storms Bídád, iii, 246
sends Gív to raid Khutan, iii, 247
praised by Gúdarz, iii, 248
described by Afrásiyáb, iii, 251
attacks the Túránians, iii, 257
challenges Páládwand, iii, 259
overthrows Páládwand, iii, 264
defeats the Túránians, iii, 266
divides the spoil, iii, 266
ravages Túrán, iii, 266
returns in triumph, iii, 267
asks Kai Khusrau’s leave to return to Zál, iii, 269
rewarded by Kai Khusrau, iii, 269

Rustam, Story of fight of, with the dív Akwán, 149, iii, 271 seq.
summoned to court by Kai Khusrau, iii, 274
pursues the dív Akwán, iii, 275
foiled by Akwán, iii, 276
taken at a disadvantage by Akwán, iii, 276
offered a choice of deaths by Akwán, iii, 277
outwits Akwán, iii, 277
finds Rakhsh among Afrásiyáb’s herds, iii, 278
encounters Afrásiyáb’s herdsman, iii, 279
defeats Afrásiyáb, iii, 280
slays Akwán, iii, 281
carries off the spoil, iii, 281
welcomed by Kai Khusrau, iii, 282
tells his adventure with Akwán, iii, 282
rewarded by Kai Khusrau, iii, 283
returns home, iii, 283
summoned to court in the matter of Bízhan, iii, 319 seq.
visited by Gív, iii, 322
promises to help Gív, iii, 324
goes with Gív to court, iii, 326
address of, to Kai Khusrau, iii, 327
undertakes the rescue of Bízhan, iii, 330
plan of, iii, 333
chooses his comrades, iii, 334
goes disguised to Túrán, iii, 335
gives presents to Pirán, iii, 336
welcomed by Pirán, iii, 336
opens a market, iii, 337
interviews of, with Manízha, iii, 337, 342
Rustam, sends food and his ring to Bizhan, iii, 340
removes boulder of Akwán from pit’s mouth, iii, 345
makes conditions for release with Bizhan, iii, 345
releases Bizhan, iii, 346
arrays his troops against Afrásiyáb, iii, 350
mocks Afrásiyáb, iii, 351
defeats Afrásiyáb, iii, 352
triumphant return of, iii, 353
presents Bizhan to Kai Khusrau, iii, 354
rewarded by Kai Khusrau, iii, 356
goes to Sístán, iii, 356
sent to Hindústán by Kai Khusrau, iv, 14
successes of, iv, 60, 71
troops of, recalled, iv, 145
commands the right wing, iv, 147
attacks with Kai Khusrau from the centre, iv, 180
goes with Zawára to the right wing, iv, 180
sent to the desert to attack Tawurg, iv, 188
reports his defeat of Tawurg, iv, 193
advances, iv, 194
failure of Afrásiyáb’s attempt to surprise, iv, 195
takes part in the siege of Gang-bihísht, iv, 199, 208 seq.
Kai Khusrau’s converse with, iv, 198, 199
captures Jahn and Garsíwaz, iv, 210
advises Kai Khusrau to reject Afrásiyáb’s overtures, iv, 222
ordered to prepare for a night-attack from Afrásiyáb, iv, 224
supports Kai Khusrau’s proposal to pursue Afrásiyáb to Gang-dizh, iv, 231
Rustam, left by Kai Khusrau in Chín, iv, 241
welcomes Kai Khusrau on his return from Gang-dizh, iv, 251
accompanies Kai Khusrau to Siyáwushgird, iv, 252
summoned by the Irániáns to remonstrate with Kai Khusrau, iv, 278
with Zál and the sages, sets forth for Irán, iv, 279
met on arrival by Gúdarz and other chiefs, iv, 282
holds converse with the Irániáns, iv, 282
audience of, with Kai Khusrau, iv, 283 seq.
holds, with other chiefs, at the bidding of Kai Khusrau an assembly on the plain, iv, 291 seq.
Kai Khusrau’s gift to, iv, 295
confirmed by Kai Khusrau in possession of Nímrúz, iv, 297
sets out with Kai Khusrau on his pilgrimage, iv, 306
turns back at the bidding of Kai Khusrau, iv, 307
laments the loss of the paládins and returns to Irán, iv, 310
Zál and, welcome Gushtásp to Sístán, v, 85
rivalry in legend between Asfandiyáár and, v, 116
Haft Khwán of, compared with that of Asfandiyáár, v, 117
Asfandiyáár’s fight with, Story of, 156, v, 166 seq
recited by Nádr, son of Háírth, at Mecca, v, 166
referred to, v, 169, 170, 306
Gushtásp bids Asfandiyáár go against, v, 173
Asfandiyáár’s message to, v, 179
Rustam, life of, attempted by Bahman, v, 184
interview of, with Bahman, v, 185
entertains Bahman, v, 186
great appetite of, v, 186, 210
jests with Bahman on his small appetite, v, 186
sends Zawára and Farámarz to bid Zál and Rúdába prepare to receive Asfandiyár, v, 190
goes to the Hírmund, v, 191
parleys with Asfandiyár, v, 192, seq.
invites Asfandiyár to visit him, v, 193
accepts Asfandiyár's invitation to a feast, v, 195
tells Zál, of his interview with Asfandiyár, v, 196
indignation of, at not being summoned to the feast,
v, 197
sets forth to reproach Asfandiyár, v, 198
wrangle of, with Asfandiyár, v, 198, seq.
demands his proper seat at the feast, v, 200
Zál and, vilified by Asfandiyár, v, 201
details his ancestry, v, 202
recounts Sám's exploits, v, 202
his own exploits, v, 203, 207
patents of, from Kai Kháüs and Kai Khusrau, v, 203
aged six hundred years, v, 204
tries a handgrip with Asfandiyár, v, 209
accepts Asfandiyár's challenge, v, 209
asks for neat wine, v, 211
makes fresh overtures to Asfandiyár, v, 211, seq.
addresses the royal tent-enclosure, v, 215

Rustam, bids Zawára bring him his arms, v, 218
rejects Zál's counsels, v, 220
arms for battle, v, 222
gives Zawára charge of the troops, v, 222
goes with Zawára to the Hírmund, v, 222
instructs Zawára, v, 222
crosses the Hírmund and summons Asfandiyár to the combat, v, 223
suggests a general engagement, v, 224
distress of, at the death of Násh Ázar and Mihr-i-Núsh, v, 228
offers to surrender Zawára and Farámarz to Asfandiyár, v, 228
wounded by Asfandiyár, v, 229
flees from Asfandiyár, v, 229
sends Zawára with a message to Zál, v, 230
parleys with Asfandiyár, v, 231
recrosses the Hírmund, v, 231
kin of, grieve over his wounds, v, 234
bids the leeches to attend to Rakhsh first, v, 234
despair of, v, 235
advised by Zál, v, 235
Zál summons the Simurgh to the aid of, v, 235
healed by the Simurgh, v, 237
instructed by the Simurgh how to overcome Asfandiyár, v, 237, seq.
cuts the fatal branch of tamarisk, v, 239
prepares the arrow, v, 240
summons Asfandiyár to renew the fight, v, 240
makes a final effort for peace with Asfandiyár, v, 241 seq.
Rustam, bewails Asfandiýar to Bishútán, v, 246
Asfandiýar confides Bahman to, v, 248
foretells an evil future for, v, 248
laments Asfandiýar, v, 250
warned by Zawára against Bahman, v, 250
sends Asfandiýar's corpse to Gushtásp, v, 251
Bahman remains with, v, 252, 256
instructs Bahman, v, 256
writes to Gushtásp to excuse himself in the matter of Asfandiýar, v, 256
overtures of, to Gushtásp supported by Bishútán, v, 257
Gushtásp accepts the excuses of, and writes to, v, 257
requested by Gushtásp to send back Bahman, v, 258
equips Bahman for his journey, v, 258
Story of, and Shaghád, 157
provenance of, v, 260 seq.
death of, v, 261, 273, 289
versions of, v, 261
Kábúl's tribute to, question of, v, 265
Shaghád and the king of Kábúl plot against, v, 265
takes up Shaghád's cause, v, 267
prepares to occupy Kábúl with a host, v, 268
persuaded by Shaghád to go with Zawára and a small escort, v, 268
pardons king of Kábúl, v, 269
entertained by king of Kábúl, v, 269
goes hunting with Zawára, v, 270
falls a victim to treachery, v, 270

Rustam, Shaghád, glories over, v, 271
slays Shaghád, v, 272
last words of, v, 272
corpse of, taken from the pit by Farámarz, v, 274
obsequies of, v, 274 seq.
Artabanus and, v, 282
burial place of, v, 287
scene of the battle between Bahman and Farámarz, v, 287
personification of the Sacae, i, 68; vi, 104
conduct of, in Hámávarán, vii, 104, 168
banner of, bestowed on Bahrám Chúbína, vii, 105, 217
Rustam, Persian commander in chief under Yazdagird III, 176; ix, 66, 67, 69, 73, 81
brother of Farrukhzád, vii, 413 and note
revolt of, viii, 413
overthrows Ázarmdukht, ix, 59
advances to Khádisíya, ix, 67, 73
end of, ix, 69
finds evil aspects in the stars ix, 73
writes to his brother, ix, 73
hears of Shu'ba Mughíra's arrival, ix, 82
Rúzbíh, Bahrám Gúr's high priest, 164, vii, 26 seq., 54, 67
bewails Bahrám Gúr's course of life, vii, 56
reproached by Bahrám Gúr for his parsimony, vii, 83
Rúzbíh, scribe, viii, 252

S
Sa'ad, son of Wakkás, Arab
general, 176, ix, 67, 68, 82 seq., 90
Sa'ad, succeeds Abú 'Ubaida, ix, 67
at Kádisiya, ix, 67, 69
founders Kúfa, ix, 67
takes Ctesiphon, ix, 67
recalled, ix, 68
sent by 'Umar to invade Iran, ix, 72
letter of Rustam to, ix, 78
taken by Pírúz, ix, 80, 81
Sabbákh, king of Yaman, iv, 146
Sabz dar sabz, melody, viii, 399
and note
Sacaee (Scythians), i, 17, 19
Rustam a personification of, i, 68; vi, 194
Sacaeastán. See Sístán.
Sacrifice, human, and serpent-worship, i, 143
Sada, feast of, 140, i, 23; iv, 317; v, 309; vi, 33, 55, 230 and note, 245, 273, 389; vii, 11, 94, 200; viii, 68, 133, 216, 313; ix, 40, 92
institution of i, 124
Sáda, Iránian noble, vii, 312
Safid Rúd, river flowing through Gílán into the Caspian, v, 13, 16
Sagastán (Sístán q.v.), v, 13
Sage, sages, 159, vi, 101, 103
Indian, vi, 62
naked (Brahmans q.v.) of Káid. See Káid.
saying of, viii, 155
Sagittarius, constellation, i, 188; iv, 355
Sagísár, Sagsárs, district and tribe, i, 279 and note, 290, 323, 339; ii, 143; iii, 152, 207
Sahadeva, one of the five Pán-davas, iv, 138
referred to, iv, 139
Sahlí, wife of Íraj, i, 188
referred to, i, 182 seq.
Sahlí, son of Mábán, Iránian noble, v, 260, 261, 263
Saífu'd-Daula, title of Sultán Mahmúd, i, 21
Sakil, son of Caesar, temp. Luhrásp, iv, 355
commands the left wing, iv, 355
Saklía, mountain, 169, iv, 342; viii, 41
dragon of, 154, iv, 342 seq.
referred to, iv, 343, 351
stronghold of, taken by Rúmans, viii, 47
Sakláb (Slavonia), ii, 360; iii, 152, 164, 177, 185, 204, 218, 221 seq., 235, 238, 243, 255; vi, 179; vii, 112, 115, 364; viii, 379
Salm, eldest son of Farídún, 140, 141, i, 42, 90, 91, 183 seq., 335, 342, 344, 362; ii, 19, 237, 318; iii, 37, 115, iv, 66, 69, 269, 272; v, 205, 261, 284; vi, 353; vii, 101; viii, 266, 270, 300, 376 note, 378, 381
racial significance of, i, 54 etymology of, Firdausí's, i, 174
naming of, i, 187
horoscope of, i, 188
receives Rúm and the West, i, 189
envies Íraj, i, 190
plots with Túr, i, 190
Túr and, demand the abdication of Íraj, i, 191
Íraj visits, i, 198
Íraj not welcomed by, i, 198 seq., slay Íraj, i, 201
send Íraj's head to Farídún, i, 202
hear of Minúchíhr, i, 208
send an embassy to Farídún, i, 208
receive Farídún's reply, i, 213 seq.
prepare for war, i, 215
worsted by Minúchíhr, i, 220
plan night-surprise, i, 220
Salm, hears of Túr's defeat and death, i, 223
retreats on the castle of the Aláns, i, 223
prevented by Minúchihir, i, 223
flees from Minúchihir, i, 227
slain by Minúchihir, i, 228
troops of, ask quarter of Minúchihir, i, 228
head of, sent to Farídún, i 229
Scimitar of, iv, 335 seq.
Salt, Rustam's caravan of, i, 330 seq.
desert, i, 3
fish, legend of the, vi, 76 seq.
Sám, son of Narimán, Iránian hero, father of Zál and grandfather of Rustam, LXXI, 142, i, 42, 207, 212, 231, 235, 238 seq., 337, 344, 375; ii, 4, 16, 17, 33, 34, 49, 125, 126, 137, 140, 173, 182, 183; iii, 35, 121, 202, 215, 260, 279, 283; iv, 222, 251, 290, 301, 319; v, 14, 15, 58, 62, 63, 196, 198 seq., 242, 262 seq., 266, 267, 274, 285, 286, 289, 290; vi, 74; viii, 223
pronunciation of, i, 95 note
etymology of, i, 171 seq.
Minúchihir confined to, by Farídún, i, 231
mace of, i, 235, 290, 297, 328
given by Zál to Rustam, i, 378
speech of, to Minúchihir, i, 238
casts away his son Zál at birth, i, 241
hears rumours of Zál, i, 243
dreams of, concerning Zál, i, 243, 244
consults the archmages and bidden to seek his son, i, 243
finds his son on Mount Alburz, i, 244 seq.
Sám, son of, restored to him by the Simurgh, i, 247
returns home with Zál, i, 248
congratulated by Minúchihir, i, 248
goes with Zál to court, i, 249
tells of his quest to Minúchihir, i, 250
Minúchihir's gifts to, i, 251
public rejoicings at his home-coming, i, 252
goes to the wars and leaves Zál to rule in Zábulistán, i, 253
Mihráb tributary to, i, 256
Zál writes to, about Rúdába, i, 275
receives Zál's letter, i, 277
consults the astrologers, i, 278
Rustam's birth foretold to, i, 278
replies to Zál's letter, i, 279
returns from the war, i, 280
summoned to court, i, 289
welcomed by Minúchihir, i, 289
tells of his campaign, i, 290
slays Karkwí, i, 291
bidden to destroy Mihráb and all his belongings, i, 292
welcomes and promises to help Zál, i, 293
writes to Minúchihir and pleads past services, i, 295
tells of the slaying of the dragon of the Kashaf, i, 296
"One blow," i, 297, 299
receives Síndukht in audience, i, 302
invited by Síndukht to visit Kábul, i, 305
dismisses Síndukht with gifts, i, 305
hears of Zál's success with Minúchihir and informs Mihráb, i, 314
goes with Zál to Kábul, i, 317
GENERAL INDEX

Sám, sees Rúdába and felicitates Zál, i, 318
return to Sístán, i, 319
entertains Mihráb and Sindukht, i, 319
leaves Zál the regent of Sístán and goes on a campaign, i, 319
hears of the birth of Rustam, i, 323
writes to congratulate Zál, i, 323
comes to see Rustam, i, 324
bids Zál and Rustam farewell, i, 327
hears of Rustam’s success at Mount Sipand and
writes to Zál, i, 334
Naudar’s appeal to, i, 339
goes to court, i, 340
met and offered the crown by the Iránian chiefs, i, 340
refuses the crown, i, 340
reconciles the chiefs and Naudar, i, 341
counsels Naudar, i, 341
rewarded by Naudar, i, 341
departs, i, 341
death of, referred to, i, 345, 346, 349
obsequies of, 358
mace of, given by Zál to Rustam, i, 378
exploits of, recounted by Rustam, v, 202

Samarkand (Sogdiana, Sughd), city and district in Turkistan, ii, 241; vii, 167, 358, 359; viii, 377; ix, 96, 115
early seat of Aryan civilization (?), i, 7
settlement of the Huns at, i, 19

Sambáz, Iránian chief, speech of, viii, 242

Samírán, king, vi, 405 and note

Samkurán, Iránian hero, iv, 149

Sandar, Sandarús, the Arar tree, vi, 19

Sandal, Sandali, city in Hind, vii, 395, 396, 401 seq.
king of, entertained by Bahram Gúr, vii, 140 seq.

Sanja, a dív, ii, 39, 40, 44, 55
iv, 296; v, 204

Sanskrit, vii, 382

Sapad, mountain. See Spentódáta.

Sapandármad. See Sipandármad.

Sapínúd, daughter of Shangul, vi, 3; vii, 144
married to Bahram Gúr, vii, 128
finds out who her husband is, vii, 131
plans Bahram Gúr’s flight from Hind, vii, 132
reproached by Shangul, vii, 135
converted to Zoroastrianism, vii, 139
visited by Shangul, vii, 142

Sapor I (Shápúr son of Ardshír g.v.), Sásánian king, vi, 294, 321

Sapor II (Shápúr son of Utuzd g.v.), Sásánian king, i, 374; v, 13; vi, 294, 321; viii, 41

Sapor III (Shápúr son of Sásánian king g.v.), vi, 365

Sarakhs, city in Khurásán, between Nishápúr and Marv, ii, 108
Saraparda, i, 84
Sarcostemma viminalae. See Homa.
Sargon I. of Agani, v, 293
foundling legend of, v, 393
Satí, city in Mazandarán, i, 230, 289, 366; v, 174; vii, 237; viii, 168, 341, 355, 392; ix, 86
Iranian captives imprisoned at, i, 363
released, i, 367
Sar-i-pul-i-Zohab, vii, 187
Sarkab, Rúman general, viii, 281, 292
Sarkash (Sergius), minstrel, 174, viii, 193, 398 seq. 406
Story of, 174, viii, 396
disgrace of, viii, 399
Sarkhán. See Súfarai.
Sarúch, desert in Kirmán, ii, 226
vii, 362
Sarúg, Jacob of, Syriac poet. See Jacob.
Sarv, king of Yaman, i, 140, i, 211, 286; v, 260; vi, 73
daughters of, asked in marriage by Farídún for his sons, i, 178
consults his chiefs, i, 179
agrees, conditionally, to Farídún's request, i, 181
tries to outwit Farídún's sons, i, 183 seq.
gives his daughters in marriage to Farídún's sons, i, 185
Sarv=Azad Sarv, q.v.
Sásán, eponym of Sásánian dynasty, viii, 219, 220, 330, 341
Sásán, son of Bahman, ii 3; v, 290
disinherited and flees from court, v, 291
account of, v, 291
Sásán, name of Dárá's son and several of his descendants, ii 3; vi, 200, 211, 224, 255; ix, 105 and note
Sásán, descendants of, help Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 224
House of, vi, 251, 270 and note
lineage of, ix, 56, 105 and note
Sásán, father of Ardshír Pápakán, 160, vi, 3, 193, 198, 200, 201, 240
legend of, vi, 211 seq.
maries daughter of Pápak, vi, 213
Sásánian, Sásánians, i, 11, 374; iii, 9; v, 13, 281; vi, 81, 209, 225, 253, 257; vii, 85, 185, 212, 237; viii, 65, 72, 73, 214, 262, 330, 413
note; ix, 4, 5, 46, 47, 50, 54, 65, 72, 73, 76, 77, 83, 105
dynasty, i, 49, 374; ii, 10; v, 10, 282; vi, 249 seq., 253, 257, 321; vii, 1 seq., 381; viii, 73; ix, 4
Tabari on the rise of the, vi, 198
characterised, vi, 249
Zoroastrianism under, vi, 251
Mas'údí on Church and State under, vi, 251
duration of, vi, 257
empire, i, 11; vi, 193, 327; viii, 193
conquered by the Arabs, ix, 65 seq.
genealogical table of, vi, 3, 253
Tabari's history of, vi, 14
note
fictitious genealogies of, v, 290; vi, 199, 211, 250
view of Sikandar, vi, 15, 224 and note, 240 and note
rivalry with Arsacids, viii, 73
usage, viii, 190
architecture, viii, 193
race viii, 285, 386, note
Satire, Firdausi's, on Sultán Mahmúd, i, 40 seq.
Satrapy, satrapies, Núshirwán’s
four ix, 69
Saturn, planet, i, 72, 100, 161,
204, 245, 295, 311; ii,
183, 208, 215, 247, 263,
310, 319, 394, 407; iii,
32, 110, 178, 232, 237, 254,
268, 318; iv, 31, 214;
v, 68, 89, 136, 154, 159,
220, 233; vi, 97, 115, 176,
281, 318, 385; vii, 92,
151, 252, 267, 346, 418;
ix, 24, 66, 321, 392, 395;
ix, 92
sphere of, ix, 92
Sav (the Sóvvar of the Pahlavi
texts, now Chashmah-i-
Sabz), a lake among the
hills in the neighbourhood
of Tús and Mashad, 163,
vii, 373, 392
legend of, vi, 372, 391 seq.
Savalán, mountain in Ázarbajíán
v, 14
Sáwa, Túránian hero, I. 49, iii, 224
slain by Rustam, iii, 224
Sáwa, Iránian hero, v, 154
left in charge of the Brazen
Hold by Asfandiyár, i,
154
Sáwa, ruler of the Turks, 170;
vii, 74, 94 seq., 100 seq.,
107, 108, 110 seq., 123, 129
132, 133, 135, 137, 139,
164, 169, 174, 216, 219,
222, 224, 240
=Chao-wou, viii, 72
attacks Hurmuzd, viii, 92
letter of, to Hurmuzd, viii,
93
prophecy about, viii, 98
Hurmuzd sends Kharrád,
son of Barzin, to, viii, 110
hears of Bahram Chúbína’s
army and blames Kharrád
viii, 110
offers of, to Bahram Chúbína,
viii, 113 seq., 117 seq.
employs sorcery against the
Iránians, viii, 123
defeated and slain, viii, 126
Sáwa, head of, set on lance, viii,
130
wealth of, sent to Hurmuzd,
vii, 133
Sawurg, Indian king, 159, vi, 64,
118
Sayce, Professor, on the Ama-
zons, vi, 71
Scandinavians, vi, 73
found the Russian empire,
vi, 19
Scimitar of Salm, iv, 335 seq.
Scotland, vi, 79
vitrified forts in, vi, 79
Scribe, scribes, office of, highly
esteemed, i, 27 and note;
vii, 311; viii, 50
put to death by Hurmuzd, vii;
vii, 71, 81 seq.
Scriptures, Zoroastrian. See
Zandavasta.
Scylla, Nisus and, story of, vi,
323 note
Scythia, iv, 316
Scythians (Sacae), their relations
with the Iránians, i, 17
wars of, with Darius Hysta-
tapis, v, 11
Seasons, confusion of the, ix, 77
note
Sects, Muḥammadan, i, 99
parable of, i, 107
Seleucia (Bih Ardashir g.v.), city
on the right bank of the
Tigris, opposite to Ctesi-
phon (Taisafún), ii, 80;
vi, 254, 291 note, 322; viii,
189, 194, 196
Semiramis, legendary queen of
Assyria, historically Sam-
muramat, wife (?) of
Samsí Adad king of Assy-
ria (B.C. 824-804), ii, 10;
vii, 310, 405 note
legend of, v, 292, 293
Humáí and, vi, 292, 293
Semites, the, i, 9
relations of, with the Irán-
ians, i, 9 seq., ix, 65
Seneca the younger, Nero’s tutor
(B.C. 3—A.D. 65), vii, 279
Seoses (Súfarai ?), Persian commander-in-chief, *temp.*
Kubad, vii, 187
Sergiopolis, viii, 188
Sergius, Saint and Martyr, viii, 188
patron saint of Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 188, 195
Roman leader in Tabari, viii, 188
Sergius (Sarkash), minstrel, viii, 193
Serpent, serpents, on Zahhak's shoulders, i, 139
worship and human sacrifice, i, 143
Seven, favourite number in Persian story, vii, 186, 280,
Banquets of Nushirwan. See Banquet.
Climes. See Climes.
Courses (Haft Khwan) of Rustam. See Rustam.
Planets. See Planet.
Persian nobles, legend of the
vi, 207
transferred to Ardshir Pápákán (?), vi, 207
Stages (Haft Khwan) of Asfandiyár. See Asfandiyár.
Warriors, Fight of the, I43, ii, 25, 82, 107 seq.
Founts, jewel, viii, 392
and forty Sháhs, viii, 395
and note
Severus, Roman Emperor (A.D. 146-211), vi, 322
Hatra besieged by, vi, 322
Saháhang, Farhád's steed, iii, 313; iv, 8
Bízhan's steed, iv, 47
Shabdíz, Bahram Gur's steed, vii, 37, 80
Giv's steed, iii, 257
Luhrásp's steed, iv, 323
taken by Gushtásp, iv, 323
Míhráb's steed, i, 326
Khusrau Parwiz' steed, viii, 407; ix, 30
Shabrang, Bahram Gur's steed,
vii, 37, 80
Bízhan's steed, iii, 296, 302, 313; iv, 8, 39, 50, 119, 124
Shádhán son of Barzín, one of
Firdausi's authorities, i, 67, 69; vii, 382, 423
Sháddád, son of 'Ad, legend of,
i, 100
Shádward, treasure, viii, 406 and
note
Shaghád, son of Zál, I57, v, 261
Story of Rustam and, I57, v, 260 seq.
provenance of, v, 260
birth of, v, 263
astrologers' evil prognostic
of, v, 264
sent to be brought up at
Kábul, v, 264
marries the daughter of the
king of Kábul, v, 264
king of Kábul and, plot
against Rustam, v, 265
seq.
pretended quarrel of, with
the king of Kábul, v, 266
goes to Zábul, v, 267
cause of, taken up by
Rustam, v, 267
persuades Rustam to go
with Zawara and a small
eescort to Kábul, v, 268
warns the king of Kábul of
Rustam's coming, v, 269
glories over Rustam, v, 271
outwitted and slain by
Rustam, v, 272
corpse of, burnt, v, 277
Sháh, accession of, ceremony at,
vi, 409
Sháhá, city in Hamávarán, ii, 89
Sháhábád, the modern name for
the ruins of Gund-i-Sháhpúr in Khúzistán, vi, 295
Shahd, river, ii, 108; iii, 11,
116, 118, 123, 152, 173,
230, 241; vi, 391, 392
Shahd, mountain, iii, 237
Shâhnâma (Bastân-nâma, Khu- nilai-nâma), I39, i, 66; ix, 4 seq., 43, 50, 61, 70
subject-matter of, how pre-
served, i, 50
origin of, i, 65 seq.
put into writing, i, 66
Prose, compilers of, referred
to, viii, 71, 73
probably compiled by Magi, i, 69
referred to, by Firdausi, i, 108, 109; iv, 141 seq.; vi, 196
more than one, i, 29, 66, 67, 69
Dakki and. See Dakhî.  
Shâhnâma, Firdausi's, I39, I76, 3, 23 seq.; iii, 7, 9, 11, 14, 271, 286; iv, 7, 8, 136 seq., 316, v.9, seq., 19, 20, 22 seq., 27 seq., 293, 294; vi, 3 and note, 30, 31, 66 seq., 72, 79, 82 seq., 194 seq., 205 seq., 249 seq., 253, 256, 270 note, 294, 301, 307, 310, 325, 326; vii, 3, 156, 184, 185, 215, 217, 317, 381; viii, 3, 41, 42, 71, 72, 74 seq., 187 seq. 191, 192
scene of, i, 3
theme of, i, 8, 47
Baisinghar Khan's edition of, i, 23
completion of, Firdausi on, I76; ix, 121
date of completion of, i, 24; ix, 122
length, metre, and language of, i, 47; iv, 8; ix, 122
anomalies of, i, 48
explained, i, 48
divisions and chief charac-
ters of, i, 49
machinery of, i, 51
leading motives of, i, 53
cosmogony of, i, 71; iv, 136
imagery of, i, 72
editions of, i, 76
translations of, i, 77, 87
Shâhnâma, principles of the present translation of, i, 77 seq.
certain terms used in, ex-
plained, i, 80 seq.
Firdausi on the compilation of, i, 108
historic element in mythical period of, iii, 8 seq.
Greek subject-matter in, vi, 11
derivation of Sikandar given in, vi, 19
historic period of, i, 49; vi, 29
Iran and, analogy between, vi, 193
portion of, corresponding to Kârnâmak, vi, 196
Kârnâmak and, compared, vi, 200 seq., 255 seq.
Wisdom-literature in, vii, 278 seq.
Shâhnâma, of Abû 'Ali Muham-
mad, i, 69
Shahra, chief, 165, vii, 92
made king of Tûrân by Bahram Gûr, vii, 92
Shahram-Pîrûz. See Bâdân Pîrûz.
Shahrân, ix, 102
pleads with Mâhwi for Yaz-
dagird, ix, 102
Shahrán Guráz, Íránian warrior, speech of, viii, 239
Shahránguráz (Hurmuzd Shah-
ránguráz, Guráz q.v.), I75; ix, 50
heads conspiracy against Guráz; ix, 54
Shahr-Bânû-Iram, sister of Gîv
and wife of Rustam, ii, 4, 384
Shahrbaráz (Guráz q.v.), Íránian
general, viii, 194; ix, 43, 50
revolt of, viii, 195
sons of, viii, 196
rebellion of, ix, 43, 44
alliance of, with Heraclius, ix, 44
Shahr-Barz. See Shahrbâraz.
Shahrgir, warrior in Sikandar's host, vi, 125, 126
  takes Kaidâfa's son and daughter-in-law prisoners, vi, 125
Shahrgir, captain of the host to Ardshir Pâpakân, vi, 241
  Ardshir's instructions to, vi, 241
  goes to Ardshir's help, vi, 244 and note
Shahrguráz (Shahrbaráz q.v.), ix, 50
Shahrináz, sister of Jamshíd, wife of Zahhák and Faridún, and mother of Salm and Tûr, i, 90, 142, 164 seq., 177
  married to Zahhák, i, 146
  sons of, by Faridün, i, 177
Shahrîr, Shahhrvar, ameshaspenta, i, 88; iii, 286, 328
  month and day, i, 88; v, 310; vii, 76
Shahrwaráz (Shahrbaráz q.v.), ix, 50
Shahrwí, archimage, vi, 329
  minister during Shápûr son of Urmuzd's minority, vi, 329
Shahryár, son of Shún and Khusrau Parviz, ix, 39
  father of Yazdagird, ix, 64
Sháhwí, eldest son of Haftwád, vi, 237
  referred to, vi, 206
  helps his father against Ardshir Pâpakân, vi, 236
  executed, vi, 245
Sháhwí (Máhwí ?), one of Firduusi's authorities, vii, 382, 394
Shakespeare, quoted, iii, 286; v, 156 note; vii, 383; viii 187.
Sháhn, region, iii, 152, 177, 185, 192, 204, 222, 223, 228, 237
Shám (Syria), ii, 80, 84; vi, 357; viii, 170
Shám, king of, taken prisoner by Rustam, ii, 97
Shamásás, Tûránian hero, i, 42; i, 346; ii, 12, 18
  Khazarwán and, invade Kábulistán, i, 345, 358
  parleyed with by Míhráb to gain time, i, 358
  flees from Zál, i, 361
  met and defeated by Káran, i, 361
Shambalíd, daughter of Barzín, vii, 53
  married to Bahrám Gúr, vii, 53
Shamírán, Tûránian hero, iii, 185
  comes to aid Pírân, iii, 152
Shamírán, stronghold north of Harát (?), ix, 91, 94
Shammákhet, king of Sûr, iv, 57, 146
Shammás, legendary founder of Fire-worship, vi, 339 note
Shammás, Núshzâd's general, vii, 219, 272
Shamtâ, viii, 195, 196
Shangul, king of Hind, temp.
  Kai Khusrau, i, 49, iii, 161, 172, 185, 198, 205, 210, 217, 251
  comes to aid Pírân, iii, 152
  volunteers to fight Rustam, iii, 209, 216
  challenges Rustam, iii, 221
  worsted, iii, 221
  temp. Bahrám Gúr, i, 65, vi, 325; vii, 109 seq.
  border-raids of, vii, 110
  gives audience to the Irânian envoy (Bahrám Gúr), vii, 112
  state of, described, vii, 112
  brother of, vii, 113
  vaunts his own greatness, vii, 114
  wife of, the daughter of the Faghfûr, vii, 115
  son of, vii, 115
  entertains Bahrám Gúr, vii, 116
Shápuř, son of Pápak, vi, 199
Shápuř, son of Ardshír Pápakán, Sháh (Sapor I), 161, i, 42; vi, 3, 256, 303, 307, 313, 315, 321 seq., vii, 265
compilation of *Zandavasta under, i, 62, 63
stories of, in Kárnámak, vi, 196, 255
Tabárí, vi, 255, 257
crowned in his father's lifetime, vi, 257
secret birth of, vi, 261
origin of name, vi, 262

note
recognised and acknowledged by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 264
discovers the daughter of Míhrak, vi, 268 seq.
summoned and counselled by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 286 seq.
confused with Shápuř son of Urmuzd, vi, 294, 321, 324, 327
Reign of, 161, vi, 294 seq.
Note on, vi, 294
historical inaccuracies of, vi, 294
wars of, with Rome, vi, 294, 297
Odenathus and, vi, 294
defeats the Rómans, vi, 297
receives tribute from César, vi, 298
builds cities, vi, 298
bids Bazánúsh build a bridge at Shúshtar, vi, 298
summons and counsels Urmuzd, vi, 299
Shápuř, son of Urmuzd, Sháh (Sapor II), 162, 163, i, 374; v, 16 note; vi, 3, 294, 295, 307, 371, 373, 405 (?); vii, 359; viii, 41
provides for uniformity of Zoroastrian doctrine, i, 62

May be identical with the above in legend.
Shápúr, son of Urmuzd, Zoroastrian canon closed under, i, 63
referred to, vi, 318
Reign of, 162, vi, 321 seq.
Note on, vi, 321 seq.
bridge of, at Taisafún, vi, 321, 329
residences of, vi, 321, 330
confused with Shápúr, son of Ardshír, vi, 294, 321, 324, 327
triumphant treaty of, with the Rúmans, vi, 326, 355
cities of, vi, 327, 357
birth of, vi, 328
crowned as an infant, vi, 328
education of, vi, 329
Málika offers to betray her father’s hold to, vi, 331
opens the gate to, vi, 333
sends Málika to his camp, vi, 333
treatment of Arab captives by, vi, 323, 334
receives the title of Zúl Aktáf q.v., vi, 335
returns to Párs and receives tribute, vi, 335
consults the astrologers, vi, 335
visits Caesar in disguise, vi, 336
entertained by Caesar, vi, 337
denounced by a Persian resident at Caesar’s court, vi, 337
arrested, vi, 337
sewed up in an ass’s skin and imprisoned, vi, 338
pitied by an Iránian slave-girl, vi, 339
freed from ass’s skin by slave-girl, vi, 340
entertained by a gardener, vi, 341 seq.
sends the gardener to the high priest, vi, 344
described by the gardener, vi, 344

Shápúr, praises the slave-girl, vi, 346
prepares to attack Cæsar, vi, 346
sends spies to Taisafún, vi, 346
sends tidings of his victory over Cæsar to the provinces, vi, 348
treatment of Cæsar by, vi, 349
invades Rúm, vi, 350
defeats Yánus, vi, 352
bids Bazánús come to him, vi, 354
dictates terms of peace, vi, 355
returns to Istakhr, vi, 356
takes Nasbín, vi, 356
names and honours the slave-girl, vi, 356
rewards the gardener, vi, 357
keeps Caesar captive, vi, 357
sends Caesar’s corpse to Rúm, vi, 357
arranges a disputation between Mání and the high priest, vi, 358
Mání executed by, vi, 359
arranges for the succession with his brother Ardshír, vi, 360 seq.
dies, vi, 362

Shápúr, son of Shápúr, Sháh (Sapor III), 163, vi, 3, 251, 360, 371; vii, 171, 186
Ardshír, son of Urmuzd, resigns the throne to, vi, 364
Reign of, 163, vi, 365 seq.
Note on, vi, 365
death of, vi, 366
Tabárí on, vi, 365

Shápúr, son of Yazdagird, king of Armenia, vi, 373
Shápúr of Rai, Kubád’s commander-in-chief, vii, 184, 185; viii, 72
summoned to overthrow Súfará, vii, 191
Shápúr of Rai, conference of, with Kubád, vii, 192 -
goestoshírázaandarrests
Súfaraí, vii, 193
conveys Súfaraito Sháh
Kubád, vii, 194
Shápúr, Íránian noble, temp.
Núshirván, vii, 304, 333
Shápúr, Íránian warrior, 172,
vi, 202, 225, 257, 259,
269, 293, 296
received by Caesar’s talisman,
vi, 273
praised by Caesar, vii,
279
Bahárm Chúbína writes to,
vi, 285
receives Istakhr and Dáráb-
gíríd, vii, 313
Shápúr, father of Fürúz, ix,
80
Shápúr Gíríd (Gund-i-Shápúr q.v.)
city, vi, 295, 298
Shatt-al-Arab, the combined
streams of the Tigris and
Euphrates, ix, 67
Sháwarán, Íránian hero, 157, ii,
73, 90, 111, 228, 249, 250,
255, 271, 318; iii, 20, 34,
43, 45, 48, 67, 115, 334,
iv, 97, 105, 147, 275
Shawwál, the tenth Muham-
madan month, vi, 208
Sheep’s heads, Bahárm Chúbína
and the, vii, 74, 107
omen of, reported to Hur-
muzd, viii, 108
Shem, patriarch, vi, 65
Shepherds, Kai Khusrav brought
up by, ii, 328 seq.
Sher-kappíi, vii, 322 note
Shíbán, vi, 397
Shída (Pashang), son of Afrá-
siyáb, 152, i, 92; iii, 262,
350; iv, 10 seq., 15, 133,
156, 158 seq., 206, 222,
287, 290
consulted by his father, iii,
250 seq.
goesonembassytopulá-
wand, iii, 255
Shída, refuses to interfere in the
fight between Rustam and
Puládwand, iii, 363
sent by Afrásiyáb to Khá-
razm, iv, 11
defeated by Ashkash, iv,
60, 72
commands the left wing, iv,
155
surname of, meaning of, iv,
155 note
urges Afrásiyáb to attack
Kai Khusrav, iv, 159
Afrásiyáb’s reply to, iv,
160
wishes to meet Kai Khusr-
au in single combat, iv, 161

goesonanembassagetokai
Khusrav, iv, 161
skirmish of, with Íránian
outposts, iv, 164
welcomed by Káran, iv, 165
mail and steed of, iv, 168
receives Kai Khusrav’s reply,
iv, 170
returns to Afrásiyáb, iv, 170
goestofightKaiKhusrav,
iv, 171
parley of, with Kai Khus-
rau, iv, 172
challenges Kai Khusrav to
awrestling-bout, iv, 173
urged by his interpreter to
flee from Kai Khusrav, iv,
174
refuses, iv, 174
wrestles and is overthrown,
iv, 175
Kai Khusrav instructs Ruh-
hám to bury, iv, 176
Shídásp, minister to Tahmúras,
i, 127
Shídásp, son of Guśtásp, 155, ii, 3; v, 26, 58
death of, foretold by Jámásp
v, 50
given command of one wing,
v, 55
slain, v, 58
### GENERAL INDEX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shírín, has charge of Rája’s letter</td>
<td>ix, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>companions Khusrau Parwiz in prison</td>
<td>ix, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reproached and summoned by Shírwi</td>
<td>ix, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makes her Will</td>
<td>ix, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goes to Court</td>
<td>ix, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>justifies herself</td>
<td>ix, 38, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exonerated</td>
<td>ix, 38, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sons of</td>
<td>ix, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unveils to the Court</td>
<td>ix, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shírwi enamoured of</td>
<td>ix, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makes request of Shírwi</td>
<td>ix, 40, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goes home</td>
<td>ix, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distributes her wealth</td>
<td>ix, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frees her slaves</td>
<td>ix, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poisons herself</td>
<td>ix, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shírkhán (Shirván, district and town west of the Caspian between the Kur river and Darband ?)</td>
<td>i, 169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shírkhún, a Zabuli</td>
<td>v, 184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guides Bahman to Rustam</td>
<td>v, 184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shírú, son of Gushtásp</td>
<td>i55, v, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slain</td>
<td>v, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shírúya, son of Bızhan</td>
<td>iv, 360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goes with Zarír to Rúm</td>
<td>iv, 360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shírówán (Shirván ?)</td>
<td>iii 216.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See Shírkhán.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shírwi, Iranían hero</td>
<td>i, 207, 215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>helps to take the Castle of the Alans</td>
<td>i, 223 seq.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conveys the spoil to Farídún</td>
<td>i, 230, 232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shírwi, Nūshírwán’s commander-in-chief</td>
<td>vii, 251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appointed to receive the Rúman tribute</td>
<td>vii, 262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shírwi (Kubád q.v.), Sháh</td>
<td>174, 175, vii, 188, 190, 371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seq.: ix, 7, 8, 11, 27, 28, 31 seq., 36, 45, 47, 64</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shírín’s enmity to</td>
<td>vii, 189, 191, 193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>internment of</td>
<td>vii, 194, 196, 391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>released</td>
<td>vii, 196, 415</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shídúsh, Iranían hero</td>
<td>i, 211; ii, 58, 85, 158, 340; iii, 33, 45, 48, 149, 152, 139, 141, 157, 248, 253; iv, 11, 15, 25, 191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with Káran and Kishwád</td>
<td>iv, 92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pursues Kurákhán</td>
<td>i, 354</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put in command of the rear</td>
<td>iv, 92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kai* Khusrau renounced</td>
<td>iv, 275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with by, and other nobles</td>
<td>iv, 275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for refusing audience</td>
<td>iv, 275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shíl’éte, Shíl’étes, Muhammadan sect</td>
<td>i, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>origin of</td>
<td>i, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Firdausi a, i, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shíkbán, Iranían warrior</td>
<td>vi, 395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shíkbán, place</td>
<td>vii, 359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shingán, region</td>
<td>iii, 228, 238; iv, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shíráz, city in Párs (Farsistán)</td>
<td>166, i, 236; vi, 198 note, 210; vii, 6, 173, 190, 193, 194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shírín, wife of Khusrau Parwíz</td>
<td>174, 175, viii, 187, 194, 393, 383, 407; ix, 28, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enmity of</td>
<td>viii, 189, 191, 193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>account of</td>
<td>viii, 192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khusrau and, Persian poem</td>
<td>vii, 192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meaning of</td>
<td>viii, 193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maryam murdered by</td>
<td>viii, 193, 389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a Christian</td>
<td>vii, 195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warns Khusrau Parwíz against Gurduya</td>
<td>viii, 364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khusrau Parwíz and</td>
<td>ix, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Story of</td>
<td>174, viii, 382</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>married to</td>
<td>viii, 386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gilded chamber given to</td>
<td>viii, 389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hears Kubád proclaimed</td>
<td>Sháh, vii, 416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>informs Khusrau Parwíz</td>
<td>viii, 416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has charge of Shírwi’s horoscope</td>
<td>ix, 16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**VOL. IX.**
Shirwi (Kubâd), secret and public names of, viii, 372, 416
astrologers consulted at birth of, vii, 372
ill-omened horoscope of, viii, 372; ix, 16
referred to, viii, 373, 390
kept by Shirin, ix, 16
Khusrau Parwiz gives Cesar's gifts to, viii, 381
boorishness of, vii, 390
Khusrau Parwiz' displeasure with, viii, 390
sends to take Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 419
Reign of, 175, ix, 3
Note on, ix, 3
Length of, ix, 42
treatment of Khusrau Parwiz by, ix, 7
writes to Heraclius, ix, 7
Ashtâd and Kharrâd report their interview with Khusrau Parwiz to, ix, 27
reproaches and summons Shirin, ix, 36, 37
falls in love with Shirin, ix, 39
grants Shirin's requests, ix, 40, 42
poisoned, ix, 42
son of, ix, 42
Shirzâd, herald in Nushîrwân's host, vii, 252
Shîrîzî, Iranian warrior, viii, 296
Shîz, Takht-i-Sulaimân, seat of the Magi in Azarbâijân, i, 60; viii, 190
Fire-temple at, vii, 5
Khâtûn sent to, vii, 5
Shoemaker, Bahrâm Gûr and the, 164, vii, 24
Nushîrwân and the, 169, vii, 218, 260
offer of, to advance money to Nushîrwân, viii, 48
rejected, viii, 50, 71
Shû'ba Mughîra, companion of the Prophet, ix, 69, 83
embassy of, ix, 69, 82
Shû'îb, Arab chief, 158, vi, 21
attacks Dârab, vi, 21
defeated and slain, vi, 22
Shûlak, Gushâsps' steed (Dakîkî), v, 73
Ashlândîyar's steed (Firdausî), v, 126
Shûrâb (Sura), city on the Euphrates, east of Antioch, vii, 217
place of Gushâsps' exile, vii, 254
taken by Nushîrwân, vii, 217, 254
Shûrsân, vi, 379
Shûs (Sûs, Susa), city on the Karkhâh river north west of Shûshtar in Khûzistan, vi, 327
Shûshtar, Shûstâr, city on the Dujayl (Kûrân) river in Khûzistan, vii, 199, 295
and note, 299; viii, 381
dam and bridge at, vi, 298, 326
Sicily, vi, 30
Alexander the Great's legendary visit to, vi, 30
Siege-operations, iii, 246; iv, 208
Signs, the Twelve (Zodiacal), vii, 408
Sigz, man of (Rustam), ii, 100
and note; iii, 183, 209, 218, 221
Sigzian, a native of Sigz, v, 226
and note 228
=Rustam, iii, 209, 225, 227; v, 241
=Zawâra, v, 226, 228
=Farâmaz, v, 228
Sikandar (Iskandar, Alexander the Great, q.v.), Shâh, 158-160, 1, 42, 49; ii, 3, 8 seq.; v, 30; vi, 11, 13, 16, 18, 29, 30, 33, 193, 210, 240
and note, 325, 353; viii, 52, 214, 217, 242, 262, 381, 387, 392; ix, 26
paternity of, i, 55 and note
Sikandar, derivation of, in Tabarí, vi, 19
derivation of, in Sháhnáma, vi, 19, 26
birth of, vi, 18, 26
adopted as his heir by Faiik-kús, vi, 27
counseled by Arastáls, vi, 35
refuses tribute to Dárá, vi, 36
prepares for war with Dárá, vi, 37
invades, and defeats king of Misr, vi, 30, 37
Iran, vi, 30, 37 seq.
visit of, to the camp of Dárá, vi, 38
invited to banquet with Dárá, vi, 40
takes the golden cups of Dárá, vi, 40
recognised, vi, 40
escapes, vi, 41
defeats Dárá, vi, 43, 44, 46
issues proclamation to the Iranians, vi, 44, 47
gives the spoil to his troops, vi, 44, 47
marches from 'Irák against Dárá, vi, 46
enters Istakhr, vi, 46
answers Dárá's letter, vi, 50
marches from Istakhr, vi, 51
hears of Dárá's murder, vi, 52
arrests Dárá's murderers, vi, 53
finds Dárá still living, vi, 53
promises to avenge Dárá, vi, 53
promises to carry out Dárá's last wishes, vi, 54
Dárá bestows Rúshanák upon, vi, 55, 86
laments for, and buries Dárá, vi, 55, 56
executes Dárá's murderers, vi, 56
hailed as ruler by the Iranians, vi, 56

Sikandar, sends envoys to Ispahan and to the family of Dárá, and letters to the provinces, to announce his accession, vi, 57
crowned Sháh at Istakhr, vi, 59
Reign of, 158, vi, 60 seq.
Note on, vi, 60 seq.
diagram to illustrate Persian Romance of, vi, 84
inaugural address of, vi, 85
correspondence of, with the wife and daughter of Dárá, vi, 133, 86, seq.
maries Rúshanák, vi, 90
invades Hind, vi, 98
Kaid and, vi, 61, 98
approaches Mílád, vi, 61, 98
inquires about the Four Wonders of Kaid, vi, 100
Four Wonders and other gifts sent by Kaid to, vi, 103
marries daughter of Kaid, vi, 104
sage of Kaid and, vi, 62, 104 seq.
principle of the cup explained to, vi, 109
conceals his treasures, vi, 110 and note
advances to Kannúj, vi, 110
troops of, protest, vi, 113
remonstrates with his troops vi, 113
troops of, ask pardon, vi, 114
war of, with Fúr (Porus), vi, 67, 110 seq.
hears of Fúr's elephants, vi, 115
his device to overcome, vi, 115
challenges Fúr to single combat, vi, 116
slays Fúr, vi, 117
Fúr's troops submit to, vi, 118
becomes king of Hind, vi, 118
Sikandar, bestows Hind on Sawurg, vi, 118
visit of, to Mecca and the Kaaba, vi, 64, 67, 119 seq.
ends the rule of the Khuzá' in Arabia, vi, 120
sets up Nasr instead of the Khuzá', vi, 120,
goes to Judda, vi, 121
marches to Misr, vi, 121
welcomed by king of, vi, 121
stays for a year in, vi, 121
Kaidáfá (Candace) and, vi, vi, 65, 121 seq.
portrait of, obtained by Kaidáfá, vi, 122
Kaidáfá praised by Kabtún to, vi, 122
writes to Kaidáfá, vi, 123
Kaidáfá's answer to, vi, 123
assumes the name of Naitkún (Antigonus), vi, 66, 125 seq.
pleads (as Naitkún) for Kaidrúsh and his wife, vi, 126
goes (as Naitkún) to Kaidáfá, vi, 127
graciously received by Kaidáfá, vi, 128
audiences of, with Kaidáfá, vi, 128 seq.
recognised by Kaidáfá, vi, 129 seq.
delivers his message, as envoy, to Kaidáfá, vi, 129, 134
covenant of, with Kaidáfá, vi, 132, 138
warned by Kaidáfá against Tainúsh, vi, 133
insulted by Tainúsh, vi, 134
counsels Kaidáfá about Tainúsh, vi, 135
covenant of, with Tainúsh, vi, 136
Kaidáfá's gifts to, vi, 140
returns with Tainúsh, vi, 141
welcomed by his troops, vi, 141
Sikandar, reveals himself to Tainúsh, vi, 142
entertains at a banquet, gives gifts to, and dismisses, Tainúsh, vi, 143
final message of, to Kaidáfá, vi, 143
Brahmans hear of the coming of, and write to, vi, 143
interview of, with the Brahmans, vi, 67, 144 seq.
quilts the Brahmans, vi, 147
Fish-eaters (Ichthyophagi, q.v.) and, vi, 69, seq., 147, 177
adventure of, with a whale, vi, 71, 147
sees gigantic reeds (bamboos), vi, 71, 148
attacked by snakes, scorpions, and boars, vi, 148
the people of Habash, vi, 149
the Narmpái, vi, 150
adventure of, with a dragon, vi, 71, 151
visits the temple of Dionysus, vi, 71, 152, 166
warned of his death, vi, 152, 161, 166
marches toward Harúm, the City of Women (Amazon q.v.), vi, 153 seq.
encounters snow and frost, vi, 156
encounters great heat, vi, 157
encounters the negroes, vi, 157
reaches and inspects Harúm, vi, 157
marches westward and finds a fair-haired race, vi, 73, 158
hears of the Gloom, q.v., and of the Fount of Life, q.v., and prepares to visit them vi, 158
sets forth with Khisr as guide, vi, 159
Sikandar, Khisr and, part company, vi, 160
fails to find the Fount of Life, vi, 160
interview of, with birds, vi, 160
interview of, with Isráfil, vi, 78, 161
emerges from the Gloom, vi, 162
marches eastward, vi, 163
hears of Yázúj and Májúj, vi, 163
barrier of, 160, i, 16; vi, 78, 164, 249
Speaking Tree visited by, vi, 167 seq. See Tree.
reaches "The World's End," vi, 168
receives gifts, vi, 169
expedition of, to Chín, vi, 80, 169 seq.
goes as his own ambassador to the Faghfür, vi, 170
describes himself, vi, 171
Faghfür's gifts to, vi, 173
departs with Faghfür's envoy, vi, 173
identity of, discovered by the envoy, vi, 173
dismisses the envoy with gifts and a message to Faghfür, vi, 174
arrives at Chaghwán, vi, 174
marches to Sind, vi, 175
defeats Bandáwa, chief of the Sindians, vi, 175
marches to Nímrúz, vi, 175
receives gifts from the king of Yaman, vi, 175
meets Gúsh-bistar, vi, 177
carryes off the treasures of Kai Khusrau, vi, 178
policy of, for safeguarding Rúm after his decease, vi, 81, 178, 197
adopts the advice of Arastálís, vi, 180
Sikandar, arrives at Bábíl, vi, 180
prodigious birth at, vi, 81, 180
consults the astrologers on, vi, 180
warned of his end, vi, 180
sickens, vi, 181
Will of, vi, 81, 181
grief of the troops for, vi, 183, 184
dies, vi, 183
dispute as to burial of, vi, 184
body of, taken to Iskandariya, vi, 185
sentences of sages over, vi, 82, 83, 185
cities of, vi, 83, 189
Zoroastrian and Sásánian view of, i, 59 and note, 61
seq.; vi, 15 and note, 224, 240; vii, 79 and note
Silk, account of, vi, 204
introduction of, into the West, vi, 204
Silk-worm. See Silk.
Silvia, vestal, v, 293
Símáh Barzín, scribe, Hurmuzd plots against, i70, viii, 85, seq.
Simmas, chief herdsman of Ninus, v, 292
Símurgh, mythical bird, 156, 157, i, 51; iii, 158, 313, 330; v, 117, 132 seq., 166, 246, 248, 255
described, i, 235 and note, 253, 276, 302, 326, v, 132
nest of, on Mount Alburz, i, 241, 244, 250
young of, i, 242, 250, v, 132, 133
finds and brings up the infant Zál, i, 242
informs Zál of his parentage, i, 245
gives Zál one of her feathers, i, 246, 321
their efficacy, i, 246, 320
restores Zál to Sám, i, 247
Sīmurgh, referred to, i, 251
succours Rūdābā, i, 320 seq.
foretells Rustam’s future
greatness, i, 321
slain by Asfandiyār, v, 133
summoned to Rustam’s aid
by Zāl, v, 235 seq.
heals Rustam and Rakhsh,
v, 237
instructs Rustam how to
overcome Asfandiyār, v, 237
Sind, the river Indus and the
parts adjacent, i, 113; ii,
285; iii, 10 note, 117, 185,
216, 238 iv, 65, 71; v,
75, 180, 203, 277; vi, 113;
vii, 110, 112, 390
king of, iii, 185; vi, 113,
entertained by Bahram
Gūr, vii, 140 seq.
kings of, send tribute to
Gushtasp, v, 75
chiefs of, vi, 123
warriors of, vi, 132, 137
Sikandar marches to, vi, 175
Sindbad, the sailor, vi, 71
lands on a whale, vi, 71
Sinde, river, iii, 10 and note
Sindian, Sindians, 160, vii, 126
defeated by Sikandar, vi, 175
Sindukht, wife of Mihrāb and
mother of Rūdābā, 141, i,
259, 299
Mihrāb praises Zāl to, i, 260
discovers the loves of Zāl
and Rūdābā, i, 281
reproaches Rūdābā, i, 282
informs Mihrāb about Zāl
and Rūdābā, i, 284
goes with gifts to Sām, i,
300 seq.
well received by Sām, i, 302
invites Sām to visit Kābul,
i, 305
returns to Kābul, i, 306
hears of Zāl’s success with
Minūchihr, i, 315
felicitates Rūdābā, i, 315

Sindukht, Mihrāb and, prepare
to welcome Sām and Zāl,
i, 315, 317
entertain Sām and Zāl, i,
317 seq.
visit Sām in Sistān, i, 319
Sinjibū, first historical Khān of
the Turks, vii, 317
relations of, with Nūshir-
wān, vii, 317
Haitálians and, vii, 317
Sipahram, Tūránian hero, 151;
i, 228, 229, 388; iv, 26,
103
chosen to fight with Hajīr,
iv, 97
slain by Hajīr, iv, 104
Sipand (Spnto-dāta, q.v., Spen-
dyad, Sapad, White
Castle), mountain north-
west of Nishāpūr, 142, i,
377; ii, 118; v, 30, 110,
117
Malcolm’s identification and
description of, i, 236
Zāl bids Rustam take, i, 329
described, i, 329
taken by Rustam, i, 331
treasures of, i, 331, 332
hold of, destroyed by Zāl’s
orders, i, 333
Sipandārmad, ameshaspenta,
q.v., iii, 287, 328; v, 18
month, i, 89; iv, 252; ix,
70, 122
day, i, 88, 89, viii, 331
Sipanjab (Farghāna ?), region, i,
375; ii, 241, 342, 344, 345
358; iii, 151
Sipansār, Irānian warrior, viii, 293
Sistān = Nimrūz = Zābulistān.1
144, 149, 155; i, 319;
ii, 80, 335, 365; iii, 165,
166, 191, 207, 321, 356;
iv, 14, 278; v, 13, 17, 29,
85, 86, 89, 94, 173, 174,
201, 220, 248, 261, 264,
267; vi, 32, 198; vii, 214
former capital of, i, 4
lake of, i, 4; v, 239 note

2 See p. 333 note.
Sístán, origin of name, i, 19
invaded by Shamázás and
Khazarwán, i, 358
mourning in, for Rustam, v, 278
invaded by Bahman, v, 284 seq.

Sitkí, Persian measure of weight, iii, 184

Sitúh, Túránian hero, v, 86, 87
goes as a spy to Irán and
reports to Arjásp, v, 86, 87
Siyáh Chasm, slave of Farrukh-
zád, ix, 62
handmaid of Farrukhzád
and, ix, 62
imprisoned, ix, 62
released, ix, 62
poisons Farrukhzád, ix, 63
Siyámak, son of Gáíumart, i39,
i, 117, 119
slain by the Black Div, i, 120
lamentations over, i, 120
Siyámak, Túránian hero, i51, iv,
97
chosen to fight with Gúráza,
iv, 97
slain by Gúráza, iv, 100
Siyáwaksh. See Siyáwush.
Siyávashána. See Siyáwush.
Siyáwush, son of Kai Káús, and
father of Farúd and Kai
Khusrav, 144-148; i, 55, 92; ii, 3, 25, 82, 104 note
187 seq., 335, 338 seq., 346
seq., 363, 371, 372, 374
seq., 383, 386, 388, 396,
403, 411; iii, 8, 13, 18, 19,
21, 22, 29, 39, 42, 43, 51,
52, 57, 66, 67, 71, 72, 87,
93, 99, 112, 117, 118, 137,
146, 148, 149, 156, 163,
183, 197, 199, 200, 201, 203
seq., 211, 214, 226, 237,
238, 256, 283, 289, 297,
307, 315, 324, 347; iv, 7,
17, 18, 34, 50, 51, 70 seq.,
89, 90, 95, 96, 102, 109,
120, 127, 129, 130, 137,
152, 159, 162, 167, 168,
Siyáwush—cont.
172, 201, 202, 204, 205,
214, 215, 221, 223, 231,
235, 249, 250, 252, 257,
267, 270, 271, 283, 285,
289, 299, 305, 307, 310;
v, 174, 176, 192, 208, 272;
viii, 104, 349, 395 note;
ix, 25 and note, 26 note,
103
mother of, i44, ii, 3
Story of, i44, ii, 188 seq.
Note on, ii, 188 seq.
good example of Fir-
dausí’s method, ii, 188
Prelude to, ii, 191
identical with Cambyses,
the father of Cyrus the
Great, in legend, ii, 191
adventure of the mother of,
ii, 193
destined to misfortune from
birth, ii, 196
brought up by Rustam, ii,
196
horoscope of, ii, 196, 205,
234
returns to court, ii, 197
made ruler of Kuhistán, ii,
199
mourns for his mother’s
death, ii, 199
temptation of, by Súdába,
ii, 200 seq.
marches against Afrásiyáb,
ii, 225 seq.
demands hostages of Afrá-
siyáb, ii, 239 seq.
goes over to Afrásiyáb, ii,
258 seq.
plays at polo with Afrásiyáb
ii, 264
archery of, ii, 266, 293
marriage of, with Jaríra, ii,
268 seq.
marriage of, with Fárangis,
ii, 270 seq.
etertained by Pírán, ii, 278
builds cities, ii, 278 seq.
consults the astrologers, ii,
282
Siyáwush, foretells the future to Pirán, ii, 282 seq.
entertains Pirán, ii, 287
entertains Garsiwaz, ii, 290 seq.
plays at polo with Garsiwaz, ii, 292
challenged by Garsiwaz, ii, 294
overthrows Gurwl and Dá-múr, ii, 295
slandered by Garsiwaz to Afrásiyáb, ii, 296 seq.
summoned to court by Afrásiyáb, ii, 300 seq.
betrayed by Garsiwaz, ii, 301 seq.
excuses himself from going to court, ii, 306
passion of, ii, 307 seq.
foretells the future to Farangis, ii, 310 seq.
charges and turns loose Bihzad, ii, 312
attacked and taken by Afrásiyáb, ii, 314
execution of, ii, 320
referred to, iv, 268
Blood of (plant), ii, 321
birth-mark of, iii, 49
mail of, iii, 58, 60, 61, 69, 81, iv, 40 seq., 51
murderer of = Afrásiyáb, iv, 198
garth of = Siyáwushgird, iv, 238
goods of, viii, 148, 151
Siyáwush, Iránian chief, 172; viii, 128, 163, 187, 233
son of = Bahram, viii, 247
Siyáwush, wild duck, ii, 104
note
Siyáwushgird, city built by Siyáwush, 145, 146, 153; ii, 301, 314, 373; iv, 250, 252
building and description of, ii, 285 seq.
becomes the home of Kai Khusrau, ii, 333
referred to, iv, 238

Skirts, binding together of, in battle, iv, 85 and note, 177
and note, 209
Slavs, viii, 194
Smerdis, the false, v, 11; vi, 207
Snakes = Arabs, ix, 91
Snowstorm, iii, 108
Iránian host distressed by, iii, 71, 128; v, 137; vi, 156
paladins of Kai Khusrau lost in, iv, 308 seq.
Sohrab and Rustam, Matthew Arnold’s, ii, 118
Sol, planet, viii, 395
Soma. See Homa.
Son of Firдаusí, death of, viii, 190
Song, of a div, ii, 31
of Rustam, ii, 51
of Asfandiyár, v, 129
of the daughter of Barzin, vii, 52
of the daughter of Māhıyár, vii, 60, 61, 66
Sophia, Empress, her treatment of Narsees, viii, 76
Sorcerer, a Jewish, brings about the death of Núshirwán’s minister, Mahbud, vii, 320 seq.
Sorceress, Rustam and a, 143, ii, 50 seq.
Súdába and a, 144, ii, 214 seq.
Asfandiyár and a, 156, v, 128 seq.
Sóshyans, the Zoroastrian Messiah, i, 131
Souterrain, ii, 137 iv, 212
Spain (Andalús), vi, 66
Span-dát (Spento-dát, Asfandiyár), v, 24 seq.
Span-dát-náma (Asfandiyár-náma), v, 26, 27
Speaking Tree, the, 160. See Tree.
Speech, modes of, viii, 30
Spendyád, mountain. See Spentó-dát.
Spentó-dát (Spand-dát, Asfandiyár q.v.), v, 12
Spentó-dáta (Spendyad, Sapad, Sipand q.v.), mountain north-west of Nishápúr, ii, 118; v, 30, 116, 117

Sphinés. See Calanus.

Spica, star, i, 245, 271; viii, 379

Spitama, clan name of Zarduvsh (Zoroaster), i, 236; iv, 15

Spityura, brother of Yima (Jamshid), i, 130

Spring, a, 143 of Sav, q.v., 163

Sróvbar, mythical serpent, i, 172

Stages, the Seven, 156. See Asfandiyáā.

Stateira. See Barsine.

Steed, piece in chess. See Horse.

Steed, iron, Sikandar’s, 159, vi, 115 filled with naphtha, vi, 115

Für’s elephants and troops routed by, vi, 116

Stone, the Black. See Black.

Strabo, Greek geographer (born c. 63 B.C.), vi, 68, 81

Strength, handgrip as test of. See Handgrip.

Subuktigin, father of Sultan Mahmúd, account of, i, 20 title of, i, 21 referred to by, i, 100, 114

Súdába, daughter of the king of Hámávarán and wife of Kai Káús, 143-146, ii, 3, 79, 188, 189, 200, seq. 225, 249, 257, 335, 339 description of, ii, 86 marries Kai Káús, ii, 88 imprisoned with Kai Káús by her father, ii, 91 released by Rustam, ii, 97 temptation of Siyáwush by, ii, 200 seq. slain by Rustam, ii, 340 referred to, v, 174

Súfarai (Sarkhán, Sukhrá, Seoses ?), 166, vii, 170 and note, 171, 173 seq.; viii, 72, 75, 168, 285 appointed minister to the regent Baláș, vii, 164


Súffs, vi, 59 and note

Sughd (Sughdiana, Samarkand), district and city in Turkistán between the Oxus and Jaxartes, i, 19; ii, 230, 232, 237, 241, 249, 358; iii, 244; iv, 65, 188, 189, 255; vii, 331, 337, 358, 359

Sughdiana, vi, 72. See Sughd:
Suhrāb, son of Rustam and Tahmīna daughter of the king of Samangān, I44, ii, 4, 25; iv, 296; v, 204; vi, 325
Story of, I44, ii, 118 seq.
Note on, ii, 118
purely episodic, ii, 118
Sir John Malcolm’s version of, ii, 118
Matthew Arnold’s version of, ii, 118
Prelude to, ii, 119
lament of, for the loss of Gurdāfrīd, ii, 119, note questions his mother as to his father, ii, 126
charge of, sired by Rakhsh, ii, 128
Afrāsiyāb’s plot against, ii, 129
invades Īrān, ii, 130
takes Hajīr prisoner, ii, 131
beguiled by Gurdāfrīd, ii, 133
described by Gazhdaham, ii, 136
sees from White Castle the Īrānian host advancing, ii, 148
seen while feasting by Rustam, ii, 150
hears of the death of Zhanda Razm, ii, 151
misled by Hajīr, ii, 152 seq.
overthrows the camp-en closure of Kāūs, ii, 160
challenged by Rustam, ii, 161
Rustam described by, ii, 154, 169
advances of, to Rustam, ii, 169
spares Rustam’s life, ii, 170
again encounters Rustam, ii, 172
makes himself known to Rustam, ii, 173
last requests of, to Rustam, ii, 175
mourning for, ii, 182 seq.
Sūkhrā. See Sūfarāi.
Sūkhta, treasure, viii, 406 and note
Sultān. See Mahmūd.
Sumai, viii, 195
Sun, on the Nature of the, I39, i, 105
one of the seven planets, i, 72
in astrology, i, 188, 310 and note
total eclipse of, vii, 159
Sunday, viii, 378, 380
Sunnites, orthodox Muhammadians, i, 13
origin of, i, 13
Sūr, city near Ispahan, I76, iv, 146, 180; ix, 74, 89, 95, 97, 100, 116, 118
Sura. See Shūrāb.
Surkha, son of Afrāsiyāb, I46, i, 92; ii, 344 seq.
taken prisoner by Farāmarz, ii, 345
death of, ii, 347
Sūrsān (Zīb-i-Khusrau, Rūmiya q.v.) city built by Nūshirwān, I68, vii, 317, 327, 328
Surūsh, angel, the messenger of Urmuzd, I53, I72, i, 51, 175, 182; ii, 288, 289, 364, 408; iii, 277; iv, 139, 203, 265, 285, 307; v, 170, 253; vi, 199
note, 372; vii, 38; viii, 173
warns Gaiūmart against the Black Div, i, 119
bids Gaiūmart avenge Siyāmak, i, 120
visits and instructs Farīdūn, i, 159
counsels Farīdūn about Zahhāk, i, 169
appears to Gūdarz in a dream, ii, 363
referred to, iv, 273
informs Kāl Khusrau that his prayer is granted, iv, 281
Surush, angel, bids Kai Khusrav appoint Luhrasp as his successor, iv, 281
may be assumed to have accompanied Kai Khusrav on his pilgrimage, iv, 139, 303, 308
saves Khusrav Parwiz from Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 189, 299
Surush, day, i, 88; vi, 411
Surúsh, astrologer, vi, 372
takes Bahrám Gúr’s horoscope, vi, 376
Súsanak, a miller’s daughter, vii, 32 and note
taken to wife by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 33
Susiana (Khúzistán q.v.), vi, 295, 321; vii, 184
Sviatoi, island lying off western shore of the Caspian, i, 58
note
Swat, river in Northern India, vi, 65
Swyamvara, Indian form of marriage, iv, 316
Syávarshána (Siyáwush q.v.), ii, 189; iv, 137
Syria (Shám), country, ii, 80; vi, 30; viii, 193
raided by Persians, viii, 41
Syriac, version of the Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi, 14, 16, 18, 30, 31 seq., 61, 63, 65, 66, 68, 71, 72, 74, 78 seq.
Christian Legend of Alexander, vi, 14, 15, 74, 78, 84
quoted, vi, 15
metrical version of, vi 15, 78, 84
Syrian, ix, 66

T

Tabák, Iránián chief, 161, vi, 202, 225
suspected by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 225
Tabák, justifies himself, vi, 226
Ardshír Pápakán and, defeat Bahman, vi, 226
buries Ardawán, vi, 229
advises Ardshír Pápakán to marry the daughter of Ardawán, vi, 229
Tabarsi, Arabic historian (A.D. 838-923), iii, 108; vi, 14
note, 16, 19, 30, 198, 200, 291 note, 310, 313, 315, 321, 326; vii, 3 seq., 156, 159, 160, 170, 171, 185, 186, 217; viii, 73, 75 seq., 188; ix, 4, 56, 61, 64, 69
account of death of Rustam by, v, 261
etymology of Dáráb, v, 297 note
Sásánians, vi, 14 note
Alexander’s battles with Darius, vi, 30
Yájúj and Májúj, vi, 78
rise of Sásánian dynasty, vi, 198
Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 198, 203
genealogies of Pápak, vi, 200
Worm, vi, 205, 266
Hafíswád, vi, 205, 266
length of Ardshír Pápakán’s reign, vi, 254
Ardawán’s daughter, vi, 255
Shápúr, son of Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 255, 257
death of Shápúr, son of Shápúr, vi, 365
Bahrám, son of Shápúr, vi, 368
Yazdagird, son of Shápúr, vi, 371 seq.
Kubád and Núshírán’s reform of taxation, vii, 183 note, 215
Turks, vii, 317
Persian, vii, 5; viii, 42, 73 seq., 187 seq.; ix, 4, 5, 43, 70
Tainúsh, Fúr’s son in law, vi, 133
insults Sikandar, vi, 134
Kaidáfa chides, vi, 135
Kaidáfa and Sikandar consult about, vi, 135
makes a covenant with Sikandar, vi, 136
accompanies Sikandar on his return, vi, 141
Sikandar discovers himself to, vi, 142
asks grace of Sikandar, vi, 142
pardoned by Sikandar, vi, 142
entertained at a banquet, presented with gifts, and dismissed, by Sikandar, vi, 143
Tainúsh (Theodosius), 163, vi, 372, 389, 404
goes to Yazdagird as amlas-
sador, vi, 389
asked by Bahram Gúr to intercede with Yazdagird for him, vi, 389
obtains Bahram Gúr’s re-
lease, vi, 390, 404
Táir (Daizan, q.v.), Arab chief, 162; vi, 3, 322, 324, 330
seq.
Taisafún (Ctesiphon, q.v.), 168, 174; vi, 397; vii, 188, 194, 361, 363; viii, 53, 90, 109 note, 118, 173, 175, 180, 182, 229, 241; ix, 9, 10, 90
Ardshír Pápakán goes to, vi, 245
Shápur’s bridge at, vi, 321, 329
sacked by Táir, vi, 330
Shápur sends spies to, vi, 346
Caesar defeated and taken prisoner by Shápur at, vi, 347
Núshirwán returns to, viii, 53
Bahram Chúbína marches from province of, viii, 106

Tabarí, Persian, story from, con-
cerning Kubád, vii, 183
note
Arabic, viii, 42, 73, 187, 190
195; ix, 4, 5, 7, 43, 50
Tabaristán (Mázandarán, q.v.), i, 39, 40; ix, 74
Firdausí’s stay in, i, 39
chief of, i, 39, 40
patron of Firdausí, i, 39
Table of Contents, General, ix, 139
Tables, Genealogical. See Gene-
alogical.
Tacitus, Roman historian (A.D. 55-120), iii, 10 and note, 15; vi, 73
Tahmásp, father of Zav, i, 90, 369, 370; ii, 11; iv, 283
Tahmína, daughter of the king of Samangán and mother of Suhrábl, 144; ii, 4, 118
precautions of, for her son’s safety, ii, 127, 140, 149
mourning of, for Suhrábl, ii, 184 seq.
death of, ii, 186
Tahmúras, Sháh, 140, i, 42, 90, 91, 214; ii, 168; iii, 293; iv, 133; vii, 9 and note, 373; viii, 277, 332, 376;
ix, 25
Reign of, 140, i, 125 seq.
Note on, i, 125
Binder of the Dív (Áhrí-
man), i, 125, 127, 214
Áhriman and, legend of, i, 125
culture hero, i, 125, 126
dívs rebel against, i, 127
conquers and enslaves the
dívs, i, 127
taught writing by the
dívs, i, 127
dies, i, 128
Firdausí’s reflections on, i, 128
horn of, iii, 335
Tainúsh (Charogos, Keratór, Kanír), son of Kaidáfa, 159; vi, 66, 67, 134 seq.
Kaidáfa warns Sikandar against, vi, 133
Taisafún, Khusrav Parwiz imprisoned at viii, 421; ix, 9
Bârâbâd visits Khusrav Parwiz at, ix, 29
Tâj, viii, 71
Tâkdis, Throne of, 174, viii, 391
account of, viii, 391
added to by Jâmâsp, viii, 392
Takht (or Tâk)-i-Bâstân, place some four miles northeast of Kirmânshâh in the Persian province of Ardelean and famous for its Sásanian bas-reliefs, vi, 257; viii, 192
inscription at, vi, 257
Takht-i-Khusrav. See Madâ‘in.
Takht-i-Sulaimân (Shîz, q.v.), viii, 189
Talhand, Indian prince, 169, vii, 394, 396 seq.
Story of Gav and, 169, vii, 394 seq.
mother of. See Gav.
birth of, vii, 396
tutor of, vii, 397, 398, 401, 402, 408, 410, 414
rivalry between Gav and, vii, 397 seq.
war between Gav and, vii, 404 seq.
rejects Gav’s offer of accommodation, vii, 406, 409
death of, foretold, vii, 408, 413, 418
defeated by Gav, vii, 412
accepts Gav’s proposal for a decisive battle, vii, 415
defeat and death of, vii, 416
Tâlikân, city and stronghold east of Marv, ii, 228; iv, 65, 255
ceded by Pirâz to the Haitâlians, vii, 156, 160
importance of, vii, 156
Tâlmân, Írâniân hero, i, 211, 217
meets Kai Khusrav in Sughd vi, 255
Talisman, Cæsar’s, 172
described, viii, 271, 275
deceives Persian envoys, viii, 272
mastered by Khârâd, viii, 274
Tâmarisk, planet, i, 4; v, 240, 243, 246, 247, 256
branch of, fatal to Asfandiyâr, v, 239 and note
Tamâshâ (Kûs), town in Eastern Mâzandarân, formerly a seat of Faridun’s, between Sâriyâh and Astarâbâd, i, 177, 216, 230
Tamûz, viii, 77 note
Tanais, river, iv, 315 and note
Tarak, river (the Atrak, the boundary between Gurgân and Dahistân, or the Turk flowing into the Jaxartes west of Tâshkand ?), vii, 164, 165, 359
Târâz, city now in ruins, northeast of Tâshkand near the present town of Aulieh-Ata, i, 257, 266; v, 157; vi, 268; viii, 370; ix, 41
Cypress of = Rûdâba, i, 269
Idols of, ii, 123, 206; iii, 248; iv, 218; viii, 370
Tartary, iv, 156
Taurus, constellation, iii, 168; iv, 177; vi, 151; vii, 282
Tausar, high priest under Ardshir Pâpakân, i, 62
letter of, i, 63
Tawába, Írâniân hero, iii, 25
Tawurg, Írâniân hero, iv, 188
sent on an expedition by Afrâsiyâb, iv, 188
defeated by Rustam, iv, 193
Taxation, 167, vii, 224
Firdausi’s exemption from, i, 35, 39; ix, 121
reform of, by Kubâd, vii, 183
note, 215, 225
Nûshirvân, vii, 215, 225 seq.
Taxila, Indian city, vi, 63
situation of, vi, 62
Tazháv, an Íránian deserter to, and son-in-law of, Afrásiyáb, 148; iii, 27, 28
sends Rabúda to spy out the Íránian host, iii, 73
parleys with Gív, iii, 75
defeated, iii, 77
flees with Ispanwí, iii, 77
pursued by Bízhan, iii, 77
escapes to Afrásiyáb, iii, 78
attacks Bahram, iii, 100
taken prisoner by Gív, iii, 102

Temperaments, the four, vii, 381 symbolised in the game of nard, vii, 381

Tennyson, quoted, v, 281

Tharhat, river in northern Mesopotamia, vi, 322

Theodore, brother of Heraclius, viii, 194

Theodosiopolis, city in Armenia, vii, 187

Theodosius II. (Tainúsh, q.v.), Eastern Roman Emperor (A.D. 401-450), vi, 372; vii, 187

Theodosius (Niyátus, q.v.), viii, 189

Theophanes, Greek Chronicler, account of last days of Khusrav Parwíz by, ix, 6

Thermodon, river on the southern shores of the Euxine, vi, 72

Thornbake town, the world, i, 310

Thraétaona, i, 171 seq.; ii, 81

Thrita, i, 171 seq.

Tiber, river, v, 294

Tiberius II., Eastern Roman Emperor, vii, 212; viii, 42

Tigris (Arwand), river, vi, 294; viii, 193, 194; ix, 67
	small, the, vi, 199 and note

tower, vi, 291 note

bridge over, vi, 321

Tihrán, city, ii, 28; iii, 109; v, 14, 18

edition of Sháhnáma, i, 76

Tír, genius, iii, 287, 328

month and day, i, 88, viii, 394

Tírši, eunuch of Gúzihr, vi, 198

Tírmíd, city and fortress north of the Oxus (Jihán) where the route from Balkh to Samarkand crosses that river, ii, 229, 258; iv, 65

vi, 156, 157, 331

Tírádih, village in the neighbourhood of Istakhr (Persepolis), and the birth-place of Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 198

Tishtar, Siriu, i, 235

Tobit, Book of, iii, 272

Toll-house and ford of Zark, ix, 100 and note, 116

Tollman, Gív and the, 146; ii, 390

Gushtásp and the, iv, 324

332 and note, 334 seq., 344 seq., 351

Trade-routes, ancient, i, 11, 57

Traitana, i, 7, 8, 171 seq.

Trajan, Roman Emperor (A.D. 98-117), vi, 322

siege of Hatra by, vi, 322

Translation, the principles adopted in the present, i, 76 seq.

Translators of the Sháhnáma, list of previous, i, 87

Treasure, of Jamshíd, 164, vii, 36

Kai Khísrau, 160, iv, 295; vi, 178

Sikandar, vi, 110 and note

Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 406

Tree, the Speaking, 160, vi, 79

described, vi, 167 seq.

Sikandar visits, vi, 167, seq.

warns Sikandar of his death, vi, 168, 169

Triad of evil, Zoroastrian, i, 59 and note

Tribal, or Part, Kings, the, 160, vi, 180, 203, 204, 225, 252, 253

origin of, vi, 179, 181, 210

character of their rule, vi, 197, 198

number of, vi, 198
Tribal, or Part Kings, Ardawán, the chief of, vi, 201
Firdausi on, vi, 210
Tribute, Rúm’s to Írán, vii, 24, viii, 8, 214, 215, 248, 262, 333, 338, 362; viii, 52, 53
Trita, i, 7, 8, 171 seq.
Tshatráng-Námak, Pahlavi text, vii, 380, 381
Tughral, a species of falcon, vii, 49
described, vii, 48
Bahrám Gúr’s, vii, 48 seq.
Tukhár, Farús’s counsellor, 147, iii, 43 seq.
tells Farús the blazons of the Íránian chiefs, iii, 44
counsels Farús, iii, 47, 52 seq.
Tukhár, king of Dahistán, iv, 148
commands with Faríburz the troops from Kháwar, iv, 148
slays a scout from Makrán, iv, 242
Tukhár, Íránian chief, viii, 228
takes letter to Cæsar, viii, 263
Tukhár, Íránian general, conspires against Khusráu Parwíz, viii, 414
releases Shírwí, viii, 415
refuses to help Pírúz against Guráz, ix, 48
Tukhára, Íránian warrior, viii, 296
son of, viii, 314
Túmáspi (Tahmásp, q.v.), i, 369
Túr, second son of Farídún and ruler of Túrán, 140, 141, i, 42, 90 seq., 335, 337, 342, 344, 362; ii, 8, 17, 19, 99, 237, 262, 297, 302, 303, 318, 327, 363, 390; iii, 7, 30, 37, 115, 197, 245, 246; iv, 11, 34, 66, 69, 70, 78, 166, 167, 188, 201, 203, 206, 269, 272, 290; v, 42, 206, 261, 284; vi, 353; vii, 73; viii, 266, 300, 376
note, 378; ix, 103
racial significance of, i, 54

Túr, etymology of, i, 174
naming of, i, 187
horoscope of, i, 188
made ruler over the Turk-mans and Íhrán, i, 189
plots with Salm, i, 190
Salm and, demand the abdi-
cation of Íraj, i, 191
Íraj visits, i, 198
reception of Íraj by, i, 198, seq.
slay Íraj, i, 201
send Íraj’s head to Farí-
dún, i, 202
hear of Minúchíhr, i, 208
send an embassy to Faríd-
dún, i, 208
receive Farídún’s reply, i, 213 seq.
prepare for war, i, 215
parley of, with Kubad, i, 217
Salm and, worsted by Minú-
chíhr, i, 220
plan a night-surprise, i, 220
worsted, i, 221
slain by Minúchíhr, i, 221
head of, sent to Farídún, i, 222
Fire-temple at Bukhárá
built by, iv, 255
daughter of, iv, 304
=Túrán, iv, 51, 164
chief of=Húmán, iv, 51
prince of=Shída, iv, 164
Túrán (Turkistán), the legendary patrimony of Túr, q.v. and a general name for the non-Íránian regions north of the Oxus (Jhún), 142, 146, 148, 152, 153, 165, 167; i, 189, 229, 351, 371, ii, 9, 18, 25, 79, 82, 101, 112 and passim; iii, 8, 11, 15, 25, 29 and passim; iv, 10, 15, 17, 19, 20, and passim; v, 12, 20 seq., 25, 32, 41, 43, 45, 53, 61, and passim; vi, 43, 182, 398; vii, 43, 92, 136, 156, 178; viii, 118, 123, 130, 242,
Túrán—cont.
329, 331, 349, 350, 376, 405, 407; ix, 11, 89, 99
monarch of Chín and = Afrá-siyááb, ii, 99
host of, ii, 110
lord of = Mahmúd, iv, 142
Túráníans (Turkmans), I.43, I.48, I.49, I.51-I.53, I.55, I.65; i, 9, 10, 54; ii, 11, 81, 265; iii, 30, 115, 320, 322; iv, 7, 81, 129, 223, 227; v, 13, 20, 116; vii, 90; viii, 123, 320
historical relations of, with the Iránians, i, 16
Turk, Turks, i, 10, 20; viii, 95, 103, 121, 135, 136, 138 seq., 142, 164, 169, 170, 189, 316, 320, 349, 352; ix, 70, 96 seq., 105, 114, 117, 120
confused with the Haitálians, vii, 4
historical appearance of, vii, 317
Tabarí on, vii, 317
defeat the Haitálians, vii, 332
described, vii, 332
War of, with Persians, viii, 72
prophesied, viii, 98
=Sáwa, viii, 98
defeated, viii, 126
find Sáwa’s corpse, viii, 127
sorcerer, sends ill dream to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 121, 128
put to death, viii, 129
heads of chiefs of, sent to Humruz, viii, 130
retreat to Túrán, viii, 131
three, the, viii, 187, 204
one of, attacks Khusráu Parwiz, viii, 220
reproved by Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 221
lead night-attack on Khusráu Parwiz, viii, 227
= Makátúra, viii, 319

Turk, Turks = Kulán, viii, 345
defeated by Yalán-sína, viii, 353
Turkhán, Túránian hero, v, 151
sent with troops to reconnoitre outside the Brazen Hold, v, 151
Turkish, ix, 87
Turkistán (Túrán), I.47, ii, 19; iii, 109, 228; iv, 233; v, 55; vi, 179, 278, 280, 397; vii, 84, 92, 118, 334, 365; viii, 324, 336, 363, 376, 377, 407
Turkman, Turkmans (Túránians), I.48, I.55, i, 20, 189, 263, 343, 352, 357; ii, 12, 14, 15, 92, 100 and passim; iii, 30, 63, 81, 93, and passim; iv, 10, 13, 15, 19, 20, 22, 29 and passim; v, 22, 25, 36, 39, 40, 44, 47, 51, 52, 61, 72, 90 seq., 98 seq., 104 seq., 108, 110, 113, 114, 116, 135, 152, 157, 158, 171, 173, 206, 254; vii, 48, 88, 92, 97, 177, 179, 239, 344, 364; viii, 377; ix, 25, 76, 94
slave-boy of Zál meets the damsels of Rúdába, i, 263 seq.
make peace with Zav, i, 371
army of, surrenders to Asfandiyár, v, 72, 113
monarch of = Arjásp, v, 74
led by Kuhram, storm Balkh, burn the Fire-temple, and slay Zar-dusht and the priests, v, 92, 93
take Gushtásp’s daughters captive, v, 93
kingdom of, offered by Asfandiyár to Gurgsár in return for faithful service, v, 120
ordered by Arjásp to march out from the Brazen Hold in force to attack the in-
Turkman, Turkmans—cont.
vaders under Bishútan, v, 152
hear the cries of the Irán-
ian watch in the Brazen
Hold, v, 155
refused quarter by Asfandi-
yár, v, 158
language, vi, 147
defeated by Bahram Gúr,
vii, 90, 91
sue for peace, vii, 91
war of Pirúz with, vii, 164
seq.
inroads of, through the
Caucasus, vii, 238
make submission to Núshí-
wán, vii, 360
=Turk, viii, 87, 89, 94,
217
king=Afrásiyáb, ix, 25
Tús, son of Naudar, Iránian hero,
I.46-I.49, I.54, I.76; i, 90
353, 370; ii, 33, 35, 38,
58, 62, 70, 73, 85, 90, 91,
127, 138, I.42, I.48, I.77,
188, 193, 197, 199, 226,
257, 316, 319, 335, 338,
340, 349, 353 seq., 371,
383, 394; iii, ii, ii, 19, 19,
24, 25, 37 seq., 45 seq., 60,
62, 64, 66 seq., 76, 78, 80,
82 seq., 108, 111 seq., 132
seq., 136 seq., 145, 149
seq., 154, 155, 159, 161,
163, 166, 167, 169, 170,
172, 174, 177 seq., 182,
183, 187, 206, 211, 213
seq., 225, 228, 230, 232,
234, 235, 238, 246, 248,
253, 254, 255, 257, 259,
268, 273, 277, 289, 294,
307, 322, 327, 329; iv, 13,
15, 62, 79, 91, 157, 180,
191, 224, 226, 227, 242,
292, 296, 306 seq.; v,
57, 116, 207, 208; viii,
168
Gustáham and, sent by Nau-
dar to conduct the Iránian
women to Alburz, i, 351

Tús, Gustáham and, hear of
Naudar’s death, i, 364
passed over in the succession
i, 369, 370
character of, i, 369
appointed captain of the
host, ii, 78
taken prisoner in Háma-
varán, ii, 90
released by Rustam, ii, 97
goes in search of Kai Káús,
ii, 104
engaged in the Fight of the
Seven Warriors, ii, 107
seq.
commanded by Kai Káús to
hang Rustam and Gír, ii, 143
encampment of, described,
ii, 153
summons Rustam to fight
Suhrááb and helps to
saddle Rakhsh, ii, 160
quarrels with Gír over the
future mother of Siyá-
wush, ii, 194
supersedes Siyáwush, ii, 246
seq.
leads the host home, ii, 258
intercedes for Surkhá, ii,
347
worst in fight by Afrási-
yáb, ii, 353
appointed ruler of Chákh, ii,
358
returns to Irán, ii, 362
dispute of, with Gúdarz over
Kai Khusrau, ii, 400 seq.
advocates the claims of Farb-
burz, ii, 401
asks pardon of Khusrau, ii,
410
hostility of, to Farúd, iii, 13,
51, 62
marches on Kalát, iii, 40
sends chiefs to attack Farúd,
iii, 47 seq.
Bahram’s remonstrance
with, iii, 51
horse of, slain by Farúd, iii,
56

VOL. IX.
GENERAL INDEX

Túṣ, resolves to attack Kalát, iii, 62
remorse of, for the death of Farúd, iii, 67
builds a charnel for Farúd, Rivniz, and Zarásp, iii, 68
marches from Kalát, iii, 68
defeats Tazháv, iii, 77
occupies Giravgard, iii, 78
defeated by the Turkmans, iii, 82
deprived of his command, iii, 83
Kai Khusrau's wrath with, iii, 84, 111, 112
superseded, iii, 86
returns to Kai Khusrau, iii, 86
disgraced, iii, 86
imprisoned, iii, 87
pardoned, iii, 114
challenges Pirán to battle, iii, 117
joins battle with Pirán, 'iii, 118, 126
parleys with Húmán, iii, 121
plays to be delivered from the snowstorm, iii, 128
retreats to Mount Hamáwan, iii, 132
makes a night-attack upon Pirán, iii, 139
harangues the host, iii, 141
hears of the approach of succours, iii, 159
takes counsel with the host, iii, 167
arrays the host, iii, 169
chiefs and, take counsel with Rustam, iii, 172
Rustam's wrath with, iii, 234
collects the spoil, iii, 235
worsted by Páládwand, iii, 257
leads a host to Khárazm, iv, 61
son of =Zarásp, iv, 135
made overseer of the host, iv, 149

Túṣ, posted on Khusrau's right, iv, 146
takes part in the siege of Gang-bihisht, iv, 199
ordered to prepare for a night-attack from Afrásiyáb, iv, 224
Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles, for refusing audience, iv, 275
Gúdarz, and other nobles take counsel, iv, 277
audience of, with Kai Khusrau, iv, 283 seq.
holds with other chiefs, at the bidding of Kai Khusrau, an assembly on the plain, iv, 291 seq.
Kai Khusrau's gifts to, iv, 295, 300
asks for further recognition from Kai Khusrau, iv, 299
retains the charge of Káwa's flag and receives Khurásán, iv, 300
sets out with Kai Khusrau on his pilgrimage, iv, 306
refuses to turn back when hidden by Kai Khusrau, iv, 307
Kai Khusrau farewells and warns, and his comrades, iv, 308
disappears and is sought in vain by, and his comrades, iv, 308
end of, iv, 309
Túṣ, city, now in ruins, north of Mashad in Khurásán, i, 39; v, 28; vi, 393; ix, 99, 95
birthplace of Firdausí, i, 38, 41, 45
governor of, i, 39
prince of, i, 100, 114
legendary origin of, iii, 14
legend concerning Firdausí's burial at, iii, 191
Tús, city, treasure of "Kai Káús called "The Bride" stored at, iv, 295
Sám and the dragon of, v, 202
local legend of, vi, 372, 391 seq.
governor of, ix, 92
Tuwurg, Túránian hero, ii, 253
Tuwurg, brother of Khán, 173, viii, 364
reports flight of Gurdya, vii, 351
sent in pursuit, viii, 351
parleys with Gurdya, viii, 352
Twelve Rukhs (Champions), Battle of the. See Rukhs. Signs (Zodiac), vii, 408
Tyre, city, vi, 30
siege of, vi, 30

U

Úlád, a div, 143, ii, 28, 59, 61; iv, 296 note; v, 204 note
Rustam and, ii, 52 seq.
made king of Mázandarán, ii, 76
'Umar, Khalifa (A.D. 634-643), i, 11 seq., 67; ix, 66 seq., 72, 76, 121
founds Basra, ix, 69
sends Háshim in pursuit of Yazdagird, ix, 68
Nu'mán to fight Yazdagird, ix, 68
Sa'ad to invade Irán, ix, 72
'Umar Khayyám, Persian poet and scientist (died A.D. 1123), v, 30
Ummayyads, Muhammadan dynasty, i, 12, 13
Uné, daughter of Alexander the Great in the Pseudo-Callaisthenes, vi, 77
Útal Mountains, iii, 192
Urmuzd, the Good Principle, i, 5, 50, 116 seq., 236, ii, 82, iii, 271, 286, 317, 327; iv, 139, 185; v, 15 seq.; vi, 55, 362, 372, 387; vii, 228, 406 and note; viii, 285; ix, 24
Unity of, symbolised in the game of nard, vii, 381
day, i, 88; iii, 323; vi, 302 and note, 306, 375
Urmuzd, Ashkánian (Parthian) king, vi, 197, 210
Urmuzd, son of Shápúr, Sháh (Hormisdas I), 161, 162, vi, 3, 257, 273, 280, 313, 327
discovery of, by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 257, 271
birth of, vi, 271
counseled by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 280
Shápúr, vi, 299
Reign of, 162, vi, 301 seq.
Note on, vi, 301
title of, vi, 301
story about, vi, 301
Urmuzd, son of Narsí, Sháh (Hormisdas II), 162, vi, 3, 294, 295, 307, 315, 316, 325; vii, 339; viii, 41
Reign of, vi, 318 seq.
Note on, vi, 318
sons of, vi, 318
inaugural address of, vi, 318
pregnant wife of, enthroned, vi, 320
Urmuzd, son of Urmuzd, Persian Prince, vi, 318, 325
referred to (?), vi, 337
Urmuzd Arḍshír (Ahwáz), city in Khúzístán, vi, 290 and note
Urmuzd, Iránian warrior, vii, 296
Uroscopy, vi, 101, 107, 108
Urumia (Khanjast or Chijast), lake in Azarbáiján, iv, 136; viii, 195
Afrásiyáb escapes from Húm into, iv, 262 and note
Ustád, Íránian general, vii, 251
commands Núshirván’s right wing, vii, 251
Ustád, Íránian warrior, viii, 296
Ustuklí, Túránían hero, iv, 182
fights with Kai Khusrav, iv, 182
’Utbi, Al, secretary to Sultán Mahmúd, i, 32
’Uthmán, Khalífa, i, 12
Utterakuri, a legendary people, vi, 74
Uzava (Zav), Sháh, i, 369

V

Vale of heroes, vii, 6
Valerian (Bazánásh), Roman Emperor (A.D. 253-260), vi, 323 seq.
defeat and capture of, by Shápúr son of Ardashír, vi, 294, 295
memorials of, vi, 295
confused with Odenathus, Julian, and Jovian, vi, 324 seq.
death of, in captivity, vi, 326
Valkash (Vologeses I), Parthian (Ashkánian) king, i, 62, 63
Vaxdaremainí (Andaríman), brother of Arjásp, v, 13
Varahran I (Bahrám son of Urmuzd), Sásánian king, vi, 307
Varahran II (Bahrám son of Bahrám), Sásánian king, vi, 310
Varahran III (Bahrám Bahrámí- yán), Sásánian king, vi, 313, 368
Varahran IV (Bahrám son of Shápúr), Sásánian king, vi, 313, 368
Varahran V (Bahrám Gúr), Sásánian king, vii, 3
Vardanes (Bahrám), Parthian (Ashkánian) king, i, 9
seq., 109
Vardanes, wars of, with Gotarzes, iii, 10, 11
assassination of, iii, 10, 11
character of, iii, 15
Varengana, the raven, i, 235, 236
Vedas, i, 129, 144, 171, 234, 337.
ii, 8, 11, 25
Vega, star, vii, 245
Vendídád, Nask, vii, 188
reference to Mazdák in, vii, 188
Venus, planet, i, 72, 100, 194, 276, 303, 322, 332, 339; ii, 115, 275, 345; iii, 143, 159, 254, 318, 332; v, 159; vi, 98, 102, 171, 190, 212, 224, 332; vii, 53, 151, 263; viii, 152, 359, 394, 395; ix, 26, 73
Verethraghna, the raven, ii, 25
Victory of Victories, The, ix, 69
Vídrafsh (Bídrafsh), v, 24, 26
Village-chief, 154
Vineyards, taxes on, vii, 215, 225
Virgo, constellation, iii, 24; vii, 359; ix, 71
Vishtásp (Vistasp, Gushtásp, q.v.), v, 24
Vistáspa (Vishtásp, Gushtásp, q.v.), iv, 316; v, 11
Vistásp-sást, v, 11
Vitrified fortifications, vi, 79, 165
Vivanghat, i, 129
Vohúman. See Vohu Manau.
Vohu Manau (Vohúman, Bah-
man), ameshaspenta, iii, 271; v, 16, 17
Volga, river of European Russia, falling into the Caspian, iv, 316
Vologeses I (Valkash), Parthian (Ashkánian) king (A.D. 51
-77), i, 62, 63
Vologeses II, Parthian (Ashkánian king), i, 19
Vologeses (Balásh), king of Kirmán, temp. Ardashír Pápà-
kán, vi, 205
Vologeses (Balásh), Sháh, vii, 170
Vonones I, Parthian (Ashkánian) king (A.D. 8-12)
GENERAL INDEX

Vouru-Kasha, sea, iv, 137
Vritra, demon, ii, 25
Indra and, vi, 203
Vullers-Landauer edition of the Sháhnáma, i, 77; vi, 60

W

WAHR, region, iii, 177, 228, 235
Wakkás, father of Sa’ād q.v., 176; ix, 72, 78, 82, 90
Wálid, Khálífa, vi, 325
Walnuts, taxes on, vii, 225
War of the Religion, v, 19, 26, 29
two campaigns of, v, 29
Waráádí, king of Sipanjáb, I46, ii, 341 seq., 346
Warlígh (Callinicus, Kálíniyús, q.v., Nicephorion, Rakka)
city, viii, 188, 253, 257, 280
Khusrau Parwíz takes up his abode at, viii, 257
Warriors, the Seven, Story of the Fight of, I43, ii, 25, 82, 107 seq.
Warstead =Bídád, iii, 245
Wash, city, viii, 24 and note
Water, scarcity of, i, 3
—courses, underground, i, 3
—horse, I63, vi, 373, 392
referred to, vi, 373
legend of Yazdagird and the, vi, 392
—stealing demons, i, 7, 338
of Life, I60, v, 30; vi, 159, 160
Wazír (minister), piece in chess, vii, 385, 423
position of, vii, 388, 422
move of, vii, 422
West, Dr. E. W., referred to, v, 11
West, the, Salm’s portion of the world, i, 189
gateway of, viii, 369 and note
Western sea, the, I60, vi, 158
Whale, mistaken for an island, vi, 71, 147
Whale, Sikandar’s adventure with a, vi, 71, 147
Wheeler, James Talboys, quoted, vi, 81
Whip, Bahrám Gúr’s, vii, 47, 54, 63, 64
object of reverence, vii, 47, 54, 63
White Castle (Mount Sipand, q.v.), stronghold north-
west of Nishápur, I44, i, 369; ii, 118, 131, 138
Malcolm’s identification and description of, i, 236; v, 30
besieged by Bárman, i, 354
evacuated by Gazhdaham
ii, 137
Dv, I43. See Dv.
Elephant, I41. See Elephant.
Huns (Haitáilians, q.v.), i, 20
Will, of Alexander the Great, vi, 81
provisions of, vi, 81, 181
Kubád, son of Píraz, vii, 210
Wine-drinking, forbidden by
Bahrám Gúr, vii, 23
again permitted, vii, 25
Firdausí’s love of. See Firdausí.
Wisa, Túránian hero, uncle of Afrásiyáb, I42, i, 92, 337, 342, 353, 361, 362; ii, 112
354; iii, 79, 102, 105, 120, 197, 202, 206; iv, 32, 39, 50, 54, 55, 74, 84, 95, 99, 103, 113, 115, 122
pursues Káran, i, 355
finds Bárman dead, i, 356
defeated by Káran, i, 357
returns to Afrásiyáb, i, 337
sayings of, iv, 32
Wisagird, city in Túrán, I51, iv, 19, 20, 65; vii, 157, 331.
Wisdom, praise of, vii, 103
Firdausí’s, I39
referred to, vii, 278
—literature, Persian, vii, 278
seq., viii, 3
Mohl on, vii, 280
Wisdom, literature, Nöldeke on, vii, 281
apportionment of, viii, 202
Witch, 143, 156. See Sorceress.
Wizard-land, vii, 120 and note
Wolf, 154, 156, 165, vii, 121 seq. and note
slain by Bahram Gūr, vii, 123
of Fāskūn. See Fāskūn.
Women, City of, 160. See Harūm.
Wonders, 160, iv, 245
the Four, of Kaid, 159. See Kaid.
World, on the making of the, 139
Worm, the, 161, vi, 195, 206, 238 seq.
Story of, 161; vi, 196, 203 seq., 232 seq.
Mohl, Nöldeke, and Darmesteter on, vi, 203 seq.
cult of, vi, 235
Ardshir Pāpakān’s stratagem against, vi, 242
servants of, vi, 242 seq.
Writing, art of, taught by the divs to Tahmūras, i, 127

X

Xerxes, Persian king (B.C. 485-465), v, 282
Ašlandiyār and, v, 282
effigy of, falls, vi, 30

Y

Yājūj and Mājūj (Gog and Magog, q.v.), 160, vi, 79, 163 seq., 211 note
legend of, in the Kurān, vi, 78
Tabarī on, vi, 78
described, vi, 163
Ya’kūb bin Lais, Persian chieftain and founder of the Saffarid dynasty, i, 67, 68
Ya’kūbī, Arabic historian (died A.D. 891)

Yalān-sīna (Mardānshāh), brother of Bahram Chūbīna,
viii, 74, 102, 122, 135, 138, 157, 163, 169, 204, 288, 291, 296 seq., 303, 316, 356, 357; ix, 6
goes hunting with Bahram Chūbīna, viii, 156
pursues and brings back archscribe viii, 159
speech of, viii, 165, 170
worsted by Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 229
commands the centre, viii, 289
Bahram Chūbīna makes, his mandatory, viii, 342
defeats the Turks, viii, 353
negotiates marriage between Gurduya and Gustaham, viii, 357

Yama. See Yima.

Yaman (Hāmāvyarān), southwestern Arabia, 140, 160, 162, i, 181 seq., 266, 286; ii, 80; iv, 146; v, 260; vi, 73, 120, 121, 324, 331, 385, 386, 396, 401; vii, 262; viii, 98
king of = Sarv, 140, i, 178, 179, 182

Yaman, carnelians of, ii, 123; iii, 289
Canopus of, ii, 203; iii, 297; vi, 382
onyx of, vi, 128
striped stuff of, vi, 175
monarch of, vi, 175; viii, 16
gives gifts to Sikandar, vi, 175
=Munzir, vi, 378, 387, 390
Bahram Gūr goes to, vi, 378, 390
conquered by Persians, viii, 24 note
curtains of, viii, 148, 151

Yānūs (Julian), brother of Caesar, 162, vi, 324, 326
Yánus, leads a host against Shá-púr, vi, 351
defeated, vi, 352
Yasht XXII, metrical paraphrase of, vii, 318
Yātkār-i-Zárirán, Pahlavi text, v, 13, 24, 27 and note; vii, 380
compared with Dakdik’s work, v, 24 seq.
resembles Kármámak, vi, 195, 196
Yazates (Izads), the, iii, 286
Yazd, city in central Persia, vi, 368
Yazdagird, son of Shá-púr, Sháh (Isdigerd I), 163, 164, vi, 3; vii, 4, 10, 109, 119, 171, 185, 359
referred to, vi, 369; vii, 74
Reign of, 163, vi, 371 seq.
Note on, vi, 371 seq.
parentage of, uncertain, vi, 371
lover of peace like Aknaton of Egypt, vi, 371
titles of, vi, 371, 372
Tabari on, vi, 372, 373
coins of, vi, 373
evil administration of, vi, 374, 404
makes search for a governor for his son Bahrám Gúr, vi, 376 seq.
Nu’mán and Munzir visit, vi, 377
puts Bahrám Gúr in Munzir’s charge, vi, 378
receives from Munzir a picture of Bahrám Gúr shooting, vi, 385
Bahrám Gúr returns to, vi, 386
gives presents to, and sends a letter by, Nu’mán to Munzir, vi, 387
disgraces Bahrám Gúr, vi, 389
sends Bahrám Gúr back to Munzir, vi, 390
Yazdagird, consults the astrologers, vi, 390
death of foretold, vi, 391
attacked by bleeding of the nose, vi, 390
death of, vi, 373, 393
Nöldke on, vi, 373
corpse of embalmed and taken to Párs, vi, 393
Yazdagird, son of Bahrám Gúr (Isdigerd II), Sháh, 166, vi, 3; vii, 4, 152, 156, 160, 187
welcomes his father on his return from Hind, vii, 137
appointed by Bahrám Gúr to succeed him, vii, 150
Reign of, 166, vii, 153 seq.
Note on, vii, 153
a blank in Sháhnáma, vii, 153
historically important, vii, 153
wars of, vii, 153
fortifies passes in the Caucasus, vii, 153, 187
title of, vii, 153
sons of, vii, 153
appoints Hurmuz to succeed him, vii, 155
dies, vii, 155
Yazdagird (Isdigerd III), Sháh, 176, v, 294; vi, 3; viii, 55, 73; ix, 5, 61, 64 seq., 68 seq., 72, 81, 90, 101, 105, 109, 113, 115, 116, 122
Reign and Era of, 176, ix, 64
Note on, ix, 64
taken for safety to Istakhr, ix, 64
age of, at accession, ix, 65
difficult position of, ix, 65
Yazdagird, historical importance of reign of, ix, 65
flight of, from Ctesiphon, ix, 67
Hulwán, ix, 68
last attempt of, to recover his empire, ix, 68
Yazdagird, concentrates his forces at Nahávand, ix, 68 defeated and a fugitive, ix, 69 death of, referred to, ix, 69 host returns to, after Kádisiya, ix, 85 hears of Rustam’s death, ix, 85 quits Baghdád, ix, 88 makes for Marv, ix, 89 entrusted to Máhwí by Farrukhzád, ix, 95, 96 at Marv, ix, 97, 116 hears of the coming of the Turks, ix, 97 betrayed by Máhwí, ix, 98 defeated, ix, 98, 116 miller and, ix, 99 seq. described, ix, 99, 101 Máhwí bids miller slay, ix, 107, 116 slain, stripped and flung into stream, ix, 108, 109 and note corpse of, recovered, lamented over and entombed, ix, 109 seq. Firdausí on, ix, 111


Yázdán, viii, 75
Yázdánbakhsh (Áyín Gashasp q.v.), viii, 75, 76
Yazdín, viii, 195, 196
Year, New, festival at, i, 104
Yima (Yama, Jamshíd), i, 7, 130, 374 legend of, i, 129
Yokel, a, 164 entertains Bahrám Gúr, vii, 43 seq.
wife of, her converse with Bahrám Gúr, vii, 45 presage of, vii, 46 rewarded by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 48

Youths, two, bid Ardashír Pápákán not to tarry in his flight from Ardawáin, vi, 207, 222
Youths, two, entertain and counsel Ardashír Pápákán in the matter of the Worm, vi, 207, 239 seq. help Ardashír Pápákán to slay the Worm, vi, 242, 244

Yudhishtíra, eldest of the five Pándavas, iv, 138 renunciation of the world, and pilgrimage to heaven, compared with that of Kai Khusrau, iv, 138

Yúnán, vi, 95 and note, viii, 258 Faith of, vi, 95

Z

Záb, lesser, tributary of Tigris, viii, 189


1 Not the same apparently as those above.
2 See p. 333 note.
Zábul, vintage of, ii, 110
occupied by the Turkmans, i, 19; iii, 14, 30
Gushtásp goes to, v, 85
Moon of = Rúdába, v, 190
and note
called "Babbiestead" by Asfandiyár, v, 216
Bahman’s sojourn in, v, 252, 256
pillaged by Bahman, v, 287
Bahman quits, v, 290
Zábulí, a native of Zábul, iii, 188, 201, 257, 326; v, 212
a, made king of Kábul, v, 277
Zád Farrukh, suggests Bahram Chúbína to Hurmuzd, viii, 99
speech of, viii, 241
Zádshám, king of Turán and grandfather of Afrásiyáb, i
92, 342 seq., 376; iv, 149, 163, 166, 203
offspring of = Afrásiyáb, iv, 178
Zagros, mountain-range in western Irán, viii, 189
Záhhák (Azhí Daháka), son of Mardás, Arab king and
Sháh, i, 40, 41; i, 42, 90, 91; ii, 33, 81, 318; iii,
257; iv, 89, 206, 272, 274, 290; v, 12, 180, 203, 204,
284; vi, 15, 45, 172, 209, 240 and note; vii, 185,
199; viii, 218, 239, 241, 387, 391; ix, 25, 65, 103
proponent of idolatry and
of the Semitic race, i, 54,
143, 226, 256
one of the Zoroastrian triad
of evil, i, 59 and note
referred to by Moses of Chorène, i, 72, 144
Story of, i, 135 seq.
tempted by Iblís, i, 136 seq.
father of, i, 40
murdered by, i, 137
referred to, viii, 387
Záhhák, becomes king of the
Arabs, i, 137
serpents, grow out of the
shoulders of, i, 139
Iblís’ advice to, i, 139
invades Irán, i, 139
captures and slays Jamshíd,
i, 140
Reign of, i, 40, i, 141, seq.
Note on, i, 141, seq.
ot destroyed, i, 143
feast in celebration of over-
throw of, i, 143
dream of, i, 147
Arnawáz' advice to, con-
cerning, i, 148
takes counsel with the archi-
mages, i, 149
warned by Zirák, i, 149
seeks for Farídún, i, 150
slays Abtín, i, 151, 153
Birmáya, i, 152
burns Farídún's palace, i,
152, 158
Káwa and, Story of, i, 40, i,
154 seq.
Káwa revolts against, i, 156
Farídún resolves to war
with, i, 157
marches against, i, 159
capital of, i, 161
entered by Farídún, i, 161
talisman of, overthrown by
Farídún, i, 161
sought for in vain by Farí-
dún, i, 162
minister of, i, 164 seq.
hears from Kundrav of Farí-
dún's doings, i, 165
goes to fight with Farídún,
i, 166
enters his palace, i, 167
overthrown by Farídún, i,
168
Surush's counsel to Farídún
concerning, i, 168, 169
fettered to Mount Damá-
wand, i, 169
future final destruction of,
i, 173
saying of, ii, 171 and note
Zahhák, an Aryan myth, ix, 65
king of Babylon, ix, 65
an Arab, ix, 65
Zahir, Iranian hero, iv, 148
commands the Bedouins in
Kai Khusrav’s army, iv, 148
Zainigruz, Zainigzâv, ii, 81
Zaini-vairi (Zariadres, Zarir, q.v.),
iv, 316; v, 12
Zâl (Dâstân, Dâstân-i-Sâm, Dâstân-i-Zand, Zâl-i-zar), son
of Sâm and father of
Rustam, l41; l42, 153;
154, 156, 157; i, 145, 235,
384, 387; ii, 4, 11 seq.,
18, 19, 21, 33 seq., 49, 58,
61, 62, 69, 77, 140, 168,
169, 180, 182, 227, 228,
271, 286, 290, 318, 319,
338, 362, 371; iii, 8, 17,
18, 21, 22, 35, 121, 132,
138, 141, 147, 190, 202,
221, 245, 269, 274, 279,
283, 307, 312, 322, 325,
328, 331, 347, 351, 354,
355; iv, 13, 147, 222, 251,
277, 319; v, 11, 14, 15,
58, 86, 169, 173 seq., 197*
200, 204, 210, 212, 219
seq., 231, 240 seq., 246,
255, 256, 261, 277 seq.,
281, 283, 300; vii, 79;
viii, 223; ix, 25
various names of, i, 84, 245
and note, 248 and note
born with white hair, i,
240
cast away by Sâm, i, 241
found and brought up by
the Simurgh, i, 242
seen by a caravan, i,
242
informed of his parentage by
the Simurgh, i, 245
given a feather by the
Simurgh, i, 246
restored to Sâm by the
Simurgh, i, 247
goes with Sâm to court, i,
249
Zâl, horoscope of, taken, i, 251
made regent of Zâbul by
Sâm, i, 253
progress of, in the arts, i, 255
makes a progress through
his realm, i, 256
Rûdâba and, story of, i, 257
seq.
referred to, iii, 285
hears of, and falls in love
with Mihrâb’s daughter,
i, 257 seq.
described, i, 260, 268
sees Rûdâba’s handmaids,
i, 263
interview of, with Rûdâba’s
handmaids, i, 266
invited to visit Rûdâba, i,
267, 269
goes to Rûdâba, i, 270 seq.
plights his troth to Rûdâba,
i, 272
consults the archimages on
the matter of Rûdâba, i,
273
writes to Sâm, i, 275
go-between of, with Rûdâba,
i, 280
sends Sâm’s letter to Rû-
dâba, i, 280
goes to plead his cause with
Sâm, i, 292
bears a letter of appeal from
Sâm to Minûchihir, i, 295
well received by Minû-
chihir i, 306
astrologer’s presage con-
cerning, i, 307
questioned by the arch-
images, i, 308
answers the archimages, i,
309
displays his accomplishment
before Minûchihir, i, 311
returns to Sâm, i, 316
goes with Sâm to Kâbul, i,
317
felicitated by Sâm, i, 318
married to Rûdâba, i, 318
and Rûdâba go to Sîstân, i,
319
Zál, left regent of Sístán by Sám
 i, 319
summons the Simurgh to
sucour Rúdába, i, 320
goes with Rustam and Mihráb
to meet Sám, i, 324
bids Rustam take Mount
Sipand, i, 329
hears of Rustam’s success,
i, 332
bids Rustam destroy the
hold of Mount Sipand, i,
333
informs Sám of Rustam’s
exploit, i, 334
buries Sám, i, 358
hears from Mihráb that
Shamásás and Khazarwán
are invading Zábulistán, i,
359
goes to the help of Mihráb,
i, 359
shoots arrows into the ene-
mies’ camp, i, 359
slays Khazarwán, i, 360
wounds Kubdá, i, 361
puts Shamásás to flight, i,
361
hears of the death of
Naudar, i, 364
fights with Afrásiyáb, i,
368
proposes the election of a
new Sháh, i, 370
reproached by the Irán-
ians, i, 375
reply of, i, 375
bids Rustam prepare for
war, i, 376
gives Sám’s mace to Rus-
tam, i, 378
collects horses for Rustam,
i, 378
marches against Afrásiyáb,
i, 381
urges the Iránians to choose
a Sháh, i, 381
sends Rustam to summon
Kai Kubdá, i, 382
goes to do homage to Kai
Khusrau, iii, 17

Zál, witnesses Kai Khusrau’s
oath to avenge Siyáwush,
iii, 22
son of Rustam, iii, 132
meets Gív, iii, 321
sayings of, iii, 316, 351
summoned by the Iránians
to remonstrate with Kai
Khusrau, iv, 278
sets out for Irán with Rus-
tam and sages, iv, 279
met on arrival by Gúdarz
and other chiefs, iv, 282
holds converse with the
Iránians, iv, 282
audience of, with Kai Khus-
rau, iv, 283 seq.
asks pardon of Kai Khus-
rau, iv, 290
holds, with other chiefs, at
the bidding of Kai Khus-
rau, an assembly on the
plain, iv, 291 seq.
Kai Khusrau’s gift to, iv,
295
companions of, rewarded by
Kai Khusrau, iv, 297
returns thanks, iv, 298
protests against Lührásp’s
succession, iv, 301
acknowledges Lührásp as
Sháh, iv, 302
sets out with Kai Khusrau
on his pilgrimage, iv,
306
turns back at the bidding of
Kai Khusrau, iv, 307
laments the loss of the pal-
dins and returns to Irán,
iv, 310
promises fealty to Lührásp,
iv, 311
Rustam and, welcome Gush-
tásp to Sístán, v, 85
hears of Bahman’s ap-
proach, v, 182
interview of, with Bahman,
v, 183
give Bahman a guide to
conduct him to Rustam,
v, 184
Zal, Rudaba and, bidden by Rustam to prepare to receive Asfandiyar, v, 190
Rustam recounts his interview with Asfandiyar to, v, 196
Rustam and, vilified by Asfandiyar, v, 201
receives a message from Rustam by Zawara, v, 230
grieves over Rustam's wounds, v, 234
summons the Simurgh to Rustam's aid, v, 235
goes to Rustam and Asfandiyar, v, 247
forebodes Rustam's future, v, 247
father of Shaghad, v, 260, 263
sends Shaghad to be brought up at Kabul, v, 264
laments for Rustam, v, 273
sends Faramarz against Kabul, v, 274
bids Rudaba to cease to mourn for Rustam, v, 278
receives and replies to Bahman's hostile message, v, 285
goes to meet Bahman, v, 286
palace of, sacked, v, 286
Bishutun intercedes for, v, 288
released and returns to his palace, v, 289
Zal-i-zar (Zal, q.v.), i, 84, 248 and note
Zam (now Karkh), town on the left bank of the Oxus between Amfi (Charjui) and Tirmid, where, there was a crossing-place, ii, 394, 395; iv, 65, 157; vii, 359
=Oxus, ii, 97
Zamyad, Yash, i, 338
Zamzam, iv, 258 note

Zand, comment, i, 65
Zandavasta, i, 116, 129, 144, 171 seq., 234, 337, 338, 369; ii, 8, 25 seq., 81, 118, 189, 190; iii, 8; iv, 151, 228, 253, 259, 308; v, 11 seq., 30, 36, 41, 43, 51, 82, 85, 100, 173, 176, 216, 241, 294, 299, 309; vi, 17, 55, 226, 252, 343, 356; vii, 200, 207, 283, 302; viii, 96, 246, 283, 312
traditional origin of, i, 61 discussed, i, 62
language of, i, 63 seq. meaning of, i, 65
origin of chief characters in, i, 65
diffusion of traditions in, i, 65
extant portions of, i, 70 note
quoted, i, 99, 130, 141, 142, 172, 235, 369; viii, 218, 240
sent by Gushtasp to every clime, v, 77
burnt by the Turkmans at Balkh, v, 92
passage from, metrically paraphrased, vii, 318
Zanga, Iranian hero, 145, 151, ii, 73, 90, 228, 249, 271, 318; iii, 20, 34, 43, 45, 48, 67, 92, 115, 350; iv, 13, 15, 24, 105, 147
takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107 seq.
accompanies Siyavush against Afrasiyab, ii, 226
sent on an embassy to Afrasiyab, ii, 250 seq.
goes with Rustam to rescue Bizhan, iii, 334
opposes Farshidward, iv, 83
chosen to fight Akhast, iv, 97
slays Akhast, iv, 106
Zanga, Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles, for refusing audience, iv, 275
Zangula or Zangula, Túránían hero, i 57, iv, 26
chosen to fight with Furúhil, iv, 97
slain by Furúhil, iv, 101
Zarang, former capital of Sístán, situated some twenty miles from the northeastern shores of Lake Zirih, i, 4
Zarár, vi, 200
Zarasp, son of Minúchihr, i, 248; iv, 147 (?)
kindred of, go to the temple of Azargashasp, iv, 270
go to meet Zál and Rustam, iv, 282
go with Zarír to Rúm, iv, 360
Zarásp or Zarasp, son of Tús, i 47, iii, 24, 54, 57, 59, 60, 67, 72, 113, 114; iv, 135
goes against Farúd, iii, 53
referred to, iii, 55; iv, 149
burial of, iii, 68
Zarasp, treasurer of Kai Khusrau, iv, 269
makes gifts to Azargashasp, iv, 269
Zarasp, Íránian hero, iv, 180, 301
Zarathustra, Zarathushtra. See Zarúhsht.
Zarduhsht (Zarathushtra, Zoroaster), prophet, law-giver, and evangelist of ancient Írán, i 55, i, 53, 116, 235, 236; ii, 8, 9; iv, 272; v, 9 seq., 23 seq., 27, 28, 42, 51, 77, 173, 206, 216, 217, 241, 255; vi, 55, 252, 328; vii, 9, 207, 264, 318; viii, 67, 213, 308
Zandavasta revealed to, i, 61
title of a line of priest-princes, i, 61
Zarduhsht, account of, i, 62
meaning of, v, 13
legend of, v, 14 seq.
converts Guštásp, v, 18, 33
success of evangel of, v, 34
plants the Cypress of Kishmar, v, 27, 34
advises Guštásp not to pay tribute to Arjásp, v, 35
referred to, v, 36, 38, 41
slain at Balkh, v, 92, 93
amulet given to Asandiyár by, v, 130
religion of, under the Sásánian empire, vi, 251
girdle of, v, 16; vi, 332 note.
Fire-fane of, vii, 139
high priest of, converts Sapínúd, vii, 139
saying of, viii, 218, 240
Zarduhsht, high priest, 179, viii, 81
visits Ízid Gashasp in prison, viii, 82
visit of, reported to Humuzd, viii, 83
poisoned by Hurmuzd, viii, 83 seq.
Zariadres (Zairi-vairi, Zarír, q.v.), v, 26
legend of, iv, 314 seq.
Zarír (Zariadres, Zairi-vairi), brother of Sháh Guštásp, i 54, i 55, i, 42; ii, 3; iii, 315, 316, 318, 347; iv, 12, 13, 24 seq., 37, 41 seq., 49 seq., 60 seq., 73, 94, 109, 169, 181, 193, 254, 261
sent by Luhrásp in pursuit of Guštásp, iv, 320
charger of, iv, 321
returns with Guštásp, iv, 322
consulted by Luhrásp, iv, 323, 358
advises Luhrásp, iv, 358
goes with other chiefs on a mission to Rúm, iv, 359
reaches Halab, iv, 360

¹ It is not clear which Zarasp is intended.
Zarîr entrusts the host to Bahram, iv, 360
goes to Caesar's court, iv, 360
audience with Caesar of, and recognition of Gushtasp
by, iv, 360
gives Luhra's answer to Caesar, iv, 361
visited in his camp by Gushtasp, iv, 361
informs Gushtasp of Luhra's abduction in his favour, iv, 362
Love-story of, v, 26, 27
Death-story of, v, 26, 27
converted by Zarduhsht, v, 33
answers, in conjunction with Asfandiyar and Jamasp,
Arjas's letter, v, 42
death of, foretold by Jamasp, v, 51
receives the standard and the command of the centre from Gushtasp, v, 55
prowess of, v, 61 seq.
slain by Bidirafsh, v, 63
Zarîr-nâmâ, v, 26, 27
Zark, town south-east of Marv,
ix, 98
channel of, ix, 98
corpse of Yazdagird flung into, ix, 109
recovered from, ix, 109
ford and toll-house of, ix, 100 and note
chief of, ix, 100
ears from miller about Yazdagird, ix, 109
Zarmihr. See Rizmihr.
Zarnush, city in Khuzistan, vi, 35
Zartusht Bahram Pazdhu, author of the Zartusht-nâmâ, v, 18
Zartusht-nâmâ, poem, v, 18
Zav, Shah, i, 242, 243, i, 90, 91, 381; ii, 11, 36; iv, 283
Reign of, i, 369 seq.
Note on, i, 369
mentioned in the Zandavasta, i, 369
Zav, accession of, i, 370
drought and famine in the time of, i, 371
concludes peace with the Turkmans, i, 371
dies, i, 372
Zawara, brother of Rustam, i, 46, 157, ii, 4, 96, 228, 347, 349; iii, 30, 202, 325, 328; iv, 24, 34; v, 173, 174, 182 seq., 187, 191, 231, 260, 261
engaged in the fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 110 seq.
worsted by Alkus, ii, 115
rescued by Rustam, ii, 115
made leader of Rustam's host, ii, 142
left in charge of Rustam's host, ii, 161
goes on embassy to Humân, ii, 176
safe-conducts Humân from Iran, ii, 176, 181, 182
incites Rustam to avenge Siyawush, ii, 360
given a command, iv, 149
goes with Rustam to the right wing, iv, 180
referred to, v, 186, 228, 261
Farâmarz and, sent by Rustam to bid Zal and Rudaba prepare to receive Asfandiyar, v, 190
brings Rustam's armour, v, 218
put in charge of the troops, v, 222
goes with Rustam to the Hirmund, v, 222
Rustam's instructions to, v, 222
provokes the Iranians to combat, v, 225
slays Nush Azar, v, 227
goes in quest of Rustam, v, 230
takes from Rustam a message for Zal, v, 230
Zawāra, grieves over Rustam’s wounds, v, 234
    goes to Rustam and Asfandiyār, v, 247
warns Rustam against Bahman, v, 250
Rustam and, with small escort, go to Kābul, v, 268
    goes hunting with Rustam, v, 270
    falls a victim to treachery, v, 270, 273
death of, v, 273
    body of, taken from the pit by Farāmarz, and buried v, 275
Zend, language, i, 64
    improper use of term, i, 64
Zeus, Babylonian, vi, 22
    oracle of, consulted, vi, 22
Zhanda Razm, maternal uncle of
    Suhráb, 144, ii, 149, 151
accompanies Suhráb to Irán, ii, 150
death of, ii, 150
    referred to, ii, 160
Zhangwī, Turkman noble, viii, 331
Zīb-i-Khusrau (Rūmiya, q.v.),
city, 167, vii, 259
Zijának, daughter of Ardawán,
    q.v., 161, vi, 255
Story of, in Kārnāmak, vi, 255
    Tabarī, vi, 255
    Shāhnāma, vi, 259 seq.
Zínigāv, ii, 81
Zīra, father of Gurwī, 152, ii, 295,
    314; iii, 120, 197, 199; iv, 97, 99, 127, 219; v, 272
Zirak, an archimage, i, 150
warns Zahhāk, i, 149
Zirih, sea or lake, i, 4; ii, 80; iv, 136
    the Lake of Sīstān, i, iv; ii, 80
Zirih, son of Shāh Pīrzūz, vii, 170
Zodiac, viii, 394
Zoroaster. See Zarduhsht.
Zoroastrian, Zoroastrians, v, 17;
    vi, 206, 251, 328
Zoroastrianism, i, 49; vi, 15, 196,
    251, 252, 327, 328; vii, 188, 317
conceptions of, i, 5, 51, 52
    original seat of, i, 56 seq., 62
becomes the state religion, i, 59
    declines after Alexander’s conquest, i, 60
    scriptures of, See Zandavasta.
under the Parthians, i, 60, 63
    revival of, i, 63
    based on nature-worship, i, 116
    existed before Zoroaster, i, 116
under the Sásánian empire,
    vi, 251
    millenia of, vi, 252
Zů’l Aktáf, title of Shāpūr, son of Urmuzd, 162, vi, 323
meaning of, vi, 323
Zů’l-fakar, ii, 337 and note
Zů’l-karnain (Sikandar, Alex-
    ander the Great), vi, 51
legend of, in Kurān, vi, 78, 84
    barrier of, vi, 78
    site of, vi, 79
Zůr, See Gūr.
Zūrān, Nūshīrwān’s chamber-
    lain, 168
envies Mahbūd, vii, 319
plots with a Jew against
    Mahbūd, vii, 320 seq.
    makes confession to Nūshīr-
    wān, vii, 324